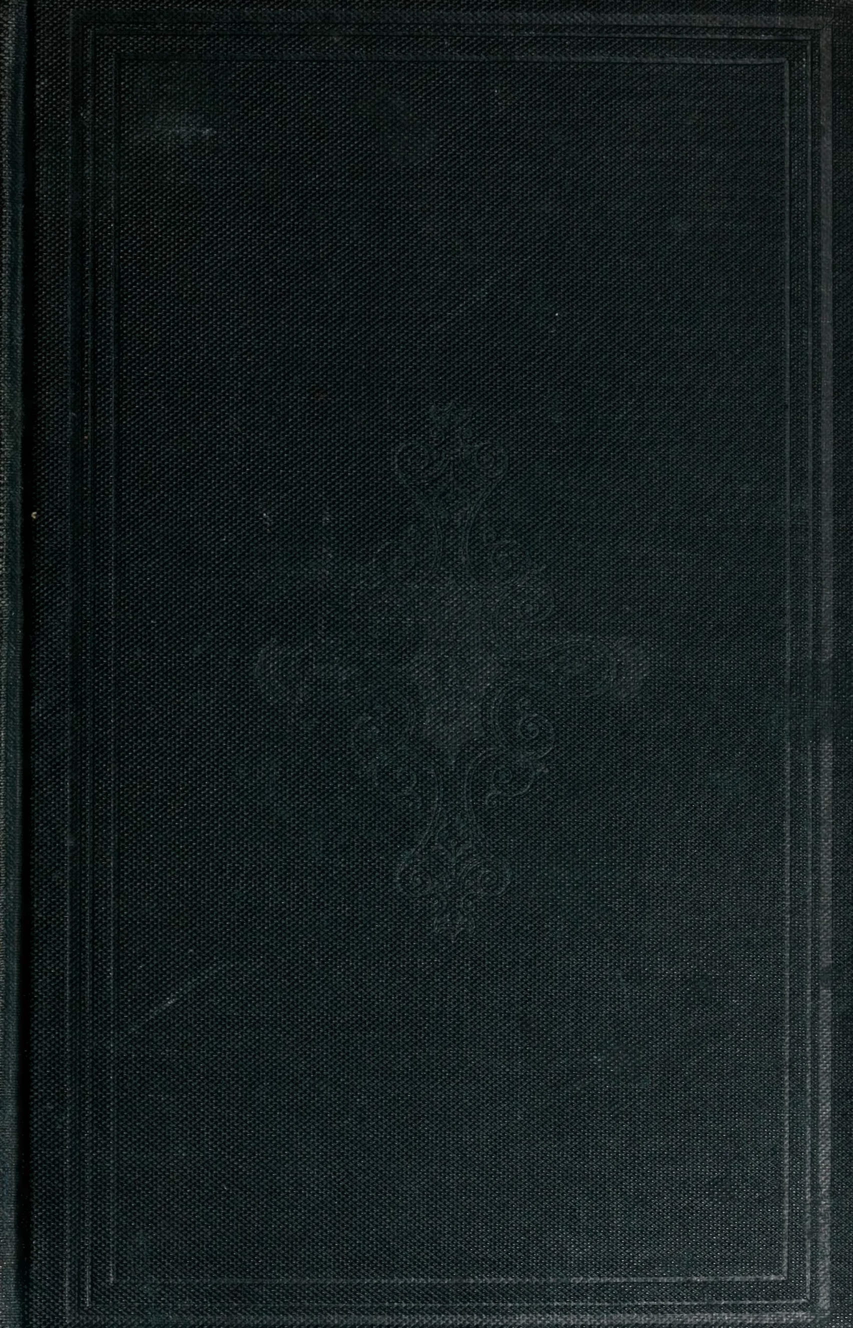


Marine Biological Laboratory

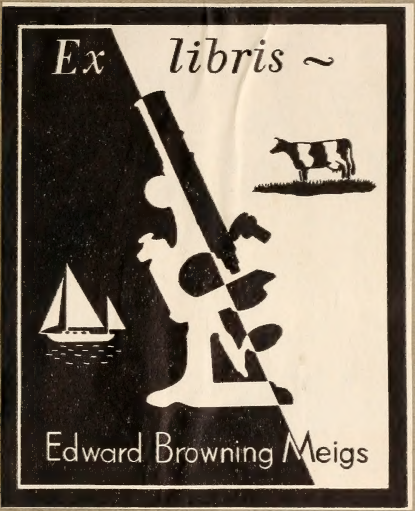
Received Fall of 1944

Accession No. 58076

Given By Mrs. Meigs
Washington, D. C.

Place,

MBL/WHOI
0 0301 0010451 9



Edward B. Meigs,
1322 Walnut St.

THE

MICROTOMIST'S VADE-MECUM

First Edition . . March, 1885.
Second Do. . . April, 1890.
Third Do. . . September, 1893.
Fourth Do. . . September, 1896.
Fifth Do. . . June, 1900.

BOOKS FOR MICROSCOPISTS

Oertel. Medical Microscopy

A Guide to Diagnosis, Elementary Laboratory Methods, and Microscopic Technic. By T. E. Oertel, M.D., Professor of Histology, Pathology, Bacteriology, and Clinical Microscopy, Medical Department, University of Georgia. 12mo. 131 Illustrations. Cloth, $2.00

Reeves. Medical Microscopy

Including Chapters on Bacteriology, Neoplasms, Urinary Examination, etc. By James E. Reeves, M.D., ex-President American Public Health Association, etc. Numerous Illustrations, some of which are printed in colors. 12mo.
Cloth, $2.50

Carpenter. The Microscope and Its Revelations

By W. B. Carpenter, M.D., F.R.S. Eighth Edition, by Rev. Dr. Dallinger, F.R.S. Rewritten, Revised, and Enlarged. 817 Illustrations and 23 Plates. Octavo. 1136 pages.
Cloth, $8.00

THE

MICROTOMIST'S VADE-MECUM

A HANDBOOK OF THE METHODS OF MICROSCOPIC ANATOMY

BY

ARTHUR BOLLES LEE

FIFTH REVISED EDITION

PHILADELPHIA
P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.
1012 WALNUT STREET
1904

MARINE BIOLOGICAL LABORATORY

PREFACE.

The present edition is the outcome of a double revision of the text of the last edition. I revised that text very thoroughly in 1897 in conjunction with Prof. Paul Mayer, in view of the preparation of the German edition that has since appeared.* But I have not contented myself with taking the text thus settled as the basis of the present edition and merely adding such newer methods as have appeared up to date.

For on the one hand the space taken up by description of recent processes has turned out to be so considerable as to call for a very severe condensation of the text throughout, in order to keep the whole within the old limits of size—limits which, it seems to me, cannot be much increased without impairing the handiness of the volume: so that a re-revision seemed necessary on that head. And on the other hand it also seemed to me desirable to amplify even more fully than was done in the last edition many of the introductory portions of the different chapters, and to discuss still more fully the *principles* of some of the methods described.

Both of these points have been carried out. Phraseology has been curtailed throughout to the utmost limits consistent with clearness. Rejection of superfluous methods has been carried out wholesale, even to the extent of suppression of a large number of the references to rejected methods that were given in the last edition. The former chapter on Hardening Agents has been suppressed and its contents incorporated with the two chapters on Fixing and Hardening Agents, thus saving much unnecessary repetition. And on the other hand there has been added a great deal of new explanatory matter concerning such subjects as the theory of fixation, microtome knives and knife-position, serial section methods, and the like: the chapter on Cytological Methods has been for the most part rewritten: and throughout Part II numerous new examples have taken the place of former ones, or have been added to them.

---

* *Grundzüge der mikroskopischen Technik für Zoologen und Anatomen*, von A. B. Lee und Paul Mayer; Berlin, Friedlaender und Sohn, 1898. I refer to this edition under the abbreviated title of *Grundzüge*.

The amount of new matter thus brought into the book is very considerable; but notwithstanding this the size of the volume has not been increased, and I venture to hope that the reader will find that the labour that has been expended on it has not been expended in vain.

COLOGNY, GENEVA, SWITZERLAND;
May, 1900.

MARINE BIOLOGICAL LABORATORY

PREFACE

TO THE

FOURTH EDITION.

The short period of three years that has elapsed since the publication of the last edition of this work has not brought with it any radical change in the methods of histological research. Such progress as has been realised has consisted rather in improvements in the detail of already-established methods than in the introduction of new methods or new reagents. Nevertheless, the present edition has undergone a most thorough revision—a revision indeed so thorough as to amount to extensive re-writing in many parts.

It has seemed to me advisable in the interest of the beginner, and indeed in the interest of readers who are not beginners at all, to enter more fully than was hitherto done into the detail of the more important processes, to explain more fully the principles on which they are founded, and to add in many cases a critical estimate of their rationality and practical value. In consequence of this re-writing, and in spite of strenuous efforts to keep down the bulk of the work, it has turned out to be considerably increased. I regret, however, this increase the less, in so far as it is due rather to the ampler treatment that has been accorded to the more valuable methods than to increase in the number of processes described. The number of new processes described is in fact a smaller one than I have had to deal with in the preparation of any edition since the first.

The classification of the various methods has received most careful attention, and has been in many cases greatly simplified, whilst at the same time a large number of superfluous processes have been rejected. Advice to the beginner concerning the choice of methods has been given wherever practicable, and I think that notwithstanding the abundance and complexity of the matters treated of, there can hardly be any risk that the student may be unable to see the wood for the trees.

The chapters treating of Staining and of the Carmine and Hæmateïn stains have had the great advantage of revision by Dr. Paul Mayer, who, it is superfluous to remind the reader, has made a speciality of this subject, with results brilliant alike in theory and in practice. Not indeed that the present English text has been directly revised by him, but that it has been prepared from a recent text so revised. Dr. Mayer was good enough to revise most carefully the three corresponding chapters prepared by me for the recent new edition of the *Traité des Méthodes Techniques de l'Anatomie Microscopique* (Lee et Henneguy), and in the preparation of the present English text I have closely followed the chapters so revised.

No less obligation have I to express to Professor van Gehuchten, who with great kindness has thoroughly revised for me the three chapters entitled Neurological Methods. It occurred to me that my treatment of this complicated subject could not but gain greatly by the advice of an observer who is not only one of the foremost of the new school of neurologists but at the same time an instructed and capable cytologist, and therefore likely to sympathise with my feeling that it would be much to be deplored that the study of nervous anatomy should degenerate into a mere study of topographical relations, to the neglect of the inner mechanism of nervous elements. By Professor van Gehuchten's advice

I have entirely re-arranged the contents of these three chapters according to a scheme worked out by him, thereby effecting a great gain in clearness of exposition. I cannot but acknowledge that the arrangement adopted in previous editions resulted in something like a chaos; whilst the new arrangement may, I think, fairly claim to be natural, logical, and easily comprehensible. By his advice, too, I have entirely re-written the account of the bichromate of silver impregnations of Golgi; the account as it now stands is, I believe, the only complete one that has appeared in the English language.

I am under the greatest obligation to Professor van Gehuchten, as well as to Dr. Paul Mayer, for the generous assistance which enables me to affirm that the important subjects in question have been treated with all the requisite accuracy and thoroughness.

The essential feature of the first edition was that it was an altogether exhaustive collection of all the methods of preparation that had up to that time been recommended as useful for the purposes of microscopic anatomy, and its primary intention that of being a work of reference for the instructed anatomist. Its character of a guide to the beginner was secondary only. It contained, indeed, a general introduction and much explanatory matter in the different chapters, but, on the whole, the didactic matter bore but an insufficient proportion to the historical matter. This has now been rectified. It has come to pass that during the repeated operations of revision to which the book has been subjected, the explanatory and didactic element has been continually increasing, whilst at the same time the historical element has been continually diminishing—diminishing, that is, in all parts of the book relatively to the former element, and in some parts absolutely (as may be seen. for instance, by comparing the number of formulæ given in the chapters on Carmine and Hæmatoxylin with the number given in former editions). On the one hand the book has been lightened by the jettison of much useless matter, and on the other hand there has been accorded to the matter that has been retained a far ampler share than before of explanation and detail. To such an extent, indeed, have the instructions to students and other explanatory matter been amplified that I am not acquainted with any modern work on the subject that contains anything like so complete an account of the various fundamental operations of histological technique—fixing, imbedding, staining, and the like. I only felt justified in claiming for the first edition that it "went far to make up a formal treatise on the art." Through the changes above mentioned the book has come to assume altogether the character of a formal treatise, and now contains in due proportions both the grammar and the dictionary of the art.

The rejection of superfluous matter above referred to relates chiefly to old methods that have been before the public for so long a time that there can be no doubt that they have no good claim to further survival, whilst recent methods, which may be considered to be still on their probation, have been treated with the accustomed fulness.

NYON, SWITZERLAND;
September, 1896.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

PAGE

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY 1

CHAPTER II.

KILLING 11

CHAPTER III.

FIXING AND HARDENING 19

CHAPTER IV.

FIXING AND HARDENING AGENTS; MINERAL ACIDS AND THEIR SALTS 31

CHAPTER V.

FIXING AND HARDENING AGENTS; CHLORIDES, ORGANIC ACIDS, AND OTHERS 54

CHAPTER VI.

DE-ALCOHOLISATION AND CLEARING AGENTS 78

CHAPTER VII.

IMBEDDING METHODS—INTRODUCTION 87

CHAPTER VIII.

IMBEDDING METHODS: PARAFFIN AND OTHER FUSION MASSES . 96
Paraffin, 96; Gelatin, 117.

58078

PAGE

CHAPTER IX.

Collodion (Celloidin) and other Imbedding Methods . . 120
Collodion or Celloidin, 120; other Cold Masses, 135; Freezing, 137.

CHAPTER X.

Serial Section Mounting 140
Methods for Paraffin Sections, 140; Methods for Watery Sections, 146; Methods for Celloidin Sections, 147.

CHAPTER XI.

Staining 153

CHAPTER XII.

Carmine and Cochineal Stains 163
Theory of Carmine Staining, 163; Aqueous Carmines, Acid, 167; Neutral and Alkaline, 171; Alcoholic Carmines and Cochineals, 172.

CHAPTER XIII.

Hæmateïn (Hæmatoxylin) Stains 177
Theory of Staining with Hæmatoxylin, 177; Alumina-hæmateïn Lakes, 182; other Hæmateïn Compounds, 187.

CHAPTER XIV.

On Staining with Coal-tar Colours 193
Basic, Acid and Neutral Coal-tar Colours, 193; Progressive and Regressive Stains, 195; General Directions for the Regressive Method, 196.

CHAPTER XV.

The Coal-tar Chromatin Stains 202
Regressive Stains, 202; Progressive Stains, 208.

CHAPTER XVI.

The Coal-tar Plasma Stains 212

CHAPTER XVII.

Methylen Blue 228

PAGE

CHAPTER XVIII.

METALLIC STAINS (IMPREGNATION METHODS) . . . 241
Silver, 243; Gold, 249; other Metallic Stains, 258.

CHAPTER XIX.

OTHER STAINS AND COMBINATIONS 262
Other Organic Stains, 262; Carmine combinations, 264; Hæmateïn Combinations, 266.

CHAPTER XX.

EXAMINATION AND PRESERVATION MEDIA 268
Aqueous Liquids, 268; Mercurial Liquids, 272; other Fluids, 273; Glycerin Media, 276; Jellies, 278; Resinous Media, 281.

CHAPTER XXI.

CEMENTS AND VARNISHES 288

PART II.

SPECIAL METHODS AND EXAMPLES.

CHAPTER XXII.

INJECTIONS: GELATIN MASSES 297
Carmine, 300; Blue, 303; other Colours, 305.

CHAPTER XXIII.

INJECTIONS: OTHER MASSES (COLD) 307
White of Egg, Gum, 307; Glycerin, 308; Aqueous, 309; Celloidin, 310; other Masses, 310.

CHAPTER XXIV.

MACERATION AND DIGESTION 312
Maceration, 312; Digestion, 319.

CHAPTER XXV.

CORROSION, DECALCIFICATION, DESILICIFICATION, AND BLEACHING . 321
Corrosion, 321; Decalcification, 322; Desilicification, 326; Bleaching, 327

PAGE

CHAPTER XXVI.

EMBRYOLOGICAL METHODS 331

CHAPTER XXVII.

CYTOLOGICAL METHODS 357

CHAPTER XXVIII.

TEGUMENTARY ORGANS 366

CHAPTER XXIX.

MUSCLE AND TENDON (NERVE-ENDINGS) 371
Striated Muscle, 371; Tendon, 373; Smooth Muscle, 374.

CHAPTER XXX.

NEUROLOGICAL METHODS.—INTRODUCTION AND SECTION METHODS . 377

CHAPTER XXXI.

NEUROLOGICAL METHODS.—NERVE-FIBRE STAINS (Weigert and others) 396

CHAPTER XXXII.

NEUROLOGICAL METHODS.—AXIS-CYLINDER AND PROTOPLASM STAINS (Golgi and others) 409
Neuroglia, 428; Retina, 431; Inner ear, 433.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

SOME OTHER HISTOLOGICAL METHODS 435
Connective Tissues, 435; Blood, 447; Glands, 453.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

SOME METHODS FOR LOWER ANIMALS 459
Tunicata, 459; Mollusca, 461; Arthropoda, 465; Vermes, 469; Echinodermata, 480; Cœlenterata, 484; Porifera, 489; Protozoa, 490.

APPENDIX 497

INDEX 503

THE MICROTOMIST'S VADE-MECUM.

MARINE BIOLOGICAL LABORATORY
LIBRARY
WOODS HOLE, MASS.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY.

1. The General Method.—The methods of modern microscopic anatomy may be roughly classed as General and Special. There is a General or Normal method, known as the method of sections, which consists in carefully *fixing* the structures to be examined, *staining* them with a *nuclear* stain, *dehydrating* with alcohol, and mounting *series of sections* of the structures in balsam. It is by this method that the work is blocked out and very often finished. Special points are then studied, if necessary, by Special Methods, such as examination of the living tissue elements, *in situ* or in "indifferent" media; fixation with special fixing agents; staining with special stains; dissociation by teasing or maceration; injection; impregnation; and the like.

There is a further distinction which may be made, and which may help to simplify matters. The processes of the preparation of tissues may be divided into two stages, *Preliminary Preparation* and *Ulterior Preparation*. Now the processes of preliminary preparation are essentially identical in all the methods, essential divergences being only found in the details of ulterior preparation. By preliminary preparation is meant that group of processes called by German anatomists *Conservirungsmethoden*,—those, namely, whose object it is to get the tissues into a fit state for passing unharmed through all the ulterior processes to which it may be desired to submit them. Preliminary preparation comprehends the operations of (1) killing; (2) fixing; (3) the washing and other manipulations necessary for removing the fixing agent from the tissues, and substituting for it the preservative liquid or other reagents which it is desired to employ. Ulterior preparation comprehends the processes sketched out in §§ 3 *et seq.*

2. Preliminary Preparation.—The first thing to be done with any structure is to *fix* its histological elements. (This statement applies equally to all classes of objects, whether it be desired to cut them into sections or to treat them in any other special way.) Two things are implied by the word "fixing:" first, the rapid *killing* of the element, so that it may not have time to change the form it had during life, but is fixed in death in the attitude it normally had during life; and second, the *hardening* of it to such a degree as may enable it to resist without further change of form the action of the reagents with which it may subsequently be treated. Too much stress can hardly be laid on this point, which is the most distinctive feature of modern histological practice; without good fixation it is impossible to get *good stains* or good sections, or preparations good in any way.

The structure having been duly fixed by one of the processes described in the chapter on Fixing Agents, is *washed* in order to remove from the tissues as far as possible all traces of the fixing reagent.

The kind of liquid with which washing out is done is not a matter of indifference. If corrosive sublimate (for instance), or osmic acid, or a solution into which chromic acid or a chromate enters, have been used for fixing, the washing may be done with water. But if picric acid in any form has been used, the washing must be done with alcohol. The reason of this difference is that the first-named reagents (and, indeed, all the compounds of the heavy metals used for fixing) enter into a state of chemical combination with the elements of tissues, rendering them insoluble in water; so that the hardening induced by these agents is not removed by subsequent treatment with water. Picric acid, on the other hand, produces only a very slight hardening of the tissues, so that the tissue elements are left in a soft state in which they are obnoxious to all the hurtful effects of water. Alcohol must therefore be taken to remove the picric acid and to effect the necessary hardening at the same time. Instructions for washing out are given, when necessary, in the discussion of the different fixing agents in the following parts of this work.

These operations having been duly performed, two roads become open. The object may be further prepared by what may be termed the *wet* method, in which all subsequent operations are performed by means of aqueous media. Or it may be further prepared by what may be termed the *Dehydration* method, which consists in treatment with successive alcohols of gradually increasing strength, final *dehydration* with absolute alcohol, imbibition with an essential oil or other so-called *clearing agent* which serves to remove the alcohol, and lastly either mounting at once in balsam or other resinous medium or imbedding in paraffin for the purpose of making sections. The dehydration method is the course which is generally preferred, chiefly because of its great superiority as regards the preservation of tissues. The presence of water is the most important factor in the conditions that bring about the decomposition of organic matter, and its complete removal is the chief condition of permanent preservation. It is of course not intended here to suggest that wet methods of preparation should be altogether discarded. They have great value, they are even indispensable for special ends; and all that is intended to be suggested is that they should be regarded not as *general*, but as *special* methods.

3. Dehydration and Preservation.—The further course of preparation by the dehydration method is as follows:—At the same time that the superfluous fixing agent is being removed from the tissues, or as soon as that is done, the *water of the tissues must be removed.* This is necessary for two reasons: firstly, in the interest of preservation, the presence of water being the condition of all others that most favours post-mortem decomposition; and secondly, because all water must be removed in order to allow the tissues to be impregnated with the imbedding material necessary for section-cutting, or with the balsam with which they are to be finally preserved. (The cases in which aqueous imbedding and preserving media are employed are exceptional, and will be treated of in the proper places.) This *dehydration* is performed as follows:—The objects are brought into weak alcohol, and are then passed through successive alcohols of gradually increased strength, remaining in each the time necessary for complete saturation, and the last bath consisting of absolute or at least very strong alcohol.

In dealing with extremely delicate objects, it may be necessary to take special precautions in order to avoid injury to them through the violent diffusion-currents that are set up in the passage from water to alcohol, or from one bath of alcohol to another of considerably different density. Some kind of diffusion-apparatus may conveniently be used in these cases. The objects may be placed with some of their liquid in a tube plugged at one end and closed at the other by a diaphragm of chamois skin or other suitable membrane, the tube being then immersed in a vessel containing the grade of alcohol that it is desired to add to the liquid in the tube, and the whole allowed to remain until by diffusion through the diaphragm the two liquids have become of equal density. Or Cobb's differentiator (*Proc. Linn. Soc.*, N.S.W., v, 1890, p. 157; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 821) may be employed. Or, more conveniently in most cases, the apparatus described and figured by Haswell (*Proc. Linn. Soc.*, N.S.W., vi, 1891, p. 433; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 696). This consists of two wash-bottles connected in the usual way by tubing, and furnished, the one with an overflow-tube, and the other with a feeding-tube leading from an elevated reservoir connected with it by means of a regulating tap or drop arrangement. The objects are placed in the first bottle; some of the same liquid as that containing the objects is placed in the second bottle; and alcohol of the grade that it is desired to add is led into it from the reservoir. The mixture of liquids therefore takes place in the bottle that does not contain the objects, and the mixture itself is gradually led over to the objects through the siphon-tube connecting the two bottles. Another apparatus for rapid dehydration, devised by Cheatle, will be found described in *Journ. Pathol. and Bacteriol.*, i, 1892, p. 253, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 892. It is hardly simple enough to be recommendable.

A *capillary siphon* for the aspiration of liquids in the fixing, staining, and washing of suspended blood-corpuscles, sperm-cells, protozoa, and the like, is described by Ewald, in *Zeit. Biol.*, Bd. xxxiv, 1897, p. 253.

I would here call attention to the varied usefulness of the "Siebdosen" or sieve-dishes of Steinach, Zimmermann, and Suchannek (vide *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 433, and vii, 2, 1890, p. 158). They consist of a covered glass capsule into which is fitted a "sieve" made of a watch-glass pierced with holes and supported on legs, and are very handy, not only for staining, washing out, treatment with vapours, etc., but for any operation in which it is desirable to have specimens supported in the upper layers of a quantity of reagent. They are sent out in a very neat form by Grübler and Co. Fairchild's perforated porcelain cylinders for washing (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 3, 1896, p. 301) seem to be a very neat idea. These are made small enough to be floated by the cork that closes them. See also Ewald's section-washing apparatus (*Zeit. Biol.*, Bd. xxxiv, 1897, p. 264).

It is sometimes stated that it is necessary that the last alcohol-bath should consist of absolute alcohol. This, however, is incorrect, a strength of 90 per cent., or at all events 95 per cent., being sufficient in most cases. For the small amount of water that remains in the tissues after treatment with these grades of alcohol is efficiently removed in the bath of clearing agent if a good clearing agent be employed. Oil of cedar will remove the remaining water from tissues saturated with 95 per cent. alcohol; oil of bergamot will "clear" from 90 per cent. alcohol, and anilin oil will clear from 70 per cent. alcohol.

I am not aware of any substance that can entirely take the place of alcohol for dehydration and preservation. Acetone and methylal have been substituted for alcohol in the dehydration of methylen-blue preparations (PARKER, *Zool. Anz.*, 403, 1892, p. 376); but a really efficient substitute for alcohol in general work remains yet to be discovered. Formaldehyde (see under Fixing and Hardening Agents) is now known to be a most admirable medium for the preservation of museum specimens, being for that purpose in many cases greatly superior to alcohol; but experience is wanting as to how far it is available for the preservation of histological material, whilst of course, occurring as it does in the form of an aqueous solution, it can have no dehydrating effect.

Considered as a mere dehydrating agent, *alcohol* fulfils its functions fairly well. But considered as a histological *preservative* agent, it is far less satisfactory. If tissues be left in alcohol for only a few days before further preparation, the injurious effects of a sojourn in alcohol will perhaps not be very disagreeably evident. But it is otherwise if they are put away in it for many weeks or months before the final preparation is carried out. The dehydrating action of the alcohol being continuously prolonged, the minute structure of tissues is sometimes considerably altered by it; they become over-hard and shrink, and become brittle, and their capacity for taking stains well becomes seriously diminished. KULTSCHITZKY (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 3, 1887, p. 349) has proposed to remedy this by putting up objects, after fixation and washing out with alcohol, in ether, xylol, or toluol. FLEMMING (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxvii, 1891, p. 685) advises putting up objects after fixation in a mixture of alcohol, glycerin, and water, in about equal parts, pointing out that objects thus preserved may be at any moment either prepared for sectioning by treatment with pure alcohol or softened for dissection or teasing by a little soaking in water, and that they do not become so hard and brittle as alcohol specimens, and retain their staining power much better. After extensive experience of this plan I can highly recommend it, and would only further suggest that the action of the liquid seems to me to be in many cases much improved by addition of a little acetic acid (say 0·5 to 0·75 per cent.).

For material that is intended only for section-cutting, I find that by far the best plan is to clear and imbed at once in paraffin. This affords, as far as I can see, an absolutely perfect preservation. I have worked on material that has been preserved in this way for over seven years. The preservation of the tissues, down to the finest details of cell-structure, appears to be perfect, and the staining as precise as when the specimens were first put up. The only noticeable defect is that the tissues are rather brittle, and do not cut well; but it is not certain that that is not owing to their having been over-hardened in the first instance. Cedar-wood oil is, I find, nearly, if not quite, as good as paraffin.

4. Removal of Alcohol; Clearing.—The water having been thus sufficiently removed, the alcohol is in its turn removed from the tissues, and its place taken by some anhydrous substance, generally an essential oil, which is miscible with the material used for imbedding or mounting. This operation is generally known as *Clearing.* It is very important that the passage from the last alcohol to the clearing agent be made gradual. This is effected by placing the clearing medium *under* the alcohol. A sufficient quantity of alcohol is placed in a tube (a watch-glass will do, but tubes are generally better), and then with a pipette a sufficient quantity of clearing medium is introduced *at the bottom of the alcohol.* Or you may first put the clearing medium into the tube, and then carefully pour the alcohol on to the top of it. The two fluids mingle but slowly. The objects to be cleared, being now quietly put into the supernatant alcohol, float at the surface of separation of the two fluids, the exchange of fluids takes place gradually, and the objects slowly sink down into the lower layer. When they have sunk to the bottom, the alcohol may be drawn off with a pipette, and after some further lapse of time the objects will be found to be completely penetrated by the clearing medium. This method of making the passage from one fluid to another applies to all cases in which objects have to be transferred from a lighter to a denser fluid,—for instance, from alcohol, or from water, to glycerin.

It should be noted here that this is the proper stage for carrying out minute dissections, if any such have to be done, a drop of clearing agent being a most helpful medium for carrying out such dissections (see § 8).

At this point the course of treatment follows one of two different roads, according as the object is to be mounted direct in balsam (§ 7), or is first to be sectioned (§ 5).

5. Imbedding, and Treatment of Sections.—The objects are now *imbedded.* They are removed from the clearing medium, and soaked until thoroughly saturated in the imbedding medium. This is, for small objects, generally paraffin, liquefied by heat, and for large objects generally a solution of collodion or "celloidin" (in this latter case the clearing may be omitted and the tissues be imbedded direct from the alcohol). The imbedding medium containing the object is then made to solidify, as described in the chapter on Imbedding Processes, and sections are made with a microtome through the imbedding mass and the included objects. The sections are then mounted on a slide by one of the methods described in the chapter on Serial Section Methods, the imbedding material is removed from them (in the case of paraffin), they are stained *in situ* on the slide, dehydrated with alcohol, cleared, and mounted in balsam or damar. Or they may be stained, washed, dehydrated, and cleared in watch-glasses, and afterwards mounted as desired—the imbedding medium being first removed if desirable.

The plan of staining sections on the slide is of somewhat recent introduction; before it had been worked out the practice was to stain structures *in toto*, before cutting sections. In this case the object, after having been fixed and washed out, is taken from the water, or while still on its way through the lower alcohols (it should not be allowed to proceed to the higher grades of alcohol before staining, if that can be avoided), and passed through a bath of stain (generally alcoholic borax-carmine or other alcoholic stain) of sufficient duration, then dehydrated with successive alcohols, passed through a clearing medium into paraffin, cut, and treated as above described, the sections in this case being mounted direct from the chloroform, xylol, or other solvent with which the paraffin is removed. If aqueous staining media be applied (and this is sometimes very desirable for particular purposes) the structures should either be stained *in toto* immediately after fixing and washing out, or sections may be stained on the slide, the objects, if delicate, being passed through successive baths of alcohol of gradually decreasing strength before being put into the aqueous stain.

In my opinion it is generally advisable not to stain in bulk material that is intended to be sectioned; by staining it as sections the staining can be much better controlled, and many excellent stains can in this way be employed that are not available for staining in bulk; and of course sections can be stained much more rapidly than material in bulk. But many workers consider that staining in bulk is frequently more convenient, and therefore preferable so long as the demonstration of minute detail is not an object.

The most convenient *vessels*, I find, in which to perform the various operations of staining, differentiating, dehydrating, clearing, etc., *on the slide*, are flat-bottomed corked glass tubes. I have mine made 10 centimetres high and 27 millimetres internal diameter. Each of these will then take two slides, English size, placed back to back. To make a stand for them, take a piece of deal board, 3 centimetres thick, and with a centrebit bore in it series of holes about 15 millimetres deep and of the diameter of the tubes, and about 3 centimetres apart lengthways and 1½ crossways. A board of 15 centimetres width and 45 length will take twenty-one tubes in three rows of seven each in the holes; and others may be stood up between the rows without much risk of their falling.

6. Résumé of the Section Method.—It was stated in the first edition of this work that "the great majority of preparations are made by fixing either with sublimate or a picric acid combination, washing out with alcohol, staining with alcoholic borax-carmine, imbedding in chloroform paraffin, cutting with a sliding microtome, and mounting the sections in series in Canada balsam." But histological practice has greatly changed since then, and I would now suggest the following as giving in very many cases greatly superior results:—Fix in such one of the fixing agents recommended in later chapters as may be most suitable to the case; wash out; dehydrate; clear with oil of cedar-wood; imbed in paraffin; mount sections on the slide by the water method or with Mayer's albumen medium; stain as desired, and mount in balsam or damar. That, or something like that, is now the practice of many of the most advanced workers; but the *beginner* will perhaps do well to commence by the simpler procedure first recommended, which is very suitable for obtaining rapidly a general view of the forms and relations of anatomical elements.

7. Preparation of Entire Objects, or of Material that is not to be sectioned.—The treatment of objects which can be studied without being cut into sections is identical with that above described, with the omission of those passages that relate to imbedding processes. Its normal course may be described as fixation, washing out, staining, treatment with successive alcohols of gradually increasing strength, final dehydration with absolute alcohol, clearing, and mounting in balsam. This method is usually preferred, as a general method, to the wet methods, for the reasons that have been given above (§ 2), and for some others, amongst which may be noted the greater transparency given to tissues by mounting them in media of high refractive index, such as balsam.

In the *preparation of entire objects* or structures that are intact and *covered by an integument not easily permeable* by liquids, special care must be taken to avoid swelling from endosmosis on the passage of the objects from any of the liquids employed to a liquid of less density, or shrinkage from exosmosis on the passage to a liquid of greater density. This applies most specially to the passage from the last alcohol into the clearing medium. A slit should be made in the integument, if possible, so that the two fluids may mingle without hindrance. And in all cases the passage is made gradual by placing the clearing medium under the alcohol, as above described. Fluids of high diffusibility should be employed as far as possible in all the processes. Fixing agents of great penetrating power (such as picro-sulphuric acid or alcoholic sublimate solution) should be employed where the objects present a not easily permeable integument. Washing out is done with successive alcohols, water being used only in the case of fixation by osmic acid, or the chromic mixtures or other fixing solutions that render washing by water imperative. Staining is done by preference with alcoholic staining media. The stains most to be recommended are Grenacher's borax-carmine, or one of Mayer's new carminic acid or hæmatein stains (for all of which *see* STAINING AGENTS). Tar-colour stains are rarely applicable to this class of preparations. Aqueous stains are more rarely indicated, though there are many cases in which they are admissible, and some in which they are preferable.

8. Minute Dissections.—These are best done, if necessary, in a drop of clearing agent. I recommend cedar-wood oil for this purpose, as it gives to the tissues a consistency very favourable for dissection, whilst its viscosity serves to lend support to delicate structures. Clove oil has a tendency to make tissues that have lain in it for some time very brittle. The brittleness is, however, sometimes very helpful in minute dissections. Another property of clove oil is that it does not easily spread itself over the surface of a slide, but has a tendency to form very convex drops, and this also makes it frequently a very convenient medium for making minute dissections in.

9. General Principles.—For an excellent exposition of the principles underlying modern histological technique, the reader may consult with advantage the paper of PAUL MAYER, in *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ii (1881), p. 1, *et seq*. See also the abstract in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* (N.S.), ii (1882), pp. 866—881, and that in *Amer. Natural.*, xvi (1882), pp. 697—706, in which two last some improvements are mentioned which have been worked out since the publication of Mayer's paper; and further, the history and criticism of modern methods contained in APÁTHY's *Mikrotechnik der thierischen Morphologie*, Braunschweig, H. Bruhn, 1896.

CHAPTER II.

KILLING.

10. In the majority of cases, the first step in the preparation of an organ or organism consists in exposing it as rapidly and as completely as possible to the action of one of the **Fixing Agents** that are discussed in the next chapter. The organ or organism is thus taken in the normal living state; the fixing agent serves to bring about at the same time, and with sufficient rapidity, both the death of the organism and that of its histological elements.

But this method is by no means applicable to all cases. There are many animals, especially such as are of a soft consistence, and deprived of any rigid skeleton, but possessing a considerable faculty of contractility—such as many Cœlenterata, Bryozoa, and Serpulida, for instance—which if thus treated contract violently, draw in their tentacles or branchiæ, and die in a state of contraction that renders the preserved object a mere caricature of the living animal. In these cases special methods of killing must be resorted to.

Sudden Killing.

11. Heat.—Speaking generally, there are two ways of dealing with these difficult cases. You may kill the animal so suddenly that it has not time to contract; or you may paralyse it by narcotics before killing it.

The application of *Heat* is a good means of killing suddenly. It has the great advantage of allowing of good staining subsequently, and of hindering less than any other method the application of chemical tests to the tissues. By it the tissues are fixed at the same time that somatic death is brought about.

The difficulty consists in hitting off the right temperature, which is of course different for different objects. I think that a temperature of 80° to 90° C. will generally be amply sufficient, and that very frequently it will not be necessary to go beyond 60° C. An exposure to heat for a few seconds will generally suffice.

Small objects (Protozoa, Hydroids, Bryozoa) may be brought into a drop of water in a watch-glass or on a slide, and heated over the flame of a spirit lamp. For large objects, the water or other liquid employed as the vehicle of the heat may be heated beforehand and the animals thrown into it.

As soon as it is supposed that the protoplasm of the tissues is coagulated throughout, the animals should be brought into alcohol (30 to 70 per cent. alcohol) (if water be employed as the heating agent).

An excellent plan for preparing many marine animals is to kill them in *hot fresh* water. Some of the larger Nemertians are better preserved by this method than by any other with which I am acquainted.

12. Slowly Contracting Animals.—Animals that contract but slowly, such as *Alcyonium* and *Veretillum*, and some Tunicates, such as *Pyrosoma*, are very well killed by throwing them into some very quickly acting fixing liquid, either used hot or cold. *Glacial* or very strong *acetic acid* (VAN BENEDEN'S method) is an excellent reagent for this purpose ; it may be used, for example, with some Medusæ. After an immersion of a few seconds or a few minutes, according to the size of the animals, they should be brought into alcohol of at least 50 per cent. strength. See "**Acetic acid**" and "**Tunicata.**" Lemon juice employed in this way has given me very good results with small Annelids and Hirudinea. *Corrosive sublimate* is another excellent reagent for this purpose.

Narcotisation.

13. The secret of narcotisation consists in adding some anaesthetic substance very gradually, in very small doses, to the water containing the animals, and waiting patiently for it to take effect slowly.

The Tobacco-smoke Method for Actiniæ, due to LO BIANCO (*Jena Zeit. Naturw.*, Bd. xiii, 1879, p. 467 ; *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, Bd. ix, 1890, p. 499), used to be practised as follows :—A dish containing the animals in water is covered with a bell-glass, under which passes a curved glass or rubber tube, which dips into the water. Tobacco smoke is blown into the water for some time through the tube, and the animals are then left for some hours. More smoke is then blown in, and the animals are left overnight. Next morning they should be irritated from time to time by touching a tentacle with a needle. As soon as it is observed that an animal begins to react slowly—that is to say, as soon as it is found that the contraction of the tentacle does not begin until a considerable time after it has been irritated by the needle—the narcotisation may be considered sufficient. It may be further completed, if desired, by the addition of a little chloroform. A quantity of some fixing liquid sufficient to kill the animals before they have time to contract is then added to the water.

14. Nicotin in solution may be used instead of tobacco smoke (Andres, *Atti R. Accad. dei Lincei*, v, 1880, p. 9; see *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, N. S., ii, 1882, p. 881). Andres employs a solution of 1 gramme of nicotin in a litre of sea water. The animal to be anæsthetised is placed in a jar containing half a litre of sea water, and the solution of nicotin is gradually conducted into the jar by means of a thread acting as a siphon. The thread ought to be of such a thickness as to be capable of carrying over the whole of the solution of nicotin in twenty-four hours. See also *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, Bd. ii, 1880, p. 123.

15. Chloroform may be employed either in the liquid state or in the state of vapour. Korotneff (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, v, Hft. 2, 1884, p. 233) operates in the following manner with Siphonophora. The animals being extended, a watch-glass containing chloroform is floated on the surface of the water in which they are contained, and the whole is covered with a bell-glass. As soon as the animals have become insensible they are killed by means of hot sublimate or chromic acid solution plentifully poured on to them.

Liquid chloroform is employed by squirting it in small quantities on to the surface of the water containing the animals. A syringe or pipette having a very small orifice, so as to thoroughly pulverise the chloroform, should be employed. Small quantities only should be projected at a time, and the dose should be repeated every five minutes until the animals are anæsthetised.

I have seen large Medusæ very completely anæsthetised in the state of extension in an hour or two by this method. Andres finds that this plan does not succeed with Actiniæ, as with them maceration of the tissues supervenes before anæsthesia is established.

Preyer (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* Bd. vii, 1886, p. 27) recommends chloroform water for anæsthetising star-fishes.

16. **Ether** and **Alcohol** may be administered in the same way. Andres has obtained good results with Actiniæ by the use of a mixture (invented by Salvatore lo Bianco) containing 20 parts of glycerin, 40 parts of 70 per cent. alcohol, and 40 parts of sea water. This mixture should be carefully poured on to the surface of the water containing the animals, and allowed to diffuse quietly through it. Several hours are sometimes necessary for this.

Eisig (*Fauna u. Flora Golf. Neapel,* 16, 1887, p. 239) benumbs Capitellidæ by putting them into a mixture of one part of 70 per cent. alcohol with 9 parts of sea water, a method which he recommends greatly for the study of the living animals.

17. **Methyl-alcohol.**—Cori (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1890, p. 438) prefers methyl-alcohol to all other reagents. It has the advantage of having but a slight action on albumins. Cori recommends a mixture composed of 10 c.c. methyl-alcohol (of 96 per cent. strength), 90 c.c. water (fresh or sea water), and 0·6 grm. of sodium chloride (to be added only when fresh water is taken, the addition of the salt having for its object to prevent maceration). It may be well to add to this mixture a very few drops of chloroform (for *Cristatella*; *Zeit. f. wiss Zool.*, lv, 1893, p. 626; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 475).

18. **Hydrate of Chloral**, which was first recommended, I believe, by Foettinger (*Arch. de Biol.*, vi, 1885, p. 115), gives very good results with some subjects. Foettinger operates by dropping crystals of chloral into the water containing the animals. For *Alcyonella* he takes 25 to 80 centigrammes of chloral for each hundred grammes of water. It takes about three quarters of an hour to render a colony sufficiently insensible to allow of fixing. Foettinger has obtained satisfactory results with marine and fresh-water Bryozoa, with Annelida, Mollusca, Nemertians, Actiniæ, and with *Asteracanthion.* He did not succeed with Hydroids.

Lo Bianco (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, Bd. ix, 1890, p. 442) employs for various marine animals freshly prepared solutions of chloral in sea water, of from one tenth to one fifth per cent. strength.

I am bound to state that I have never had the slightest success with Nemertians.

Verworn (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xlvi, 1887, p. 99; see also *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 148) puts *Cristatella* for a few minutes into 10 per cent. solution of chloral, in which the animals sooner or later become extended.

Kükenthal (*Jena Zeit. Naturw.*, Bd. xx, 1887, p. 511; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 509) has obtained good results with some Annelids by means of a solution of one part of chloral in 1000 parts of sea water.

The chloral method gives rise to maceration with some subjects, as I can testify, and has been said to distort nuclear figures.

19. Cocaine (Richards, *Zool. Anz.*, 196, 1885, p. 332) has been found to give good results. Richards puts a colony of Bryozoa into a watch-glass with 5 c.c. of water, and adds gradually 1 per cent. solution of hydrochlorate of cocaine in water. After five minutes the animals are somewhat numbed, and half a cubic centimetre of the solution is added; and ten minutes later the animals should be found to be dead in a state of extension.

This method is stated to succeed with Bryozoa, *Hydra*, and certain worms. It is the best method for Rotifers (Rousselet). It has also been recommended for *Aplysia*.

It has been pointed out (by Cori, in the paper quoted above) that unfortunately when fixing agents, such as sublimate solution, are added to the animals, the cocaine is thrown down on them as a white precipitate. This precipitate, however, may be redissolved afterwards in alcohol (Eisig).

19a. Menthol (Sorby, *Flcreanus*, Sheffield, 1898, No. 4, p. 68; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, i, p. 103).—Sorby finds that by adding a small quantity of menthol to the sea water in which "marine animals" (which?) are kept, they fully expand themselves and die in a "distended" condition. He has thus succeeded with *Synapta* and several species of sea-anemones.

20. Hydroxylamin.—Hofer (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 3, 1890, p. 318) has employed hydroxylamin as a paralysing agent with success with the most varied animal forms. Either the sulphate or the hydrochlorate of the base may be used. He recommends that the hydrochlorate be taken. This, as found in commerce, is usually contaminated with HCl. It should be dissolved in water (spring or sea water, according to the habitat of the organisms—in no case distilled water), and the solution exactly neutralised by addition of carbonate of soda. A 1 per cent. solution should be made up, and further diluted for use. The organisms are placed in the diluted solution, which may be taken of a strength varying from 0·1 per cent., used for thirty minutes or less (as for Infusoria), to 0·25 per cent., used for from fifteen minutes to one hour (*Hydra*), 1 per cent., one half to two hours (*Hirudo*), or as much as ten to twenty hours (*Helix* and *Anodonta*).

It should be remembered that hydroxylamin is an extremely powerful reducing agent. Care must therefore be taken not to treat the paralysed animals with easily reducible fixing agents, such as osmic acid, chromic acid, sublimate, chlorides of gold or platinum, etc., unless it have been possible first to sufficiently wash out the hydroxylamin with water.

21. **Chloride of Magnesium.**—Tullberg (*Arch. Zool. Expér. et Gén.*, x, 1892, p. 11; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 435) has obtained some results with this salt. For Actiniæ, a 33 per cent. solution of the salt is to be very slowly added to the water containing the expanded animal, until the vessel contains 1 per cent. of the salt (thus for one litre of sea water 33 c.c. of the solution must be added). The addition must be made gradually, but it must be effected within half an hour. Thirty minutes later the animal will be found to be anæsthetised, and may be fixed.

For terrestrial and fresh-water Invertebrates rather stronger solutions should be used.

Redenbaugh (*Amer. Natural.*, xxix, 1895, p. 399; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1895, p. 385) has obtained good results by means of **Sulphate of Magnesia**, either added in crystals to the sea water containing the animals until a saturated solution is obtained, or in the shape of a saturated solution into which they are thrown (Annelids).

Gerauld (*Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool.*, Harvard, xxix, 1896, p. 123 has had good results with *Caudina arenata* by means of the crystals added in teaspoonfuls.

22. **Poisoning** by small doses of some fixing agent is sometimes a good method. Salvatore lo Bianco employs the following method for preserving *Ascidia* and *Rhopalæa* in an extended state (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ix, 1890, p. 471). A little 1 per cent. chromic acid is poured on to the surface of the water containing the animals, and allowed to slowly

diffuse into it. About twelve to twenty-four hours is necessary. He kills *Ciona* in a similar way with a mixture of one part of 1 per cent. chromic acid and nine parts of 49 per cent. acetic acid.

Osmic acid, or Kleinenberg's solution, is sometimes employed in the same way.

I have seen Medusæ killed in a satisfactory manner by means of crystals of corrosive sublimate added to the water containing them.

Morphia, Curare, Strychnin, Prussic Acid, and other paralysing drugs have also been employed.

23. Asphyxiation may be sometimes successfully practised. Terrestrial Gastropods may be killed for dissection by putting them into a jar quite full of water that has been deprived of its air by boiling, and hermetically closed. After from twelve to twenty-four hours the animals are generally found dead and extended. The effect is obtained somewhat quicker if a little tobacco be added to the water.

Good results are sometimes obtained with aquatic animals by simply leaving them to exhaust the oxygen of the water in which they are contained. I have sometimes succeeded with Holothuriæ and other Echinoderms in this way. WARD (see *Amer. Nat.*, xxv, 1891, p. 398) has succeeded with Hydroids, Actiniæ, and similar forms, and UEXKÜLL (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1896, p. 463) with Echinids. If the animals be found to be imperfectly expanded when narcosis has set in, they may be got to expand by putting them back for a short time into pure sea water; and as soon as they are expanded should be quickly thrown into some rapidly killing reagent.

Marine Animals are sometimes successfully killed by simply putting them into fresh water.

Warm Water will sometimes serve to immobilise and even kill both marine and fresh-water organisms.

24. Carbonic Acid Gas has been recommended (by FOL, *Zool. Anz.*, 128, 1885, p. 698). The water containing the animals should be saturated with the gas. The method is stated to succeed with most Cœlenterata and Echinodermata, but not with Molluscs or Fishes. I have had most excellent results with small Annelids and Hirudinea. It is not necessary to employ a generator for obtaining the gas. It suffices to take an ordinary "soda-water" siphon, and squirt its contents into the water containing the animals.

Narcotisation is very rapidly obtained with very small animals, but much more slowly with larger ones. For instance, *Stylaria proboscidea,* I find, is paralysed in a few *seconds ;* a small *Nephelis,* of 15 or 20 millimetres in length, will require about five *minutes ;* and a large Nephelis, of from 10 to 15 centimetres, will require as many *hours.* Narcotised animals recover very quickly on being put back into pure water.

Uexküll (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* xii, 1896, p. 463) has paralysed Echinids very rapidly with carbonic acid, likewise a small Teleostean fish; whilst *Scyllium* and Crustaceans were affected much more slowly, and mussels not at all.

25. Peroxide of Hydrogen.—Volk (*Zool. Anz.,* Bd. xix, 1896, p. 294) kills Rotatoria by means of one or two drops of a 3 per cent. solution added to 1 c.c. of the water containing them. If the right dose has been hit off they die extended, and are then brought first into pure water and then into some fixing liquid.

MARINE BIOLOGICAL LABORATORY
LIBRARY

CHAPTER III.

FIXING AND HARDENING.

26. The Functions of Fixing Agents.—The meaning of the term "fixing" has been explained above (§ 2). It remains here to insist on the absolute necessity of the employment of fixing agents, and to briefly illustrate this necessity. If a portion of living retina be placed in aqueous humour, serum, or other so-called "indifferent" medium, or in any of the media used for permanent preservation, it will be found that the rods and cones will not preserve the appearance they have during life for more than a very short time; after a few minutes a series of changes begins to take place, by which the outer segments of both rods and cones become split into discs, and finally disintegrate so as to be altogether unrecognisable, even if not totally destroyed. Further, in an equally short time the nerve-fibres become varicose, and appear to be thickly studded with spindle-shaped knots; and other post-mortem changes rapidly occur. If, however, a fresh piece of retina be treated with a strong solution of osmic acid, the whole of the rods and cones will be found perfectly preserved after twenty-four hours' time, and the nerve-fibres will be found not to be varicose. After this preliminary hardening, portions of the retina may be treated with water (which would be ruinous to the structures of a fresh retina), they may even remain in water for days without harm; they may be stained, acidified, hardened, imbedded, cut into sections, and mounted in either aqueous or resinous media without suffering.

This example shows that one of the objects aimed at in fixing is to impart to tissues the degree of *hardening* necessary to enable them to offer such mechanical resistance to *post-mortem* change and to the processes of after-treatment as not to suffer change of form. Another important function of fixing is to *render insoluble* elements of cells and tissues that would otherwise be more or less dissolved out by the liquids employed during the after-treatment. Compare in this respect the aspect of sections of a piece of testis that has been well fixed in liquid of Flemming and cut in paraffin, with the aspect of paraffin sections of a piece of the same testis that has not been fixed, or that has only been fixed by some reagent inadequate for the purpose, such as alcohol or picric acid. In the one case, plump, full, unshrunken cells, free from vacuoles, full of structure; in the other, lean, empty, shrunken cells, with foamy and vacuolated protoplasm, half their original structure lost, and that which remains distorted! Their appearance, compared with that of living or well-preserved cells, suggests at once that much must have been dissolved out of them.

A third and highly important function of fixing agents consists in producing *optical differentiation* in structures. By coagulating the elements of tissues and cells, fixing agents *alter their indices of refraction,* raising them in varying degrees. They do not act in an equal degree on all the constituent elements of cells and tissues, but raise the index of some more than that of others, thus producing optical differentiation where there was little or none before. Compare the aspect of the epithelium of the tail of a living tadpole, observed in water, with its aspect after the action of a little diluted solution of Flemming. In the living state the protoplasm of its cells has a refractive index little superior to that of water, and consequently so low an index of visibility that hardly any structure can be made out in the object. But as soon as the protoplasm has been sufficiently coagulated by the reagent the refractive indices of some of its elements will have been raised to above that of balsam, the chromatin of the nuclei will be brought out, and other structure be revealed where none was visible before.

The notion of fixing is distinct from that of *hardening.* All fixing presupposes a certain degree of hardening, as explained above. But it does not include the degree of hardening necessary to give to soft tissues a consistency which will allow them to be cut into thin sections without imbedding. *This* is hardening proper (see § 31). Of course, if the stage of fixing be prolonged, with a view to procuring enhanced optical differentiation, hardening will be superinduced, and the one stage will run into the other.

27. The Action of Fixing Agents consists in coagulating and rendering insoluble certain of the constituents of tissues. This is effected sometimes without any chemical action being involved, as when alcohol is employed, which acts by simple withdrawal of the water of the tissues. But in the majority of cases the fixing agents enter into chemical combination with certain of the elements of the tissues. The compounds thus formed are sometimes unstable and soluble, so that they are removable by washing, as is the case with several of those formed by picric acid. It is found in practice, however, that those formed by chromic acid and its salts, and the salts of the heavy metals, as mercury, iron, platinum, gold, and silver, are mostly insoluble ; but unfortunately we have no exact chemical knowledge of them.

The insolubility of these bodies is an advantage from the point of view explained in the last section, in that it ensures that the tissues shall not be robbed of their essential constituents, nor deprived of their desired consistency and optical differentiation, by the reagents subsequently employed. It is also sometimes an advantage in that certain of the compounds in question have the property of combining with certain colouring matters, and thus affording important stains which could not otherwise be obtained ; or in other words, of acting as mordants.

But it is sometimes a disadvantage, inasmuch as these same compounds which render possible the production of some stains are hindrances to the production of others. Tissues that have been fixed with osmic or chromic acid or its salts are in general not easily to be stained with carmine or similar colouring matters, unless the metals have been previously removed by special chemical treatment (see § 40, and BLEACHING) ; though they may generally be stained with hæmalum, or, after sectioning, with iron hæmatoxylin or tar colours.

27a. Fixation Images and Precipitates.—According to FISCHER (*Fixirung, Färbung, und Bau des Protoplasmas*, Jena, G. Fischer, 1899, pp. x, 362) the coagulation which constitutes fixation is, in the case of the liquid and semi-liquid constituents of tissues, *always* a phenomenon of *precipitation.* The more solid constituents (such as fibrils that are visible during life, nucleoli, and the like) he admits may be acted on by fixing reagents without the formation of any visible precipitates. But all the liquid ones, in so far as they are fixed at all, are visibly precipitated in special precipitation forms, which vary according to the precipitant. Each fixing agent gives its own characteristic fixation image, which may be more or less lifelike, but can never be absolutely so. Fischer gives copious descriptions of the precipitation forms of the chief organic compounds found in tissues, and of the precipitation powers of the chief fixing agents, which the reader will do well to study.

It seems to be a consequence of Fischer's theory of fixation by precipitation that the most energetic fixing agents should always be found amongst the most energetic precipitants. But on the showing of his experiments this is not so. For instance, it is allowed on all hands that osmic acid is a most energetic fixative. But Fischer finds (*op. cit.*, pp. 12—14, 27) that it is a very incomplete and weak precipitant. Or, to take a contrary instance, he finds that picric acid is an energetic precipitant of the majority of cell constituents; but surely every cytologist must admit that it is a very incomplete fixative.

It would seem to follow, from these instances and from other similar ones, that Fischer's tables of precipitating power cannot be taken as a measure of the fixing power of the reagents. And further, the study of the fixation images of tissues afforded by osmic acid, formaldehyde, and other reagents, seems to show that the coagulation brought about by them is in part accompanied by the formation of precipitates, but in part not so, and that they may do their work to a larger extent than he seems to admit through a *homogeneous coagulation.* But from his very suggestive observations and reasonings it certainly appears that the formation of visible precipitates is a very wide-spread, if not universal concomitant of fixation; and that the wider the precipitating power of a fixative (*i.e.* the greater the number of organic liquids that it can precipitate), the greater will be the *number of artefacts* to which it can give rise. His work is deserving of most careful study.

28. The Characters of the Usual Fixing Agents.—No single substance or chemical compound fulfils all that is required of a good fixing agent ; hence it is that without exception all the best fixing agents are *mixtures*. A good fixing agent should first of all *preserve* all the elements it is desired to fix. But that is not enough ; it should also give good optical *differentiation*, and should have sufficient power of *penetration* to ensure that small pieces of tissue be equally fixed by it throughout. Osmic acid, which is one of the finest fixatives known, fulfils some of these conditions, but not all of them. It kills rapidly, and preserves admirably the elements of cytoplasm, but nuclei not so well. But the optical differentiation that it gives, though sometimes good, is often very inferior. For osmic acid, by coagulating in nearly equal degrees alike spongioplasm (the plastin reticulum) and hyaloplasm (the enchylema) and the chromatin of nuclei, raises alike the refractive indices of all of them ; so that if the fixing action have been in the least degree overdone, the cells acquire a homogeneous aspect in which the finer details are obscured by the general refractivity of the whole. If now, instead of using it pure, it be used in combination with acetic acid, a better differentiation is obtained ; for acetic acid is properly a fixative only for a limited time, whilst, if its operation be prolonged, it exercises a swelling and solvent action on the elements of protoplasm. It therefore, whilst enhancing, or at all events not interfering with the fixation of the chromatin, serves to facilitate penetration and to counteract the excessive action of the osmic acid on the protoplasm, so that the cells come out less homogeneous and with more detail observable in them. A still better effect is obtained if to the osmic acid there be added not only acetic acid, but also chromic acid. For osmic acid has the property of blackening tissues, thus rendering them opaque. Chromic acid counteracts in a considerable degree this blackening action. It also helps, probably, to bring out the chromatin of nuclei, which is insufficiently fixed by the other two ingredients, and perhaps also to counteract the excessive coagulation of hyaloplasm by the osmic acid ; so that in the result a much clearer picture is obtained.

Such a mixture gives admirable results so far as preservation and differentiation are concerned. But as regards *penetration* it gives only very bad results. Osmic acid is hopelessly deficient in power of penetration, and no admixture with other substances has been successful in curing this defect. So that whenever a fair degree of penetration is required, some other reagent must be resorted to. Picric acid is one of the most penetrating fixatives known, but its hardening power is very slight, so that in order to produce the best results it ought to be combined with some more energetically hardening reagent. Corrosive sublimate is very penetrating and hardens very energetically, but in no form in which I have tried it does it give the fine optical differentiations that are obtained by means of the osmic mixtures. Bichromate of potash is an admirable preservative of protoplasm, but is not very penetrating, and does not properly preserve the chromatin of nuclei, causing it to swell. This defect may be overcome by combining it with sufficient acetic acid ; but the defect of want of penetration will still remain.

I take it that it has been established by experience that, as a general rule, in order to get the best results, all fixatives should have an *acid reaction*. Consequently, if their chief ingredients have not naturally an acid reaction, they should be acidified, *e. g.* osmic acid should be acidified with acetic acid or the like. As a matter of fact, it will be found that acetic acid is very largely employed in mixtures. It is generally held that it acts in them as an agent for facilitating penetration and producing differentiation, as explained above, and also for ensuring the fixation of nuclein (if the other ingredients are not adequate thereto,—as, for example, in the case of bichromate of potash) ; but this is probably not all. FISCHER (in the work quoted § 27*a*, pp. 10, 27, and other places) holds that its function in these mixtures is chiefly that of a *neutraliser* or *acidifier* (Ansäurer) for ensuring that the other ingredients shall have an acid, or at least a neutral medium to do their work in. For the precipitating power, that is in his view the fixing power of a reagent, varies according to the reaction, acid or alkaline, of the things to be fixed ; and a weakly acid reaction is the one most favourable for ensuring precipitation. Many things that are quite unprecipitable by certain reagents whilst in alkaline or neutral solution are immediately precipitated by them if the solution is rendered acid. "Many kinds of cell contents," he says (*op. cit.*, p. 10) "indeed the majority, have an alkaline reaction, and are thereby quite inaccessible to the precipitating action of certain agents, such as osmic acid, or bichromate; and the action of certain other fixatives, such as platinum chloride and chromic acid, is more or less hindered by the presence of free alkalies. For neither the chromic acid (of solution of Flemming) nor the platinum chloride (of solution of Hermann) would be adequate to act as acidifiers to the osmic acid of the mixtures. They cannot do so, firstly, because they themselves become combined with the tissues much more quickly than the slowly working osmic acid, and secondly, because they themselves have only an extremely weak acid reaction." Hence the function of the organic acid is to bring into play the precipitating power of the other ingredients.

Not only is it true that the most complete fixations can only be obtained by means of mixtures, but it is also true that no one mixture can serve all ends. It is probably misleading to recommend this or that reagent as "the best for general purposes," or the like. The following suggestions, however, may be helpful to the beginner.

In Part II will be found mentioned the fixatives that appear the most appropriate for different purposes (embryological, cytological, etc.), and for the different tissues and organs, etc.

Speaking generally, I think the beginner should avoid such things as liquid of FLEMMING and similar mixtures. He may take, instead, liquid of TELLYESNICZKY. This gives a fair fixation and is easy to manage, but it is wanting in penetration.

Corrosive sublimate is a good all-round fixative, with excellent penetration, but is not quite so easy to manage.

Picric acid gives a fair though weak fixation, with very good penetration, is easy to manage, and does not make tissues brittle, which sublimate easily may do.

To ensure the best results, *all fixatives should be acid*, for the reasons explained above. They may conveniently be made to contain from one to five per cent. of acetic acid.

The student may consult with advantage, besides the work of FISCHER quoted § 27*a*, the paper of TELLYESNICZKY, *Arch.*

f. mik. Anat., lii, 2, 1898, "Ueber die Fixirungs- (Härtungs-) Flüssigkeiten," and that of WASIELEWSKI, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 3, 1899, "Ueber Fixirungsflüssigkeiten in der botanischen Mikrotechnik." The results of these authors are in the main in agreement with my own, but not entirely. The points of difference are probably to a great extent to be explained by the fact of these observers having each of them confined his attention to a single category of cells. Now it is by no means true that that which fixes one sort of cells well or ill will also fix the majority of others in a similar way.

29. The Practice of Fixation.—Hints and Cautions.—See that the structures are *perfectly living* at the instant of fixation, otherwise you will only fix pathological states or post-mortem states.

Do all you can to facilitate the *rapid penetration* of the fixing agent. To this end let the structures be divided into the smallest portions that can conveniently be employed, and if entire organs or organisms are to be fixed whole, let openings, as large as possible, be first made in them.

The penetration of reagents is greatly facilitated by *heat*. You may warm the reagent and put it with the object to be fixed in the paraffin stove, or you may even employ a fixing agent heated to boiling-point (as boiling sublimate solution for certain corals and Hydroids, or boiling absolute alcohol for certain Arthropods with very resistent integuments). But this should only be done as a last resource.

Let the *quantity* of fixing agent employed be at least *many times* the volume of the objects to be fixed. If this precaution be not observed the composition of the fixing liquid may be seriously altered by admixture of the liquids or of the soluble substances of the tissues thrown into it. For a weak and slowly acting fixing agent, such as picric acid, the quantity of liquid employed should be in volume about one hundred times that of the object to be fixed. Reagents that act very energetically, such as Flemming's solution, may be employed in smaller proportions.

BRAUS and DRUENER (*Jena. Zeit. Naturw.*, Bd. xxix, 1895, p. 435) fix fishes *by injection* through the *bulbus aortæ*. The vessels are first washed out with normal salt solution, the fixing liquid is then thrown in, then as soon as fixation is judged to be complete water is injected; lastly, alcohol, and the fishes are thrown into alcohol. Or, if chromic liquids have been employed, the fishes are put direct into solution of Müller. See also the methods of fixation by injection of GOLGI, DE QUERVAIN, and MANN, given under *Neurological Methods.*

As regards the *time* during which fixing reagents should be allowed to act, it is well, as a general rule, not to leave specimens in them for a longer time than is sufficient to obtain the desired reaction. Sublimate, for instance, soon makes tissues brittle. But long immersion may be necessary to produce the desired optical differentiation with some reagents; and I now think that the school of Flemming, who sometimes leave tissues for many weeks in solution of Flemming, may be right in their practice, for the special objects that they have in view.

Careful *washing out* (by which is meant the removal from the tissues of the excess of uncombined fixative) is necessary in order to get tissues to stain properly. But it is not always equally imperative. Alcohol and formaldehyde do not require washing out before staining; acetic and picric acid only for some stains; sublimate will allow of staining even if not washed out, but allows of a sharper stain if well washed out; all osmic, chromic, and platinic liquids require very thorough washing out.

Be careful to use the *appropriate liquid for washing out* the fixing agent after fixation. It is frequently by no means a matter of indifference whether water or alcohol be employed for washing out. Sometimes water will undo the whole work of fixation (as with picric acid). Sometimes alcohol causes precipitates that may ruin the preparations. Instructions on this head are given where necessary.

Use *liberal quantities* of liquid for washing.

Change the liquid as often as it becomes turbid, if that should happen.

The process of washing out is often greatly facilitated by *heat.* Picric acid, for instance, is nearly twice as soluble in alcohol warmed to 40° C. as in alcohol at the normal temperature (Fol).

30. Fixation of Marine Animals.—In the case of *marine organisms* it may be stated as a general rule that their tissues are more refractory to the action of reagents than are the tissues of corresponding fresh-water or terrestrial forms, and fixing solutions should in consequence be stronger (about two to three times stronger, according to Langerhans).

Marine animals ought to be *freed from the sea water* adherent to their surface before treating them either with alcohol or any fixing reagent that precipitates the salts of sea water. If this be not done, the precipitated salts will form on the surfaces of the organisms a crust that prevents the penetration of reagents to the interior, thus allowing maceration to be set up, and hindering the penetration of staining fluids. Fixing solutions for marine organisms should therefore be such as serve to keep in a state of solution, and finally remove, the salts in question. As a general rule, they should *not be made with sea water* as a menstruum, as some workers have inconsiderately proposed. If, however, for any particular purpose, it is deemed desirable so to prepare them, care should be taken to remove the sea salts afterwards by appropriate washing, or to mount the objects in glycerin (Mayer). If alcohol be employed, it should be *acidified* with hydrochloric or some other appropriate acid. Picro-nitric acid is a fixing reagent that fulfils the conditions here spoken of. (On this subject see Paul Mayer, in *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ii (1881), p. 1, *et seq.* See also the abstract in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* (N. S.), ii (1882), pp. 866—881, and that in *Amer. Natural.*, xvi (1882), pp. 697—706.)

31. Hardening.—The process of hardening was above (§ 26) distinguished from that of fixing as being directed to the attainment of a degree of consistency sufficient to allow of soft tissues being cut into sections without imbedding. It is also distinguished from fixing in that it does not include the killing of the elements. Nerve tissue, for instance, is daily hardened after having come into the hands of the anatomist some twelve or twenty-four hours after the death of the subject, under which conditions there can of course be no question of fixing. Hardening is an after process, and only ranks as a *special* method.

Methods of imbedding have now been brought to such a degree of perfection that the thorough hardening of soft tissues that was formerly necessary in order to cut thin sections from them is, in the majority of cases, no longer necessary; by careful infiltration with paraffin or other good infiltration mass, most soft objects can be satisfactorily cut with no greater an amount of previous hardening than is furnished by the usual passing of the tissues after fixing through successive alcohols in order to prepare them for the paraffin bath. But there are some exceptions. Such are, for instance, the cases in which it is desired to cut very large sections, such as sections of the entire human brain. Such an organ as this cannot be duly infiltrated with alcohol in a few hours, and it is doubtful whether it can be duly infiltrated with paraffin or any other imbedding mass in any reasonable time. And certain organs that are either extremely delicate or inaccessible, such as retina or cochlea, will require to be specially hardened in order to give the best results. The processes employed for hardening such specimens as these will be described when treating of the organs in question.

The reagents employed for hardening are for the most part of the same nature as those employed for fixing. But it does not follow that all fixing agents can be employed for hardening. Corrosive sublimate, for instance, would be most inappropriate as a hardening agent.

[*The chapter on Hardening Agents* that has appeared in all former editions *is suppressed*, its contents having been incorporated with the chapters on Fixing Agents and on Neurological Methods.]

32. The Practice of Hardening—Hints and Cautions.—Employ *in general* a *relatively large volume* of hardening liquid, and change it very frequently. The exact proportions may be made out by experiment for each reagent and each class of objects. If the volume of liquid be insufficient its composition will soon become seriously altered by the diffusion into it of the soluble substances of the tissues; and the result may be a macerating instead of a hardening liquid. Further, as soon as, in consequence of this diffusion, the liquid has acquired a composition similar in respect of the proportions of colloids and crystalloids contained in it to that of the liquids of the tissues, osmotic equilibrium will become established, and diffusion will cease; that is to say, the hardening liquid will cease to penetrate. This means, of course, maceration of internal parts. On the other hand, it appears that a certain slight proportion of colloids in the hardening liquid is favourable to the desired reaction, as it gives a better consistency to the tissues by preventing them from becoming brittle. Hence the utility of employing *a certain proportion* of hardening agent.

Hardening had better be done in tall cylindrical vessels, the objects being suspended by a thread, or muslin bag, or otherwise, at the top of the liquid. This has the advantage of allowing diffusion to take place as freely as possible, whilst any precipitates that may form fall harmlessly to the bottom.

In general *begin* hardening with a *weak reagent*, increasing the strength gradually, as fast as the tissues acquire a consistence that enables them to support a more energetic action of the reagent.

Let the objects be removed from the hardening fluid a soon as they have acquired the desired consistency.

MARINE BIOLOGICAL LABORATORY
WOODS HOLL
LIBRARY

CHAPTER IV.

FIXING AND HARDENING AGENTS—MINERAL ACIDS AND THEIR SALTS.

33. Osmic Acid.—The tetroxide of osmium (OsO_4) is the substance commonly known as osmic acid, though it does not possess acid properties. It is a substance that it is exceedingly difficult to keep in use for any length of time. It is extremely volatile, and in the form of an aqueous solution becomes partially reduced with great readiness in presence of the slightest contaminating particle of organic matter. It is generally believed that the aqueous solutions are reduced by light alone, but this is not the case: they may be exposed to the light with impunity if dust be absolutely denied access to them. It would even seem that the solutions are improved for some purposes by exposure to sunlight (*vide infra*, §336, the remarks on solutions of metallic salts). (Some observations communicated to me by Dr. Lindsay Johnson go to prove that, if dust be avoided, solutions keep better in the light, with occasional "sunning," than in the dark.)

Great stress is laid by authors on the fact that the vapour of osmium is very irritating to mucous tissues. It is said that the slightest exposure to it is sufficient to give rise to serious catarrh, irritation of the bronchial tubes, laryngeal catarrh, conjunctivitis, etc. I have never myself suffered in this way, but there is no doubt that many persons do, and such susceptible subjects should be very careful in handling osmium in any form.

34. How to keep the Solutions.—After having carefully tried several of the plans that have been recommended for keeping the working solutions free from dust, I have come to the conclusion that the following is the most practical plan for preventing them from "going bad:"—The solution of osmic acid in chromic acid solution is not, like the solution in pure water, easily reducible, but may be kept without any special precautions. I therefore keep the bulk of my osmium in the shape of a 2 per cent. solution of osmic acid in 1 per cent. aqueous chromic acid solution. This solution serves for fixation by osmium vapours, and for making up solution of Flemming, which is the form in which osmium is most generally employed. A small quantity of osmic acid may also be made up in 1 per cent. solution in distilled water, and kept carefully protected from dust for use in special cases. Those who have to do a great deal of fixing by means of the vapours may also keep a supply of the solid oxide for this purpose.

Grübler and Hollborn now send out osmic acid in tubes containing *one tenth* of a gramme.

Cori (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1890, p. 442) finds that solutions in distilled water keep perfectly if there be added to them enough permanganate of potassium to give a very slight rosy tint to the liquid. From time to time, as the solution becomes colourless, further small quantities of the salt should be added, so as to keep up the rosy tint.

35. Regeneration of Reduced Solutions.—Bristol (*Amer. Nat.*, xxvii, 1893, p. 175; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1893, p. 564; *Ref. Handbook Med. Sci.*, Supp., p. 442) says that reduced solutions may be regenerated by oxidising them by means of peroxide of hydrogen. The reaction is stated to be identical with that which takes place in the bleaching of osmium-blackened tissues by peroxide. It is admitted that the tetroxide of osmium, OsO_4, is reduced by contact with organic matter into the deutoxide, OsO_2. Then $OsO_2 + 2H_2O_2 = OsO_4 + 2H_2O$.

According to Bristol, for regenerating 100 c.c. of 1 per cent. solution of osmic acid (*erratim* 10 per cent. in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*), ten to twenty drops of fresh peroxide solution should be added.

Kolossow (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 40) says that half-reduced solutions, so long as they have not lost their characteristic odour, may be clarified by the addition of a little powdered potash-alum.

But this is evidently only a process of *clarification*, not of regeneration; the alum acting mechanically by carrying down the suspended matter, as isinglass does in the "fining" of beer. MAYER finds that addition of common salt will produce the same effect.

36. Fixation by the Vapours.—Osmic acid is frequently employed in the form of vapour, and its employment in this form is indicated in most of the cases in which it is possible to expose the tissues directly to the action of the vapour. The tissues are pinned out on a cork, which must fit well into a wide-mouthed bottle in which is contained a little solid osmic acid (or a small quantity of 1 per cent. solution will do). Very small objects, such as isolated cells, are simply placed on a slide, which is inverted over the mouth of the bottle. They remain there until they begin to turn brown (isolated cells will generally be found to be sufficiently fixed in thirty seconds; whilst in order to fix the deeper layers of relatively thick objects, such as retina, an exposure of several hours may be desirable). It is well to wash the objects with water before staining, but a very slight washing will suffice. For staining, methyl-green may be recommended for objects destined for study in an aqueous medium, and, for permanent preparations, alum-carmine, picro-carmine, or hæmatoxylin.

In researches on nuclei, it is possible and may be useful to employ the vapours of a freshly prepared mixture of osmic and formic or acetic acid (Gilson, *La Cellule*, i, 1885, p. 96).

The reasons for preferring the process of fixation by vapour of osmium, where practicable, are that osmic acid is more highly penetrating when employed in this shape than when employed in solution, and produces a more *equal* fixation, and that the arduous washing out required by the solutions is here done away with. In many cases delicate structures are better preserved, all possibility of deformation through osmosis being here eliminated.

37. Fixation by Solution.—Osmic acid is now very seldom used *pure* in the shape of solutions, as it has been found to give better results when combined with other ingredients, as in the mixture of FLEMMING. When, however, it is employed in pure aqueous solutions it is used in strengths varying from $\frac{1}{20}$ per cent. to 1 per cent. I should say myself that, as a rule, not more than 0·1 per cent., and never more than 0·5 per cent., should be used.

A little acetic or formic acid (0·5 to 1 per cent.) may generally with advantage be added to the solutions just before using.

If solutions made with pure water be used, they must be kept protected from the light during the immersion of tissues. This precaution is not necessary if Flemming's or Hermann's solution be used. If the immersion is to be a long one the tissues must be placed with the solution in well-closed vessels, as osmium is very volatile.

38. After-treatment.—The excess of osmic acid must be well washed out before proceeding to any further steps in preparation; water should be used for washing. Notwithstanding the greatest care in soaking, it frequently happens that some of the acid remains in the tissues, and causes them to over-blacken in time, and in any case hinders staining. To obviate this it is necessary to wash them out in ammonia-carmine or picro-carmine, or to soak them for twenty-four hours in a solution of bichromate of potash (Müller's solution or Erlicki's will do), or in 0·5 per cent. solution of chromic acid, or in Merkel's solution. The treatment with bichromate solutions has the great advantage of highly facilitating staining with carmine or hæmatoxylin. Max Schultze recommended washing, and mounting permanently in acetate of potash; but I believe the virtues attributed to this method are illusory. Fol has recommended treatment with a weak solution of carbonate of ammonia. But the best plan of all is to properly *bleach* the preparations (see "**Bleaching**"). This may be done (as recommended by Fol, Brass, and Overton) by means of *peroxide of hydrogen*, which regenerates the osmium to osmic acid. Overton (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890) finds that bleaching is completed in a few minutes in a mixture of 1 part commercial peroxide of hydrogen with 10 to 25 parts 70 per cent. alcohol. (The commercial peroxide, slightly acidulated with HCl, will keep well in the dark; but the mixture with alcohol must be made fresh for use.) Carazzi's peroxide of sodium may be found convenient for this purpose. Binet (*Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Physiol.*, xxx, 1894, p. 449) has successfully used permanganate of potash. Mönckeberg and Bethe (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, liv, 1899, p. 135; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 2, p. 244) have succeeded in satisfactorily restoring the staining susceptibility of osmium material by means of sulphurous acid (obtained by adding hydrochloric acid to bisulphide of sodium, 2 to 4 drops of the acid added to 10 c.c. of a 2 per cent. solution of the salt). But perhaps the most convenient method is the original chlorate of potash method of Mayer, for which see under "**Bleaching.**"

Fol (*Lehrb.*, p. 174) recommends a weak aqueous solution of ferricyanide of potassium. Mayer (*Grundzüge*, p. 27) notes hereon that he has had tolerable results with it, though not with the ferrocyanide, and objects that the ferricyanide only acts in aqueous solution, not in alcoholic. He objects to peroxide of hydrogen the instability of its solution, and adds that the peroxide of sodium has other disadvantages.

The same stains recommended for objects fixed by the vapours will be found useful here. For sections, of course, in both cases safranin and other anilin stains may be employed with advantage, as may hæmatoxylin.

39. Characters of the Fixation with Osmic Acid.—In general osmic acid, especially when used in the form of vapour, fixes protoplasm faithfully, nuclei badly, and there are other drawbacks over and above those before mentioned (§ 27). The *penetrating power* of the solutions is *very low*, so that if any but very small pieces of tissue be taken the outer layers become over-fixed before the action of the reagent has penetrated to the deeper layers. Over-fixed cells have a certain homogeneous, glassy, or colloid look, owing to all their constituents having been raised by coagulation to so high an index of refraction that little or no detail is visible in them. They stain very badly, or not at all. Such cells are known as "osmicated cells, *osmirte Zellen.*" There is no remedy for this state of things if once it has occurred. For this reason it is important to avoid using stronger solutions than is necessary. The danger of osmication is lessened by using the osmic acid in conjunction with certain other reagents, such as chromic acid. But it is not thereby entirely removed; Flemming's mixture, especially the strong formula, will readily osmicate superficial cells if care be not taken. For ordinary histological work osmication of superficial layers is not of much consequence. But for cytological work care should be taken not to draw conclusions as to the structure of cells from osmicated specimens, and attention should be confined to cells four or five layers deeper down, which will generally be found to present the desired intensity of fixation.

Osmic acid stains certain fatty bodies black; it should therefore be avoided for tissues in which much fat is present; or if not, the preparations should be subsequently very thoroughly bleached, or the blackened fat may be afterwards dissolved out by means of oil of turpentine. See **Fat.**

According to ALTMANN, STARKE, and HANDWERCK, only free oleic acid and olein are directly blackened by osmic acid, stearin and palmitin, and stearic and palmitic acid are only browned by it, with an after-blackening which is produced by subsequent treatment with alcohol. Neither reaction occurs with the fatty bodies in the solid state, and can only be obtained when they are either in a state of fusion or solution (from the paper of HANDWERCK in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 2, 1898, p. 177).

39a. Osmic Mixtures.—The chief osmic mixtures are those of FLEMMING and of HERMANN, for which see §§ 46, 47, and 50. The following, however, may be mentioned here.

RANVIER ET VIGNAL (RANVIER, *Leç. d'Anat. Gén.*, "App. term. des muscles de la vie org.," p. 76; VIGNAL, *Arch. de Physiol.*, 1884, p. 181) take equal volumes of 1 per cent. osmic acid and 90 per cent. alcohol (freshly mixed). They wash out in 80 per cent. alcohol, then wash with water and stain for forty-eight hours in picro-carmine or hæmatoxylin. Viallanes has applied this method to the histology of insects.

KOLOSSOW (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1, 1888, p. 51) has recommended a 0·5 per cent. solution of osmic acid in 2 or 3 per cent. solution of nitrate or acetate of uranium, as having a greatly enhanced penetrating power.

He has more lately (op. cit., ix, 1, 1892, p. 39) recommended for the same reason a mixture of 50 c.c. absolute alcohol, 50 c.c. distilled water, 2 c.c. concentrated nitric acid, and 1 to 2 grm. osmic acid. This mixture is said to keep indefinitely in a cool place.

BUSCH (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xvii, 1898, No. 10, p. 476; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 3, p. 373) holds that the penetration of osmic acid is enhanced by combining it with iodate of sodium, which by hindering its too rapid decomposition in the tissues ensures a more energetic action in the deeper layers. He adds 3 per cent. of sodium iodate to a 1 per cent. solution of osmic acid.

This mixture appears to me rational, whilst the above-mentioned mixtures with alcohol do not. Alcohol is a reducing agent, and therefore surely incompatible with so easily reducible a substance as osmic acid, which should rather be combined with oxidising agents. Now sodium iodate is a powerful oxidising agent, and so far seems quite indicated.

40. Chromic Acid.—Chromic anhydride, CrO_3, is found in commerce in the form of red crystals that dissolve readily in water, forming chromic acid, H_2CrO_4. These crystals are very deliquescent, and it is therefore well to keep the acid in stock in the shape of a 1 per cent. solution. Care must be taken not to allow the crystals to be contaminated by organic matter, in the presence of which the anhydride is readily reduced into sesquioxide.

Chromic acid is generally employed in aqueous solution. Some observers (Klein; Urban Pritchard; Perényi) have recommended alcoholic solutions; but this would appear to be an irrational practice. For in the presence of alcohol chromic acid has a great tendency to become reduced to chromous oxide or sesquioxide, neither of which appears to have any fixing power.

The most useful strengths in which it is employed in aqueous solution are from 0·1 to 1·0 per cent. for a period of immersion of a few hours (structure of cells and ova). For nerve tissues weaker solutions are taken, $\frac{1}{50}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ per cent. for a few hours. Stronger solutions, such as 5 per cent., should only be allowed to act for a few seconds.

The objects should be washed out with water before passing into alcohol or staining fluids. *Long* washing in water is necessary to prepare them for staining, except an anilin stain be used. It is possible to wash out in alcohol, and this may be useful in special cases, but in general I think the practice is not to be recommended. It is well to wash for many hours in *running* water.

Mayer notes hereon (*Grundzüge*) that the operation of washing may be done away with in the following manner:—The fixed material is merely rinsed in water and brought direct into 70 per cent. alcohol. It is washed therein, preferably in the dark (see § 41), until after several changes the alcohol remains colourless. It is then either passed through higher alcohols and imbedded in paraffin, the chromous oxide (or whatever chrome compound it may be that is present in the tissues) being removed from *the sections* after these are made; or this necessary removal is performed at once. If this be preferred, the material is brought into sulphuric acid diluted with twenty volumes of water, or into nitric acid diluted with ten volumes of water. After at most a few hours therein, it will have become of a light greyish green, and on removal of the acid may be readily stained. If it be preferred to treat *the sections*, it is sufficient to put them into the usual hydrochloric acid alcohol (four to six drops of HCl to 100 c.c. of 70 per cent. alcohol), in which after a short time they become almost white, and will stain excellently with any of the usual stains. Unna (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxx, 1887, p. 47, see *Journ. R. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 1060) holds that the chrome is present in the tissues in the form of chromic chromate, and removes it by treatment with peroxide of hydrogen. Overton (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1890, p. 9) employs a weak solution of sulphurous acid, which converts it into a sulphate. See also the directions for bleaching osmic acid preparations, § 38.

Tissues that have been fixed in chromic acid are usually stained in aqueous solutions, as it is held that water does not have an injurious effect on them; the acid entering into some chemical combination with the elements of the tissues, forming with them a compound that is not affected either physically or chemically by water. But there is reason to doubt whether the hereby alleged insolubility of the elements is as thoroughgoing as is generally believed; see, for instance, the paper of Tellyesniczky, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, lii, 1898, p. 221.

The best stain for chromic material that has not been treated by Mayer's special process, or by a similar one, is hæmatoxylin, or, for sections, some anilin stain. But the previous washing out with water must be very thorough if good results are to be insured; it may take days.

Chromic acid is not a very penetrating reagent, and for this reason, as well as for others, is now seldom used pure for fixing, but plays an important part in the mixtures described below, of which the chief is certainly the mixture of Flemming.

For prolonged hardening chromic acid is generally employed in strengths of $\frac{1}{5}$ per cent. to $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent., the immersion lasting a few days or a few weeks, according to the size and nature of the object. Mucous membrane, for instance, will harden satisfactorily in a few days; brain will require some six weeks.

Large quantities of the solution must be taken (at least 200 grammes for a piece of tissue of 1 centimetre cube—Ranvier).

In order to obtain the best results you should not employ portions of tissue of more than an inch cube. For a human spinal cord you should take two litres of solution, and change it for fresh after a few days. Six weeks or two months are necessary to complete the hardening.

The solution should be taken weak at first, and the strength increased after a time. The objects should be removed from the solution as soon as they have acquired the desired consistency, as if left too long they will become brittle. (These precautions are peculiarly necessary in the case of chromic acid.) They may be preserved till wanted in alcohol (95 per cent.). It is well to wash them out in water for twenty-four or forty-eight hours before putting them into the alcohol. I think it is frequently useful to add a little glycerin to the hardening solution ; there is less brittleness and, I think, less shrinkage.

Chromic acid is a most powerful and rapid hardening agent. (By it you may obtain in a few days a degree of hardening that you would hardly obtain in as many weeks with bichromate, for instance.) It has the defect of a great tendency to cause brittleness.

41. *Action of light on alcohol containing chromic objects.*—When objects that have been treated by chromic acid or a chromate are put into alcohol for hardening or preservation, it is found that after a short time a fine precipitate is thrown down on the surface of the preparations, thus forming a certain obstacle to the further penetration of the alcohol. Previous washing by water does not prevent the formation of this precipitate, and changing the alcohol does not prevent it from forming again and again. It has been found by Hans Virchow (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, Bd. xxiv, 1885, p. 117) that the formation of this precipitate may be entirely prevented by simply keeping the preparations in the dark. The alcohol becomes yellow as usual (and should be changed as often as this takes place), but no precipitate is formed. If this precaution be taken, previous washing with water may be omitted, or at all events greatly abridged.

42. Chromic Acid and Spirit (URBAN PRITCHARD, *Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, 1873, p. 427).—Chromic acid, 1 part ; water, 20 parts ; rectified spirit, 180 parts. Dissolve the chromic acid in the water first, and then add the spirit (violent action will ensue if the dry chromic acid be added directly to the spirit). The colour of the solution soon becomes brown. If after a few days it turns semi-gelatinous, it should be changed for fresh. From a week to ten days is required to harden such tissues as retina, cochlea, etc., for which this fluid used to be considered particularly well adapted.

A mixture of 2 parts of $\frac{1}{6}$ per cent. chromic acid solution with one part of methylated spirit was much used by KLEIN in his investigations into the structure of cells and nuclei, and found to give better results than the ordinary reagents (including even osmic acid).

Both these mixtures are seemingly irrational (see § 40). MAYER (*Grund-*

züge) remarks on Pritchard's formula—"An altogether silly receipt; after a short time the mixture has lost its acid reaction, and then only the alcohol can act." See also the remarks on the mixture of Perényi, § 52.

43. Chromo-acetic Acid (Flemming, *Zellsbz., Kern u. Zellth.*, p. 382).

Chromic acid . 0·2 to 0·25 per cent.
Acetic acid . . 0·1 per cent., in water.

Flemming found this the best reagent for the study of the *achromatic* elements of karyokinesis. (Flemming wrote this in 1882, and I doubt whether it would now hold good.) Stain with hæmatoxylin (the preparations are *not* favourable for staining with safranin or other coal-tar colours).

The following has been recommended as a good fixing and hardening mixture for Annelids in general, and probably for other forms, by Ehlers (I do not know whether it has been published elsewhere):—To 100 c.c. of chromic acid of 0·5 to 1 per cent. add from 1 to 5 drops of glacial acetic acid. The proportion of acetic acid indicated is said to be sufficient to counteract any tendency to shrinkage due to the chromic acid.

Similar to this is the "chromo-acetic acid, No. 1," of Lo Bianco (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ix, 1890, p. 443), viz. 1 part 50 per cent. acetic acid and 20 parts 1 per cent. chromic acid, which is found very useful for fixing marine animals.

44. Chromo-formic Acid (Rabl, *Morph. Jahrb.*, x, 1884, pp. 215, 216).—Four or five drops of concentrated formic acid are added to 200 c.c. of 0·33 per cent. chromic acid solution. The mixture must be freshly prepared at the instant of using. Fix for twelve to twenty-four hours, wash out with water. Used by Rabl for the study of karyokinesis.

45. Chromo-osmic Acid (Max Flesch, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xvi, 1879, p. 300).—This mixture (osmic acid 0·10, chromic acid 0·25, water 100·0) may for almost all purposes be considered to be superseded by that of Flemming, § 46.

Lo Bianco (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ix, 1890, p. 443) employs for marine animals a mixture of 1 part 1 per cent. osmic acid and 50 parts 1 per cent. chromic acid.

46. Chromo-aceto-osmic Acid (Flemming, *Zellsubstanz, Kern und Zelltheilung*, 1882, p. 381), first or weak formula:

Chromic acid	0·25 per cent.	In water.
Osmic acid	0·1 per cent.	
Glacial acetic acid	0·1 per cent.	

This liquid may, without inconvenience, be allowed to act for many hours or days, or according to some workers even weeks or months. Wash out very thoroughly in water (see also § 40). Stain with hæmatoxylin if you wish to stain *in toto* (staining in this way with other reagents is possible, but very difficult, and not to be recommended). Stain sections with safranin or other coal-tar colour, or with hæmatoxylin or Kernschwarz.

To make up this mixture with the usual stock solutions, you take—

Chromic acid of 1 per cent.	25 volumes.
Osmic acid of 1 per cent.	10 ,,
Acetic acid of 1 per cent.	10 ,,
Water	55 ,,

If you keep your osmium in 2 per cent. solution in chromic acid of 1 per cent., as I have recommended, you will have to take only 20 vols. of chromic acid, 5 of your osmium solution, and 65 of water. See also the remarks on the deterioration of these solutions by keeping, in the next section.

It is not necessary in all cases to observe the exact proportions of the ingredients in this mixture. Fol (*Lehrb. d. vergl. mik. Anat.*, 1884, p. 100) recommends the following:

1 per cent. chromic acid	25 vols.
1 per cent. osmic acid	2 ,,
2 per cent. acetic acid	5 ,,
Water	68 ,,

—that is to say, a mixture much weaker in osmium than Flemming's.

A mixture still weaker than this is osmium, viz. with 1 vol. osmic acid solution instead of 2, has been recommended by Cori (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 1, 1890, p. 441).

This mixture, though less in vogue now than the following or strong mixture, is one of the most celebrated of fixatives. I think justly so, for, with the possible exception of Hermann's mixture, no known fixative seems to me to afford such fine images of cellular structures as Flemming's two fluids. That is to say, that the fixation is pre-eminent both as regards the *preservation* of the structures and as regards their *optical differentiation*. But this is meant with the reservation that the reagent must be properly used, and not applied to objects for which it is not fitted. For instance, its *power of penetration* is *extremely bad;* it will not fix properly, even in a loose-celled tissue, through more than a layer of about five cells thick. It is therefore suitable only for very small objects or for very small pieces of tissue, such as suffice for cytological or histological work. But it is not suitable at all for voluminous objects, such as the organological anatomist and the embryologist so frequently have to do with. It has not the character of a *general* reagent.

In previous editions I have quoted some authors who have accused this reagent of faulty preservation. It must be admitted that it has the defect of easily causing over-fixation of superficial cells, and, owing to its defective penetration, insufficient fixation of deep-lying ones. It requires to be used in the proper manner, and, above all, with the proper objects; and it is by no means of such universal applicability as has been supposed.

It may be used for prolonged hardening, *e. g.* of nervous tissue, and is a very good reagent for the purpose.

47. Chromo-aceto-osmic Acid (FLEMMING, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1, 1884, p. 349), SECOND or STRONG formula:

1 per cent. chromic acid . .	15 parts.
2 per cent. osmic acid . .	4 ,,
Glacial acetic acid . . .	1 part.

If 2 per cent. osmic acid solution should not be at hand, you may conveniently make the mixture by taking—

10 per cent. chromic acid	15 parts.
1 per cent. osmic acid	80 ,,
Glacial acetic acid	10 ,,
Water	95 ,,

If this mixture be kept in stock in large quantities, it may go bad, probably on account of the large proportion of organic acid contained in it. I therefore recommend that it be made up from time to time from stock solutions, in which the osmic acid is kept separate from the acetic acid; the proportions being as follows:

CrO_3	0·15
OsO_4	0·08
Acid. acet.	1·00
Aq.	19·00

You may make up and keep separately—

(A)	1 per cent. chromic acid	11 parts,
	Distilled water	4 ,,
	Glacial acetic acid	1 part,

and (B) a 2 per cent. solution of osmic acid in 1 per cent. chromic acid solution, and when required, mix four parts of A with one of B; or, of course, if you prefer it, you may keep the osmic and chromic acid ready mixed in the proportions given, and add 5 per cent. of acetic acid at the moment of using.

According to Flemming, it is better not to make up very large quantities of the mixture at once, as osmium being very volatile it will be found that solutions that have been long in use no longer contain the proper proportion of that ingredient, and the hardening action being thus weakened the swelling action of the acetic acid may be insufficiently controlled.

Merk (*Denksch. d. Math. Naturw. Cl. d. K. Acad. d. Wiss. Wien*, 1887; cf. *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 2, 1888, p. 237) proposes to make up separately (A)

2 per cent. chromic acid	7·5 parts,
Water	3·5 ,,
Acetic acid	1 part,

and (B), some 1 per cent. osmic acid solution, and to mix for use 12 parts of A with 8 of B. But this plan leaves you in the old difficulty of keeping your osmium in aqueous solution.

It does not appear necessary to observe the exact proportions of the ingredients of these mixtures, a certain latitude is allowable. Thus Carnoy (*La Cellule*, i. 2, 1885, p. 211) has employed a mixture one third stronger in osmic acid and twice as strong in chromic acid, viz.—

Chromic acid of 2 per cent. (or even stronger)	45 parts.
Osmic acid of 2 per cent.	16 ,,
Glacial acetic acid	3 ,,

Podwyssozki recommends (for glands especially) the following modification:

1 per cent. CrO_3 dissolved in 0·5 per cent. solution of corrosive sublimate	15 c.c.
2 per cent. osmic acid solution	4 c.c.
Glacial acetic acid	6 to 8 drops.

The sublimate is said to augment the penetration of the osmium, but is unfavourable to staining. The proportion of acetic acid is reduced in order to avoid swelling of the tissue elements (Ziegler's *Beiträge z. path. Anat.*, i, 1886; cf. *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 3, 1886, p. 405).

The characters of the fixation are, in the main, those of the weak formula, but the action is more energetic, the tissues are more difficult to stain, but afford, when obtained, a more delicate and selective stain, especially showing up karyokinetic figures and nucleoli.

The strong formula was recommended by FLEMMING in the first instance merely for a very special purpose, the hunting for karyokinetic figures, and not for general purposes. Further experience has shown that it is applicable to other cytological purposes, and is in many cases considerably superior to the weak formula. But it is not suited to all objects, and FLEMMING has himself pointed out that some workers have used it for purposes for which it is not fitted. It is indeed, I think, even less of a *general* reagent than the weak formula, though unsurpassed in its own peculiar sphere.

The strong mixture does not brown tissues more than the weak mixture, but rather less.

Fat is blackened by both these mixtures. See § 39.

48. Osmic Acid and Bichromate.—ALTMANN (*Die Elementarorganismen*, Leipzig, 1890; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 199) recommends a mixture of equal parts of 5 per cent. solution of bichromate of potash and 2 per cent. solution of osmic acid for the demonstration of his granula. The bichromate, he says, ought not to contain any free chromic acid, and the mixture is best prepared freshly when required.

LO BIANCO (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ix, 1890, p. 443) employs for marine animals a mixture of 100 c.c. of 5 per cent. solution of bichromate and 2 c.c. of 1 per cent. osmic acid.

Evidently, I think, the addition of acetic acid to either of these mixtures is in most cases indicated. This step has, in fact, been taken by HOEHL (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., Anat. Abth.*, 1896, p. 31; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 2, 1896, p. 227), who recommends a mixture of 80 c.c. of 3 per cent. bichromate, 20 c.c. of 1 per cent. osmic acid, and 2 c.c. of glacial acetic acid.

49. Osmic, Bichromate, and Platinic Mixture (LINDSAY JOHNSON'S Mixture).—Latest formula, 1895, communicated by Dr. Lindsay Johnson:

Bichromate of potash (2·5 per cent.) .	70 parts.
Osmic acid (2 per cent.) . . .	10 ,,
Platinic chloride (1 per cent.) . .	15 ,,
Acetic or formic acid . . .	5 ,,

It is not well to take the platinum chloride stronger than here given, as too strong solutions have a tendency to crystallise out on the tissues. HENNEGUY, who has worked a great deal with this reagent, and recommends it highly, says (*Leçons sur la Cellule,* Paris, Carré, 1896, p. 61) that it is well only to add the acetic or formic acid just before using, as it frequently provokes a spontaneous reduction of the osmium and platinum to such an extent that the mixture becomes quite black.

This mixture was imagined for the preliminary hardening of retina, being allowed to act for two hours only, and then being followed by final hardening in pure bichromate solution. But it has proved applicable to other structures, and gives excellent results. The function of the osmic acid in the present formula is to enhance the hardening energy of the mixture. Dr. Lindsay Johnson writes me that "it greatly reduces the length of time necessary for hardening, three days being the time from removal of the organ to its being in celloidin under dilute spirit."

This mixture may be used for fixing, in some cases with the best results. HENNEGUY (*l. c.*) says it contracts the more spongy sorts of protoplasm less than mixture of FLEMMING. I think highly of it—for certain objects.

50. Platino-aceto-osmic Acid (HERMANN'S **solution**).—This valuable reagent is historically a modification of Flemming's solution, platinum chloride being taken instead of chromic acid. HERMANN (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.,* xxxiv, 1889, p. 58) substitutes 1 per cent. platinic chloride for the chromic acid in Flemming's *strong* formula for chromo-aceto-osmic acid (§ 47), the other ingredients either remaining as before, or the osmium being diminished one half; thus, 1 per cent. platinic chloride 15 parts, glacial acetic acid 1 part, and 2 per cent. osmic acid either 4 parts or only 2 parts. Hermann found that protoplasmic structures are thus better preserved than with the chromic mixture.

The after-treatment and staining should be the same as for objects treated with Flemming's solution.

After considerable experience of this reagent I find that it has the advantage of giving more colourless preparations, and it may be, in some cases, a more delicate fixation. But the fixation is certainly not in all cases superior. See further under "*Cytological Methods.*"

51. Nitric Acid (Altmann, *Arch. Anat. u. Phys.*, 1881, p. 219).—Altmann employs for fixing dilute nitric acid, containing from 3 to 3½ per cent. pure acid. Such a solution has a sp. gr. of about 1·02; an areometer may conveniently be used to determine the concentration of the solution. Stronger solutions have been used, but do not give such good final results. After extensive trial I find Altmann's solution to be a good reagent, but rather weak.

His (*ibid.*, 1877, p. 115) recommended a 10 per cent. solution. Flemming at one time employed solutions of 40 to 50 per cent. for the ova of Invertebrates. This of course has the advantage of a very rapid fixing action.

The action of nitric acid as a fixative has been lately investigated by Tellyesniczky (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, lii, 2, 1898, p. 222). He thinks that "for general cell-fixing" the proper strength is 2 per cent. to 2½ per cent., as stronger grades act too energetically on the superficial layers. His results, or the interpretation of them, are therefore not quite concordant with mine.

Nitric acid has the valuable property of hardening yolk without making it brittle.

Pure water should in no case be used for washing out after nitric acid; the preparations should be brought direct into alcohol, as recommended by Altmann. Some persons take absolute alcohol, but I should say 70 per cent. is more generally indicated. Rabl has employed for washing out a 1 or 2 per cent. solution of alum.

For *prolonged hardening*, strengths of from 3 to 10 per cent. are sometimes employed. A strength of 12 per cent., allowed to act for two or three weeks, is said to afford very tough preparations of the encephalon.

Benda (*Verh. Anat. Ges.*, 1888; *Ergeb. d. Anat.*, i, 1891, p. 7) fixes for twenty-four to forty-eight hours in 10 per cent. nitric acid, and then brings the preparations direct into a cold saturated solution of bichromate of potash diluted with three vols. of water. After a few hours this solution is changed for a stronger one, and the strength is gradually increased in such a manner as to arrive at a concentration of one vol. of the saturated solution to one of water in two or three days (or, for encephalon and spinal cord only in fourteen days). This process, which is of general applicability (except in so far as epidermis, especially that of embryos, may be loosened by the nitric acid), is said to furnish very tough preparations.

Fol's Mixture.—Three vols. of nitric acid, with 97 vols. of 70 per cent. alcohol (verbally communicated to me by Prof. Fol).

52. Chromo-nitric Acid (Perényi's formula, *Zool. Anzeig.*, v, 1882, p. 459):

4 parts 10 per cent. nitric acid.
3 parts alcohol.
3 parts 0·5 per cent. chromic acid.

These are mixed, and after a short time give a fine violet-coloured solution.

The objects are immersed for four to five hours, and then passed through 70 per cent. alcohol (twenty-four hours), strong alcohol (some days), absolute alcohol (four to five days). They are then fit for cutting. The advantage of the process is said to be, amongst others, that segmentation spheres and nuclei are perfectly fixed, the ova do not become porous, and cut like cartilage.

For a special formula for embryological purposes, see the paper quoted.

This liquid has been for a long time in great vogue not only for embryological purposes, but for general work and cytological work. But opinions are divided as to its merits. I myself have extensively used it for preparing specimens for dissection and for museum specimens, and have found it admirable for these purposes. But specimens made to test its value from a cytological point of view have given me only second-rate results.

Mayer contributes the following note on this subject to the *Grundzüge* (p. 34) :—“ Perényi's mixture does not appear to have been hitherto considered from a chemical point of view. It is, however, easy to see that as soon as the mixture has become violet, the chromic acid no longer exists in it as such, but has been changed into chromic oxide. At the expense of this oxide the alcohol becomes oxidised, and in consequence of the presence of the nitric acid becomes partially converted into nitric ether. Consequently the liquid is reduced essentially to a mixture of alcohol of at most 30 per cent. strength with about 5 per cent. of nitric acid. An analogous mixture made by omitting the chromic acid preserves, according to my experiments, in just the same way as Perényi's,—that is, just as so weak an acid alcohol can be expected to preserve, and that is rather ill than well. Objects, it is true, do not shrink in it ; indeed, they rather swell, sometimes to a marked degree. And, in fact, observers are not wanting who entirely reject it for the fixation of *ova*. See the strange results of Cholodkovsky in the embryology of *Blatta,* on which I have commented in *Zool. Jahresbericht,* 1891 (Arthropoda, p. 61), and which Wheeler and Heymons have later (*ibid.*, 1893, p. 71, and

1895, p. 61) expressly referred to the fixing liquid. In any case the end is more simply attained by taking simply *acid alcohol*, as recommended by me so long ago as 1880 (*Mitth. Z. Stat. Neapel*, ii, p. 7), which may be taken weaker or stronger according to the nature of the objects."

53. Chromic Acid and Platinic Chloride (MERKEL's *Macula lutea des Menschen*, Leipzig, 1870, p. 19).—Equal volumes of 1·400 solution of chromic acid and 1·400 solution of platinic chloride ($PtCl_4$). Objects should remain in it for several hours or even days, as it does not harden very rapidly. After washing out with alcohol of 50 per cent. to 70 per cent., objects stain excellently, notwithstanding the admixture of chromic acid. If objects that have been fixed by osmic acid be put into it for some hours, blackening is said to be effectually prevented.

This is an excellent hardening medium for delicate objects. Merkel states that he allowed from three to four days for the action of the fluid for the retina; for Annelids Eisig employs an immersion of three to five hours, and transfers to 70 per cent. alcohol; for small leeches Whitman finds one hour sufficient, and transfers to 50 per cent. alcohol.

Whitman recommends, for the hardening of pelagic fish ova, a stronger mixture (due, I believe to Eisig), viz.—

0·25 per cent. solution of platinum chloride .	1 vol.
1 per cent. solution of chromic acid . .	1 ,,

The ova to remain in it one or two days (WHITMAN, *Methods in Micro. Anat.*, p. 153).

Salts.

54. Chromates.—The chromates are amongst the oldest and best tried of hardening agents. The bichromate of potash especially was at one time universally employed for hardening all sorts of tissues, and a great amount of classical work has been done with it.

About eighteen years ago, however, bichromate fell into disrepute in consequence of a criticism on its action made by FLEMMING. FLEMMING pointed out (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xviii, 1880, p. 352) that though it preserves cytoplasm well it causes chromatin to swell, and therefore should not be employed for the study of nuclei. His readers, *plus royalistes que le roi*, took that to be a reason for abandoning it altogether, and from that time until quite recently it has lain in the cold shadow of neglect for almost all purposes except the hardening of nervous tissue. Erroneously, for, duly corrected with acetic acid, it affords a correct and fine fixation of nuclei; whilst preserving hyaloplasm and its inclusions, secretions, etc., much better than chromic acid (sometimes overmuch).

For an elaborate study of the action of chrome salts on nucleus and cytoplasm, see BURCKHARDT, *La Cellule*, xii, 2, 1897, p. 335. He finds that the bichromates of sodium, ammonium, magnesium, strontium, and zinc have the same destructive action on nuclei that the bichromate of potassium has; but that the bichromates of barium, calcium, and copper have not. The practical results of his researches may be summed up as follows: Acetic acid ought always to be added, not only to ensure the correct fixation of nuclei, but also to enhance penetration and the good preservation of cytoplasm.

The following is recommended by him as a good combination for the fixation both of cytoplasm and nucleus:

Bichromate of barium, 4 per cent. solution .	60 vols.
Bichromate of potassium, 5 per cent. solution .	30 ,,
Glacial acetic acid	5 ,,

(Instead of the barium you may take 4 per cent. solution of bichromate of calcium, or 6 per cent. solution of bichromate of copper.)

For the demonstration of the achromatic figure of cell division he recommends—

Chromic acid, 1 per cent. solution . .	60 vols.
Bichromate of potassium, 5 per cent. solution .	30 ,,
Glacial acetic acid	5 ,,

55. Bichromate of Potash.—Perhaps the most important of all known *hardening* agents, *sensu stricto*. It hardens slowly, much more so than chromic acid, but it gives an incomparably better consistency to the tissues, and it has not the same tendency to make them brittle if the reaction be prolonged. They may remain almost indefinitely exposed to its action without much hurt.

The strength of the solutions employed is from 2 to 5 per cent. As with chromic acid, it is extremely important to begin with weak solutions and proceed gradually to stronger ones. About three weeks will be necessary for hardening a sheep's eye in solutions gradually raised from 2 to 4 per cent. Spinal cord requires from three to six weeks; a brain, at least as many months.

After hardening, the objects should be well soaked out in water before being put into alcohol. They had better be kept in the dark when in alcohol (*see* above, § 41) (Böhm and Oppel [*Taschenbuch*, 3 Auf., 1896, p. 22] fix in the dark). *If you wish to have a good stain with carmine you should not put the objects into alcohol at all, even for a second, until they have been stained.*

You may stain either with carmine or hæmatoxylin.

Bichromate objects have an ugly yellow colour which cannot be removed by soaking in water. It is said that it can be removed by washing for a few minutes in a 1 per cent. solution of chloral hydrate. Gierke, however, says that this treatment is prejudicial to the preservation of the tissues.

Prof. Gilson writes me that alcoholic solution of sulphurous anhydride (SO_2) is very convenient for the rapid decoloration of bichromate objects. A few drops suffice. *See* also §§ 40 and 41, and "Bleaching."

To facilitate staining with hæmatoxylin, Wolff (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 3, 1899, p. 311) first stains in Boehmer's hæmatoxylin for twenty-four hours, and then for a few minutes in the same hæmatoxylin to which has been added 1 drop per watch-glassful of 5 per cent. solution of oxalic acid.

The simple aqueous solution of bichromate is hardly to be recommended as a *fixing* agent, because not only does it not preserve nuclei (though it preserves cytoplasm) as explained in the last section, but also because it penetrates very slowly. The first of these defects may be overcome entirely, the second to some extent by addition of acetic acid; whence the liquid of Tellyesniczky, next §.

56. Acetic Bichromate (Tellyesniczky, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, lii, 2, 1899, p. 242).—After a comparative study of all the usual fixing agents, Tellyesniczky concludes that the two best preservatives of *cytoplasm* are osmic acid and bichromate of potash; they are indeed the only agents that fix in such a manner as to ensure the subsequent insolubility of the fixed structural elements. He finds also that the addition of acetic acid to bichromate not only suffices to ensure correct fixation of nuclei (see § 55), but also is favourable as regards its action on cytoplasm. He recommends the following formula, it being understood that the proportions may be varied if desired :

Bichromate	3 grms.
Glacial acetic acid	5 c.c.
Water	100 ,,

Smaller objects to remain in the fluid for one or two days, larger ones longer. Wash well in plenty of water, and pass through alcohols of increasing strength, beginning with 15 per cent. The results may be compared with those of liquid of Zenker, with the advantage that the ulterior treatment is greatly simplified.

The mixtures of bichromate with osmic acid have been given above. §§ 48 and 49.

57. Müller's Solution.—

Bichromate of potash	2 – 2½ parts.
Sulphate of soda	1 part.
Water	100 parts.

The duration of the reaction is about the same as with the simple solution of chromic salt.

This fluid was very highly in vogue for many years, but seems lately to be much less used. Recent authors find its action to be identical with that of plain bichromate, and doubt whether the sulphate in it has any effect whatever as regards its hardening properties. I fancy, however, that the superiority of this mixture over the simple bichromate solution is not illusory, and is due to the formation in it of a trace of free chromic acid. Fol says that for mammalian embryos, for which it has been recommended, it is worthless.

58. Erlicki's Solution (*Warschauer med. Zeit.*, xxii, Nos. 15 and 18 (*Progrès Médical*, 1897, No. 39).—

Bichromate of potash . . .	2·5 parts.
Sulphate of copper . . .	1·0 part.
Water	100·0 parts.

Here the addition of the cupric sulphate is intelligible. This salt is itself a hardening agent of some energy, and may well serve to reinforce the somewhat slow action of the bichromate. As a matter of fact, "Erlicki" hardens very much more rapidly than either simple bichromate or Müller's solution. A spinal cord may be hardened in it in four days at the temperature of an incubator, and in ten days at the normal temperature (FOL, *Lehrb. d. vergl. mik. Anat.*, p. 106). I believe it to be one of the best hardening agents known for voluminous objects. Human embryos of several months may be conveniently hardened in it.

Nerve-centres that have been hardened in Erlicki's fluid frequently contain dark spots with irregular prolongations, simulating ganglion-cells. These were at one time taken to be pathological formations, but they are now known to consist of precipitates formed by the action of the hardening fluid. They may be removed by washing with hot water, or with water slightly acidified with hydrochloric acid, or by treating the specimens with 0·5 per cent. chromic acid before putting them into alcohol (TSCHISCH, *Virchow's Arch*, Bd. xcvii, p. 173: EDINGER, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 2, p. 245; LOEWENTHAL, *Rev. méd. de la Suisse romande*, 6me année, i, p. 20).

59. Bichromate and Cupric Sulphate or Sublimate Mixture (KULTSCHITZKY, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 3, 1887, p. 348).—A saturated solution of bichromate of potash and sulphate of copper in 50 per cent. alcohol, to which is added at the instant of using a little acetic acid, five or six drops per 100 c.c.

To make the solution, add the finely powdered salts to the alcohol in excess, and leave them together *in total darkness*, for twenty-four hours.

Fix for twelve to twenty-four hours *in the dark*, otherwise the salts will be precipitated. Then treat with strong alcohol for twelve to twenty-four hours, and make sections.

More recently (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlix, 1897, p. 8), KULTSCHITZKY recommends a mixture of two parts bichromate, $\frac{1}{4}$ part corrosive sublimate, 50 parts 2 per cent. acetic acid, and 50 parts 96 per cent. alcohol. As part of the bichromate precipitates, the mixture should be filtered after twenty-four hours. Tissues of vertebrates may remain in it for four to six days.

60. Bichromate of Ammonia.—A review of the literature of the subject shows that this salt is in considerable favour for hardening, for what precise motive is not apparent. Its action is very similar to that of the potassium salt. Fol says that it penetrates somewhat more rapidly, and hardens somewhat more slowly. It should be employed in somewhat stronger solutions, up to 5 per cent.

61. Neutral Chromate of Ammonia is preferred by some anatomists. It is used in the same strength as the bichromate. Klein has recommended it for intestine, which it hardens, in 5 per cent. solution, in twenty-four hours.

62. Bichromates and Alcohol.—Mixtures of either bichromate of potash or of ammonia with alcohol may be employed, and have a more rapid action than the aqueous solution. Thus HAMILTON takes for hardening brain a mixture of 1 part methylated spirits with 3 parts of solution of Müller (see the chapter on the Central Nervous System in Part II; see also Kultschitzky's Mixture, *ante*, § 59). Preparations should be kept in the dark during the process of hardening in these mixtures.

63. Cupric Sulphate.—Not of general utility. *See* "*Siphonophora.*"

64. Alum.—Alum has been used for fixing purposes. After an extended experience of it, I only quote it in order to recommend that it be avoided at all costs.

65. Sulphurous Acid.—Waddington (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1883, p. 185) uses a saturated solution of sulphurous acid in alcohol for fixing infusoria. Overton (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1890, p. 9) uses an aqueous solution for fixing algæ.

CHAPTER V.

FIXING AND HARDENING AGENTS. CHLORIDES, ORGANIC ACIDS, AND OTHERS.

Chlorides.

66. Bichloride of Mercury (Corrosive Sublimate).—Corrosive sublimate is stated in the books to be soluble in about sixteen parts of cold and three of boiling distilled water. It will probably be found that the aqueous solution contains from 6 to 7 per cent. of the sublimate at the temperature of the laboratory. It is more soluble in alcohol than in water, and still more so in ether. Its solubility in all these menstrua is augmented by the addition of hydrochloric acid, ammonious chloride, or camphor. With sodium chloride it forms a more easily soluble double salt; hence sea-water may dissolve over 15 per cent., and hence the composition of the liquid of Lang.

The simple aqueous solutions frequently deteriorate in even a short time through the formation of a pulverulent precipitate. The nature of this precipitate is unknown to me, and I have been unable to find any certain means of preventing its formation. Thinking that it may be due in part to ammonia derived from the air, I have lately been in the habit of adding a little nitric acid to my solutions, and certainly have found that they thus keep much better. In any case, for work in which it is desired to obtain as energetic a fixing action as possible, it is well to use only freshly made up solutions. And *distilled* water must *always* be employed for making up the solutions. The simple aqueous solution should give an acid reaction with litmus paper, whilst that made with strong sodium chloride solution is neutral.

For fixing, corrosive sublimate may be, and very frequently is, used pure; but in most cases a finer fixation will be obtained if it be acidified with acetic acid, say about 1 per cent. of the glacial acid. I find that a *saturated solution in 5 per cent. glacial acetic acid* is a very good formula. VAN

Beneden has recommended a saturated solution in 25 per cent. acetic acid, and Lo Bianco (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ix, 1890, p. 443) a mixture of 2 parts saturated solution with 1 part of 49 per cent. acetic acid.

It is sometimes advisable to take the most concentrated solution obtainable. The cold saturated aqueous solution will suffice in most cases; but for some very contractile forms (coral polypes, Planaria), a concentrated solution in warm or even boiling water should be employed. For Arthropoda *alcoholic* solutions are frequently indicated. Delicate objects, however, may require treatment with weak solutions.

Objects should in all cases be removed from the fixing bath as soon as fixed, that is, in other words, as soon as they are seen to have become opaque throughout, which is practically as soon as they are penetrated by the liquid. Small objects are fixed in a few minutes. I have found that a "salivary" gland of the larva of *Chironomus* is thoroughly fixed in three seconds.

Wash out with water or with alcohol. I consider alcohol almost always preferable. Alcohol of about 70 per cent. may be taken. The extraction of the sublimate is hastened by the addition of a little camphor to the alcohol. Or, much better (Mayer, *Intern. Monatsschr. Anat. Phys.*, iv, 1887, p. 43), a little tincture of iodine may be added to the liquid, either alcohol or water, used for washing, enough to make it of a good port wine colour, and the liquid be changed until it no longer becomes discoloured by the objects. Apáthy (*Mikrotechnik*, p. 148) takes a 0·5 per cent. solution of iodine in strong alcohol, leaves the objects in it (suspended) until they have become of about the colour of the solution, and then washes for twenty-four hours in pure alcohol.

In obstinate cases solution of iodine in iodide of potassium may be taken. Mayer (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 28) makes it by dissolving 5 grammes of iodide of potassium in 5 c.c. of distilled water and mixing this with a solution of 0·5 gramme of iodine in 45 c.c. of 90 per cent. alcohol, but seldom uses the mixture concentrated, merely adding as much of it as is required to the alcohol or water containing the objects. The iodine may be washed out in obstinate cases with magnesia water. Similarly Apáthy, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1897, pp. 729, 730.

It has been objected to this process that iodine in potassic iodide precipitates corrosive sublimate instead of dissolving it. That is true, but the precipitate is soluble in excess of the precipitant.

It is important that the sublimate be *thoroughly* removed from the tissues, otherwise they become brittle, and will not stain so well. They will also become brittle if they are kept long in alcohol.

It may happen that if the extraction of the excess of sublimate from the tissues in bulk has been insufficient, crystals (of some mercurial compound) may form in the sections after they have been mounted in balsam. This may easily be prevented by treating the sections themselves with tincture of iodine for a quarter of an hour before mounting. This will do away with the necessity of treating the tissues in bulk with iodine, which is frequently a very long process (unless it is desired to keep the material for a long time in alcohol before making the sections).

MANN (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1894, p. 479) prefers treating the sections rather than the tissues in bulk, on the ground that the iodine makes them soft, so that they shrink on coming into paraffin. SCHAPER (*Anat. Anz.*, xiii, 1897, p. 463), on the other hand, has shown that neglect to extract the sublimate from the tissues in bulk may give birth to serious artefacts, which appear to arise during the imbedding process.

You may stain in any way you like. Carmine stains are peculiarly brilliant after sublimate.

It must be remembered that the solutions must not be touched with iron or steel, as these produce precipitates that may hurt the preparations. To manipulate the objects, wood, glass or platinum may be used; for dissecting them, hedgehog spines, or quill pens, or cactus spines.

When properly employed, sublimate is *for general work* undoubtedly a most useful fixing agent. It is applicable to most classes of objects. It is perhaps less applicable, in the pure form, to Arthropods, as it possesses no great power of penetrating chitin. For *cytological work* it is, according to my experience, not to be trusted, and only to be recommended where more precise fixing agents, such as solution of Flemming, are counter-indicated by reason of their lack of penetration, or the like. Amongst other defects it has that of frequently causing serious shrinkage of cells.

67. Corrosive Sublimate (Lang's formula, *Zool. Anzeiger*, 1878, i, p. 14). For *Planaria.*—Take—

Distilled water . . .	100 parts by weight.
Chloride of sodium . .	6 to 10 parts.
Acetic acid	6 to 8 ,,
Bichloride of mercury . .	3 to 12 ,,
(Alum, in some cases . .	$\frac{1}{2}$.)

Second formula (*ibid.*, 1879, ii, p. 46).—Make a concentrated solution of corrosive sublimate in picro-sulphuric acid, to which has been added 5 per cent. of acetic acid.

68. Other Simple Aqueous Solutions.—A solution containing 5 g. sublimate, 0·5 g. sodium chloride, and 100 c.c. water, has been quoted as "solution of Gaule."

Kaiser's solution consists of 10 g. sublimate, 3 g. glacial acetic acid, and 300 g. distilled water (from *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 3, p. 378).

M. Heidenhain has recommended a 0·5 per cent. solution of sodium chloride saturated while hot with sublimate.

69. Alcoholic Solutions.—Apáthy (*Mikrotechnik*, p. 111) writes that he thinks that "a solution of 3 to 4 grammes of sublimate and 0·5 gramme sodium chloride in 50 per cent. alcohol" (quantity not stated!) will prove to be "for most objects the best of fixatives for *general* purposes."

For Carnoy's and Ohlmacher's alcoholic fluids, see § 84.

69a. Held (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys.*, Abth. 1897, p. 227, fixes nerve tissue in a 1 per cent. solution of sublimate in 4 per cent. **Aceton**, and washes out through increasingly-concentrated grades of aceton.

70. Mercuro-nitric Mixtures.—Frenzel (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxvi, 1885, p. 232) recommends a half-saturated solution of sublimate in 80 per cent. alcohol, to which is added nitric acid in the proportion of 1 drop to 1 c.c. or 2 c.c. Objects of the size of a pea to be fixed in it for five or ten minutes, then hardened (? how long) in the same sublimate alcohol without the acid, and finally in 90 per cent. alcohol. It is said that the nitric acid renders after-treatment with iodine unnecessary.

Gilson's **Mixture.**—I am indebted to Prof. Gilson for kindly sending his latest formula (1895), which is as follows (I have simplified it by omitting one place of decimals):

Nitric acid of 46° strength (this would be sp. gr. 1·456, or 80 per cent., nearly)	15 c.c.
Glacial acetic acid	4 ,,
Corrosive sublimate	20 grms.
60 per cent. alcohol	100 c.c.
Distilled water	880 ,,

When required *for marine animals* add a few crystals of iodine, which will prevent the formation of precipitates of sea salts. If in any case the preparations should show a granular precipitate, due probably to an abundance of phosphates in the tissues, the precipitate may be removed by washing with water containing a little tincture of iodine.

I have tried this mixture and find that it affords in general a faithful and delicate fixation, and gives to tissues an excellent consistency. Objects may remain in it for a considerable time without hurt. Tissues are left in a state very favourable for staining. The liquid has a high degree of penetration. A treatment for a few days with it will serve to remove the albumen from the ova of Batrachians. This liquid may be recommended to beginners, as it is very easy to work with. For some objects, as I found, the proportion of sublimate may be increased with advantage.

Carazzi (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1896, p. 381) takes one litre of 1 per cent. sodium chloride solution and adds to it 20 grammes of sublimate, dissolved in 100 c.c. of 70 per cent. alcohol, 15 c.c. of concentrated nitric acid, and 5 c.c. of glacial acetic acid. Very small objects to be fixed for one to two hours, larger ones four to six. Wash out in iodine-alcohol for two to twenty-four hours.

Kostanecki and Siedlecki (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlviii, 1896, p. 181) take a mixture of saturated sublimate solution and 3 per cent. nitric acid in equal parts, or a mixture of equal parts of sublimate solution, 3 per cent. nitric acid, and absolute alcohol, fix for twenty-four hours, and wash out in iodine-alcohol.

71. Picro-sublimate Mixtures.—Rabl's (*Zeit f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 165). Sublimate, saturated solution in water, 1 vol.; a similar solution of picric acid, 1 vol.; distilled water, 2 vols. Embryos may be left in it for twelve hours, washed for two hours in water, and brought into weak alcohol.

MANN'S (*op. cit.*, xi, 4, 1895, p. 480).—1 per cent. of picric acid with or without 1 per cent. of tannin in a saturated solution of sublimate in normal salt solution.

The same author's **Alcoholic Picro-sublimate** (*Anat. Anz.*, 8, 1893, pp. 441—443) consists of absolute alcohol 100 c.c., picric acid 4 grms., sublimate 15 grms., tannin 6 to 8 grms. The tannin is added in order to prevent excessive hardening.

TELLYESNICZKY (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, lii, 1898, p 237) says of Mann's tannin liquid, "its action is an entirely destructive one."

O. vom RATH'S **Picro-sublimate** (*Anat. Anz.*, xi, 9, 1895, p. 286).—Cold saturated solution of picric acid, 1 part; hot saturated solution of sublimate, 1 part; glacial acetic acid, ½ to 1 per cent. Fix for several hours and bring direct into alcohol.

The same author's **Picro-sublimate-osmic Mixture** (*loc. cit.*) consists of the above with the addition of 10 per cent. of 2 per cent. osmic acid solution.

72. Osmio-sublimate Mixtures.—MANN'S (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 4, 1894, p. 481) consists of a freshly-prepared mixture of equal parts of 1 per cent. osmic acid solution and saturated solution of sublimate in normal salt solution (for nerve-centres).

For APÁTHY'S see § 358.

DRÜNER'S (*Jena. Zeit. Naturw.*, xxviii, 1894, p. 294) consists of 1 part of 1 per cent. osmic acid solution added to 20 parts of a solution of 5 per cent. each of sublimate and glacial acetic acid in water.

O. vom RATH'S, see last §.

73. Chromo-sublimate.—LO BIANCO (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ix, 3, 1890, p. 443). Concentrated sublimate solution, 100 parts, 1 per cent. chromic acid, 50 parts.

74. ZENKER'S **Mixture** (*Münchener med. Wochenschr.*, 24, 1894, p. 534; quoted from MERCIER, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 4, 1894, p. 471, where will be found minute instructions for using it). Five per cent. of sublimate and 5 per cent. of glacial acetic acid, dissolved in solution of MÜLLER. Fix for several hours, wash out with water, treat the tissues in bulk, or the sections with alcohol containing tincture of iodine.

TELLYESNICZKY (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, lii, 2, 1898, p. 238), who has lately tried this fluid on testes of *Salamandra*, writes that for accurate preservation of cell-structures it is comparable to liquid of FLEMMING, with the advantage of better penetration (therefore applicability to larger pieces of material), absence of over-fixation of superficial layers, easier staining, and cheapness. He thinks the sodium sulphate may be omitted from it without any change in the results. Numerous recent authors speak very highly of this reagent.

75. FOÀ's **Mixture** (*Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, 1895, p. 287; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1895, p. 486).—Equal parts of saturated solution of sublimate in normal salt solution, and of liquid of Müller, or 5 per cent. solution of bichromate.

Very much like Zenker's mixture, with the acetic acid omitted, which appears to me to be certainly for most purposes a false step.

76. **Chromo-nitric Sublimate** (ROSENSTADT, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlvii, 1896, p. 748).—Three volumes of saturated aqueous sublimate solution with 1 volume of liquid of PERÉNYI.

77. **Chloride of Platinum (Platinic Chloride,** $PtCl_4$).—A reagent, originally introduced for the study of karyokinesis, but of general application. RABL, to whom we owe the introduction of this agent, employed an aqueous solution of 1:300. The objects remained in it for twenty-four hours, and were then washed with water, hardened in alcohol, and sectioned.

Rabl found it give better results (for the study of karyokinesis) than any other reagent except chromoformic acid (§ 44). It causes a slight shrinkage of the chromatin elements, a condition that renders the granules of Pfitzner and the longitudinal division of the elements very distinctly visible (see Rabl's paper in *Morph. Jahrb.*, Bd. x, 1884, p. 216).

Platinum chloride is an extremely deliquescent salt, and for this reason had better be procured in solution. Ten per cent. solutions are found in commerce.

For the platinic *mixtures see ante* § 49, 50, 53, also RABL's mixture, under *Embryological Methods*. For the platinic formol of BOUIN, see *Arch. d'Anat. Microsc.*, ii, 4, 1899, p. 423.

78. Palladium Chloride (F. E. SCHULTZE, *Arch. mik. Anat.*, iii, 1867, p. 477).—This reagent was recommended by Schultze as a hardening agent, partly as giving to tissues a better consistency than chromic acid or Müller's solution, and partly on account of a special faculty for penetrating organs rich in connective tissue that he attributed to it. It is an impregnation reagent, staining certain elements of tissues in various tones of brown. For the somewhat lengthy details of the manner of employing it, the reader is referred to the paper quoted.

CATTANEO recommends it, used in solutions of 1·300, 1·600, or 1·800 strength, for from one to two minutes, as being the best of fixatives for Infusoria.

This salt is found in commerce in the solid state. To dissolve it, take 10 grammes of the salt, one litre of water, and four to six drops of hydrochloric acid. Solution will be effected in twenty-four hours.

FRENKEL (*Anat. Anz.*, viii, 1893, p. 538; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 2, 1893, p. 243) recommends for connective tissue a mixture of 15 parts 1 per cent. palladium chloride, 5 parts 2 per cent osmic acid, and a few drops of acetic acid.

79. Iridium Chloride (EISEN, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 2, 1897, p. 195). —Solution of one half or one fifth per cent., acidified with 1 per cent. of glacial acetic acid.

My specimens show about the worst fixation I have ever seen. It simply does not fix at all.

80. Perchloride of Iron (FOL, *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, Bd. xxxviii, 1883, p 491; and *Lehrb. d. vergl. mik. Anat.*, p. 102).—Fol recommends 1 vol. of *Tinct. Ferri Perchlor.* P. B. diluted with 5 to 10 vols. of 70 per cent. alcohol.

The tincture diluted with 3 to 4 vols. of either alcohol or water has been recommended for fixing medullated nerve by PLATNER (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 2, 1889, p. 187).

81. Chloride of Zinc is sometimes used for hardening brain (see Part II). GILSON (*La Cellule*, vi, 1, 1890, p. 122) has used it with good results as a fixative for the silk-glands of Lepidoptera, as follows:

Glacial acetic acid	5 c.c.
Nitric acid of 46° (or 80 per cent. nearly)	5 ,,
Alcohol of 80 per cent.	100 ,,
Distilled water	300 ,,
Dry chloride of zinc	20 grammes.

81a. Fluorides (MARPMANN), see *Zeit. f. angew. Mik.*, v, 1899, p. 33, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 456.

Organic Acids, and other Agents.

82. Acetic Acid.—The place of honour amongst organic acids considered as fixing agents appears rightfully to belong to this old-fashioned reagent. Flemming, who has made a special investigation of its action on nuclei, finds (*Zellsubstanz*, etc., p. 380) that the best strength is from 0·2 to 1 per cent. Strengths of 5 per cent. and more bring out the nuclein structures clearly at first, but after a time cause them to swell and become pale, which is not the case with the weaker strengths (*ibid.*, p. 103). It must now be stated that, thanks to v. BENEDEN, the *strong* acid has become established as a valuable fixative of certain objects. It is particularly applicable to very contractile objects, such as many Vermes, Cœlenterata, and Nudibranchs; it kills them with the utmost rapidity, *and has a tendency to leave them fixed in the state of extension.* The *modus operandi* is in general as follows:—Pour glacial acetic acid in liberal quantity over the organisms, leave them until they are penetrated by it—which should be in five or six minutes, as the strong acid is a highly penetrating reagent—and wash out in frequent changes of alcohol of gradually increasing strength. Some persons begin with 30 per cent. alcohol, but this appears to me rather weak, and I think 70 per cent. or at least 50 per cent. alcohol should be preferred.

I see no reason why other energetic reagents should not be combined with the glacial acetic acid if desired. Dr. LINDSAY JOHNSON (*in. litt.*) has found that one of the best fixatives for retina is a mixture of equal parts glacial acetic acid and 2 per cent. osmic acid. S. LO BIANCO adds to the "concentrated"* acid one tenth of a 1 per cent. solution of chromic acid. He finds that even this small proportion of chromic acid serves to counteract in a marked degree the softening action of the acetic acid.

It goes without saying that in v. Beneden's process the acetic acid does not play the part of a fixing agent *sensu stricto*, that is, an agent that *hardens* cells at the same time that it kills them. The *rationale* of the process is that the *acid kills* the tissues, whilst the *alcohol* comes in and *hardens* them sufficiently before they have had time to become deformed by the action of the acid. Acetic acid, used alone, is only a fixative for a limited time. If its action be prolonged and not controlled by the action of some other agent, it becomes a *swelling* agent. Its function in mixtures is, besides that of killing, the valuable one of counteracting the shrinking action of the ingredients with which it is combined, and by its swelling action enhancing the penetration of the mixture; whilst by clarifying tissues it aids in the optical differentiation of their elements. For these reasons it is, in all cases in which its presence is not absolutely counter-indicated (connective tissue, delicate calcareous structures, etc.), a most valuable ingredient, almost a *sine quâ non*, in fixing mixtures.

---

* MAYER, in the *Grundzüge*, explains that the acid referred to as "concentrated" by LO BIANCO in his *Metodi* (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ix, 3, p. 435) is an acid of approximately 49 per cent (sp. gr. 1·060).

The proportions in which it should enter into mixtures in general seem to me to be from 0·5 per cent. to 5 per cent. of the glacial acid; higher strengths, such as 25 per cent. to 100 per cent., being only indicated in cases in which the highest possible penetration is the chief consideration.

Throughout this work, wherever acetic acid is mentioned, it is the *glacial* acid that is meant unless the contrary is stated.

All liquids containing a large proportion of this acid (*e. g.* §§ 83, 84) should only be allowed to act for a *very short time.*

83. Acetic Alcohol (Carnoy, *La Cellule*, t. iii, 1, 1886, p. 6; and *ibid.*, 1887, 2, p. 276; v. Beneden et Neyt, *Bull. Ac. roy. d. sci. de Belg.*, t. xiv, 1887, p. 218; Zacharias, *Anat. Anz.*, iii, Jahrg. 1, 1888, pp. 24—27; v. Gehuchten, *ibid.*, 8, p. 227).—Carnoy has given two formulæ for this important reagent. The first is—

Glacial acetic acid . . .	1 part.
Absolute alcohol . . .	3 parts.

The second is—

Glacial acetic acid . . .	1 part.
Absolute alcohol . . .	6 parts.
Chloroform	3 ,,

The addition of chloroform is said to render the action of the mixture more rapid.

V. Beneden and Neyt take equal volumes of glacial acid and absolute alcohol.

Zacharias takes—

Glacial acetic acid	1 part.
Absolute alcohol	4 parts.
Osmic acid	a few drops.

Acetic alcohol is one of the most penetrating and quickly acting fixatives known. It preserves both nuclei and cytoplasm, and admits of admirable staining in any way that may be preferred. It was employed by all of the authors quoted for the study of karyokinesis in the ova of *Ascaris*—proverbially one of the most difficult objects to fix,—but from what I have seen of it I should say that it is applicable with advantage to many other objects, and has been found to give excellent results with central nervous tissue. You may wash out with alcohol and treat afterwards in any way that may be preferred (aqueous liquids being avoided as far as possible). But the sublimate liquid, next §, will probably be found in many cases superior.

84. Acetic Alcohol with Sublimate.—The following mixture due to Gilson, was first published by Carnoy and Lebrun (*La Cellule*, xiii, 1, 1837, p. 68), and most highly recommended by them as superior for ova of *Ascaris* with the shell formed to the chloroform liquid of the last §. The addition of the sublimate serves to restrain the swelling action of the acetic acid, which is insufficiently done by the other ingredients.

Absolute alcohol	1 vol.
Glacial acetic acid	1 ,,
Chloroform	1 ,,

Sublimate to saturation.

Isolated ova of *Ascaris*, even though furnished with a shell, are fixed in twenty-five to thirty seconds. Entire oviducts take about ten minutes. The liquid is therefore one of the most penetrating and rapidly acting of any, if not *the* most.

Wash out with alcohol until all traces of odour of the acetic acid have disappeared (I myself wash out with alcohol containing tincture of iodine). I consider this a very fine reagent.

OHLMACHER (*Journ. Exper. Medicine*, ii, 6, 1897, p. 671) has arrived independently at a sublimate modification of Carnoy's original chloroform liquid. He takes—

Absolute alcohol	80 parts.
Chloroform	15 ,,
Glacial acetic acid	5 ,,

Sublimate to saturation (about 20 per cent.).

"Ordinary pieces" of tissue are sufficiently fixed in fifteen to thirty minutes. Entire human cerebral hemispheres, subdivided by Meynert's section, take eighteen to twenty-four hours. Wash out in iodine alcohol (§ 66). Although this liquid is historically a modified acetic-alcohol, yet in view of the relatively small amount of acid in it, it should rather be classed as an alcoholic sublimate solution, § 69.

85. Formic Acid may be used *dilute* in the same way as acetic acid (*supra*. § 82). It is possible that it might also take the place of acetic acid in the concentrated form, but I am not aware of any experiments in this direction.

86. Chloride and Acetate of Copper (*Ripart et Petit's Liquid*, CARNOY, *La Biologie Cellulaire*, p. 94).—

Camphor water (not saturated)	75 grammes.
Distilled water	75 ,,
Crystallised acetic acid	1 gramme.
Acetate of copper	0·30 ,,
Chloride of copper	0·39 ,,

This is a very moderate and delicate fixative. I consider that it has not sufficient hardening power for objects that are intended to be dehydrated and mounted in balsam, but is frequently excellent and sometimes indispensable for objects that are to be studied in as fresh a state as possible in aqueous media. Objects fixed in it stain instantaneously and perfectly with methyl green. Osmic acid may be added to the liquid to increase the fixing action. For *cytological researches* this is a most invaluable medium.

87. Acetate of Uranium (SCHENK, *Mitth. a. d. Embryol. Inst. Wien*, 1882, p. 95; cf. GILSON, *La Cellule*, i, 1885, p. 141).—This reagent is very similar in its properties to picric acid. It has a mild fixing action, and a high degree of penetration, which may make it useful for Arthropoda. It may be combined with methyl green, which it does not precipitate.

For **Acetate of Lead** see "Neurological Methods," Hardening.

88. Iodine.—Iodine possesses considerable hardening properties, and a very high degree of penetration. Kent (*Manual of the Infusoria*, 1881, p. 114; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* (N. S.), iii, 1883, p. 730) has found it to act in a manner almost identical with osmic acid, and in some instances even more efficiently (for fixing Infusoria). His instructions are as follows:—"Prepare a saturated solution of potassic iodide in distilled water, saturate this solution with iodine, filter, and dilute to a brown-sherry colour. A very small portion only of the fluid is to be added to that containing the Infusoria."

Or you may use Lugol's solution, of which the formula is as follows:

Water	100 parts
Iodide of potassium	6 ,,
Iodine	4 ,,

Iodine certainly kills cells very rapidly, without deforming them. Personally I have found it very useful for the examination of spermatozoa. Unfortunately I am not acquainted with any nuclear stain that will work well with it.

Very small objects may be instantaneously fixed by means of **vapour of iodine**. Crystals of iodine may be heated in a test-tube till the vapours are given off; then on inclining the tube the heavy vapours may be made to flow over the objects arranged on a slide. The slide should then be warmed to about 40° C. for two or three minutes in order to evaporate the iodine from the objects, which may then be mounted or otherwise treated as desired (Overton, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 14).

Iodine may be used in combination with alcohol for hardening, and render service through its great penetrating power. See the method of Betz, *post*, Part II.

89. Picric Acid.—Picric acid in pure aqueous solution should always be employed in the form of a *strong* solution. (That is to say, strong solutions must always be employed when it is desired to make sections or other preparations of tissues with the elements *in situ*, as weak solutions macerate; but for dissociation preparations or the fixation of isolated cells, weak solutions may be taken. Flemming finds that the fixation of nuclear figures is equally good with strong or weak solutions.) The saturated solution is the one most employed. (One part of picric acid dissolves in about 86 parts of water at 15° C.;* in hot water it is very much more soluble.) Objects should remain in it for from a few seconds to twenty-four hours, according to their size. For Infusoria one to at most two minutes will suffice, whilst objects of a thickness of several millimetres require from three to six hours' immersion.

---

* Benedikt and Knecht, *Chemistry of the Coal-tar Colours*, p. 214.

Picric acid should *always be washed out with alcohol*, as water is hurtful to tissues that have been prepared in it. For the same reason during all remaining stages of treatment, water should be avoided ; staining should be performed by means of alcoholic solutions, the only exceptions to this rule being in favour of methyl green, and some few other aqueous stains that are themselves weak hardening agents, such as hæmalum, carmalum, etc.

It has been found by Jelinek (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 242) that the extraction of picric acid is greatly quickened by the addition of a base to the wash-alcohol. He recommends carbonate of lithia. A few drops of a saturated solution of the salt in water are added to the alcohol ; a slight precipitate is formed. The objects are put into the turbid alcohol, which becomes clear and yellow in proportion as the picrin is extracted. Furthur quantities of carbonate are added from time to time until the colour has been entirely extracted from the tissues.

Tissues fixed in picric acid can, after removal of the acid by soaking, be perfectly stained in any stain. It is not generally necessary to remove the picric acid by washing out before staining. Mayer's paracarmine, Grenacher's alcoholic borax-carmine, or Mayer's hæmacalcium may be recommended for entire objects.

The most important property of picric acid is its great penetration. This renders it peculiarly suitable for the preparation of chitinous structures. For such objects alcohol of 70 per cent. to 90 per cent. should be taken for washing out, and staining should be done by means of Mayer's cochineal or hæmacalcium.

89a. Picro-acetic Acid.—Saturated solution of picric acid in 1 per cent. acetic acid has given me better preparations than those obtained by any other picric liquid, except picro-aceto-osmic.

Boveri (*Zellenstudien*, 1, 1887, p. 11) dilutes a concentrated aqueous solution with two volumes of water and adds 1 per cent. of acetic acid. For most purposes this dilution is evidently a great mistake, for the concentrated solution is itself none too strong, and would apparently do much better if it were much stronger.

90. Picro-sulphuric Acid (Kleinenberg, *Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, April, 1879, p. 208; Mayer, *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* (N.S.), ii (1882),

p. 867).—By picro-sulphuric acid, without any qualifying term, I understand a fluid made (following Mayer, *loc. cit.*) as follows :—Distilled water, 100 vols.; sulphuric acid, 2 vols.; picric acid, as much as will dissolve (this will be about 0·25 per cent., as the picric acid is much less soluble in sulphuric acid solution than in water). This may also, in any case in which confusion is likely to arise, be called "concentrated" or "undiluted picro-sulphuric acid."

By "liquid of Kleinenberg" I understand a mixture suggested by Kleinenberg (*loc. cit.*), and best made by diluting the concentrated picro-sulphuric acid prepared as above with three times its volume of water.

Of these two formulæ the one formerly most employed is that given by Kleinenberg—the dilute mixture; undiluted picro-sulphuric acid being reserved for objects requiring special treatment, chiefly Arthropods. I hold that Kleinenberg's solution is much weaker than is desirable in the majority of cases, and should be reserved for special cases, such, perhaps, as that for which it was originally proposed, the embryology of the earthworm; the concentrated solution being generally preferable. *This particularly applies to marine organisms.*

Wash out with successive alcohols, beginning with 70 per cent., never with water.

Warm alcohol extracts the acid much more quickly than cold, without which *weeks* may be required to fully remove the acid from chitinous structures.

This liquid, once the classical fixative, is now almost entirely abandoned, I think rightly, as its fixing qualities are at the best only second-rate. For Arthropoda it may still be useful, on account of its great power of penetrating chitin. For a fuller account *see previous editions.*

91. Picro-nitric Acid (MAYER, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, 1881, p. 5; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* (N.S.), ii, 1882, p. 868).—

Water	100 vols.
Nitric acid (of 25 per cent. N_2O_5) . . .	5 ,,
Picric acid, as much as will dissolve.	

The properties of this fluid are very similar to those of picro-sulphuric acid, with the advantage of avoiding the formation of gypsum crystals, and the disadvantage that it is much more difficult to soak out of the tissues. The process of Jelinek, § 89, may be useful here. Mayer states that with eggs containing a large amount of yolk material, like those of Palinurus, it gives better results than nitric, picric, or picro-sulphuric acid. I myself consider it distinctly superior to picro-sulphuric.

92. Picro-hydrochloric Acid (MAYER, *ibid.*).—

Water	100 vols.
Hydrochloric acid (of 25 per cent. HCl) .	8 ,,
Picric acid, as much as will dissolve.	

The properties of this fluid are similar to those of picro-nitric acid.

93. Picro-chromic Acid (Fol, *Lehrb.*, p. 100).—

Picric acid, sol. sat. in water	10 vols.
1 per cent. chromic acid solution . . .	25 ,,
Water	65 ,,

At the instant of using you may add 0·005 of osmic acid, which makes the action more energetic.

I have seen Fol's formula, with the addition of a trace of acetic acid, quoted as "liquid of Haensel :"—I know not with what justification.

94. Picro-nitro-chromic Acid (Rawitz, *Leitfaden f. histol. Untersuchungen*, 1895, p. 24).—One part of picro-nitric acid, and four parts 1 per cent. chromic acid. Wash out in 70 per cent. alcohol.

95. Picro-osmic Acid.—Flemming (*Zells. Kern u. Zellth.*, p. 381) has experimented with mixtures made by substituting picric for chromic acid in the chromo-osmic mixtures (*ante*, §§ 46 and 47). The results, he says, are identical so far as regards the fixation (of nuclei); but staining is rendered more difficult.

O. vom Rath (*Anat. Anz*, xi, 1895, p. 289) adds to 200 c.c. of saturated aqueous solution of picric acid, 12 c.c. of 2 per cent. solution of osmic acid, and 2 c.c. of glacial acetic acid.

Flemming may be right as regards the nuclei; but the fixation of cytoplasm is in my preparations decidedly inferior.

96. Picro-nitro-osmic Acid (Rawitz, *Leitfaden*, p. 24). — Picro-nitric acid, 6 vols.; 2 per cent. osmic acid., 1 vol. Fix for ½ to 3 hours. nsfer direct to 70 per cent. alcohol. The mixture keeps well.

97. Picro-platinic and Picro-platin-osmic Mixtures.—O. vom Rath (*loc. cit.*, pp. 282, 285) makes a picro-platinic mixture with 200 c.c. saturated aqueous solution of picric acid, 1 g. of platinic chloride (dissolved in 10 c.c. of water), and 2 c.c. of glacial acetic acid.

The picro-platin-osmic mixture, which is, in my opinion, much superior, is made by adding to the foregoing 25 c.c. of 2 per cent. osmic acid.

98. Picric Alcohol (Gage, *Proc. Amer. Soc. Micr.*, 1890, p. 120; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 418).—Alcohol (95 per cent.), 250 parts; water, 250 parts; picric acid, 1 part.

Other Fixing and Hardening Agents.

99. Alcohol.—For *fixing* it is generally held that only two grades of alcohol should be employed—very weak alcohol on the one hand, and absolute alcohol on the other hand.

Absolute alcohol is held to rank as a fixing agent because it is said to kill and harden with such rapidity that structures have not time to get deformed in the process by the energetic dehydration that unavoidably takes place. Dilute alcohol is held to rank as a fixing agent in virtue of being of such a strength as to possess a sufficiently energetic coagulating action and yet contain enough water to have but a feeble and innocuous dehydrating action. The intermediate grades do not realise these conditions, and therefore should not be employed alone for fixing. But they may be very useful in combination with other fixing agents (such as corrosive sublimate or nitric acid) by greatly enhancing their penetrating power; 70 per cent. is a good grade for this purpose.

A recent writer, however, TELLYESNICZKY (*Arch. f. Mik. Anat.*, lii, 2, 1898, p. 219), disagrees with the doctrine of the supposed importance of the grades of alcohol used for fixing, finding them all equally bad. He finds no difference at all between the action of absolute alcohol and that of 96 per cent. or that of 70 per cent. They all cause a remarkable amount of shrinkage, and probably a notable amount of solution of cell-constituents.

A point that is not sufficiently attended to is the chemical purity of the alcohol, which has its importance in respect of the preservation of delicate histological detail and the application of delicate stains. Pure alcohol ought to leave only the very slightest solid residue on evaporation; rubbed between the hands it ought not to leave a strong odour behind after evaporation; and ought to show neither an acid nor an alkaline reaction (this latter much more commonly occurs than is imagined). It should be tested with very sensitive litmus paper, which it is well to leave in it for some hours. See hereon MAYER, in *Mitt. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 1891, p. 180, where is given a test for alkalinity:—a solution of 1 gramme each of hæmateïn and chloride of aluminium in 100 c.c. of alcohol, added in the proportion of 1 : 100 to the alcohol to be tested, ought not to be precipitated in twenty-four hours.

For *fixing*, alcohol is a very third-class reagent, only to be used where better ones cannot be conveniently employed. For *hardening* it is a very important one. When used alone, it is indeed inferior as a hardening agent to most of the reagents discussed above; but when judiciously employed to complete the action of a good fixing agent, it renders most valuable services. 90 to 95 per cent. is the most generally useful strength. Weaker alcohol, down to 70 per cent., is often indicated. Absolute alcohol is seldom advisable. You ought to begin with weak, and proceed gradually to stronger, alcohol. Large quantities of alcohol should be taken. The alcohol should be frequently changed, or the tissue should be suspended near the top of the alcohol, in order to have the tissue constantly surrounded with pure spirit (the water and colloid matters extracted from the tissue falling to the bottom of the vessel). Many weeks may be necessary for hardening large specimens. Small pieces of permeable tissue, such as mucous membrane, may be sufficiently hardened in twenty-four hours.

100. One-third Alcohol.—The grade of weak alcohol that is generally held to be most useful for fixing is one-third alcohol, or RANVIER'S ALCOHOL, known in France as "Alcool au tiers," which is the name given to it by Ranvier himself; in Germany as "Drittelalcohol" or "Ranviersche alcohol dilutus;" in Italy as "alcool al terzo." It consists *of two parts of water and one part of alcohol of* 90 *per cent.* (and *not* of absolute alcohol, as was stated by an oversight in the first edition—an error which I have seen copied in more than one place). See the *Traité Technique* of Ranvier, p. 241, *et passim.*

According to Ranvier, care should be taken that the alcohol is of the strength specified, as the effects of this reagent depend, he states, to a remarkable degree on its strength.

Objects may be left for twenty-four hours in this alcohol; not more, unless there be no reason for avoiding *maceration*, which will generally occur after that time. You may conveniently stain with picro-carmine, alum-carmine, or methyl green

This reagent is a very mild fixative. Its hardening action is so slight that it is not at all indicated for the fixing of objects that are intended to be sectioned. Its chief use is for extemporaneous and dissociation preparations.

101. Absolute Alcohol.—This is sometimes valuable on account of its great penetrating power, being, indeed, one of the most penetrating of known fixing agents. Mayer finds that boiling absolute alcohol is often the only means of killing certain Arthropoda rapidly enough to avoid maceration brought about by the slowness of penetration of common cold alcohol (especially in the case of Tracheata).

It is important to employ for fixing a very large proportion of alcohol. Alum-carmine is a good stain for small specimens so fixed. For preservation, the object should be put into a weaker alcohol, 90 per cent. or less.

As to the supposed superiority of absolute alcohol over ordinary strong alcohol, see § 99; and amongst authors upholding its superiority, see besides RANVIER, MAYER (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ii, 1880, p. 7); BRÜEL (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. Morph.*, Bd. x, 1897, p. 569); also VAN REES (*ibid.*, Bd. iii, 1888, p. 10).

Absolute alcohol is found in commerce. It is a product that it is almost impossible to preserve in use, on account of the rapidity with which it hydrates on exposure to air. Fol recommends that a little quicklime be kept in it. This absorbs part at least of the moisture drawn by the alcohol from the air, and has the further advantage of neutralising the acid that is frequently present in commercial alcohol.

Another plan that I have seen recommended is to suspend strips of gelatin in it. It is stated that by this means ordinary alcohol may be rendered absolute. But then it is probably also rendered very acid thereby.

Ranvier adopts the following plan for preparing an alcohol absolute enough for all practical purposes. Strong (95 per cent.) alcohol is treated with calcined cupric sulphate, with which it is shaken up and allowed to remain for a day or two. It is then decanted and treated with fresh cupric sulphate, and the operation is repeated until the fresh cupric sulphate no longer becomes conspicuously blue on contact with the alcohol; or until, on a drop of the alcohol being mixed with a drop of turpentine, no particles of water can be seen in it under the microscope. The cupric sulphate is prepared by calcining common blue vitriol in a porcelain capsule over a spirit lamp or gas burner until it becomes white, and then reducing it to powder (see *Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad.*, 1884, p. 27; *Science Record*, ii, 1884, p. 65; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* (N. S.), iv, 1884, pp. 322 and 984).

102. Hydrochloric Acid Alcohol (PAUL MAYER, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ii, 1881, p. 7).—To 97 vols. of 90 per cent. alcohol, in which is dissolved a small quantity of picric acid, add 3 vols. pure hydrochloric acid. Leave the specimens in the mixture only just long enough to ensure that they are thoroughly penetrated by it. Wash out with 90 per cent. alcohol, the disappearance of the yellow stain of the picric acid being a sign that all the acid is removed.

The use of this mixture is for the *preparation of coarse objects* it is intended to preserve in alcohol. The object of the acid is to prevent both that glueing together of organs by the perivisceral liquid, which is often brought about by the coagulating action of pure alcohol, and the precipitation on the surface of organs of the salts contained in sea-water, which is a hindrance not only to the penetration of the alcohol, but also to subsequent staining.

Acid alcohol as above prepared loses its original qualities after standing some time, as chloride of ethyl is gradually formed at the expense of the acid. Seventy per cent. alcohol may be taken instead of 90 per cent. for making the mixture, but is not quite so good.

Lo Bianco (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* ix, 1890, p. 443) takes 50 per cent. alcohol with 5 per cent. of hydrochloric acid.

103. Pyridin.—Pyridin has been recommended as a hardening agent (by A. de Souza). It is said to harden, dehydrate, and clear tissues at the same time. They may be stained after hardening by anilin dyes dissolved in the pyridin, or passed through water and stained by the usual processes. It is said to harden quickly, and to give particularly good results with brain. See *Comptes Rendus hebd. de la Soc. de Biologie,* 8 sér., t. iv, No. 35, p. 622; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* v, i, 1888, p. 65; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.,* 1888, p. 1054.

104. Formaldehyde (Formol, Formalin, Formalose).—Formaldehyde is the chemical name of the gaseous compound HCOH, obtained by the oxidation of methyl-alcohol. "Formalin" is the commercial name given by Schering & Co. to a 40 per cent. solution of this substance in water. "Formol" is the commercial name given to the same solution by Meister, Lucius & Brüning. And "Formalose" is the name for the same solution adopted by an American firm. (These solutions may now be obtained from dealers in photographic chemicals.) As I have before pointed out (*Anat. Anz.,* xi, 8, 1895, p. 255), the already extensive literature which treats of the anatomical uses of formaldehyde is much confused by inaccurate use of these terms; many writers use them indiscriminately. It is frequently impossible to discover from the statements of an author whether he means such or such a percentage of formaldehyde, or such or such a percentage of the commercial 40 per cent. solution employed by him, the one being of course two and a half times stronger than the other. All that can be said is, that the majority of authors seem to quote in percentages of the commercial solutions. I think it must be admitted that the proper way of stating the strengths of these solutions is either to state them in terms of formaldehyde, and say so, or to say "formol, or formalin, diluted with so many volumes of water." The present confusion is most inconvenient.

Solutions of formaldehyde are said to sometimes decompose partially or entirely, with formation of a white deposit of paraformaldehyde. Fish says that to avoid this the solutions should be kept in darkened bottles in the cool. The vapour of formaldehyde has a very irritating action on the conjunctiva and mucous membranes, but the effect is transitory, not so injurious as that of osmic acid. It is well not to soil the fingers with the solutions, as formaldehyde hardens the living skin very rapidly.

It was discovered independently by F. Blum (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 3, 1893, p. 314) and by Hermann (*Anat. Anz.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 112) that formaldehyde possesses certain hardening and preservative properties.

Blum employed formol diluted with ten volumes of water (containing rather less than 4 per cent. of formaldehyde). He found this solution to penetrate rapidly, and to harden *voluminous organs* such as liver, kidney, brain, *more rapidly than alcohol*, and that sections were well preserved and susceptible of good staining.

Hermann used a solution containing 0·5 to 1 per cent. of "formalin" (the context shows that 1 per cent. of *formaldehyde* is what is meant, the solution being made by diluting Schering's formalin with forty volumes of water). He found it harden very rapidly, with the remarkable result that the hardened organs preserve *approximately the transparency of life*, and that *pigments are not discoloured.* Since that time formaldehyde has been largely used—in some cases misused—for the preparation and preservation of *museum specimens*, for which purpose it is in some respects superior to alcohol (for the employment of formaldehyde in museum work, see Blum, *Zool. Anz.*, xvi, 1893, p. 450, and *Verh. Anat. Ges.*, 8 Vers., 1895, p. 236; Kaiserling, *Arch. path. Anat.*, Bd. cxlvii, 1897, p. 396; Melnikoff-Rasvedenkoff, *Compt. Rend.*, t. cxxiv, 1897, p. 238). Signs are, however, not wanting that it is by no means the elixir that has been supposed, and that it is a great mistake to imagine that it can take the place of alcohol as a *definitive* preservative of anatomical or museum specimens.

It was said above that formaldehyde possesses *certain* hardening and preservative qualities, the limitation intended being that it does not harden and preserve everything. It hardens gelatin, for instance, and certain albuminoids; but others, on the contrary, are not hardened by it, but rendered, on the contrary, more soluble than they are naturally. For some theoretical considerations concerning its action on tissues, see F. Blum, in *Anat. Anz.*, xi, 1896, p. 718; Benedecenti, in *Arch. Anat. u. Phys*,. ,Abth. 1897, p. 219; Gerota, in *Intern. Monatschr. Anat. u. Phys.*, xiii, 3, 1896, p. 108; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 3, p. 311.

On account of its hardening properties it has been used as a *fixing agent.* On account of the confusion in terminology above referred to, it is not at present possible to give precise instructions as to the strengths that have been employed by the different authors for this purpose. All that can be said is that they will almost certainly be bound to lie between the limits of those indicated by Blum and Hermann, that is to say between 0·5 per cent. and 4 per cent. *if the formaldehyde be used pure.* Only one writer (Hoyer, jun., *Anat. Anz.*, ix, 1894, Ergänzungsheft, p. 236; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1, 1895, p. 28) appears to have used concentrated solutions. He states that with such solutions tissues are better preserved than with weak ones, even better preserved than with corrosive sublimate.

There is certainly some mistake here. I find that preparations fixed in 13·3 per cent. formaldehyde (formol with two volumes of water) have the cells enormously over-fixed, and presenting the homogeneous aspect of osmicated cells. Experimenting further with weak solutions containing from 2 per cent. to 4 per cent. of formaldehyde, I have found that like the stronger solution mentioned above, these too give a homogeneous, colloid appearance to protoplasm, and have at the same time a marked *swelling and vacuolating action.* With the 2 per cent. solution the vacuolation is enormous. I have concluded that *used pure* formaldehyde is not at all suitable as a fixing agent for cytological work, and should not be employed for that purpose, and I certainly should not think of using it myself, even for general morphological work.

Some formulæ for formaldehyde *mixtures* for fixing given in the last edition, with which I had had fair results, are suppressed, as I now think that where the results were good, it may have been in spite of the formaldehyde, and not on account of it. See, however, the alcoholic mixtures of

Lavdowsky, last edition; or the picroformol of Bouin (*Phénomènes cytologiques anormaux dans l'histogénèse*, etc., Nancy, 1897) (30 parts picric acid, sol. sat., 10 parts formol, 2 parts acetic acid), or the similar one of Graf (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1898, p. 492), the mixture of Orth (10 parts formol to 100 of solution of Müller [it must be freshly prepared, as it will only keep a few days], *Berlin. klin. Wochenschr.*, 1896, No. 13; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 3, p. 316), and the mixtures quoted under "*Neurological Methods*" in Part II.

It should be noted by those who desire to experiment with such mixtures, that formaldehyde is a powerful reducing agent, and therefore incompatible with such reagents as chromic acid or osmic acid and the like, which it very rapidly decomposes.

To sum up, I feel convinced that neither strong nor weak should formaldehyde be employed *pure* for fixing; and that it has not been shown to be of any *real* utility in fixing *mixtures*, so long as faithful histological fixation is aimed at. But, of course, that does not prejudge the question as to whether it may not render services in cases in which faithful histological fixation is only a secondary point, as in many pathological researches; nor does it imply that it may not be useful for the purpose of *hardening sensu stricto* tissues that have previously been duly fixed by some other agent.

Considered as a *hardening agent sensu stricto* the most important use of formaldehyde is for hardening nervous tissue, for which it is now much used, perhaps with better justification than for most other purposes. *For this see Part II.*

Hermann (*loc. cit., supra*) found that such a large organ as a calf's heart was entirely hardened by a 0·5 to 1 per cent. in twelve to twenty-four hours. *Entire eyes* are so hardened in the 1 per cent. solution in twenty-four hours that they may be cut in two with a sharp knife, like an apple. Hermann found this disadvantage, that tissues hardened in formaldehyde solution suffer when they are put into alcohol for the purpose of dehydration. The paper in question contains interesting observations on the property formaldehyde has of preserving the natural colours and transparent and lifelike aspect of tissues.

Blum (*Anat. Anz.*, ix, 1894, p. 229), recapitulating, says that very voluminous pieces of material are hardened *quickly* and without shrinkage. The tissues stain well. Cells, he says, and nuclei preserve their forms; karyokinetic figures are fixed. Mucin is not precipitated, but remains transparent; fat is not dissolved. Micro-organisms retain their specific staining reactions.

As to the *degree and kind* of hardening obtained by formaldehyde the authors are not so explicit as could be wished. As far as I can see myself, the hardening obtained is gentle and tough, giving an elastic and not a brittle consistency. It varies greatly with different tissues.

For prolonged hardening, considerable volumes of liquid should be taken, and the liquid should be renewed from time to time; for the formaldehyde fixes itself on the tissues with which it comes in contact, deserting the solution, whic thus becomes progressively weaker.

For further hints concerning hardening with formaldehyde see the papers of F. Blum and Gerota above quoted. I cannot but suspect that, both for nervous system and other purposes, it is now being used with much more enthusiasm than critical judgment.

Formaldehyde, being a powerful reducing agent, may be employed for the *reduction* of gold and silver impregnations. I have been using it myself for reducing gold impregnations, and up to the present like it better than any other agent I have tried for that purpose.

It is also a powerful *antiseptic*, and may be found very useful for effecting the preservation of *staining solutions*, with some of which it acts as a *mordant*. It is said to harden celloidin as well as gelatin, and to be useful for celloidin-imbedding (Blum, *Anat. Anz.*, xi, 1896, p. 724).

CHAPTER VI.

DE-ALCOHOLISATION AND CLEARING AGENTS.

105. Introductory Remarks.—*De-alcoholisation agents* are liquids employed for the purpose of getting rid of the alcohol in which preparations are generally preserved, and facilitating the penetration of the paraffin used for imbedding, or the balsam or other resinous medium in which preparations are, in most cases, finally mounted. Hence all of them must be capable of expelling alcohol from tissues, and must be at the same time solvents of Canada balsam and the other resinous mounting media. The majority of them are essential oils.

Clearing agents are liquids whose function it is to make microscopic preparations transparent by penetrating amongst the highly refracting elements of which the tissues are composed, the clearing liquids themselves having an index of refraction superior, or equal, or, at all events, not greatly inferior to that of the tissues to be cleared. Hence all clearing agents are liquids of high index of refraction.

The majority of de-alcoholisation agents being also liquids of high refraction, it follows that they serve at the same time for de-alcoholisation and for clearing; and in consequence it has come about that de-alcoholisation agents are generally spoken of as clearing agents. (The expression "de-alcoholisation agents" is here used for the first time as a correlative of the "Vormedien" of APÁTHY (*Mikrotechnic*), and the "Vorharze" of the *Grundzüge*, due to MAYER; in previous editions clearing agents and de-alcoholisation agents were indiscriminately spoken of as clearing agents.) But that practice is not strictly correct, for not all clearing agents are solvents of the resins, and not all de-alcoholisation agents can serve as clearers. For instance, glycerine is a clearing agent, but cannot be used to prepare objects for paraffin or for balsam, because it is not miscible with either of them. And chloroform is an admirable de-alcoholisation agent and admirable precursor of paraffin or balsam, but can hardly be utilised as a clearer—*i. e.* for the purpose of obtaining the transparency required for examination—on account of its volatility, which precludes its use as an examination medium. I shall, however, still in many cases continue to use the term "clearing" to signify "de-alcoholising," for the sake of brevity.

Of course clearing media can serve as *Examination Media*, if not too volatile.

106. The Practice of De-alcoholisation or Clearing.—The old plan was to take the object out of the alcohol and float it on the surface of the de-alcoholising or clearing medium in a watch-glass. This plan was faulty, because the alcohol escapes from the surface of the object into the air quicker (in most instances) than the de-alcoholising or clearing agent can get into it; hence the object must shrink. To avoid or lessen this cause of shrinkage, the operation is now generally done by the method suggested by Mayer and Giesbrecht, which consists in putting the clearing medium *under* the alcohol containing the object. This is done in the following manner. Take a short glass tube, and put into it enough alcohol to contain the objects (a watch-glass will often do well, but a tube is safer). With a pipette carefully put under the alcohol a sufficient quantity of clearing medium (or carefully pour the alcohol on to the clearing medium). Then put the objects into the alcohol. They will sink down to the level of separation of the two liquids at once; and after some time they will be found to have sunk to the bottom of the clearing medium. They should, however, not be considered to be perfectly penetrated by the clearing medium until the wavy refraction-lines caused by the mixture of the two liquids at their surface have ceased to form. They may then be removed by means of a pipette, or the supernatant alcohol drawn off and the preparations allowed to remain until wanted.

The penetration of all clearing media may be hastened by using them warm.

It frequently happens that the essential oil with which objects are being treated in a watch-glass or on a slide becomes cloudy after a short time, and fails to clear the tissues. This is owing to a combination between the essential oil and moisture, derived, I think, rather from the air than from the objects themselves. The cloudiness can usually be removed by warming (as pointed out by HATCHETT JACKSON, *Zool. Anzeig.*, 1889, p. 630), but this remedy is not always successful, for in certain moist states of the atmosphere the cloudiness will persist, notwithstanding continued warming. It is for this reason that I advise that clearing be done, whenever possible, in shallow, well-corked tubes, under which conditions the phenomenon rarely occurs. In any case, be careful not to breathe on the liquid.

107. Classification of De-alcoholisation and Clearing Agents.—NEELSEN and SCHIEFFERDECKER (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys.*, 1882, p. 206) examined a large series of ethereal oils (prepared by Schimmel and Co., Leipzig), with the object of finding a not too expensive substance that should combine the properties of clearing quickly alcohol preparations, *not* dissolving out anilin colours, clearing celloidin without dissolving it, not evaporating too quickly, and not having a too disagreeable smell.

Of these, the following three fulfil the conditions and can be *recommended*:—*Cedar-wood, Origanum, Sandal-wood.*

To these should be added the others recommended in the following paragraphs.

See also the paper of JORDAN, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, i, 1898, p. 50, which has special reference to the behaviour of some essential oils towards celloidin.

It would be important to possess a complete list of the exact indices of refraction of the substances used for clearing. I have, unfortunately, not been able to obtain sufficient information of a trustworthy nature for the compilation of such a list. Cedar oil has nearly the index of crown glass (this is true of the oil in the thick state to which it is brought by exposure to the air, not of the new, thin oil, which is less highly refractive), it therefore clears to about the same extent as Canada balsam. Clove oil has a much higher index, and therefore clears more than balsam; cinnamon oil higher still. Turpentine and bergamot oil have much lower indices, and therefore clear less.

The following short list, extracted from BEHRENS' *Tabellen zum Gebrauch bei mikroskopischen Arbeiten*, Braunschweig, 1892, p. 42, and other sources, may be useful, but the figures must be accepted with some caution, on account of the variability of samples. The figures given for balsam refer evidently to the resin in the solid state and not to the solutions used for mounting, which are certainly much lower according to the lower index of the solvent.

Air	1·000
Methyl alcohol	1·323
Distilled water	1·336
Sea water	1·343
Absolute alcohol	1·367
Acetate of potash, saturated aqueous sol.	1·370
Glycerin with an equal quantity of water	1·397
Glycerin, Price's	1·460
Oil of bergamot	1·464
Paraffinum liquidum	1·471
Olive oil	1·473
Oil of turpentine	1·473
Glycerin, "concentrated"	1·473
Castor oil	1·490
Cedar-wood oil, not thickened	1·510
Crown glass	1·518
Cedar-wood oil, thickened	1·520
Oil of lemons	1·527
Oil of cloves	1·533
Canada balsam (solid)	1·535
Creosote	1·538
Carbolic acid	1·549
Oil of anise seed	1·557
Anilin oil	1·580
Oil of cinnamon	1·619
Sulphide of carbon	1·630
Tolu balsam	1·640
Monobromide of naphthalin	1·660
Solution of sulphur in sulphide of carbon	1·750

See also the chapter on "Examination Media."

108. Choice of a De-alcoholisation or Clearing Agent.—Special directions for clearing are given when necessary under the heads of the different organs and tissues. It will suffice here to advise the beginner to keep on his table the following:—Oil of cedar, for general use and for preparing objects for imbedding in paraffin, see "*Imbedding Methods—Paraffin;*" clove oil, for making minute dissections in cases in which it is desirable to take advantage of the property of that essence of forming very convex drops on the slide, and of imparting a remarkable brittleness to soft tissues, and for much work with safranin, etc.; oil of bergamot which will clear from 90 per cent. alcohol, and which does not extract coal-tar colours; carbolic acid, for rapidly clearing very imperfectly dehydrated objects.

For special clearers for *celloidin sections* see "*Collodion (Celloidin) Imbedding Methods.*"

109. Cedar Oil (NEELSEN and SCHIEFFERDECKER, *loc. cit.*, § 107).—Thin, colour light yellow or greenish, odour slight (of cedar-wood), evaporates slowly, is not changed by light, is miscible with chloroform-balsam, and with castor oil.

Clears readily tissues in 95 per cent. alcohol without shrinkage; does not extract anilin colours. Celloidin sections are cleared in five to six hours.

Cheap, but requires an inconvenient length of time for the clearing of celloidin sections.

The observer should be careful as to the quality of the cedar oil he obtains. I have examined the clearing properties of a sample obtained from the celebrated firm of Rousseau, Paris. This sample was absolutely colourless. It *totally* failed to clear absolute alcohol objects after many days.

Cedar oil is very penetrating, and for this and other reasons is, in my experience, the very best of all media for preparing objects for paraffin imbedding. I find it to be *less hurtful to cells* and delicate tissue-structures than any other medium known to me.

110. Clove Oil.—Samples of clove oil of very different shades of colour are met with in commerce. It is frequently recommended that only the paler sorts should be employed in histology. A word of explanation is here necessary. Doubtless it is, in general, best to use a pale oil, provided it be pure, but it is not always easy to obtain a light-coloured oil that is pure. Clove oil passes very readily from yellow to brown with age, so that in choosing a colourless sample you run great risk of obtaining an adulterated sample, for clove oil is one of the most adulterated substances in commerce.

Two important properties of clove oil should be noticed here. It does not easily spread itself over the surface of a slide, but has a tendency to form very convex drops. This property makes it a very convenient medium for making minute dissections in. The second property I wish to call attention to is that of making tissues that have lain in it for some time very brittle. This brittleness is also sometimes very helpful in minute dissections.

These qualities may be counteracted if desired by mixing the clove oil with bergamot oil.

Clove oil has a high index of refraction, and clears objects *more* than balsam mounting media. It dissolves celloidin (or collodion), and therefore should not be used for clearing sections cut in that medium, without special precautions. I consider this to be one of the best of clearing agents, and valuable on account of the properties to which attention has been called above. New clove oil washes out anilin colours more quickly than old. It is well to possess trustworthy samples of both new and old oil.

111. **Cinnamon Oil** (*Erratim* "Cannel oil" in previous editions) greatly resembles clove oil, but is in general thinner, and is more highly refractive. An excellent medium, which I particularly recommend.

112. **Oil of Bergamot** (SCHIEFFERDECKER, *Arch. Anat. u. Phys.*, 1882 [Anat. Abth.], p. 206).—This oil clears 95 per cent. alcohol preparations and celloidin preparations quickly, and does not attack anilin colours. I think that this is valuable medium, and though I do not agree with Schiefferdecker in thinking its action superior to oil of cloves, I think it should always be kept at hand.

Bergamot oil is, I believe, the least refractive of these essences, having a lower index than even oil of turpentine.

SUCHANNEK (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 158) says that bleached, colourless bergamot oil will not take up much water, whereas a green oil will take up as much as 10 per cent.

VAN DER STRICHT (*Arch. de Biol.*, xii, 1892, p. 741) says that bergamot oil will, with time, dissolve out the fatty granules of certain ova.

113. **Oil of Origanum** (NEELSEN and SCHIEFFERDECKER, *Arch. Anat. u. Phys.*, 1882, p. 204).—Thin, light brown colour, odour not too strong, agreeable, does not evaporate too quickly, is not changed by light, is miscible with chloroform-balsam and with castor oil. Ninety-five per cent. alcohol preparations are cleared quickly, and so are celloidin sections, without solution of the celloidin. Anilin colours are somewhat extracted.

For work with celloidin sections care should be taken to obtain *Ol. Origani Cretici* ("Spanisches Hopfenöl"), not *Ol. Orig. Gallici* (v. GIESON; see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 482). Specimens of origanum oil vary greatly in their action on celloidin sections, and care should be taken to obtain a good sample.

SQUIRE, in his *Methods and Formulæ*, etc., p. 81, says that origanum oil (meaning the commercial product) is nothing but oil of white thyme more or less adulterated (see next §), and that the product sold as Ol. Origani Cretici is probably oil of marjoram.

114. Oil of Thyme.—FISH (*Proc. Amer. Mic. Soc.*, 1893; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 4, p. 503), following BUMPUS, says that for most of the purposes for which origanum oil has been recommended, oil of thyme will do just as well if not better. After one distillation of the crude oil of thyme it is of a reddish-brown colour, and is called the *red* oil of thyme; when again distilled it becomes colourless, and is distinguished as the *white* oil. The red oil is just as efficient as the white for clearing.

Schimmel and Co., in their Report of October, 1895, p. 69, state that in France white oil of thyme is adulterated with oil of turpentine to the extent of as much as 50 per cent. (MAYER).

115. Sandal-wood Oil (NEELSEN and SCHIEFFERDECKER, *ibid.*).—Very useful; but its high price is prohibitive.

116. Oil of Cajeput.—This oil is, I believe, frequently used as a clearer by the botanists. I have used it myself and found it to clear well, but to be rather thin. CARNOY AND LEBRUN (*La Cellule*, xiii, 1, 1897, p. 71) have found it useful for clearing celloidin sections. It dissolves celloidin very slowly and clears without shrinkage.

117. Oil of Turpentine.—Generally used for treating sections that have been cut in paraffin, as it has the property of dissolving out the paraffin and clearing the sections at the same time; but many other reagents (see § 139) are preferable for this purpose. If used for alcohol objects it causes considerable shrinkage, and *alters the structure of cells* more than any other clearing agent known to me. Turpentine has, I believe, the lowest index of refraction of all the usual clearing agents except bergamot oil; it clears objects *less* than balsam.

118. Carbolic Acid.—Best used in concentrated solution in alcohol. Clears instantaneously, even very watery preparations. This is a very good medium, but it is better avoided for preparations of soft parts which it is intended to mount in balsam, as they generally shrink by exosmosis when placed in the latter medium. It is, however, a good medium for celloidin sections.

119. Gage's **Mixture** (*Proc. Amer. Soc. Micr.*, 1890, p. 120; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 418).—Carbolic acid crystals melted, 40 c.c.; oil of turpentine, 60 c.c.

120. Creasote.—Much the same properties as carbolic acid. *Beech-wood* creasote is the sort that should be preferred for many purposes,—amongst others, for clearing celloidin sections, for which it is a very good medium.

121. Anilin Oil.—This is a rather important reagent on account of its ability to clear excessively watery objects. Common anilin oil will readily clear sections from 70 per cent. alcohol, and with certain precautions (for which see the paper of Suchannek quoted below) objects may be cleared from watery media without the intervention of alcohol at all. This property renders anilin valuable in certain cases as a penetrating medium for preparing for paraffin imbedding. For ordinary work the usual commercial anilin will suffice; and it is immaterial whether it be colourless or have become brown through oxidation. For difficult work it is well to use a perfectly anhydrous oil. For directions for preparing this see Suchannek, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 156, or the third edition of this work.

Anilin is chiefly used for clearing celloidin sections, and is sometimes found very valuable for this purpose.

122. Xylol, Benzol, Toluol, Chloroform.—Too volatile to be recommendable as clearing agents in which it is desired to *examine* specimens, but very useful for preparing paraffin sections for balsam. Of the three first-mentioned liquids, benzol is the most volatile, then toluol, and xylol is the least volatile, in the proportion of 4 : 5 : 9 (Squire, *Methods and Formulæ*, p. 20). Chloroform is injurious to some delicate stains, but is in other respects an excellent de-alcoholisation agent, as it will take up a good deal of water, if any be left in the preparations. I consider it too volatile for use before balsam. Xylol is the best of these in that respect; but it has the defect of mixing very slowly with alcohol. I now generally bring my sections from alcohol first into chloroform, to remove the alcohol; then into xylol, and thence into the balsam.

123. Amyl Alcohol.—Janssens (*La Cellule*, xiv, 1, 1898, p. 209) treats cover-glass preparations, taken from 95 per cent. alcohol, with amyl alcohol before mounting in damar or colophonium, with the view, if I understand rightly, of more efficaciously completing the dehydration of the preparations. I do not understand whether he mounts direct from the amyl alcohol or passes through an essence.

123a. Methyl Salicylate.—This is recommended by Guéguen (*Comp. Rend. Soc. Biol.*, v, 1898, p. 285; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 456) both as a de-alcoholisation and clearing agent, and as a solvent of paraffin.

CHAPTER VII.

IMBEDDING METHODS—INTRODUCTION.

124. A word on Microtomes.—It is no part of the purpose of this work to discuss instruments, yet a word on this subject may be helpful to the student. The freezing microtome so generally employed in England, and no doubt highly useful for the *pathologist*, is less than any other form adapted to the wants of the *zoologist*. Very thin sections can be obtained by it more readily than with any other microtome, but they are of little use when obtained. The relations of the parts of the organs are deranged by the freezing and by the thawing, and the aqueous nature of the process prevents it from being readily applicable to the mounting of *series* of sections. The microtome of the zoologist, therefore, must be an *imbedding* microtome.

Now there are two methods of imbedding in general use—the paraffin method and the celloidin method. In the paraffin method the object is cut *dry*, with the knife set square; whilst in the celloidin method the object is usually cut *wet*, and in a softer and more elastic state than paraffin objects, and always with an obliquely-set knife. It so happens that the most precise and beautiful microtomes that have been constructed are designed in view of the paraffin method, and cannot be applied, or at all events are much less adapted, to work with celloidin objects. A thoroughly equipped laboratory should therefore possess two microtomes, one for paraffin work, and one for celloidin material, or other material that has to be cut in the wet way. If the anatomist cannot afford two instruments, he will perhaps do well not to choose one of those that are adapted only for paraffin, but to choose an all-round instrument, one that without being absolutely of the highest attainable precision in paraffin work will yet give sufficiently good results in that way, and will also cut in the wet way.

Amongst microtomes fulfilling these conditions various forms will be found almost equally convenient. Zeiss makes a good one; Schanze, of Leipzig, makes a good one; Reichart, of Vienna, makes a good one. All these are relatively cheap, and, being at the same time perfectly efficient for easy work, may be recommended. Amongst more precise instruments of this class I particularly recommend *the* THOMA *sliding microtome*, as made, in several sizes, by R. Jung, Mechaniker in Heidelberg. For zoological and general histological work I recommend the *medium size* (No. 4), with the newest Naples object-holder and newest form of knife and knife-holder.

This instrument is described in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* (N.S.), vol. iii, p. 298; the new Naples object-holder (which I consider *essential* for the zoologist) is described and figured p. 915. See also the improvements described *op. cit.*, 1887, p. 334, and the latest price list of R. Jung (which may be obtained from Mr. C. Baker, Optician, 244, High Holborn, London, W.C.).

The BECKER *microtome* is also very much to be recommended (at least for paraffin work: as to celloidin I cannot say). It is essentially on the same principle as the Thoma, but possesses a mechanical arrangement for moving the knife-carrier; that is, the knife-carrier is not only *guided* by a mechanical arrangement, as in the Thoma model, but is *put in motion* by mechanism. This is frequently an advantage. It is made by Aug. Becker, Göttingen. Descriptions of two forms (Spengel and Schiefferdecker) will be found in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1886, pp. 884 and 1084. The Naples object-holder can be fitted to the Becker microtome.

The instruments above mentioned are "all-round" microtomes; by which is meant that they may be used either with a square-set knife or an obliquely-set knife, and (Jung's at all events) will cut either celloidin sections or frozen preparations (if a freezing apparatus be added to them) just as well as paraffin sections. They will not, according to my experience, cut series of paraffin sections with anything like the same infallible regularity, certainly not with the same rapidity as the instruments next to be mentioned. But they give excellent results, and in view of their adaptability to celloidin or other semi-soft preparations, I think that one of them, the Jung by preference, should be the instrument chosen by the worker who desires not to be entirely confined to the paraffin method, and who cannot conveniently possess more than one microtome.

All the instruments mentioned hitherto are *sliding microtomes*, that is instruments in which the object to be cut is a fixture during cutting, and the knife is moved on a slide and is only attached to its holder at one end. This arrangement will not allow the highest possible accuracy to be obtained with paraffin objects or any other hard objects. For with hard objects the knife is free to yield slightly on meeting the object, instead of cutting its way through it. This defect is fatal to the attainment of perfectly cut series of sections of equal thickness throughout. For the highest class of work it is necessary to employ a microtome constructed on the opposite principle, namely one in which the knife is a fixture, and fixed at both ends as near as possible to the cutting point; the object being moved against it. The following instruments are constructed on this principle, and for accurate cutting of paraffin sections seem to me in general superior to any sliding microtome. They also work incomparably quicker; and for this, and other reasons, are better adapted than the sliding microtomes for cutting *continuous ribbons* of sections. They cannot be considered to be "all-round" instruments, because (although some of them are fitted with an arrangement for that purpose) they are not well adapted for giving to the knife the oblique position and slow motion requisite for cutting objects of very hard, or very soft, or very heterogeneous consistency. Also, the object is placed in an awkward position for orientation and observation whilst cutting.

The *Cambridge rocking microtome* (furnished by the Cambridge Scientific Instrument Company, Carlyle Road, Cambridge, price £5, or by Messrs. Swift and Son, or by Jung) is only adapted for cutting paraffin sections (Mr. Swift has shown me an arrangement for inclining the knife so as to give it the position required for cutting celloidin ; but I feel pretty sure that this will prove a failure in practice). This instrument is extremely simple and extremely rapid, and, what is more important, cuts more level series of sections than any other microtome I am personally acquainted with. It should be fitted with an adjustable object-holder, allowing of precise orientation of the object. This, I believe, has been done in the newest (1900) model. Or the object-holder of Henneguy and Vignal (*Compt. Rend. Soc. Biol.*, 1885, p. 647) may be added to it. (This, as well as the entire instrument, is manufactured in France by Dumaige, 9, Rue de la Bucherie, Paris, or Messrs. Swift on request will furnish such an arrangement, or it may be obtained, with or without the entire instrument, from Jung, of Heidelberg.) See also in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 465, the description of an object-holder adapted to the rocking microtome by Hasselaer ; further, the price list of Jung ; also a paper in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii. 2, 1890, p. 165. Jung's form of the microtome is more expensive than the English one, but contains several very useful improvements in details.

It has been objected to this instrument by Schiefferdecker (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 171, a description and criticism of the instrument as made by Jung) that it does not cut plane sections, but sections having the form of segments of a cylinder. This is true ; but in practice the slight deviation of the sections from a plane figure is found to be quite inappreciable, and therefore unimportant. This slight defect has been overcome in the special model of 1895 ; but this costs £8 10*s*., and for ordinary work, such as does not require very large sections, may be dispensed with.

Rather more costly (£8 15*s*.) is the Minot microtome made by E. Zimmermann, Mechaniker, 21, Emilien Strasse, Leipzig. A description and figures of this instrument will be found in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 176, or in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 143. This microtome cuts plane sections. It cuts with very great rapidity. It is said that owing to the construction of the slide, which is subject to uncompensated wear and tear, its work is liable to fail in accuracy. The object-holder does not appear to be so scientifically constructed as the Naples one. Like the Cambridge instrument, this microtome is only adapted for paraffin work.

Mayer (*Grundzüge*) gives the preference to the form of this instrument made by A. Becker, of Göttingen, over that made by Zimmermann.

The most beautiful of all these instruments is the Reinhold-Giltay. It is constructed on essentially the same principle as the Minot, but the detail has been further elaborated, with the result of obtaining an instrument that is at the same time more precise in operation and more resistant to wear and tear, all working parts being compensated throughout.

It has an arrangement for allowing the cutting of collodion material. I am unable to say whether this is a success. It is made by J. W. Giltay, Delft, and costs about £20. A description will be found in *Zeit. f. wiss.*

Mik., ix, 4, 1893, p. 445, and in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1893, p. 706; and a description of some later improvements in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1, 1898, p. 23, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 106.

125. Imbedding Methods.—The processes known as Imbedding Methods are employed for a twofold end. Firstly, they enable us to surround an object, too small or too delicate to be firmly held by the fingers or by any instrument, with some plastic substance that will support it on all sides with firmness but without injurious pressure, so that by cutting sections through the composite body thus formed, the included object may be cut into sufficiently thin slices without distortion. Secondly, they enable us to fill out with the imbedding mass the natural cavities of the object, so that their lining membranes or other structures contained in them may be duly cut *in situ*; and, further, they enable us not only to surround with the supporting mass each individual organ or part of any organ that may be present in the interior of the object, but also to fill out or impregnate with it each separate cell or other anatomical element, thus giving to the tissues a consistency they could not otherwise possess, and ensuring that in the thin slices cut from the mass all the minutest details of structure will precisely retain their natural relations of position.

These ends are usually attained in one of two ways. Either the object to be imbedded is saturated by soaking with some material that is liquid while warm and solid when cold, which is the principle of the processes here called *Fusion Imbedding Methods*; or the object is saturated with some substance which whilst in solution is sufficiently fluid to penetrate the object to be imbedded, whilst at the same time, after the evaporation or removal by other means of its solvent, it acquires and imparts to the imbedded object sufficient firmness for the purpose of cutting. The collodion process sufficiently exemplifies this principle. If a piece of soft tissue be dehydrated, and soaked first in ether and then in collodion, and if the ether contained in the collodion be allowed slowly to evaporate, the tissue and mass of collodion which penetrates and surrounds it will acquire a consistency such as to admit of thin sections being cut from them. The methods founded on this principle are here called *Evaporation Imbedding Methods.*

In any of these cases the material used for imbedding is technically termed an "imbedding mass"—*Einbettungsmasse* —*masse d'inclusion.* Imbedding methods are spoken of by French writers as *méthodes d'inclusion,* or *méthodes d'enrobage.*

As before stated, the method most generally employed, and the one which may be considered the normal anatomical method, is the paraffin method.

126. Imbedding Manipulations.—Imbedding in a melted mass, such as paraffin, is performed in one of the following ways. A little tray or box or thimble is made out of paper, some melted mass is poured into it; at the moment when the mass has cooled so far as to have a consistency that will not allow the object to sink to the bottom, the object is placed on its surface, and more melted mass poured on until the object is covered by it. Or the paper tray being placed on cork, the object may be fixed in position in it whilst empty by means of pins and the tray filled with melted mass at one pour. The pins are removed when the mass is cold.

In either case, when the mass is cold the paper is removed from it before cutting.

To make **paper trays,** proceed as follows. Take a piece of stout paper or thin cardboard, of the shape of the annexed figure (Fig. 1); thin (foreign) post-cards do very well indeed. Fold it along the lines *a a′* and *b b′*, then along *c c′* and *d d′*, taking care to fold always the same way. Then make the folds *A A′*, *B B′*, *C C′*, *D D′*, still folding the same way. To do this you apply *A c* against *A a,* and pinch out the line *A A′*, and so on for the remaining angles. This done, you have an imperfect tray with dogs' ears at the angles. To finish it, turn the dogs' ears round against the ends of the box, turn down outside the projecting flaps that remain, and pinch them down. A well-made post-card tray will last through several imbeddings, and will generally work better after having been used than when new.

Another method of folding the paper (Mayer) is described in the *Grundzüge,* p. 72.

To make **paper thimbles,** take a good cork, twist a strip of paper several times round it so as to make a projecting collar, and stick a pin through the bottom of the paper into the cork. For work with fluid masses, such as celloidin,

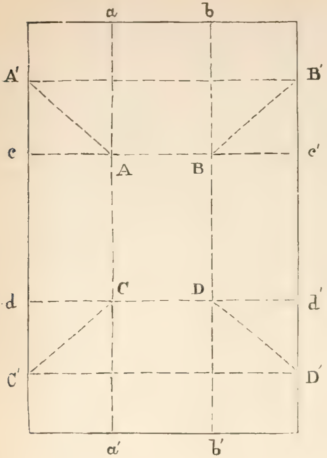


Fig. 1.

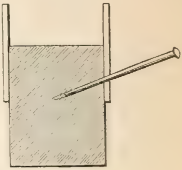


Fig. 2.

the cork may be loaded at the bottom by means of a nail or piece of lead, to prevent it from floating when the whole is thrown into spirit or other liquor for hardening (Fig. 2).

Leuckhart's **Imbedding Boxes** are made of two pieces of type-metal (Fig. 3). Each of these pieces has the form of a carpenter's "square" with the end of the shorter arm triangularly enlarged outwards. The box is constructed by placing the two pieces together on a plate of glass which has been wetted with glycerin and gently warmed. The area of the box will evidently vary according to the position given to the pieces, but the height can be varied only by using different sets of pieces. Two sets will be sufficient for most work; one set of one centimetre in height, and one of two centimetres, each being eight centimetres in length, and three in breadth. To make the box paraffin-tight, so that it will hold the melted paraffin long enough in the liquid state to permit of the objects being carefully orientated in it, Mayer (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, iv, 1883, p. 429) first smears the glass plate with glycerin, then arranges the metal "squares," and then fills the box with collodion, which is poured out again immediately. As the ether evaporates, a thin layer of collodion remains behind, which suffices to keep the paraffin from running out. Even without the collodion, the mere cooling of the paraffin by the metal will generally suffice to keep it in long enough for orientation, if it is not in a superheated state when it is poured in.

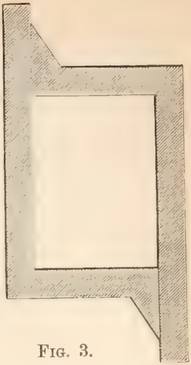


FIG. 3.

In such a collodionised box the paraffin may be kept in a liquid state by warming now and then over a spirit lamp, and small objects be placed in any desired position under the microscope (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N.S.], ii, p. 880).

A lighter form of "squares," made of brass, and devised by ANDRES, GIESBRECHT, and MAYER, is described *loc. cit.* (see *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1883, p. 913).

FRANKL (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1897, p. 438) builds up boxes with rectangular blocks of glass, which may be found convenient, but are more expensive than the metal squares.

SELENKA has described and figured another sort of apparatus having the same object. It consists of a glass tube, through which a stream of warm water may be passed and changed for cold as desired, the object being placed in a depression in the middle of the tube (see *Zool. Anz.*, 1885, p. 419). A simple modification of this apparatus, which anyone may make for himself, is described by ANDREWS in *Amer. Natural.*, 1887, p. 101; cf. *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 3, 1887, p. 375; or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 510; and a more complicated imbedding and orienting box, seldom necessary, is described by JORDAN, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1, 1899, p. 32; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 132, 1899, p. 549.

For **small paraffin objects** the following procedure is very useful. The object is removed from the melted paraffin, the superfluous paraffin is removed by means of blotting-paper, and the object placed on a cylinder of paraffin. A piece of stout iron wire is now heated in the flame of a spirit lamp, and with it a hole is melted in the end of the cylinder; the specimen is pushed into the melted paraffin, and placed in any desired position. The advantages of the method lie in the quickness and certainty with which it can be performed.

There remains **the watch glass method.** Melt paraffin in a watch glass, and throw the object, previously well dealcoholised and penetrated with a solvent, into it; or place the object in the watch glass, add solid paraffin, and heat. After the mass has hardened, cut out a block containing the object (*this is of course applicable to other masses,* such as celloidin). This should be done with a thin-bladed knife, *slightly* warmed. If paraffin be used you may, instead of cutting out a block, turn out the whole mass of paraffin by simply warming rapidly the bottom of the glass, but I find it is far safer to cut out a block. To facilitate the removal of the mass some persons lubricate the watch glass before pouring in the mass. To do this a drop of glycerin or, according to some, clove oil, should be smeared over it and wiped off with a cloth until hardly a trace of it remains. But this is not necessary.

As regards *small objects* at all events, I consider the watch glass process to be *the very best of any.*

For imbedding *very small* objects in this way certain precautions may be necessary in order not to lose them. SAMTER (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1894, p. 469) saturates small unstained objects with paraffin that has previously been strongly coloured with alkanna extract, and then imbeds them in pure paraffin. The objects do not stain with the alkanna. RHUMBLER (*ibid.*, xii, 1895, p. 312; and xiii, 3, 1896, p. 303) stains previously the objects themselves lightly with eosin dissolved in strong alcohol, and removes the stain from the sections with weak alcohol. See also *ibid.*, xiii, 2, p. 200, a paper by SCHYDLOWSKI; and in *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, lviii, 1897, p. 144, a process of BORGERT.

127. Choice of a Method.—Amongst the very various methods of imbedding that have been proposed two are pre-eminently important—the paraffin method for small objects, and the celloidin or collodion method for large objects; indeed these are the only ones that have survived in general use.

The subject of the respective merits of paraffin and celloidin still affords matter for discussion. The case, however, seems to be a very simple one. Celloidin does not afford by a long way the thinnest sections that are obtainable with small objects. For such objects it is, therefore, not equal to the demands made by modern minute anatomy, and paraffin must be taken. On the other hand, paraffin (as at present employed) will only cut *very thin* sections with fairly small objects; with objects of much over half an inch in diameter you cannot get with paraffin thinner sections than you can with celloidin; and if you try to cut in paraffin objects of still greater size, say an inch and upwards, it will frequently happen that you will not get perfect sections at all, blocks of paraffin of this size having a tendency to split under the impact of the knife; so that for very large objects celloidin generally gives better results, in this respect, besides presenting certain advantages for the manipulation and staining of the sections.

This defect is, however, much reduced by the employment of a softer paraffin than is usual. In this way Strasser (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1892, p. 7) has obtained series of frontal sections 30 μ thick through the entire human brain, in paraffin blocks measuring 10 × 15 cm.

I have not been able to satisfy myself that the preservation of the tissues is better in celloidin sections than in paraffin sections; so that—convenience apart—the case remains as above stated,—paraffin for small sections, celloidin for large ones.

To these may be added aqueous masses, such as gum or gelatin, for very special cases.

CHAPTER VIII.

IMBEDDING METHODS—PARAFFIN AND OTHER FUSION MASSES.

128. Saturation with a Solvent.—The first stage of the paraffin method consists in the saturation of the object with some substance which is a solvent of paraffin. The process is sometimes called a clearing process, since many of the substances used for infiltration are also "clearing" agents.

The process of saturation should be carefully performed with well-dehydrated objects in the manner described in § 106.

Saturation liquids being liquids that are, on the one hand, miscible with alcohol, and on the other hand good solvents of paraffin, are not quite as numerous as could be wished. Amongst them may be mentioned essence of turpentine, clove oil, bergamot oil, benzol, xylol, toluol, naphtha, oil of cedar-wood, chloroform, and anilin oil. But they are by no means all equally good, for few of them are as good solvents of paraffin as is desirable.

Turpentine penetrates well, and mixes readily with paraffin. I do not, however, recommend it, because in my experience it is of all others the clearing agent that is the most hurtful to delicate structures.

Clove oil penetrates well, and preserves delicate structures well; but it mixes very imperfectly with paraffin, and quickly renders tissues brittle.

Benzol has been recommended by Brass (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 1885, p. 301).

Toluol (or toluen) has been recommended by Holl (*Zool. Anz.*, 1885, p. 223).

Naphtha has been recommended by Webster (*Journ. Anat. and Physiol.*, xxv, 1891, p. 278). For large specimens it has the advantage of being very cheap. Dr. Webster writes me that a quality known as "Persian naphtha" is best for fine work, but the common pure naphtha is sufficient for ordinary work.

FIELD and MARTIN (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1, 1894, p. 10) recommend a light petroleum known as "petroleum-æther."

Xylol is said by M. HEIDENHAIN (*Kern und Protoplasma*, p. 114) to be a cause of shrinkage in cells; he employs oil of bergamot. This, according to APÁTHY (*Mikrotechnik*, p. 117), only dissolves very little paraffin.

For Guéguen's methyl salicylate, see § 123a.

Chloroform mixes well with paraffin, and after evaporation in a paraffin bath (in the manner described in the next paragraph) leaves behind a pure and very homogeneous paraffin, having but little tendency to crystallise. But it is deficient in penetrating power, so that it requires an excessive length of time for clearing objects of any size; and it must be very thoroughly got rid of by evaporation in the paraffin bath, or by successive baths of paraffin, as if the least trace of it remains in the paraffin used for cutting it will make it soft. The process of removal requires a very long time, in some cases days. Chloroform ought therefore to be reserved for small and easily penetrable objects. Under suitable conditions, and properly employed, it is certainly one of the best, if not the very best of these media.

Cedar-wood oil is, according to my continued experience, for the reasons stated by me in *Zool. Anz.*, 1885, p. 563, for general work the *very best* clearing agent for paraffin imbedding. It penetrates extremely rapidly, preserves delicate structure better than any clearing agent known to me, does not make tissues brittle, even though they may be kept for weeks or months in it, and has the great advantage that if it be not entirely removed from the tissues in the paraffin bath it will not seriously impair the cutting consistency of the mass; indeed, I fancy it sometimes improves it by rendering it less brittle. I do not mean to assert that it is in *all cases* the best, for for some fine work I think chloroform may give more accurate results. And it may often be indicated to employ the two reagents successively, as recommended by APÁTHY, *see* next §.

In some difficult cases anilin oil is indicated (see § 121).

129. The Paraffin Bath.—The objects having been duly saturated with a solvent, the next step is to substitute melted paraffin for the saturating medium.

Some authors lay great stress on the necessity of making the passage from the saturating agent to the paraffin as gradual as possible, by means of successive baths of mixtures of solvent and paraffin kept melted at a low temperature, say 35° C. With oil of cedar or toluol, at all events, this is not necessary. All that is necessary is to bring the objects into melted paraffin kept just at its melting-point, and keep them there till they are thoroughly saturated; the paraffin being changed once or twice for fresh only if the objects are sufficiently voluminous to have brought over with them a notable quantity of clearing agent.

The practice of giving successive baths first of soft and then of hard paraffin appears to me *entirely illusory*.

It is important to keep the paraffin *dry*—that is protected from vapour of water during the bath.

It is still more important to keep it as nearly as possible at melting-point. If it be heated for some time to a point much over its normal melting-point, *the melting-point will rise*, and you will end by having a harder paraffin than you set out with. And as regards the preservation of tissues, of course the less they are heated the better. Overheating, as well as prolonged heating, tends, amongst other things, to make tissues brittle.

The *duration of the bath* must, of course, vary according to the size and nature of the object. An embryo of 2 to 3 millimetres in thickness ought to be thoroughly saturated after an hour's bath, or often less, if cedar oil has been used for clearing. Many workers habitually give much longer baths, I think often longer than necessary. I take as a guide, generally, the length of time the object has taken to clear in the cedar oil, assuming that the *warm* melted paraffin ought to penetrate at least as quickly as the *cold* oil; and then allowing somewhat longer, say as much again, in order to be on the right side.

In any case the preparations should be *cooled* (see below, § 132) *as soon as saturated*. If left for very many hours in a warm bath, as is sometimes done, delicate structures may be seriously injured. Who can say what is not dissolved out of cells by prolonged heating in mixtures of paraffin with chloroform or benzol, or the like? Indeed, it seems to me that the great point to be attended to in paraffin work of the finer order is to minimise the action of heat. It is therefore important both to employ a paraffin of the lowest melting-point that will give good sections (see below, § 141), and to abbreviate the warm bath as much as possible.

If chloroform or other volatile agent be taken, choice may be made of two methods: either, as in Giesbrecht's method, the chloroform containing the object is heated to the melting-point of the paraffin, and the paraffin gradually added, and the mass kept at the melting-point of the pure paraffin until all the chloroform is driven off; or, as in Bütschli's method, the objects are simply passed direct from chloroform into a solution of paraffin in chloroform, in which they remain until thoroughly impregnated (half to one hour), and which is then evaporated at the melting-point of the paraffin. Bütschli recommends a paraffin solution melting at 35°. (Such a solution is made of about equal parts of chloroform and paraffin of 50° melting-point.) Or, in the case of larger objects, instead of evaporating the chloroform (which is often a very long process, as the chloroform must be *completely* driven off, or the mass will remain too soft for cutting), Bütschli simply transfers them from the bath of paraffin solution to a bath of pure paraffin.

Giesbrecht's method (*Zool. Anz.*, 1881, p. 484), more fully stated, is as follows:

Objects to be imbedded are saturated with absolute alcohol and then brought into chloroform (to which a little sulphuric ether has been added if necessary, in order to prevent the objects from floating). As soon as the objects are saturated with the chloroform, the chloroform and objects are gradually warmed up to the melting-point of the paraffin employed, and during the warming small pieces of paraffin are by degrees added to the chloroform. So soon as it is seen that no more bubbles are given off from the objects, the addition of paraffin may cease, for that is a sign that the paraffin has entirely displaced the chloroform in the objects. This displacement having been a *gradual* one, the risk of shrinkage of the tissues is reduced to a minimum.

MAYER (*Grundzüge*, p. 78) first saturates the objects with benzol, which should be changed once or twice so as to make sure of removing all the alcohol, and then adds to the pure benzol some small pieces of paraffin, and lets them dissolve in the cold. After several hours (up to eighteen) the whole is brought in an open vessel on to the cold water-bath, the bath is then warmed gradually so as to attain a temperature of 60° C. in about two hours, and as fast as the benzol evaporates melted paraffin is added to it. Lastly, the paraffin is changed once before the definitive imbedding. He rarely leaves objects over night in the water-bath.

Apáthy (*Mikrotechnik,* pp. 149-150) first clears with oil of cedar, then brings the objects (by the process described § 106) into a solution of paraffin in chloroform saturated at the temperature of the laboratory. The objects remain in the chloroform-paraffin solution for from one to three hours, without warming, until all the cedar oil is soaked out of them. The whole is then warmed on the water-bath or oven to a few degrees above the melting-point of the paraffin intended to be used for imbedding, and the object is brought into a mixture of equal parts of paraffin and chloroform, being suspended therein near the top on a bridge made of hardened filter paper (or in a special apparatus to the same end, not yet described). It remains in this mixture, at the temperature of the oven, for one to three hours, and lastly is brought (still on the paper bridge or in the apparatus) into pure paraffin, where it remains for half an hour to two hours.

Heidenhain (*Festschr. f. Koelliker,* Leipzig, 1892, p. 114) clears with bergamot oil, and passes into pure paraffin through mixtures of the oil and paraffin. Rabl also (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1894, p. 164) employs bergamot oil.

130. Water-baths and Ovens.—It is important that the paraffin should not be exposed to a moist atmosphere whilst it is in the liquid state. If a water-bath be used for keeping it at the required temperature, provision should be made for protecting the paraffin from the steam of the heated water.

A very convenient apparatus for this purpose is that of Paul Mayer, or "Naples water-bath," which will be found described at p. 146 of *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1883. It may be procured from the opticians, *e. g.* Mr. Baker. See also *Amer. Natural.*, 1886, p. 910; and *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 167.

Other similar forms of paraffin heating apparatus are described in several places in the same journal, as also in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*

Amongst apparatus arranged for heating by means of petroleum or similar combustibles other than gas may be mentioned the stove manufactured and sold by F. Santorius, Göttingen (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 2, 1893, p. 161), and that of Altmann (*ibid.*, p. 221, cf. *Centralb. f. Bakteriol.*, xii, 1892, p. 654); also that of Karawaiew, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 2, 1896, p. 172.

For ordinary work it is by no means necessary, though it may be convenient, to possess one of these costly and complicated heat-regulating contrivances; a spirit lamp with the wick well turned down, or a night-light, will suffice to keep the temperature constant enough, if watched occasionally.

Ovens are, I think, only necessary in laboratories where several students have to work with the same apparatus; for the private worker I think the water-bath is more convenient.

131. Imbedding in Vacuo.—There are objects which, on account of their consistency or their size, cannot be penetrated by paraffin in the ordinary way, even after hours or days in the bath. For such objects the method of imbedding under a vacuum (strictly, under diminished atmospheric pressure), renders the greatest service. It not only ensures complete penetration in a very short time—a few minutes—but it has the further advantage of *preventing any falling in of the tissues*, such as may easily happen with objects possessing internal cavities if it be attempted to imbed them in the ordinary way.

The principle of this method is that the objects are put through the paraffin bath *in vacuo*. In practice this may be realised by means of any arrangement that will allow of maintaining paraffin at the necessary temperature for keeping it fluid under a vacuum.

The apparatus of Hoffmann is described and figured at p. 230 of *Zool. Anz.*, 1884. In this arrangement the vacuum is produced by means of a pneumatic water aspiration pump, the vessel containing the paraffin being placed in a desiccator heated by a water-bath and furnished with a tube that brings it into communication with the suction apparatus. This arrangement is very efficacious and very simple if the laboratory possesses a supply of water under sufficient pressure.

In order to obtain the requisite vacuum without the aid of water under pressure, a simple little apparatus has been designed by Francotte (*Bull. Soc. Belg. Mic.*, 1884, p. 45). In this the vacuum is produced by the condensation of steam.

Fol (*Lehrb.*, p. 121) employs the vacuum apparatus of Hoffmann, but simplifies the arrangement for containing the paraffin. The paraffin is contained in a stout test-tube furnished with a rubber stopper traversed by a tube that puts it into communication with the pump. The lower end of the test-tube dips into a water-bath. You pump out the air once or twice, wait a few minutes to make sure that no more bubbles rise, then let the air in, turn out the object with the paraffin (which by this time will have become abnormally hard), and re-imbed in fresh paraffin.

See also a paper by Pringle, in *Journ. Path. and Bacteriol.*, 1892, p. 117; or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 893.

132. Imbedding and Cooling.—As soon as the objects are thoroughly saturated with paraffin they should be imbedded by one of the methods given above (§ 126). *If the watch glass method be followed* the paraffin bath will naturally have been given in the watch glass used for imbedding, and *no special imbedding manipulation will be necessary.* In any case the important point now to be attended to is that *the paraffin be cooled as rapidly as possible.* The object of this is to prevent crystallisation of the paraffin, which may happen if it be allowed to cool slowly, and to get as homogeneous a mass as possible.

Very small objects may be taken out of the paraffin with a needle or small spatula, and put to cool on a block of glass, then imbedded in position for cutting on a cone of paraffin by means of a heated needle in the manner described above (§ 126). In the use of the needle it should be noted that it is important *to melt as little paraffin as possible at one time,* in order that that which is melted may cool again as rapidly as possible.

For Boveri's plan for imbedding numerous very small objects see "Embryological Methods," and for that of Lauterborn see "Protozoa."

If the watch glass method be adopted, float the watch glass with the paraffin and objects on to cold water. Do not let it sink till all the paraffin has solidified. When cool, cut out blocks containing the objects; do this with a *slightly* warmed scalpel.

If paper trays be taken, cool them on water, holding them above the surface with only the bottom immersed until all the paraffin has solidified, as if you let them go to the bottom at once you will probably get cavities filled with water formed in your paraffin. Or you may put them to cool on a block of cold metal or stone.

Preparations imbedded in the metal "squares" are cooled in a similar manner.

Selenka cools the mass by passing a stream of cold water through the imbedding tube described above (§ 126). Mayer cools the mass in the paraffin-tight moulds § 126 by passing cold water through a special movable water-bath, which allows of the arrangement of the objects by transmitted light under a dissecting microscope, see *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, iv, 1883, p. 429; *Intern. Monatsschr. Anat. Hist.*, iv, 1887, p. 39.

The objects having been mounted on the carrier of the microtome in position for cutting, pare the blocks to the proper shape (see below, § "Cutting") and sufficiently close down to the objects, and go round them with a lens. If any bubbles or cavities or opaque spots be present, prick with a heated needle till all is smooth and homogeneous. Minutes spent in this way are well invested.

It is said by some workers that it is well to cut within a few hours of imbedding if the structure be at all delicate, as paraffin may continue to crystallise slowly to a certain extent even after rapid cooling. But this danger is very greatly diminished if the mass have been properly cooled. And according to my experience the damage likely to arise from the crystallisation of the paraffin has been greatly exaggerated. As stated in § 3, I find no better medium for the preservation of tissues than paraffin.

133. Orientation of the Object.—The above-described manipulations of definitive imbedding are in most cases sufficient. But it may be desirable to have the object fixed in the cooled block in a more precisely-arranged position, and, above all, in a more precisely-marked position, than is possible by these simple methods. Here is a method due to PATTEN (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1, 1894, p. 13), which is especially useful when one desires to orient accurately large numbers of small and similar objects. You get some writing paper of the sort that is made with two sets of raised parallel lines running at right angles to each other (according to WOODWORTH, see below, this is known as "linen cloth paper"). Small strips are cut from this, and at suitable intervals along them small drops of a mixture of collodion and clove oil, of about the consistency of thick honey, are arranged close together along one of the ribs that run lengthwise. The objects to be imbedded are cleared in clove oil or oil of bergamot—not turpentine. They are taken one by one on the point of a knife, and after the excess of oil has been drawn off are transferred each to a drop of the collodion mixture. They may be adjusted therein under the dissecting microscope, and will stay in any required position. When half a dozen or more objects have been oriented in reference to the cross lines (which are to be parallel to the section planes) the whole thing is placed in turpentine. This washes out the clove oil and fixes the objects very firmly to the paper. The paper with the attached objects is now passed through the bath of paraffin and imbedded in the usual way. After cooling on water the block is trimmed and the paper peeled off, leaving the objects in the paraffin close to the under surface of the block. This surface is now seen to be marked by the orienting lines of the ribbed paper, and also by any record numbers which may before imbedding have been written with a soft pencil on the paper.

A somewhat more complicated form of this process has been described by Woodworth, *Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool.*, xxxviii, vol. xxv, 1893, p. 45.

A similar process has also been described by Field and Martin in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, i, 1894, p. 11, small strips of gelatin being used instead of paper.

Hoffmann (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 3, 1899, p. 312) prefers to take, instead of the ribbed paper, glass slides ruled with a diamond, and to completely imbed the objects in large drops of clove oil collodion (equal parts, allowed to stand for twenty-four hours in an open vessel). The drops are caused to set in xylol instead of turpentine. See also Samter, *ibid.*, xiii, 4, 1897, p. 441, and Peter, *Verh. Anat. Ges.*, xiii Vers., 1899, p. 134. This subject is further treated under the head of "Reconstruction from Sections" in the chapter on *Embryological Methods*, which see.

134. Knife-position and Shape of Mass to be Cut.—Even with the most perfectly imbedded objects it is frequently impossible to obtain sections that are good in every way—thin, regular in thickness, not torn, not compressed, not rolled or curled, and not folded or undulating in surface—without careful attention to a host of minute details. These details concern (*a*) the position of the knife, and (*b*) the consistency (and in a minor degree the shape and position) of the mass to be cut.

(*a*) *The knife-position* may be considered under two heads, viz. its *slant* and its *tilt*.

By the *slant* of the knife is meant the angle that its edge makes with the line of section: that is, with the line along which it is drawn through the object (or along which the object moves across it in the case of microtomes with fixed knives). The position is *transverse* when the edge makes an angle of 90° with the line of section, or the knife in that case is said to be set *square*. It is *oblique* or *slanting* when it makes a smaller angle with that line.

It is a mistake to suppose that these two positions differ in that in the transverse position the knife acts as a wedge or ploughshare, forcing its way straight through the object, whilst in the oblique position it acts as a saw, its edge being *drawn along* through the object, as in free-hand cutting. On the contrary, in both cases the knife acts merely as a wedge, and no microtome in general use at the present time* affords a drawing movement such as can be given by the hand. In either position of the knife *no point of the object is ever touched by more than one point of the cutting-edge.* The difference between the effect of the two positions is merely that the oblique position affords *a more acute-angled wedge* than the transverse one.

---

* A microtome with drawing motion to the knife is described by Beck in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 3, 1897, p. 324.

It does so for the following reason:—Neglecting for the moment the distinction between the cutting-facets and the surfaces of the blade (which are distinct usually because they are not ground to the same angle),* it is clear that the knife itself is a wedge, the angle of which depends on the relation between the height of its base and the distance from the base to the edge. With the same base the angle becomes more acute the greater the distance from edge to base. Now by slanting the knife we can effect what is equivalent to an increase in the distance from edge to base; for we can thus increase the distance between the point of the edge which first touches the object, and the point of the back (strictly, of the back edge of the under cutting-facet) which last leaves it. When the knife is set transversely, the line along which any point of it traverses the object is the shortest possible from edge to base of the wedge, and the *effective* angle of wedge is the least acute obtainable with that knife. But if it is set as obliquely as possible, the line along which any point of it traverses the object traverses the knife from heel to toe, that is, along the greatest possible distance from edge to base, and therefore affords *practically* a much more acute-angled wedge than in the first case; and so on, of course, for intermediate positions. (See the stereometrical constructions of these relations by SCHIEFFERDECKER, *op. cit.*, p. 115; and also, with more instructive figures, APÁTHY, "Ueber die Bedeutung des Messerhalters in der Mikrotomie," in *Sitzberg. med.-naturw. Section d. Siebenbürgischen Museumvereins*, Bd. xix, Heft 7, p. 1 (Kolozsvár, 1897, A. K. Ajtai).

Very large objects are best cut with the slanting knife, and so are all objects of very heterogeneous consistency, such as tissues that contain much chitin or much muscular tissue. In general all very difficult objects are better cut with the slanting knife than the transverse one (and better with a slowly-working sliding microtome than with a quick-working Rocker or the like). Soft masses, such as gelatin or celloidin cut wet, can only be cut with the slanting knife. The slanting position causes less *compression* of sections than the transverse one. It has the defect of producing rolling in paraffin sections more easily than the transverse position. The latter is the proper position for cutting ribbons of sections from paraffin.

By the *tilt* of the knife is meant the angle that a plane passing through its back and edge makes with the plane of section: or, practically, the greater or less degree of elevation of the back above the edge (it is not to be confounded with the inclination of the long axis of the knife to the horizon; any accidental inclination that this may have is a matter of no moment).

---

* The edge of a microtome knife is composed of two plane surfaces—the upper and lower cutting-facets, which meet one another at an acute angle, the cutting-edge, and posteriorly join on to the upper and lower surfaces of the blade (see some good figures of differently shaped knives in BEHRENS, KOSSEL und SCHIEFFERDECKER, *Das Mikroskop.*, p. 115, *et seq.*; and in APÁTHY's paper quoted below). It will be seen that the two facets together form a wedge welded on to the blade by the base.

The question of the proper tilt to be given to the knife under different circumstances has been investigated by Apáthy, *loc. cit. supra.* He concludes—(1) The knife should always be tilted somewhat more than enough to bring the back of the under cutting-facet clear of the object. (2) It should in general be less tilted for hard and brittle objects than for soft ones; therefore, *cæteris paribus,* less for paraffin than for celloidin. (3) The extent of useful tilt varies between 0° and 16° or occasionally 20°. (4) Excessive tilt causes rifts (longitudinal) in the paraffin, also furrows that in bad cases split up the section into narrow ribbons. It also makes sections roll. Also it may cause the knife not to bite, thus causing sections to be missed. Or it may give an undulatory surface to the sections, owing to vibrations set up in the knife, which may be heard as a deep humming tone. Further, I would add, excessive tilt may cause the knife to act as a scraper, carrying away portions of tissue bodily from their places. Excessive tilt may often be recognised by the knife giving out a short metallic sound just as it leaves the object. For knives with plane under surfaces it is seldom advisable to give less than 10 degrees tilt. Knives with concave under surfaces, on the contrary, may require to be placed almost horizontal. Jung's knife-holders give mostly a tilt of about 9°, which is only enough for cutting ribbons with hard paraffin.

A knife with too little tilt will often cut a second section, or fragments of one, without the object being raised, showing that during the first cut the object was pressed down by the knife, and recovered itself afterwards. This fault is denoted by the ringing tone given out by the knife on passing *back* over the object before the latter is raised. Such a knife gives out a dull rattling sound whilst cutting. Too little tilt causes folding or puckering of sections, and does not allow of the cutting of the thinnest possible sections, as the edge does not bite enough.

Ribbon section-cutting requires a relatively hard paraffin and less tilt. With celloidin it is very important to avoid insufficient tilt, as the elastic celloidin yields before an insufficiently tilted knife and is not cut.

The tilt of the knife is regulated by means of mechanical contrivances, of which the most simple are the horseshoe-shaped wedges of Neumayer (see Jung's price-list). A pair of these, each ground to the same angle, is taken, and one of them placed under, and the other over, the clamping-arm of the knife-holder. Three pairs, having different degrees of pitch, are supplied, and are sufficient for most work. Other contrivances to the same end consist of knife-holders that permit of rotating the knife on its long axis, and, though more costly, will be found a great convenience where much section-cutting has to be done. For these see Jung's price-list, and various recent papers in the *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, also that of Apáthy, in the paper quoted above (very complicated), and especially the description of the two latest of Jung, viz. his model *l* and model *n*, by Mayer and Schoebel, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 29 (see figure of model *l* in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 132, 1899, p. 546).

(*b*) As to the consistency and shape and orientation of the mass to be cut. Solid paraffin varies enormously in hardness according to the temperature of its surroundings. It must therefore be taken of a melting-point *suitable to the temperature of the laboratory*, harder (*i. e.* of higher melting-point) in summer, softer in winter. On this point see below, § 141.

As to the shape and orientation to be given to the block to be cut, these differ accordingly as the cutting is done with a slanting knife or a square-set knife. In the first case, the block is best trimmed to a three-sided prism, and orientated as in Fig. 4, so that the knife enters it at the angle *a* and leaves it at the angle *c*. When the section is cut it will adhere to the knife only by the angle *c*, and can thus most readily be removed by means of a brush or needle. The object itself should come to lie in the block close to the line *b c*, so that the knife at first cuts only paraffin, and that if the section begins to *roll* it may be caught and held down by a brush or section-stretcher before the object itself is reached. For the square-set knife the block is best trimmed to a four-

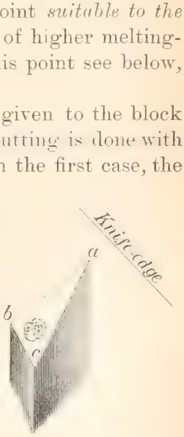


Fig. 4.

sided prism, and orientated as in the first case, so that the knife first touches one angle, if the sections are to be cut singly. But if *ribbons* are to be cut, the block must be orientated with one of its sides parallel to the knife-edge, and the opposite side must be strictly parallel to this one.

For Noack's simple apparatus for accurately orientating small blocks, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.* xv, 1899, p. 438, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 132, 1899, p. 550.

For Eternod's machine for trimming blocks to true cubes, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 4, p. 421, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 450.

135. Cutting and Section-stretching.—Paraffin sections are cut *dry*—that is, with a knife not moistened with alcohol or other liquid. By this means better sections are obtained, but a difficulty generally arises owing to the tendency of sections so cut to curl up on the blade of the knife. It is sometimes difficult by any means to unroll a thin section that has curled. To prevent sections from *rolling*, the following points should be attended to.

First and foremost, the paraffin *must not be too hard*, but must be taken of a melting-point *suitable to the temperature of the laboratory*, see § 141.

The exact degree of hardness necessary must be determined by experiment. If, after cutting has begun, the paraffin be found to be too hard, it may be softened by placing a lamp, or any convenient source of heat, near the imbedded object. I find that a mere spirit lamp set up near the object will sometimes bring the paraffin to the right consistency in a few minutes. But then, the paraffin being warmed most on the side nearest the lamp, becomes softer on that side, and the sections have a tendency to become compressed and puckered-in on that side.

If, on the contrary, the paraffin be found too soft, it may be hardened by exposing it to the cooling influence of a lump of ice placed in the focus of a parabolic reflector.

It is often sufficient to moderate the temperature of the room by opening or closing the window, stirring the fire, setting up a screen, or the like.

Secondly, the knife should be set square, for the oblique position encourages rolling, and the more the knife is oblique the more do the sections roll. Not that a square-set knife will always cure rolling! But it diminishes the tendency to roll.

Thirdly, it is better to cut ribbons than disconnected sections; ribbons of sections will often cut perfectly flat, even when the same mass will only give rolled sections if cut disconnectedly. For if a section has only a slight tendency to curl, it will be held down flat by adhesion to the one preceding it.

Special masses having less tendency to roll than pure paraffin have been proposed. Thus a mass composed of four parts of hard paraffin and one of vaselin has been recommended. I recommend, however, that all such mixtures be avoided.

Mechanical means may be employed. The simplest of these is as follows:

During the cutting the edge of the section that begins to curl is caught and held down on the blade of the knife by means of a small camel-hair brush with a flat point, or by a small spatula made by running a piece of paper on to the back of a scalpel. Or the section is held down by means of an instrument called a "section-stretcher." This consists essentially of a little metallic roller suspended over the object to be cut in such a way as to rest on its free surface with a pressure that can be delicately regulated so as to be sufficient to keep the section flat without in any way hindering the knife from gliding beneath it.

See the descriptions of various forms of section-stretchers, *Zool. Anzeig.*, vol. vi, 1883, p. 100 (SCHULTZE); *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, iv, 1883, p. 429 (MAYER, ANDRES, and GIESBRECHT); *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxiii, 1884, p. 537 (DECKER); *Bull. Soc. Belg. Mic.*, x, 1883, p. 55 (FRANCOTTE); *The Microscope*, February, 1884 (GAGE and SMITH); WHITMAN'S *Meth. in Mic. Anat.*, 1885, p. 91; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 2, 1887, p. 218 (STRASSER); *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 2, 1893, p. 157, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1894, p. 132 (BORN); as well as *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, iii, pp. 450, 916, and other places. It must be allowed that all these instruments are difficult to use, and that if they are not perfectly adjusted they may easily injure the sections. And they are less necessary than formerly, now that good processes for flattening out sections have been worked out (see below, "Section-flattening," § 138).

Another plan is to allow the sections to roll, but to control the rolling. To this end, the block of paraffin is pared to the shape of a wedge five or six times as long as broad, the object being contained in the broad part, and the edge turned towards the knife (see Fig. 4). The sections are allowed to roll and come off as coils, the section of the object lying in the outermost coil, which will be found to be a very open one—indeed, very nearly flat. Lay the coil on a slide with this end downwards, warm gently, and the part containing the object will unroll completely and lie quite flat.

A defect opposite to that of the rolling of sections is the *compression* and the crumpling or puckering of sections, indicating that the paraffin has been compressed by the knife instead of being merely cut true by it. Such sections, besides showing creases or folds, have a smaller area than that of the block from which they are cut. This is a bad fault, for the compression may obliterate important cavities or efface important limits between cell-layers, etc. It may be caused by a badly-cutting knife, and is very easily caused by the paraffin being too soft. To prevent it, correct the knife or cool the paraffin, or re-imbed in harder paraffin. If the crumpling has not gone so far as to cause the folds of the sections to adhere to one another, the sections may be perfectly cured by flattening on water; see below, "Section-flattening," § 138.

Devices for heating or for cooling the knife, with a view to the improvement of cutting, have been described; see VAN WALSEM in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 218; also Jung's price-list. I have myself sometimes found it advantageous to warm the knife.

136. Collodionisation of Sections.—Some objects are by nature so brittle that, notwithstanding all precautions taken in imbedding and previous preparation, they break or crumble before the knife, or furnish sections so friable that it is impossible to mount them in the ordinary way without some impairment of their integrity. Ova are frequently in this case. The remedy for this state of things consists in covering the exposed surface of the object just before cutting each section with a thin layer of collodion, which serves to hold together the loose parts of even the most fragile sections in a wonderfully efficacious way; and the same treatment applied to tissues which are not specially fragile will enable the operator to *cut sections considerably thinner* than can be obtained in the usual way. BÜTSCHLI has obtained in this manner sections of less than 1 μ in thickness.

The primitive form of the process was to place a drop of collodion on the free surface of each section just before cutting it. But this practice has two defects; the quantity of collodion employed sensibly softens the paraffin, and the thick layer of collodion when dry causes the sections to roll.

Mark (*Amer Natural.*, 1885, p. 628; cf. *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1885, p. 738) gives the following directions:

"Have ready a little very fluid collodion in a small bottle, through the cork of which passes a small camel-hair brush, which just dips into the collodion with its tip. The collodion should be of such a consistency that when applied in a thin layer to a surface of paraffin it dries in two or three seconds without leaving a shiny surface. Collodion of this consistency does not produce a membrane on the paraffin in drying, and therefore has no tendency to cause sections to roll. It has further the advantage that it penetrates to a certain depth below the surface of the preparation, and fixes the deeper layers of it in their places. The collodion must be diluted with ether as soon as it begins to show signs of leaving a shiny surface on the paraffin.

"Take the brush out of the collodion, wipe it against the neck of the bottle, so as to have it merely moist with collodion, and quickly pass it over the free surface of the preparation. Care must be taken not to let the collodion touch the vertical surfaces of the paraffin, especially not the one which is turned towards the operator, as that will probably cause the section to become stuck to the edge or under surface of the knife. As soon as the collodion is dry, which ought to be in two or three seconds, cut the section, withdraw the knife, and pass the collodion brush over the newly-exposed surface of the paraffin. Whilst this last layer of collodion is drying, take up the section from the knife and place it with the collodionised surface downwards on a slide prepared with fixative of Schaellibaum. Then cut the second section, and repeat the manipulations just described in the same order. A skilful operator can cut ribbons of sections, collodionising each section."

Henking (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 4, 1886, p. 478) objects to the above process that the ether of the collodion softens the paraffin, and proposes a solution of *paraffin* in absolute alcohol. The solution is made by scraping paraffin into absolute alcohol.

For extremely brittle objects, such as ova of Phalangida, the same author recommends a thin (light yellow) solution of *shellac* in absolute alcohol.

Heider (*Embryonalentw. v. Hydrophilus*, 1889, p. 12; cf. *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik*, viii, 4, 1892, p. 509) employs a solution made by mixing a solution of gum mastic in ether, of a syrupy consistency, with an equal volume of collodion, and diluting the mixture with ether until quite thin and liquid.

Rabl (*ibid.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 170) employs *superheated paraffin*, kept at a temperature of about 100° C. on a water-bath. This plan has the advantage of efficiently filling up any cavities there may be in the objects, and also of preventing the sections from rolling.

Apáthy (*Mikrotechnik*, p. 183) employs a 1 per cent. solution of celloidin, allows the sections to roll, and unrolls them by the water-process.

137. Ribbon Section-cutting.—If a series of paraffin sections be cut in succession and not removed from the knife one by one as cut, but allowed to lie undisturbed on the blade, it not unfrequently happens that they adhere to one another by the edges so as to form a chain or ribbon which may be taken up and transferred to a slide without breaking up, thus greatly lightening the labour of mounting a series. The following appear to me to be the factors necessary for the production of a ribbon.

Firstly, the paraffin must be of a *melting-point* having a certain relation to the temperature of the laboratory. I find that *small* sections can always be made to chain when cut from a good paraffin of 45° C. *melting-point in a room in which the thermometer stands at* 16° *to* 17° C., and that, for the Thoma microtome, at 15° C. the paraffin is a trifle hard. But see on this point § 141. Secondly, the *knife should be set square*. Thirdly, the block of paraffin should be pared down very close to the object and should be cut so as to present a straight edge parallel to the knife edge; and the opposite edge should also be parallel to this. Fourthly, the sections ought to be *cut rapidly*, with the swiftest strokes that can be produced. For it is the sharp impact of the knife that slightly heats, and therefore slightly softens the near edge of the paraffin, and thus causes the sections to cohere. It is by no means necessary for this purpose to have recourse to special mechanical contrivances, as in the so-called ribbon microtomes. The Thoma microtome well flooded with oil is sufficient. But the automatic microtomes, and amongst them the Cambridge Rocking Microtome, the Reinhold-Giltay, and the Minot, are certainly most advantageous for this purpose.

Various plans, such as coating the edges of the paraffin with softer paraffin, or with Canada balsam, or the employment of specially prepared paraffin, have been recommended, with the idea that they help the sections to stick. I find that none of these devices are necessary. For the prepared paraffin of Spee, see below, § 142.

Mayer, however (*Grundzüge*, p. 86), remarks hereon, that though coating with a softer paraffin is not necessary when soft paraffin is taken for imbedding, yet if a paraffin of 55 to 60 melting-point is used for imbedding, it is absolutely necessary to coat it with softer, for sections of 10 μ thickness, and at least advisable for thinner ones. To coat the block, take paraffin of about 40° C. melting-point, melt it, heat it to about 80° on the water-bath, dip the block into it for an instant, and rapidly turn it over so that the fluid paraffin may run down away from the top part as much as possible. Allow it to cool, and pare away again the soft paraffin from the two sides that are not to be arranged parallel to the knife. Large blocks may have two coatings given them.

It sometimes, though rarely, happens that the ribbon becomes *electrified* during the cutting, and twists and curls about in the air in a most fantastic and undesirable manner. It may be got flat by warming slightly; but there is no known means of preventing the electrification.

138. Section-flattening (*very important*).—The sections having been obtained may be cleared and mounted at once if they are quite perfect, that is, neither rolled nor creased nor compressed. But should they in the least degree show any of these defects, they must first be unrolled or smoothed, or *expanded* to their proper dimensions. It is most important not to neglect this point, as is often done in the case of sections that are neither rolled nor crumpled, but are *compressed*, as shown by their being of smaller area than the block from which they have been cut.

The most efficacious plan for flattening and expanding sections is the combined treatment with fluid and heat (Gaskell, *Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, xxxi, 1890, p. 382; M. Duval, *Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Physiol.*, 1891, p. 26; Henneguy, *ibid.*, 1891, p. 398; Gulland, *Journ. of Anat. and Physiol.*, 1891, p. 56; and others). The sections are either floated on to the surface of warm water or warm alcohol contained in a watch glass or suitable dish, which causes them to flatten out perfectly, and are then transferred to a slide, by floating them into position, or otherwise. Or the slide has a layer of water spread over it, the sections are laid on the water, and the slide is heated (to somewhat below the melting-point of the paraffin) until the sections flatten out, which happens in a few seconds. The method can be made available for fixing *series of sections* to the slide; the further details necessary for the successful accomplishment of this are given in the chapter on "Serial Section Mounting" (**the Water Method**).

A special water-bath for flattening sections is described by NOWAK in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 4, 1896, p. 447).

VAN WALSEM (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 228) describes a plan according to which the sections are arranged on a strip of parchment-paper which is moistened and passed over a warmed cylinder revolving in water on the principle of a postage-stamp dampener (see abstract with illustration in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1895, p. 121).

139. Clearing and Mounting.—The sections having been duly smoothed by one of these processes, and duly fixed to the slide (see "Serial Section Mounting") (unless it is desired to keep them loose) all that now remains is to get rid of the paraffin and mount or stain as the case may be. Many solvents of paraffin have been recommended for freeing sections from the paraffin with which they are infiltrated :—Turpentine, warm turpentine, a mixture of 4 parts of essence of turpentine with 1 of creasote, creasote, a mixture of turpentine and oil of cloves, benzin, toluol, xylol, thin solution of Canada balsam in xylol (only applicable to very thin sections), hot absolute alcohol, naphtha, or any other paraffin oil of low boiling-point. Of these xylol, toluol, benzol, and chloroform are generally in most respects the best.

If the slide be warmed to the melting-point of the paraffin, a few seconds will suffice (with *thin* sections) to remove the paraffin if the slide be plunged into a tube of xylol or toluol. The sections may be mounted direct from the xylol or the slide may be brought into a tube of alcohol to remove the solvent for staining.

140. Recapitulation of the Paraffin Method, as recommended to be practised for small objects.—Put into a small test-tube enough oil of cedar to cover your object. On to the oil pour carefully the same quantity of absolute alcohol. Take your (already dehydrated) object and put it carefully into the alcohol. Leave it until it has sunk to the bottom of the cedar oil. Wait till the refraction lines, § 106, have vanished. Then put it into paraffin kept at melting-point in a watch glass. Let the paraffin be of the *very lowest melting-point* that will give sufficiently thin sections, and to this end work in a cool place. After a time change the paraffin (*i. e.* put the object into a fresh watch glass with clean paraffin) once, or twice if the object be at all large. As soon as the object is thoroughly soaked with paraffin float the watch glass on cold water. When cool, cut out a block of paraffin containing the object, and fix it with a heated needle on a cone of paraffin already mounted on the object-carrier of the microtome.

Trim and orient the block and knife according to circumstances, as directed under *b*, § 134. Cut the sections, singly if desired, or for convenience in ribbons. Collodionise if necessary. When cut always flatten and expand on water, § 138. Fix them in serial order on a slide by one of the methods given in the chapter on "Serial Section Mounting," the water method by preference if they have to be stained. Warm and remove the paraffin with xylol. Stain, or mount directly.

Paraffin Masses.

141. Pure Paraffin.—It is now almost universally admitted that pure paraffin forms an imbedding mass greatly superior for ordinary work to any of the many mixtures with wax and the like that used to be recommended. *A paraffin melting at* 45° C. is that which in my experience gives the best results *so long as the temperature of the laboratory is between* 15° *and* 17° C.; whilst for a temperature of 22° C. a paraffin melting at 48° is required. And for higher temperatures a still harder paraffin, of over 50° melting-point, is required.

Paraffin of various melting-points is easily found in commerce. Intermediate sorts may be made by mixing hard and soft paraffin. Two parts of paraffin melting at 50° with one of paraffin melting at 36° C. give a mass melting at 48° C.

Many workers of undoubted competence prefer masses somewhat harder than those recommended, viz. of melting-points varying between 50° and 55° C. for the normal temperature of the laboratory; and others recommend masses melting at 60° C. or higher.

So, for instance, Heidenhain (58°), Apáthy (55°), Rabl (56°), Mayer (58° to 60° in summer; in winter about 56°, but never less than 50°). Mayer points out (*Grundzüge*, p. 90) that at Naples the temperature during five months of the summer and autumn is over 22° C. in the laboratory, sometimes over 30°. Temperatures such as these are seldom realised in the British Isles, and whilst I quite admit that the hard paraffin employed by Mayer may have its *raison d'être* for Naples, I hold that for that very reason it is in general unnecessarily hard for cooler climates.

For thin sections a harder paraffin is required than for thick ones; and the thinner the sections, the harder should the paraffin be.

The figures above given have been repeatedly verified and are undoubtedly correct. But an important explanation remains to be made. The statements refer to work with the Thoma sliding microtome. I have since ascertained that microtomes with *fixed* knives, such as the Cambridge, the Minot, or the Reinhold-Giltay, will give good results, so far as cutting is concerned, with much harder paraffin, and, in fact, require such. This is an advantage, so far as the obtaining of very thin sections is concerned; but it seems to me to remain true that for delicate work it is well in the interest of the *preservation of the tissues* to use a paraffin of as low a melting-point as possible.

Paraffin had better be obtained from Grübler, or one of the known dealers in microscopic reagents. BRASS (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 1885, p. 300) recommends such as has been kept for some years, as it has less tendency to crystallise than new paraffin.

124. Prepared Paraffin (Pure).—GRAF SPEE (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 1885, p. 8) recommends the following preparation of commercial paraffin as giving a mass particularly favourable for ribbon-section cutting. Paraffin of about 50° C. melting-point is taken and heated in a porcelain capsule by means of a spirit lamp. After a time disagreeable white vapours are given off, and the mass shrinks a little. This result is arrived at in from one to six hours, according to the quality of the paraffin. The mass then becomes brownish-yellow, and after cooling shows an unctuous or soapy surface on being cut. The melting-point will be found to have risen several degrees. This mass may be obtained ready prepared from Grübler. The object of this preparation is to make the mass stickier, in view of cutting ribbons.

For mixtures of paraffin with other substances, none of which I consider to offer any advantage, see previous editions.

143. Soap Masses.—These have never been much used, and are now entirely discarded in favour of paraffin. But see previous editions, or the papers of Pölzam (*Morph. Jahrb.*, iii, 1877, 3tes Heft, p. 558, from Salensky's paper on the gemmation of Salpa, *loc. cit.*); Kadyi (*Zool. Anz.*, 37, 1879, vol. ii, p. 477); Döllken (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1, 1897, p. 32).

Gelatin Masses.

144. Gelatin Imbedding is a method that has the advantage of being applicable to tissues that have not been in the least degree dehydrated, and may render great service in the study of *very watery objects.*

The *modus operandi* is, on the whole, the same as for other fusion masses, with the difference that the objects are prepared by saturation with *water* instead of alcohol or a clearing agent. After the cooling of the mass it may sometimes be cut at once, but it is generally necessary to harden it. This may be done by treatment for a few minutes with absolute alcohol (Kaiser), or for a few days with 90 per cent. alcohol (Klebs) or chromic acid (Klebs) or formaldehyde (Nicolas), or it may be frozen (Sollas).

The mass is removed from the sections by means of warm water.

Mayer (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ii, 1880, p. 27) for coarse researches leaves the mass in the sections (if the tissues have been stained previously) as it becomes sufficiently transparent in balsam. He recommends as a convenient support on which to gum the imbedded objects with warm gelatin his *artificial pith*, thus made: gelatin swollen in water is thoroughly shaken up with ¼ to ½ its volume of castor oil, and the mixture poured into a capsule when just on the point of cooling; the castor oil being then extracted by means of 90 per cent. alcohol, the gelatin remains behind as a finely-porous inelastic mass.

APÁTHY (*ibid.*, xii, 1897, p. 718) saturates objects with thin glycerin-gelatin, allows the water to evaporate from it in a desiccator kept just at the melting temperature of the mass, imbeds in metal squares, § 126, hardens in absolute alcohol, and cuts under the same.

145. KLEBS' **Gelatin (Glycerin Jelly)** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, v, 1869, p. 165).—A concentrated solution of isinglass is mixed with half its volume of glycerin.

146. KAISER'S **Gelatin** (*Bot. Centralb.*, i, 1880, p. 25; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, iii, 1880, p. 504).—One part by weight of the finest French gelatin is left for about two hours in 6 parts by weight of water; 7 parts of glycerin are added, and for every 100 grms. of the mixture 1 grm. of concentrated carbolic acid. The whole is warmed for ten to fifteen minutes, stirring all the while, until the whole of the flakes produced by the carbolic acid have disappeared. Filter whilst warm through the finest spun glass, which has been previously washed in water and laid whilst wet in the funnel.

147. GERLACH'S **Gelatin** (GERLACH, *Unters. a. d. Anat. Inst. Erlangen*, 1884; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1885, p. 541).—Take gelatin, 40 grms.; saturated solution of arsenious acid, 200 c.c.; glycerin, 120 c.c. Clarify with white of egg. The mass may be kept for years in a well-stoppered bottle. The objects to be prepared for imbedding by a bath of one third glycerin.

148. BRUNOTTI'S **Gold Gelatin Mass** (*Journ. de Botan.*, vi, 1892, p. 194; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 706).—Twenty grms. gelatin dissolved with heat in 200 c.c. distilled water, and 30 to 40 c.c. of glacial acetic acid with 1 grm. corrosive sublimate added after filtering. At the temperature of 15° C. the mass has the consistence of a thick syrup. Objects are prepared by soaking in some of the mass diluted with two to three vols. of water, then imbedded in the undiluted mass.

The mass is then hardened in spirit or bichromate of potash, picric acid, or the like. No heat at all is required in this process.

149. Nicolas's **Method** (*Bibliogr. Anat.*, Paris, 3 année, 1896, p. 274; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 218).—Preparations are first soaked for one or two days in a 3 per cent. to 4 per cent. aqueous solution of gelatin kept at 25° C., then for the same time in a 10 per cent. solution, and then for two or three days more in a 20 per cent. to 25 per cent. solution containing 8 per cent. to 10 per cent. of glycerin and kept at 35° C. They are then imbedded in some of the same mass in paper trays, and as soon as the gelatin has set are thrown into a 5 per cent. solution of formaldehyde (formol 1 part, water 7). After a few days therein the gelatin has become hard and insoluble, and may be cut or preserved for months in weak formol solution, or dilute alcohol or glycerin, or even in pure water. The mass cuts like celloidin, but unfortunately takes stains strongly. The sections must be very carefully and gradually passed through the successive alcohols for dehydration, as they curl up very easily. They, however, flatten out at once on being brought from absolute alcohol into cresylol, and may thence be mounted in balsam. To mount in glycerin is of course easy.

CHAPTER IX.

COLLODION (CELLOIDIN) AND OTHER IMBEDDING METHODS.

150. Advantages of the Collodion or Celloidin Method.—Collodion (or celloidin) masses do not require the employment of heat. They do not require that the objects should be cleared before imbedding, and that is an advantage in the case of very large objects. They are more or less transparent, which facilitates the orientation of the object. And they are specially indicated for very large objects, for the soaking in collodion being quite inoffensive to the most delicate elements may be prolonged if necessary for weeks, thus ensuring the harmless penetration of objects that would be literally cooked if they were submitted to a paraffin bath of like duration. Lastly, the mass being quite transparent after mounting, it is not necessary to remove it from the sections before staining and mounting them; it may remain, and fulfil the function of an admirable support to the tissues, holding in their places brittle or detached elements that without that help would fall to pieces and be lost.

There are two disadvantages. One is that the process is a very long one; as usually practised, the collodion process requires some three days for the imbedding of an object that can be imbedded in paraffin in an hour (though the time may be greatly abridged by GILSON's rapid process given below). Another is that it is impossible to obtain with celloidin sections as thin as those furnished by paraffin; the lowest limit I have been able to attain to is 7 μ, which for some work is not sufficient. Other workers seem to have obtained thinner ones; but at any rate this cannot be done without difficulty.

As to the choice of a process, I urgently recommend the recently introduced practice of *clearing before cutting*, and *cutting dry* as described in § 165.

151. Collodion, Celloidin, and Photoxylin.—The collodion method is due to Duval (*Journ. de l'Anat.*, 1879, p. 185).

Celloidin, recommended later on by Merkel and Schiefferdecker (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys.*, 1882, p. 200), is merely a patent collodion. It may be obtained from Grübler, or the other dealers in histological reagents. It is sent out in the form of tablets of a tough gelatinous consistency and slightly milky-white transparency. These tablets may, if desired, be dissolved at once in ether, or a mixture of ether and alcohol, to make a collodion of any desired strength. But it is better, as recommended by Apáthy, to cut them up into thin shavings, which should be allowed to dry in the air until they become yellow, transparent, and of a horny consistency, and that these be then dissolved in alcohol and ether (sulphuric, free from acid). The solutions thus prepared are *free from the excess of water* that is present in the undried celloidin, and give after hardening a mass that is *more transparent* and of a better consistency for cutting (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 2, 1889, p. 164).

Imbedding masses of excellent quality can be prepared with ordinary collodion, but celloidin furnishes more readily solutions of known concentration. Otherwise there is but little to choose between the two, and therefore in this work the terms collodion and celloidin are used indifferently.

Photoxylin (Krysinsky, Virchow's *Archiv*, cviii, 1887, p. 217; Busse, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 47) is a dry substance, of the aspect of cotton wool, and chemically nearly related to celloidin. It can be obtained from Grübler. It gives a clear solution in a mixture of equal parts of ether and absolute alcohol, and should be used in exactly the same way as celloidin. It has the advantage of affording a mass which after hardening in 85 per cent. alcohol remains perfectly *transparent*. But celloidin or common collodion also give perfectly transparent *masses if cleared in bulk* as I recommend should be done (§§ 163—165); so that there is no advantage on this head in having recourse to photoxylin, unless it be desired to proceed in the old way. Some writers say that it gives a better consistency, but others deny this (Apáthy, *e. g.*).

152. Preparation of Objects.—The objects must first be *very thoroughly* dehydrated with absolute alcohol. They are then soaked till thoroughly penetrated in ether, or, which is better, in a mixture of ether and absolute alcohol. DUVAL (*loc. cit.*) takes for this purpose a mixture of ten parts of ether to one of alcohol; SCHIEFFERDECKER (and the majority of workers) a mixture of equal parts of ether and alcohol; TUBBY (in *Nature*, November 17th, 1892, p. 51) advises a mixture of four parts of ether and one of alcohol. But the point is one of no great importance. FISH advises acetone, see next §.

This stage may be omitted if the objects are of a sufficiently permeable nature, and they may be brought direct from alcohol into the collodion bath.

153. The Collodion Bath.—The next step is to get the objects infiltrated with thick collodion. The secret of success here is to infiltrate them first with thin solutions, then with the definitive thick one. (A thin solution may be taken to mean one containing from 4 to 6 per cent. of celloidin [dried as described in § 151]; a thick solution, one containing 10 to 12 per cent.)

If collodion be taken, the thin solutions may be made by diluting it with ether. If photoxylin or celloidin be taken, the solutions are made in a mixture of ether and absolute alcohol in equal parts.

The dried celloidin shavings dissolve very slowly in the mixture. ELSCHNIG (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 443) states that solution is obtained much quicker if the shavings be first allowed to swell up for twenty-four hours in the necessary quantity of absolute alcohol, and the ether be added afterwards. On trial it seems to me that this is so.

BUSSE (*op. cit.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 47) gives the following proportions for the successive baths:—No. 1, 10 parts by weight of photoxylin or perfectly dried celloidin to 150 parts of the ether and alcohol mixture: No. 2, 10 parts of photoxylin or celloidin to 105 of the mixture: No. 3, 10 parts to 80 of the mixture (already-used solution may be employed for the first bath).

I generally use only two solutions: one weak one, and one strong one corresponding approximately to Busse's No. 2. His No. 3 is so thick that excessive time is required to obtain penetration by it.

Fish (*Journ. Applied Microscop.*, ii, 4, 1899, p. 323) first infiltrates with *acetone* (which he says may be used as a fixing and dehydrating agent at the same time), then with a 4 per cent. solution of pyroxylin (gun cotton) in acetone; and, lastly, in an 8 per cent. acetone solution of the same.

The objects ought to remain in the first bath until very thoroughly penetrated;—days, even for small objects,—weeks or months for large ones (human embryos of from six to twelve weeks, for instance). If the object contain cavities, these should be opened to ensure their being filled by the mass.

When the object is duly penetrated by the thin solution, or solutions if more than one have been employed, it should be brought into the thickest one. This may be done (as first described in this work, 1st edit., 1885, p. 194) by allowing the thin solution to concentrate slowly (the stopper of the containing vessel being raised, for instance by means of a piece of paper placed under it), and making up the loss from evaporation with thick solution.

Apáthy (*Mikrotechnik*, p. 121) holds, however, that it is preferable to transfer to fresh thick solution, as he finds that a better consistency after hardening is thus obtained.

154. Imbedding.—If the object is such that it can be fixed, by gumming or otherwise, to the holder of the microtome without the intervention of any specially shaped mass of collodion around it, and if the presence of such a mass be not required in the interest of the orientation of the object, or of the production of continuous series of sections, or of very thin sections, no special imbedding is necessary, and as soon as the objects are duly penetrated by the thick solution you may proceed to the hardening part of the process. In other words, it is waste of time to get the object into a special block of collodion if that is not rendered desirable for the reasons above mentioned. But for fine and regular work I hold that it is necessary.

In that case the objects must at this stage, if it has not been done before, be *imbedded*—that is, arranged in position in the thick collodion in the receptacle in which they are to be hardened. For the usual manipulations see § 126. I recommend the paper thimbles or cylindrical trays, Fig. 2, as being very convenient for collodion imbedding. The bottoms, however, should be made of soft wood in preference to cork; cork is elastic, and bends in the object-holder of the microtome, deforming the mass and object. The box should be prepared for the reception of the object by pouring into it a drop of collodion, which is allowed to dry. The object of this is to prevent bubbles coming up through the wood or cork and lodging in the mass.

Objects may also be imbedded on a piece of pith or leather, which should also be prepared with a layer of dry collodion.

Watch glasses, deep porcelain water-colour moulds, and the like, also make convenient imbedding receptacles. Care should be taken to have them perfectly *dry*.

It not unfrequently happens that during these manipulations bubbles make their appearance in the mass. Before proceeding with the hardening these should be got rid of. This may be done by exposing the whole for an hour or two to the vapour of ether in a desiccator or other well-closed vessel. Care should be taken that the ether (which may be poured on the bottom of the vessel) does not wet the mass (BUSSE, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 4, 1892, p. 467).

155. Orientation.—If it be desired to mark the position of the object in the mass in order to facilitate the subsequent orientation of it on the object-holder of the microtome, recourse may be had to the method described by EYCLESHYMER in *Amer. Nat.*, xxvi, 1892, p. 354 (see also *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 562). The object is imbedded in one of the metal boxes described in § 126. The box has its ends and sides perforated at regular intervals by small opposite holes. Silk threads are passed through these holes from side to side, stretched, and kept tight by sticking them to the sides of the box by means of a drop of celloidin, leaving a length of a couple of inches hanging loose. The loose ends are soaked in thin celloidin solution with which lamp-black has been mixed. The object is arranged in position on the framework formed by the taut threads in the box, the mass is poured in, and the whole is hardened. After hardening, the celloidin holding the ends of the threads is dissolved by means of a drop of ether, and the lampblacked ends are pulled through the box. This leaves adhering to the bottom of the mass a series of black lines which form orientation points.

APÁTHY (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1, 1888, p. 47) arranges objects on a small rectangular plate of gelatin, placed on the bottom of the imbedding-recipient. The gelatin is turned out with the mass after hardening, and cut with it. The edges of the gelatin form good orientation lines.

Halle and Born (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 3, 1896, p. 364) use plates of hardened white of egg, in which a shallow furrow for the reception of the objects has been cut by means of a special instrument. See further under *Embryological Methods—Reconstruction.*

156. Hardening, Preliminary.—This is logically the next step, but as a matter of fact is frequently begun before. For the different processes of the collodion method so run into one another that it is difficult to assign natural lines of demarcation between them.

The objects being imbedded, and in the stage at which we left them at the end of § 155, the treatment should be as follows:—The receptacles or supports are set with the mass under a glass shade allowing of just enough communication with the air to set up a slow evaporation. Or porcelain moulds or small dishes may be covered with a lightly-fitting cover. As soon as the added thick collodion (of which only just enough to cover the object should have been taken) has so far sunk down that the object begins to lie dry, fresh thick solution is added, and the whole is left as before. (If the first layer of collodion has become too dry, it should be moistened with a drop of ether before adding the fresh collodion). Provision should be again made for slow evaporation, either in one of the ways above indicated, or, which is perhaps better, by setting the objects under an *hermetically* fitting bell-jar, which is lifted for a few seconds only once or twice a day. I have sometimes found it advantageous to set the objects under a bell-jar together with a dish containing alcohol, so that the evaporation is gone through in an *atmosphere of alcohol.* This is especially indicated for very large objects. The whole process of adding fresh collodion, and placing the objects under the required conditions of evaporation, is repeated every few hours for, if need be, two or three days.

When the mass has attained a consistency such that the ball of a finger (*not* the nail) no longer leaves an impress on it, it should be scooped out of the dish or mould, or have the paper removed if it has been imbedded in paper, and be submitted to the next stage of the hardening process. (If the mass is found to be not quite hard enough to come away safely, it should be put for a day or two into weak alcohol, 30 to 70 per cent.)

157. Hardening, Definitive.—Several methods are available for the definitive hardening process. One of these is the *chloroform* method, due to VIALLANES (*Rech. sur l'Hist. et le Dév. des Insectes*, 1883, p. 129). I recommend this method for *small* objects, because I find it much more rapid than the alcohol method, whilst giving at least as good a consistency to the mass. For *large* objects the method is said by some writers to be inferior to the alcohol method, because the rapid hardening of the external layers is an obstacle to the diffusion necessary to the hardening of the inner layers.

The method consists in bringing the objects into *chloroform*.

Under the influence of this reagent the collodion coagulates rapidly into a mass having the consistency of wax.

In some cases a few *hours'* immersion is sufficient to give the requisite consistence. In no case have my specimens required more than three days. But the length of time required varies in a very inexplicable way, so that no rule can be given. The collodion frequently becomes opaque on being put into the chloroform, but regains its transparency after a time.

Small objects may be hardened by chloroform *without preliminary hardening by evaporation.* All that is necessary is to expose the mass to the air for a few seconds until a membrane has formed on it, and then bring it into chloroform. If the mass is in a test-tube this may be filled up with chloroform, and left for two or three days if need be. By this time the collodion mass will be considerably hardened, and also somewhat shrunk, so that it can be shaken out of the tube. It is then brought into fresh chloroform in a larger vessel, where it remains for a few more days until it is ready for cutting. But sufficient hardening is sometimes obtained in a few hours.

Good chloroform is a necessity, as the reaction cannot be obtained with samples of chloroform that are not free from water.

The above processes are excellent, but I regard them as primitive forms of the chloroform method. I now almost always harden in *vapour of chloroform.* All that is necessary is to put the liquid mass (after having removed bubbles as directed in § 154) with its recipient into a desiccator on the bottom of which a few drops of chloroform have been poured. The action is very rapid, and the final consistency of the mass at least equal to that obtained by the best alcohol hardening. We shall revert to this subject, § 165.

The more commonly employed hardening method is the *alcohol* method. The objects are thrown into alcohol and left there until they they have attained the right consistency (one day to several weeks). The bottle or other vessel containing the alcohol *ought not to be tightly closed, but should be left at least partly open.*

The strength of the alcohol is a point on which the practice of different writers differs greatly. The question may now be considered to be finally settled by experiments specially directed to the clearing up of this point, made by Busse (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 49), and which I have repeated and confirmed. Busse finds that *alcohol of about* 85 *per cent.* is the best, *both as regards the cutting consistency and the transparency* of the mass. Care must be taken to keep masses hardened in this grade of alcohol moist whilst cutting, as they dry by evaporation very quickly.

Some workers use lower grades, 70 to 80 per cent., or even lower. Apáthy (*Mikrotechnik,* p. 185) mentions "glycerin-alcohol," but without giving details. Blum (*Anat. Anz.*, xi, 1896, p. 724) mentions "weak spirit with formol added to it," saying that formol hardens celloidin.

Lastly, the mass may be *frozen.* After preliminary hardening by alcohol it is soaked for a few hours in water, in order to get rid of the greater part of the alcohol (the alcohol should not be removed entirely, or the mass may freeze too hard). It is then dipped for a few moments into gum mucilage in order to make it adhere to the freezing plate, and is frozen. If the mass have frozen too hard, cut with a knife warmed with warm water.

A paper has been written by Florman (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 2, 1889, p. 184) to recommend that the definitive hardening should be done without the aid of alcohol or chloroform, by simply cutting out the blocks, turning them over, and carefully continuing the evaporation process in the way described above. I described this process myself in the first edition of this work. No doubt the author is right in claiming for it a superior degree of hardening of the mass ; but I doubt whether it is possible to carry the hardening much beyond the point attained by the chloroform or alcohol method without incurring a very undesirable degree of shrinkage.

The hardening processes used in the method of clearing before cutting, which I prefer to all the foregoing, will be described later on, § 165.

158. Preservation.—The hardened blocks of collodion may be preserved till wanted in weak alcohol (70 per cent.). They may also be preserved dry by dipping them into melted paraffin (Apáthy, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1, 1888, p. 45), or, after rinsing in water, in glycerin-jelly, which may be removed with warm water before cutting (Apáthy, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1897, p. 372).

Reference numbers may be written with a soft lead pencil on the bottom of the paper trays, or with a yellow oil pencil on the bottom of the watch glasses in which the objects are imbedded. On removal of the paper from the collodion after hardening, the numbers will be found impressed on the collodion.

159. Cutting.—If the object *has not been stained* before imbedding, it may form so transparent a mass with the collodion that the arrangement of the object and sections in the right position may be rendered very difficult. It is, therefore, well to stain the collodion lightly, just enough to make its outlines visible in the sections. This may be done by adding picric acid or other suitable colouring matter dissolved in alcohol to the collodion used for imbedding, or to the oil used for clearing.

To fix a collodion block to the microtome proceed as follows. Take a piece of soft wood, or, for very small objects, pith, of a size and shape adapted to fit the holder of the microtome. Cover it with a layer of collodion, which you allow to dry. Take the block of collodion or the infiltrated and hardened but not imbedded object, and cut a slice off the bottom, so as to get a clean surface. Wet this surface first with absolute alcohol, then with ether (or allow it to dry); place one drop of *very thick* collodion on the prepared wood or pith and press down *tightly* on to it the wetted or dried surface of the block or object. Then throw the whole into weak (70 per cent.) alcohol for a few hours, or even less, or better into chloroform, or vapour of chloroform, for a few minutes, in order that the joint may harden

Dr. LINDSAY JOHNSON informs me that he finds it very convenient to take for this purpose the cement used by metal turners for fastening metal objects on to boxwood chucks. The exact composition of this cement varies somewhat, but an average one is—beeswax, 1 part; rosin, 2 parts. To use it you must get the block of celloidin perfectly dry at the bottom, then warm the object-holder slightly, if possible over a flame; drop on to it a few drops of melted cement, and press on to it the block of collodion, which will be firmly fixed as soon as the cement is cool—that is in a few seconds.

For objects of any considerable size it is important not to use cork for mounting on the microtome, especially if the object-holder be a vice; for cork bends under the pressure of the holder, and the elastic collodion bends with it, deforming the object. I have seen large embryos so deformed in this way that the sections obtained were true calottes, segments of a sphere. If the object-holder be of the cylinder type, as in the later forms of the Thoma microtome, the above-described accidents will be less likely to happen, and a good cork may be used; but even then, I think, wood is safer. GAGE has recommended bits of glass cylinders. JELINEK (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 237) recommends a sort of vulcanite known as "Stabilit," which is manufactured for electrical insulation purposes. It is supplied in suitable blocks by JUNG (presumably also obtainable through GRÜBLER AND CO.).

Sections (from such masses as have not been cleared before cutting) are cut with a knife kept abundantly wetted with alcohol (of 50 to 85 or even 95 per cent.). Some kind of drip arrangement will be found very useful here. Apáthy recommends that the knife be smeared with yellow vaselin; it cuts better, is protected from the alcohol, and the mobility of the alcohol on the blade is lessened.

The knife is set in as oblique a position as possible.

Very brittle sections may be collodionised as explained above (§ 136).

The sections are either brought into alcohol (of 50 to 85 or 95 per cent.) as fast as they are made; or if it be desired to mount them in series, they are treated according to one of the methods described below, in the chapter on "Serial Section Mounting."

Masses that have been cleared before cutting with cedar oil, or the like, may be cut dry, § 165.

160. Staining.—The sections may now be stained as desired, either loose, or mounted in series on slides or on paper as described in the chapter on "Serial Section Mounting." It is *not* in general necessary, nor indeed desirable, to remove the mass before staining, as it usually either remains colourless, or gives up the stain on treatment with alcohol. But some of the anilin dyes and some other colours stain it strongly, and are not removed with sufficient completeness by the processes of dehydration and clearing. If it be desired to employ these, the mass may be removed by treating the sections with absolute alcohol or ether.

161. Clearing and Mounting.—You may mount in glycerin without removing the mass, which remains as clear as glass in that medium.

You may mount in balsam, also, without removing the mass, which does no harm, and serves the useful purpose of holding the parts of the sections together during the manipulations. Dehydrate in alcohol of 95 or 96 per cent. (not absolute, as this attacks the collodion). NIKIFOROW (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, p. 189) recommends a mixture of equal parts of alcohol and chloroform. Clear with a substance that does not dissolve collodion. The clearing agents most recommended are origanum oil (*Ol. Origan. Cretici*, it is said, should be taken, not *Ol. Orig. Gallici;* but see as to this reagent the remarks in Chap. VI, § 113), bergamot oil (said to make sections shrink somewhat), oil of sandal-wood, lavender oil, oil of cedar-wood (safe and gives excellent results, but acts rather slowly), chloroform, xylol, or benzol (may make sections shrink if not well dehydrated), or Dunham's mixture of three or four parts of white oil of thyme with one part of oil of cloves. (As to oil of thyme, see also "Origanum Oil" in Chap. VI, § 113.)

FISH (*Proc. Amer. Mic. Soc.*, 1893) advises a mixture of one part of red oil of thyme with three parts of castor oil, the latter being added in order to counteract the volatility of the thyme oil. But later (June, 1895), writing to me, Dr. Fish says he has substituted the white oil of thyme for the red, and finds it an advantage in orientating. See also § 114.

Some specimens of clove oil dissolve collodion very slowly, and may be used, but I would not be understood to recommend it. The action of origanum oil varies much, according to the samples; some sorts do not clear the collodion, others dissolve it, others pucker it. MINOT (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 2, 1886, p. 175) says that Dunham's mixture "clarifies the sections very readily, and softens the celloidin just enough to prevent the puckering, which is so annoying with thyme alone."

Carbolic acid has been recommended. WEIGERT (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 4, 1866, p. 480) finds that a mixture of 3 parts of xylol with 1 part of carbolic acid (anhydrous) clears well. But it must not be used with the basic anilin stains, as it discolours them. For these anilin oil may be used with the xylol in the place of carbolic acid.

Anilin oil clears well (it will clear from 70 per cent. alcohol), but unless thoroughly removed the preparation becomes yellowish-brown. This coloration may be removed by soaking in chloroform for twenty-four hours (see VAN GIESON, *Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, 1887, p. 49, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 519, for a review of these clearing agents; see also § 121).

Beech-wood creasote has been recommended (by M. Flesch).

EYCLESHYMER (*Amer. Nat.*, xxvi, 1892, p. 354; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 565) advises a mixture of equal parts of bergamot oil, cedar oil, and carbolic acid.

For oil of cajeput see § 116; and for this and other clearers see also the paper of JORDAN quoted § 107.

162. Review of the Older Celloidin Method.—The older celloidin method, described in the foregoing pages, is extremely lengthy and cumbrous. The operation of infiltrating the tissues with the collodion requires days or weeks. The hardening process frequently requires nearly as much time. The resulting mass has the disadvantage of being opaque, or at most only translucent, not transparent. The mass has to be cut under the surface of alcohol, or at least with constant wetting with alcohol, and with a knife kept constantly wet with alcohol. By the recent method of clearing the mass before cutting a large part of these defects is done away with; the resultant mass is as clear as glass, thus allowing the most perfect orientation of the object; and, as I have shown (LEE et HENNEGUY, *Traité des Méthodes techniques de l'Anat. mic.*, 1896, p. 230), the mass can with advantage be cut *dry*, thereby greatly simplifying the operation of cutting. By Gilson's ingenious *Rapid Method*, the time necessary for hardening is very greatly abridged, and the whole series of operations becomes almost as short and simple as the paraffin method. I cannot imagine that anyone who has ever employed the new method would willingly go back to the old one. The following paragraphs describe the new method.

163. The New Method, by Clearing before Cutting.—This process is due, I believe, in the first instance to E. Meyer (*Biol. Centralb.*, x, 1890, p. 508), who advised soaking blocks before cutting for twenty-four hours in glycerin. Bumpus (*Amer. Anat.*, xxvi, 1892, p. 80; see *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 438) advises clearing the mass, after hardening in chloroform, with white oil of thyme or other suitable clearing agent (see above, § 161). The knife is wetted with the clearing oil, and the same oil is employed for covering the exposed surface of the object after each cut. Similar recommendations are made by Eycleshymer (*op. cit.*, pp. 354, 563), carbolic acid, or glycerin, or the mixture given § 161, being suggested for clearing; and Professor Gilson has for a long time past adopted the practice of clearing before cutting with cedar oil, as described in the next §.

Fish (*loc. cit.*, § 161) also advocates the practice of clearing in the mass, recommending the clearing mixture there given. Similarly Gage, *Trans. Amer. Mic. Soc.*, xvii, 1896, p. 361.

All the authors above quoted cut in the *wet* way, that is to say, with a knife wetted with the clearing liquid. I have found a great improvement in cutting *dry*, and in employing the combined hardening and clearing process of Gilson, given below.

164. Gilson's **Rapid Process** (communicated by Professor Gilson, April, 1892).—The object is dehydrated, soaked in ether, and brought into a test-tube with collodion or thin celloidin solution. The tube is dipped into a bath of melted paraffin, and the collodion allowed to boil (which it does at a very low temperature) until it has become of a syrupy consistence. (It should be boiled down to about one third of its volume.) The mass is then turned out, mounted on a block of hardened celloidin, and the whole hardened in chloroform or in a mixture of chloroform and cedar oil for about an hour. It is then cleared in cedar oil (if hardened in pure chloroform: special clearing will not be necessary if it has been hardened in the mixture). It may now be fixed in the microtome and cut, using cedar oil to wet the knife, and cover the exposed surface of the object after each cut.

It will be observed that this process is very much more rapid than the old process in two ways. The celloidin bath, being given warm, is greatly abridged; small objects can be duly infiltrated in an hour, where days would be required by the old process. And the hardening is very much more rapid than hardening by alcohol, which requires at least twenty-four hours. As collodion boils at a very low temperature very little heat is required, and there is no risk of the tissues suffering on that head.

165. The Dry Cutting Method.—I recommend the following as being a further improvement. Infiltrate with collodion or celloidin either by Gilson's process, or by soaking in the cold in the usual way, § 153. This is a much slower process, but does not take up more of the worker's time, as the specimens require no attention whilst in the bath. Imbed as usual, either directly on the holder of the microtome, or in a paper tray or a water-colour mould or the like. Harden in vapour of chloroform for from one hour (generally sufficient for small objects) to overnight. This is done by putting the object (definitively imbedded in the final thick solution, but without any preliminary hardening in the air) into a Steinach's sieve-dish or into a desiccator, on the bottom of which a teaspoonful of chloroform has been poured. (The objects may remain for months in the chloroform vapour if desired.) As soon as the mass has attained sufficient superficial hardness, it is, of course, well to turn it out of its recipient, and turn it over from time to time, in order that it may be equally exposed on all sides to the action of the vapour. When fairly hard (it is not necessary to wait till the mass has attained all the hardness of which it is susceptible) throw it into Gilson's mixture. This should be at first a mixture of one part of chloroform with one or two parts of cedar oil. From time to time more cedar oil should be added, so as to bring the mixture up gradually to nearly pure cedar oil. As soon as the object is cleared throughout, the mass may be exposed to the air, and the rest of the chloroform will evaporate gradually. The block may now be mounted on the holder of the microtome with a drop of thick collodion, § 159, and may either be cut at once, or may be preserved indefinitely without change in a stoppered bottle. *Cut dry*, the cut surface will not dry injuriously under several hours. The cutting quality of the mass is often improved by allowing it to evaporate in the air for some hours.

The hardening may be done at once in the chloroform and cedar-wood mixture, instead of the chloroform vapour, but I find the latter process preferable, as giving a better hardening. And clearing may be done in pure cedar oil instead of the mixture, but then it will be very slow, whereas in the mixture it is extremely rapid.

166. Double Imbedding in Collodion and Paraffin.—This complicated process is sometimes, though rarely, employed for objects of which it is desired to have very thin sections, and which are too brittle to give good sections by the plain paraffin process. I do not think that in any form hitherto published it can be considered to be a success.

KULTSCHITZKY's **Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 1, 1887, p. 48).—After the collodion bath, the object is soaked in oil of origanum (*Oleum Origani vulg.*). It is then brought into a mixture of origanum oil and paraffin heated to not more than 40° C., and lastly into a bath of pure paraffin.

The mass may be preserved in the dry state, and may be cut dry.

RYDER (*Queen's Micr. Bull.*, 1887, p. 43; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 512) modified the process by substituting chloroform for the origanum oil.

IDE (*La Cellule*, vii, 1891, p. 347, and viii, 1, 1892, p. 114) employed with success the following method: —The object is imbedded in collodion in a tube by GILSON's process (*supra*, § 164); the collodion is boiled for forty minutes, then brought for fifteen minutes (this is for small objects) into chloroform heated to 30° C. containing one fourth part of paraffin dissolved in it, then for ten minutes into pure melted paraffin.

FIELD and MARTIN (*Bull. Soc. Zool. de France*, 1894, p. 48), finding that it is difficult to get hardened celloidin masses adequately impregnated with the paraffin, have worked out the following process of *simultaneous* imbedding. A solution of dried celloidin in a mixture of equal parts of absolute alcohol and toluene, of about the consistency of clove oil, is made. This solution is saturated with paraffin, added in shavings at a temperature not exceeding 20° to 23° C. The tissues are prepared by soaking in some of the mixture of alcohol and toluene, and are then penetrated with the celloidin-paraffin solution. The mass is hardened by throwing it into a saturated solution of paraffin in chloroform or in toluene, and is finally imbedded in pure paraffin in the usual way.

See also the modifications of DAHLGREN, *Journ. Applied Microsc.*, 1898, p. 97 (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1898, p. 489); SABUSSOW, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1896, p. 353; MITROPHANOW, *Arch. Zool. Expér.* [3], 3, 1896, p. 617).

Other Cold Masses.

167. Joliet's Gum and Glycerin Method (*Arch. Zool. Expér. et Gén.*, x, 1882, p. xliii; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N.S.], ii, 1882, p. 890).—Pure gum arabic dissolved in water to the consistency of a thick syrup. (Solutions of gum sold under the name of strong white liquid glue [" *colle forte blanche liquide à froid* "] may also be used; they have the advantage of having a uniform consistency.*) Pour a little of the solution into a watch glass, so as not quite to fill it, add from 6 to 10 drops of pure glycerin, stir until thoroughly mixed. In the winter or in rainy weather less glycerin should be taken than in the summer or dry weather.

The object is imbedded in the mass in the watch glass, and the whole left to dry for from one to four days. When it has assumed a cartilaginous consistency, a block containing the object is cut out, turned over, and allowed to dry again until wanted for use. A stove, or the sun, may be employed for drying, but it is best to dry slowly at the normal temperature.

This process may render service occasionally in the study of extremely watery organisms, such as *Salpa*, or the Ctenophora.

168. STRICKER'S **Gum Method** (*Hdb. d. Gewebel.*, p. xxiv).—A concentrated solution of gum arabic. The object is imbedded in the gum in a paper case. The whole is thrown into alcohol, and after two or three days may be cut. The alcohol should be of about 80 per cent. (MAYER).

I have seen masses of sufficiently good consistency prepared by this simple method.

169. ROBERTSON'S **Grape-sugar Method**, see *Journ. of Anat. and Physiol.*, xxiv, 1890, p. 230; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 33.

---

* It is highly probable that these commercial preparations contain gelatin, and perhaps some other gum besides gum arabic.

170. HYATT's **Shellac Method**, see *Am. M. Mic. Journ.*, i, 1880, p. 8; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, iii, 1880, p. 320.

This process is merely intended for the purpose of making sections through hard chitinous organs consisting of several pieces, such as stings and ovipositors, retaining all the parts in their natural positions.

171. BRUNOTTI's **Cold Gelatin Mass** has been given § 148.

*Masses for Grinding Sections.**

172. G. VON KOCH's **Copal Method** (*Zool. Anz.*, 2, vol. i, 1878, p. 36).—Small pieces of the object are stained in bulk and dehydrated with alcohol. A thin solution of copal in chloroform is prepared by triturating small fragments of copal in a mortar with fine sand, pouring on chloroform to the powder thus obtained, and filtering. The objects are brought into a capsule filled with the copal solution. The solution is now slowly evaporated by gently heating the capsule on a tile by means of a common night-light placed beneath it. As soon as the solution is so far concentrated as to draw out into threads that are brittle after cooling, the objects are removed from the capsule and placed to dry for a few days on the tile, in order that they may more quickly become hard. When they have attained such a degree of hardness that they cannot be indented by a finger-nail, sections are cut from them by means of a fine saw. The sections are rubbed down even and smooth on one side with a hone, and cemented, with this side downwards, to a slide, by means either of Canada balsam or copal solution. The slide is put away for a few days more on the warmed tile. As soon as the cement is perfectly hard the sections are rubbed down on a grindstone, and then on a hone, to the requisite thinness and polish, washed with water, and mounted in balsam.

The process may be varied by imbedding the objects unstained, removing the copal from the sections by soaking in chloroform, decalcifying them if necessary, and then staining.

It is sometimes a good plan, after removing the copal, to cement a section to a slide by means of hard Canada balsam, then decalcify cautiously the exposed half of the specimen, wash, and stain it. In this way von Koch was able to demonstrate the most delicate lamellæ of connective tissue in *Isis elongata.*

---

* For the manipulations of section-grinding, see the Treatises on the Microscope, particularly CARPENTER's, *The Microscope and its Revelations* (J. and A. Churchill, London).

This method was imagined in order to enable the hard and soft parts of corals to be studied in their natural relations. It is evidently applicable to the study of any structures in which hard and soft parts are intimately combined. For purposes such as these it is certainly a method of the greatest value.

173. EHRENBAUM'S **Colophonium and Wax Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1884, p. 414).—Ehrenbaum recommends that the objects be infiltrated with a mass consisting of ten parts of colophonium to one of wax. The addition of wax makes the mass less brittle. Sections are obtained by grinding in the usual way. The mass is removed from them by means of turpentine followed by chloroform.

174. JOHNSTONE-LAVIS and VOSMAER'S **Balsam Method** (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 200) —Alcohol material is carefully and gradually saturated, first with benzol, and then with thin and thick solution of benzol-balsam. It is then dried for a day in the air and for several days more in a hot-air bath. When hard it is ground in the usual way. For further details and figure of the drying-stove see the original, which claims for the method several advantages over that of von Koch.

175. WEIL'S **Canada Balsam Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v. 2, 1888, p. 200 ; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 1042).

176. GIESBRECHT'S **Shellac Method.**—For hard parts only, spines of *Echinus*, shell, etc., see *Morph. Jahrb.*, vi, 1880, p. 95, or the abstract in LEE und MAYER, *Grundzüge*, etc.

Congelation Masses.

177. The Freezing Method.—Fresh tissues may be, and are, frequently frozen without being included in any mass, and in certain cases very satisfactory sections can be obtained in this manner. But the *formation of ice crystals* frequently causes tearing of delicate elements, and it is better to infiltrate the tissues with a mass that does not crystallise in the freezing mixture, but becomes hard and tough. HAMILTON (*Journ. of Anat. and Phys.*, xii, 1878, p. 254) soaked tissues in syrup of a particular strength, viz. double refined sugar, 2 ounces; water, 1 fluid ounce; then washed the superfluous syrup from the surface, and put into ordinary gum mucilage for an hour or so, and then imbedded in the freezing microtome with mucilage in the usual way.

178. Gum and Syrup Congelation Mass (COLE, *Methods of Microscopical Research*, 1884, p. xxxix; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N.S.], iv, 1884, p. 318).—Gum mucilage (B.P.), 5 parts; syrup, 3 parts. (For brain and spinal cord, retina, and all tissues liable to come in pieces put 4 parts of syrup to five of gum). Add 5 grains of pure carbolic acid to each ounce of the medium.

(Gum mucilage [B.P.] is made by dissolving 4 ounces of picked gum acacia in 6 ounces of water.

The syrup is made by dissolving 1 pound of loaf sugar in 1 pint of water and boiling.)

This medium is employed for soaking tissues previous to freezing.

The freezing is conducted as follows:—The gum and syrup is removed from the *outside* of the object by means of a cloth; the spray is set going and a little gum mucilage painted on the freezing plate; the object is placed on this and surrounded with gum mucilage; it is thus saturated with gum and syrup, but surrounded when being frozen with mucilage only. This combination prevents the sections from curling up on the one hand, or splintering from being too hard frozen on the other. Should freezing have been carried too far, wait for a few seconds.

179. Dextrin Congelation Mass (WEBB, *The Microscope*, ix, 1890, p. 344; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 113).—Thick solution of dextrin in solution of carbolic acid in water (1 in 40).

180. Gelatin (SOLLAS, *Quart. Journ. Mic. Soc.*, xxiv, 1884, pp. 163, 164; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N.S.], iv, 1884, p. 316). **Gum Gelatin** (JACOBS, *Amer. Natural.*, 1885, p. 734; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1885,

p. 900). **White of Egg** (Rollett, *Denkschr. math. naturw. Kl. k. Acad. Wiss. Wien*, 1885; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 92).—Small portions of tissue brought in the white of a freshly laid egg on to the freezing stage, frozen, and cut. **Oil of Aniseed** (Kühne, *Centralb. f. Bakteriol.*, xii, 1892, p. 28; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 706; V. A. Moore, *Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, 1894, p. 373; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1895, p. 247).

For details of these see previous editions.

For Döllken's method of solidifying Formol by means of Resorcin, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1, 1897, p. 33; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1897, p. 448.

CHAPTER X.

SERIAL SECTION MOUNTING.

181. Choice of a Method.—I recommend for general work the following:—For paraffin sections that do not require to be flattened or stained, Schällibaum's collodion. For paraffin sections that are to be stained on the slide, the water method, or Mayer's albumen. For collodion sections, Mayer's albumen. For very large collodion sections, Weigert's process.

Methods for Paraffin Sections.

182. The Water Method.—Gaule (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., Phys. Abth.*, 1881, p. 156); Suchannek (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 464); Gulland (*Journ. Anat. and Phys.*, xxvi, 1891, p. 56); Schiefferdecker (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 202); Heidenhain (*Kern und Protoplasma*, p. 114); Nusbaum (*Anat. Anz.*, xii, 2, 1896, p. 52); Mayer in the *Grundzüge*, Lee und Mayer, 1898, p. 113; De Groot (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1, 1898, p. 62), and others (some irrational variations have been suppressed).—The principle of this method is that the sections are made to adhere to the slide by the mere molecular adhesion of intimate contact, without the intervention of any cementing substance; the sections being brought into this intimate contact by being slowly drawn down by the evaporation of a layer of water on which they are floated. It is now practised, with unessential variations, as follows:

(*a*) For sections that are *large and not numerous.* The sections are flattened out on water by one or other of the processes described in § 138. The slide is then drained and put away to dry until every trace of water has completely evaporated away from under the sections. This drying may be performed at the temperature of the laboratory, in which case many hours will be necessary (to be safe it will generally be necessary to leave the sections overnight). Or it may be performed in a stove or on a water-bath, at a temperature a few degrees *below* the melting-point of the paraffin (best not above 40° C.), in which case fixation will be much more rapid, large thin sections being often sufficiently fixed in an hour, though thick ones will require half a dozen hours or more. *The paraffin must not be allowed to melt before the sections are perfectly dry*, the sections are sure to become detached if it does. Perfectly dry sections have a certain brilliant transparent look that is easily recognisable. As soon as dry they are perfectly fixed, and the paraffin may be removed and they may be treated with any desired liquids without more risk of their falling off than is the case with any other mode of fixation. To remove the paraffin most workers first melt it, and then remove it with a solvent. I find this is by no means necessary, all that is requisite is to put the slide into a tube of xylol, which in a few seconds, or minutes at most, removes the paraffin perfectly without any heat.

(*b*) For series of *numerous small sections*. Clean a slide perfectly, so that water will spread on it without any tendency to run into drops (see p. 142). Breathe on it, and with a brush draw on it a streak of water as wide as the sections and a little longer than the first row of sections that it is intended to mount. With a dry brush arrange the first row of sections (which may be either loose ones or a length of a ribbon) on this streak. Breathe on the slide again, draw on it another streak of water under the first one and arrange the next row of sections on it, and so on until the slide is full. Then breathe on the slide again, and with the brush add a drop of water at each end of each row of sections, so as to enable them to expand freely; then warm the slide so as to flatten out the sections, taking care *not to melt the paraffin*. Some persons do this by holding it over a small flame for a few seconds. I prefer to keep a slab of thickish glass in the drawer of the water-bath, so as to have it warm, and lay the slide on it, watching the flattening of the sections through a lens if necessary. As soon as they are perfectly flat, draw off the excess of water from one corner of the mount with a dry brush, and put aside to dry as before (*a*).

In order to success in this method it is absolutely essential that the sections be perfectly expanded and come into close contact with the slide at all points. And to ensure this it is necessary that the slide should be perfectly free from grease, so that the water may wet it equally everywhere. The test for this is, firstly, to breathe on the slide; the moisture from the breath should condense on it evenly all over, and disappear evenly. Secondly, streaks of water drawn on it with a brush should not run. It is not always easy to obtain a slide that will fulfil these conditions.

After slides have been cleaned by one of the processes given in the Appendix, **Cleaning Slides and Covers**, they should be rinsed with distilled water and preserved in 90 per cent. alcohol, from which they should be removed with forceps when required for use—not with the fingers—then simply drained, or wiped with a very clean cloth. If now a slide will not stand the breath test, place a drop of water on it and rub it in thoroughly with a damp cloth and try again. If this does not suffice, take a turn of a corner of the cloth round a finger and rub it with a piece of chalk, then damp the cloth and rub the slide with it, finishing up with a clean part of the cloth and clean water (DE GROOT, *loc. cit. supra*). If after performing this operation twice the slide still refuses to take the water properly, it should be rejected as incorrigible; for there are apparently some sorts of glass that can never be got to wet thoroughly.

Tap water seems preferable to distilled water; it seems to spread better and give a stronger adhesion. NUSBAUM adds a trace of gum arabic (one or two drops of mucilage to a glass of water); and APÁTHY (*Microtechnik*, p. 126) adds 1 per cent. of Mayer's albumen (next §).

Some workers have used alcohol (50 per cent. or 70 per cent.) instead of water; but this I believe to be now generally abandoned.

This is the most elegant method of any. No cement being employed, there is nothing on the slide except the sections that can stain, or appear as dirt in the mount. Tissues do not suffer in the least from the drying, provided the material has been properly imbedded. Sections stick so fast by this method that they will stand staining on the slide; they will stand watery or other fluids for weeks, so long as they are not alkaline, as these may cause them to become detached. When successfully performed it is quite safe, provided that the sections are of a suitable nature. They must be such as to afford a sufficient continuous surface, everywhere in contact with the slide. Sections of parenchymatous organs stick well; sections of thin-walled tubular organs stick badly, often so badly that the method is really not safe for them at all. Sections of chitinous organs are very unsafe. The larger and thinner sections are, the better do they stick, and *vice versâ*. Sections from material that has been fixed in chromic or osmic mixtures are said to adhere less well than sections from alcohol or sublimate material; I find, however, that mine adhere perfectly well if otherwise suitable. The method has the disadvantage of being lengthy. And Mayer states that if it is employed with stained material, the heat and drying may attack some kinds of stains.

183. MAYER'S **Albumen** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, iv, 1883; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N.S.], iv, 1884, p. 317; *Internat. Monatschr. f. Anat.*, 1887, Heft 2; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 160.—White of egg, 50 c.c.; glycerin, 50 c.c.; salicylate of soda, 1 grm. Shake them well together, and filter into a clean bottle. The filtering may take days or a week, but the preparation does not spoil meanwhile.

I find it convenient to beat up the egg with a little water before adding the glycerin and filtering, the salicylate being dissolved in the water in the first instance.

A *very thin* layer of the mixture is spread on a cold slide with a fine brush and well rubbed in with the finger. The sections are laid on it and pressed down lightly with a brush. The slide is then warmed for some minutes on a water-bath, and the paraffin removed with a solvent.

It is not necessary to use a water-bath for warming the slide. I prefer to warm for an instant over a flame until the paraffin melts; it is then instantly removed by means of xylol, tuluol, or the like.

It is not *necessary* to warm the slide at all; *the paraffin* *can be removed in the cold if desired* by putting the slide into toluol, xylol, or the like. But the slide *must,* in any case, be very thoroughly *treated with alcohol* after removal of the paraffin, in order to get rid of the glycerin, which will cause cloudiness if not perfectly removed.

The function of the glycerin is merely to keep the layer of albumen moist.

Miss A. M. CLAYPOLE has written a paper complaining that the method is uncertain, because too much heat may injure the tissues, and if too little be applied the albumen will not coagulate. This is a misapprehension. No heat whatever is required to coagulate the albumen; the alcohol will do that sufficiently.

This method allows of the staining of sections on the slide with perfect safety, both with alcoholic and aqueous stains, provided they be not alkaline.

This method can be combined with the water process for flattening out sections (last §), as described by HENNEGUY (*Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Physiol.*, 1891, p. 398). A drop of water is spread by means of a glass rod on a slide prepared with white-of-egg mixture, the sections are arranged on it, the whole is warmed (*not* to the melting-point of the paraffin) until the sections flatten out; the water is then evaporated off at a temperature of about 40° C., and as soon as it has sufficiently disappeared, which at that temperature will be in about ten minutes, the paraffin is melted, and the slide further treated as above described.

See also the description of this method given by OHLMACHER (*Journ. Amer. Med. Ass.*, April, 1893), who has independently worked out the same process.

The so-called "Japanese" method, attributed to IKEDA by REINKE (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1895, p. 21) is merely that of Henneguy.

According to my experience the albumen method is *absolutely safe*. It has the defect that certain plasma stains (not chromatin stains) colour the albumen very strongly and cannot be removed from it.

It sometimes happens that the mixture after it has stood for some time becomes turbid, a change which has been attributed to the development of a microbe. I know of no means of preventing the mixture from going bad in this way, though I have found that it keeps better when freely exposed to the sun. It has been stated (VOSSELER, *Zeit. f.*

wiss. Mik., vii, 4, 1891, p. 457) that after a time the mixture loses its adhesive properties, and should be thrown away (GRANDIS also [*Atti Accad. Lincei, Rend.* (4), vi, 1890, p. 138; *Arch. Ital. Biol.*, xiv, 1891, p. 412] states that the albumen of the mixture decomposes after a time). That is not my experience. I find the liquid either first becomes milky, then altogether turbid, and at last coagulates, passing into a caseous state, or it may undergo a hyaline coagulation, drying up like amber. But up to the very last it does not in the least degree lose its adhesive properties. As long as there is enough moisture in it to moisten the brush, I have always found it to stick as well as the first day.

184. MANN's **Albumen Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 4, 1894, p. 486).—Shake up white of egg with ten volumes of distilled water and filter twice through the same paper. Spread this on a stock of slides with a glass rod; let them drain and dry. Arrange and expand the sections thereon by the water method, § 182, put the slide for five minutes on a stove heated to 35° C., then treat with xylol and alcohol.

185. SCHÄLLIBAUM's **Collodion Method** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxii, 1883, p. 565).—One part of collodion is shaken up with three to four volumes (according to the consistency of the collodion) of clove oil or lavender oil. This should give a clear solution. A little is spread thinly on a slide with a small brush. After arranging the sections on the prepared surface, warm over a water-bath, gently, until the clove oil has evaporated (five to ten minutes). The sections are then found to be fixed, and, it is said, can be treated for days with turpentine, chloroform, alcohol, and watery fluids, without becoming detached, thus allowing staining on the slide. According to my experience, however, the method is certainly not safe *for that purpose*, and should be discarded in favour of the water or the albumen method, and should only be used for already stained sections. See, however, further details in previous editions, or RABL (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, p. 179); FIELD and MARTIN (*Bull. Soc. Zool. de France*, xix, 1894, p. 48); GALLEMAERTS (*Bull. Soc. Belge de Micro.*, xv, 1889, p. 56; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, p. 4, 1889, p. 493); SUMMERS (*Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, 1887, p. 73; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 482); STRASSER (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 1, 1887, p. 45).

186. STRASSER's **Collodion-Paper Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 3, 1886, p. 346).—This is an extremely complicated modification of Weigert's method for celloidin sections, and is only adapted for use with STRASSER's automatic ribbon-microtome. See the original papers in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 3, 1886, p. 346; vi, 2, 1889, p. 154; vii, 3, 1890, p. 290; *ibid.*, p. 304; ix, 1, 1892, p. 8; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 703; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 2, 1895, p. 154 (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1895, p. 702); *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1, 1897, p. 39.

187. The Shellac Method (GIESBRECHT, *Zool. Anz.*, 1881, p. 484).—Prepare a stock of slides covered with a thin and even film of shellac. This is done as follows:—Make a not too strong solution of brown shellac in absolute alcohol, filter it thoroughly; warm the slides, and spread over them a layer of shellac by means of a glass rod dipped in the solution and drawn once over each slide. Let the slides dry.

You may now either take a prepared slide and brush it over *very thinly* with creasote applied by means of a brush, and arrange the sections on the *sticky surface*; then heat the slide on a water-bath for about a quarter of an hour at the melting-point of the paraffin—the slide is allowed to cool, and the paraffin is dissolved away by dropping turpentine on to the sections, which are then mounted in Canada balsam. Or (MAYER, *Intern. Monatsschr. f. Anat., etc.*, 1887, Heft 2; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 1, 1887, p. 77) the brushing with creasote is omitted and the sections are arranged on the *dry film* and gently pressed down on to it, then exposed for half a minute to vapour of ether, which fixes them.

The method does not allow of staining on the slide, and is in my opinion superfluous, but see further details in previous editions, or *Mitth. d. Zool. Stat.*, iii, 1881, p. 148; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* (N. S.), vol. ii, 1882, p. 888; WHITMAN'S *Methods in Microscopical Anat.*, p. 117; CALDWELL, *Quart. Journ. Mic. Soc.* (N. S.), lxxxvii, 1882, p. 336; P. MAYER, *Amer. Natural.*, 1882, p. 733; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 1, 1887, p. 77; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1885, p. 910; and LEE und MAYER, *Grundzüge*, etc., 1898, p. 118.

188. VAN WALSEM'S **Gelatin Process.**—Extremely complicated. See *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, pp. 229 to 235, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1895, p. 122.

189. OBREGIA'S process given below, § 196, for celloidin sections, is also applicable to paraffin sections.

For BLOCHMAN'S modification of Weigert's process, by means of which large sections can be preserved *unmounted*, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 2, 1897, p. 189.

For other methods with gum, gelatin, etc., suppressed as superfluous, *see previous editions.*

Methods for Watery Sections.

190. FOL'S **Gelatin** (FOL, *Lehrb.*, p. 132).—Four grammes of gelatin are dissolved in 20 c.c. of glacial acetic acid by heating on a water-bath and agitation. To 5 c.c. of the solution add 70 c.c. of 70 per cent. alcohol and 1 to 2 c.c. of 5 per cent. aqueous solution of chrome-alum. Pour the mixture on to the slide and allow it to dry. In a few hours the gelatin passes into the insoluble state. It retains, however, the property of swelling and becoming somewhat sticky in presence of water. The slide may then be immersed in water containing the sections; these can be slid into their places, and the whole lifted out: the sections will be found to be fixed.

This method is specially intended for sections made under water, large celloidin sections amongst others.

Methods for Celloidin Sections.

191. The Albumen Method.—I find that celloidin sections may be mounted on Mayer's albumen, and have the celloidin removed, if desired, by putting them into ether-alcohol. Care must be taken to press them down very thoroughly on to the albumen.

So also JORDAN (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1, 1898, p. 54; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1898, p. 600), who coagulates the albumen by heat, the sections being covered with a layer of tissue-paper and a second slide over it, to prevent them from drying through the heat.

192. SUMMERS' **Ether Method** (*Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, 1887, p. 73; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 482; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 523).—Place the sections in 95 per cent. alcohol for a minute or two, arrange on the slide, and then pour over the sections sulphuric ether *vapour*, from a bottle partly full of liquid ether. The celloidin will immediately soften and become perfectly transparent. Place the slide in 80 per cent. alcohol, or even directly in 95 per cent. if desired. The sections, it is said, will be found to be firmly fixed, and may be stained if desired. I have not myself found this method safe.

SCHIEFFERDECKER (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 4, 1888, p. 507) recommends that the slide be one that has been previously prepared with a layer of collodion if it is desired to stain on the slide; but if not a clean slide is perfectly sufficient. The slide may, of course, be treated with ether vapour *in a preparation glass or similar arrangement.*

GAGE (*Proc. Amer. Soc. Mic.*, 1892, p. 82) advises that the slide be one that has been previously coated with a 0·5 per cent. solution of white of egg and dried; the collodion adheres much more strongly to an albuminised surface.

AUBURTIN (*Anat. Anz.*, xiii, 1897, p. 90; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1897, p. 174) arranges on a clean slide, dehydrates the sections with blotting paper and treatment with absolute alcohol, then drops on to them a mixture of alcohol and ether which dissolves out the celloidin from the sections, then allows the thin collodion thus formed to evaporate into a thin sheet on the slide. Then 70 per cent. alcohol and other desired reagents.

193. APÁTHY'S **Oil of Bergamot Method** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, 1887, p. 742; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1, 1888, p. 46, and v, 3, 1888, p. 360; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 670). —Cut with a knife smeared with yellow vaselin and wetted with 95 per cent. alcohol. Float the sections, as cut, on bergamot oil (must be green, must mix perfectly with 90 per cent. alcohol, and must not smell of turpentine), or on carbol-xylol (*Mikrotechnik*, p. 176). The sections spread themselves out on the surface of the oil; before they sink each one is pushed by means of a needle into its place on a slip of tracing-paper dipped into the oil. When the requisite number of sections have been arranged on the paper, you drain the paper, dry the under side of it with blotting-paper, turn it over, and gently press it down with blotting-paper on to a carefully dried slide. Remove the paper by rolling it up from one end. The sections remain adhering to the slide, and may have the remaining bergamot oil removed from them by means of a cigarette paper. If they are already stained, nothing remains but to add balsam and a cover.

In the case of unstained or very small objects it is well to add a little alcoholic solution of safranin to the bergamot oil. The celloidin of the sections becomes coloured in it in a few seconds, and makes them readily visible. The colour disappears in a few days after mounting.

The process may be much simplified (APÁTHY, *Mikrotechnik*, p. 127) by omitting the arrangement on the paper and transferring the sections direct from the bergamot oil to the slide, which (*ibid.*, p. 176) may have been previously collodionised and dried. The function of the bergamot oil is *to flatten out the sections.*

If the sections are to be stained, the slide after removal of the bergamot oil is exposed for a few minutes to the vapour of a mixture of ether and alcohol, then brought into 90 per cent. alcohol, and after a quarter of an hour therein may be stained in any fluid that contains 70 per cent. alcohol or more.

If it be desired to stain in a watery fluid, care must have been taken when arranging the sections to let the celloidin of each section overlap that of its neighbours at the edges, so that the ether vapour may fuse them all into one continuous plate. This will become detached from the slide in watery fluids, and may then be treated as a single section.

194. APÁTHY'S **Series-on-the-Knife Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 2, 1888, p. 168).—The knife is well smeared with yellow vaselin rubbed evenly on with the finger, and is wetted with alcohol of 70 to 90 per cent. As fast as the sections are cut they are drawn with a needle or small brush to a dry part of the blade, and there arranged in rows, the celloidin of each section overlapping or at least touching that of its neighbours. The rows are the length of the cover-glass, and are arranged one under the other so as to form a square of the size of the cover-glass. When a series (or several series, if you like) has been thus completed, the sections are dried by laying blotting-paper on them (there is no risk of their becoming attached to it, as they are held down by the vaselin). The series is then painted over with some of the thickest celloidin solution used for imbedding, is allowed to evaporate for five minutes in the air, and is then either wetted with 70 per cent. alcohol, and allowed to remain whilst cutting is proceeded with, or (if no more sections are to be cut, or if the knife is now full) the knife is removed and brought for half an hour into 70 per cent. alcohol. This hardens the celloidin around the sections into a continuous lamella, which can be easily detached by means of a scalpel, and stained, or further treated as desired. It is well to bring it at once on to a slide, moisten the edges of the celloidin plate with ether and alcohol mixture, so that it may not become detached, and bring the whole into the staining solution.

195. WEIGERT'S **Collodion Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 490).—Sections are cut wet with alcohol. Care should be taken not to have so much alcohol on the knife as to cause the sections to float. Prepare a slip of porous but tough paper (Weigert recommends "closet paper") of about twice the width of the sections. Soak it in alcohol, take it by both ends, stretch it slightly, and lower it on to the section that is on the knife. The section will adhere to the paper, and is taken up by moving the slip horizontally or slightly upwards, away from the edge of the knife. Take up the first section towards the end of the paper that you hold in your left hand, and let the remaining sections follow in order from left to right. After each section has been taken up, the slip is placed, whilst the next section is being cut, with the sections upwards on a moist surface prepared by arranging several layers of blotting-paper, covered with one layer of closet paper, in a plate, and saturating the whole with alcohol. When all the sections have been arranged on the slip, you pass to the next stage of the process, the collodionisation of the series.

This is done in two steps. The first of these consists in transporting the series on to a plate of glass prepared with collodion. The plate is prepared beforehand by pouring on to it collodion and causing it to spread out into a thin layer, as photographers do, and allowing it to dry. (A number of the plates may be prepared and kept indefinitely in stock; microscope slides will do for series of small sections.) Take one of these plates; lay the slip of paper with the sections on the plate, the sections downwards; press it down gently and evenly, and the sections will adhere to the collodion; then carefully remove the paper. (Do not place more than one or at most two lines of sections on the same plate, for those first placed run the risk of becoming dry whilst you are placing the others.) This finishes the first stage of the collodionising process.

Now remove with blotting-paper any excess of alcohol that may remain on or around the sections, pour collodion over them, and get it to spread in an even layer. As soon as this layer is dry at the surface you may write any necessary indications on it with a small brush charged with methylen blue (the colour will remain fast throughout all subsequent manipulations).

The plate may now either be put away till wanted in 80 per cent. alcohol, or may be brought into a staining fluid. The watery fluid causes the double sheet of collodion to become detached from the glass, holding the sections fast between its folds. It is then easy to stain, wash, dehydrate, and mount in the usual way, merely taking care not to use alcohol of more than 90 to 96 per cent. for dehydration. Weigert recommends for clearing the mixture of xylol and carbolic acid (§ 161).

The series should be cut into the desired lengths for mounting whilst in the alcohol. It is perhaps safer to lay them out for cutting on a strip of closet paper saturated with alcohol.

A good method for *large* and *thick* sections that do not require flattening, not for series of small thin ones.

It is suggested by Strasser that gummed paper might be an improvement on the glass plates used in this process—especially for very large sections.

The modification of Weigert's method proposed by Wintersteiner (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 3, 1893, p. 316) consists in suppressing the alignment of the sections on the strip of paper, and slipping them direct from the knife on to the prepared glass.

196. Obregia's **Method for Paraffin or Celloidin Sections.**—This method was originally described in the *Neurologisches Centralb.*, ix, 1890, p. 295, and is given in the third edition of Woodhead's *Practical Pathology*. It is described with modifications by Gulland, *Journ. of Path.*, February, 1893. Slides, or glass plates of any size, are coated with a solution made of—

Syrupy solution of powdered candy-sugar made with boiling distilled water	30 c.c.
95 per cent. alcohol	20 ,,
Transparent syrupy solution of pure dextrin made by boiling with distilled water	10 ,,

They are dried slowly for two or three days until the surface is just sticky to the moist finger. *Paraffin sections* are arranged and heated for a few minutes to a temperature slightly above the melting-point of the paraffin. The paraffin is removed by some solvent, such as xylol or naphtha, and this is in turn removed by absolute alcohol. The alcohol is poured off, and the sections are covered with solution of celloidin or with a solution of 3 per cent. of photoxylin or Schering's "Celloidinwolle" in a mixture of equal parts of ether and absolute alcohol. The plates are left to evaporate for ten minutes in a horizontal position, then brought into water, in which the sheet of celloidin with the sections soon becomes detached, and may be further treated as desired, *e. g.* as in Weigert's process, § 195. (It is well to divide the sheet of celloidin into ribbons by running the point of a knife down it as soon as evaporation has produced a very slight solidification, and the evaporation must not be artificially hastened.)

This is the process for paraffin sections; for *celloidin sections* the sections are taken up in order on a strip of paper (glossed tissue paper, *satinisirtes Seidenpapier*, the sections to be on the glossed side) as in WEIGERT's method, and laid down on the glass in the same way, and then covered with the celloidin or photoxylin solution and evaporated as described. The advantage of Obregia's process is that it is equally applicable to paraffin sections, to celloidin sections, and to sections of material that has not been imbedded at all.

DIMMER (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1, 1899, p. 44; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 448) coats the slides with a solution of about 16 parts of gelatin in 300 of warm water, and dries them (two days), and proceeds in other respects as above.

197. GIACOMINI's collodion-gelatin process for large sections, see *Gazzetta delle Cliniche*, November, 1885, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 531, or the first edition of the *Traité* of LEE et HENNEGUY, p. 392.

CHAPTER XI.

STAINING.

198. The Kinds of Stains.—Stains are either General or Special (otherwise called Specific, or Selective, or Elective). A general stain is one that takes effect on all the elements of a preparation. A special, specific, selective, or elective stain is one that takes effect only on some of them, certain elements being made prominent by being coloured, the rest either remaining colourless or being coloured with a different intensity or in a different tone. To obtain this *differentiation* is the chief object for which colouring reagents are employed in microscopic anatomy.

Two chief kinds of this selection may be distinguished,—*histological* selection and *cytological* selection. In the former an entire tissue or group of tissue elements is prominently stained, the elements of other sorts present in the preparation remaining colourless or being at all events differently stained, as in a successful impregnation of nerve-endings by means of gold chloride. This is the kind of stain that is generally meant by a *specific* stain. In the latter the stain seizes on one of the constituent elements of cells in general, for instance either on the chromatin of the nucleus, or on one or other of the elements that go to make up the cytoplasm.

Stains that thus exhibit a selective affinity for the substance of nuclei—*nuclear* or *chromatin* stains—form at present the most important class of stains for the embryologist or zootomist. What the zootomist or embryologist wants, in the great majority of cases, is not so much to differentiate the intimate structures of cells by means of a colour reaction, in order to study them for their own sakes, as the cytologist does, as merely to have the nuclei of tissues marked out by staining in the midst of the unstained material in such a way that they may form landmarks to catch the eye, which is then able to follow out with ease the contours and relations of the elements to which the nuclei belong; the extranuclear parts of these elements being expressly left unstained in order that as little light as possible may be absorbed in passing through the preparation. Possibly this may be an irrational procedure, but it is found in practice to be very efficient for general work.

To these must be added another group of stains of the greatest importance to the cytologist and histologist, the *plasmatic stains*, or *plasma stains*. These take effect especially on elements of cells and tissues other than the chromatin—for instance, on the reticulum of cytoplasm, or on its granules, or on polar corpuscles, etc., or on the formed material of tissues—the chromatin being left as far as possible unstained, in order that it may be counterstained in another colour by means of one of the above-mentioned chromatin stains.

In this book, therefore, stains are looked upon as being (1) General stains; (2) Selective stains; the latter group being subdivided into (*a*) Nuclear, (*b*) Plasmatic, (*c*) Histologically Selective, or Specific.

199. The Methods of Staining.—Colouring matters possessing so great an affinity for certain elements of tissues that they may be left to produce the desired electivity of stain without any special manipulation on the part of the operator, are unfortunately rare. In practice, selective staining is arrived at in two ways. In the one, which may be called the *progressive* or *direct* method, you make use of a colouring reagent that stains the elements desired to be selected more quickly than the elements you wish to have unstained; and you stop the process and fix the colour at the moment when the former are just sufficiently stained, and the latter not affected to an injurious extent, or not affected at all, by the colour. This is what happens, for instance, when you stain the nuclei of a preparation by treatment with very dilute alum hæmatoxylin: you get, at a certain moment, a fairly pure nuclear stain; but if you were to prolong the treatment, the extra-nuclear elements would take up the colour, and the selectivity of the stain would be lost. It may be noted of this method that it is in general the one employed for the colouring of specimens *in bulk*,—a procedure which is not possible with most of the regressive stains. It is the old method of carmine and hæmatoxylin staining.

The second, the *regressive* or *indirect* method, is the method of overstaining followed by partial discoloration. You begin by staining all the elements of your preparation indiscriminately, and you then wash out the colour from all the elements except those which you desire to have stained, these retaining the colour more obstinately than the others in virtue of a certain not yet satisfactorily explained affinity. This is what happens, for instance, when you stain a section of one deep red in all its elements with safranin, and then, treating it for a few seconds with alcohol, extract the colour from all but the chromatin and nucleoli of the nuclei. It is in this method that the coal-tar colours find their chief employment. It is in general applicable *only to sections*, and not to staining objects *in bulk* (the case of borax carmine is an exception). It is a method, however, of very wide applicability, and gives, perhaps, the most brilliant results that have hitherto been attained.

200. The State of the Tissues to be stained.—It is generally found that precise stains can only be obtained with carefully fixed (*i. e.* hardened) tissues. Dead, but not artificially hardened tissues stain indeed, but not generally in a precise manner. Living tissue elements in general do not stain at all, but resist the action of colouring reagents till they are killed by them (see, however, next section).

It appears probable, as was first pointed out, I believe, by Paul Mayer, that the usual histological stains obtained with fixed tissues are brought about in two ways. Either they result from the combination of the colouring agent with certain organic or inorganic salts,—phosphates, for instance, that existed in the tissue elements during life and were thrown down *in situ* by the fixing or hardening agent employed, as seems to happen when such a fixing agent as alcohol is employed. Or they result from the combination of the colouring agent with certain compounds that did not pre-exist in the tissues, but were formed by the combination of the constituents of the tissues with the chemical elements brought to them by the fixing agent, as seems to happen when such a fixing agent as chromic acid is employed—the compounds in question being probably chiefly metal albuminates. These considerations will serve to show to how great an extent the quality of a stain is dependent on the nature of the previous treatment the tissues have undergone.

200 a. The Molecular Processes involved in Staining.—The question whether the phenomena of staining and of industrial dyeing are of a chemical order, as held by some, or of a purely physical order, as held by others, is outside the province of this book. See the elaborate discussion of the subject in FISCHER's *Fixirung, Färbung und Bau des Protoplasmus*, Jena, G. Fischer, 1889.

201. Staining "intravitam."—Some few substances possess the property of staining—or rather, tingeing—living cells without greatly impairing their vitality. Such are—in very dilute solutions—cyanin (or quinoleïn), methylen blue, Bismarck brown, anilin black, Congo red, neutral red, Nile blue, and, under certain conditions, dahlia and eosin, gentian violet, with perhaps methyl violet, and some others whose action is not yet sufficiently established by experiment.

As to the employment of these reagents, it may be noted that they must be taken in a state of considerable dilution, and in neutral or feebly alkaline solution—acids being of course toxic to cells. Thus employed, they will be found to tinge with colour the cytoplasm of certain cells during life; never, so far as I can see, nuclear chromatin during life;—if this stain, it is a sign that death has set in. The stain is sometimes diffused throughout the general substance of the cytoplasm, sometimes limited to certain granules in it, which have been taken, in some cases certainly without sufficient reason, to be identical with the granules of Altmann (Altmann's *Studien über die Zelle*, 1886).

It has been asserted by some observers that the nucleus may be stained during the life of the cell by means of Bismarck brown, Congo red, methylen blue, neutral red, Nile blue, and safranin. But it is by no means clear from the statements of these writers that the coloration observed by them is localised *in the chromatin* of the nucleus. It would rather appear to be a diffuse coloration of the nuclear substance, which is a very different thing.

I have myself made a considerable number of observations on the subject of *intra-vitam* staining, and have come to the same conclusion as GALEOTTI (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 172), namely that the so-called "intra-vitam" stains are not true stains at all. The diffuse coloration above mentioned appears always, if the cell that shows it has remained in a state of unimpaired vitality, to be due to simple absorption or imbibition of the colouring matter by the cell, not to a molecular combination of the colouring matter with any of the constituents of the cells. If a cell thus coloured be transported into a medium free from the colouring matter it will give up unchanged the colour it had imbibed, which seems to be a sufficient proof that the colouring matter had not entered into any molecular combination with the elements of the cell, but was simply loosely held in a mechanical way in the interstices of its substance. If, on the other hand, there has been produced the above-mentioned coloration of certain granules or other cell-contents, it is possible that this may be a true stain in the sense of being such a combination as is formed in *fixed* material when stained. It may be so, but it certainly is not always so, as may sometimes be proved with the greatest ease by putting the cell into a colourless medium and observing the supposed stain disappear. And in cases in which this does not happen, in which, therefore, a more or less fast stain has been obtained, it is invariably found that the stain is limited to cell-contents that do not form an integral part of the living texture of the cell; the cell itself may be living, but they are not. These granules or other cell-contents may be granules formed of substances that have been absorbed by the cell from without—food-granules; or they may be katabolic products, consisting of matter that is no longer alive and is destined to be shortly expelled from the cell; or they may be elements that form indeed an integral part of the living texture of the cell but have been injuriously affected by the colouring matter, and for that or some other reason are in a state of diminished vitality,—they are parts of the cell that are being killed by the colouring reagent or that have been totally killed by it, whilst the rest survives; in no case do they consist of matter that is fully and perfectly alive. I am inclined to think that the chief scientific value of the so-called vital or *intra-vitam* stains may be found to lie in the fact that they may furnish us with the means of distinguishing the living constituents of a cell from the non-living ones, and even of recognising amongst the living ones those that possess only a relatively low or impaired degree of vitality. See on this point (as on others connected with the theory of staining) the work of FISCHER, quoted § 200 A.

Apart, however, from the question whether the elements stained by the so-called "vital" stains are truly living or not, it must be conceded that this mode of treating living cells has frequently a considerable measure of practical utility. It often enables us to map out physiological or morphological tracts that would otherwise be unrecognisable or less readily recognisable in the living state.

I find methylen blue, Congo red, neutral red, gentian and dahlia added to indifferent liquids, extremely useful in the examination of tissue-cells. Quinoleïn and Bismarck brown are well-known aids to the study of Infusoria. Methylen blue has a specific affinity for sensory nerves, and is an extremely important reagent (see *post*, Chap. XVII). According to my experience, methylen blue is the most generally useful of these stains. It has (with Bismarck brown, Congo red and neutral red) the valuable point that it is sufficiently soluble in saline solutions, and may therefore be employed with marine organisms by simply adding it to sea water. The others are not thus soluble to a practical extent, but I find that gentian and dahlia become so if a trace of chloral hydrate —0·25 per cent. is ample enough—be added to the saline solution. Any of these reagents may be rubbed up with serum, or other "indifferent" liquid.

Methylen blue may be fixed in the tissues, and permanent preparations made, by one or other of the methods described in Chap. XVII. Bismarck brown stains may be fixed with 0·2 per cent. chromic acid or with sublimate solution (MAYER), or 1 per cent. osmic acid (LOISEL, *Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Phys.*, 1898, No. 2, p. 212—a work that contains a good deal of information on the subject of *intra-vitam* stains), and the preparations may be stained with safranin, care being taken not to expose them too long to the action of alcohol.

202. Substantive and Adjective Staining; Mordants.—In the industry of dyeing, colouring matters are divided into two classes, according to their behaviour with respect to the material to be dyed. Certain dyes are absorbed directly from their solution by the material immersed therein, and combine with it directly. In this case the material is said to be *substantively* dyed, and the colouring matter is called a *substantive* colouring matter.

Other dyes do not combine directly with the material to be acted on, but this material must first be charged with some substance known as *mordant* (generally a metallic salt or hydrate) before it will combine with the colouring matter. These are known as *adjective* colouring matters.*

Animal tissues have in general a considerable affinity for colouring matters, taking them up directly from their solutions. In consequence, the majority of histological stains are obtained by substantive staining of the tissues. Still, as has been already pointed out, it seems probable that many of the histological stains that are obtained without intentional mordanting of the tissues, should yet in strictness be attributed to the class of adjective stains. This would be the case whenever there is reason to suppose that the stain obtained results from a combination of the colouring matter with some metallic salt or hydrate that is not a constituent of the living tissue, but has been brought into it by the fixing or hardening reagents, these reagents playing the part of mordants though only intentionally employed for another purpose. This would appear to be the case with the stains, or some of them, obtained after fixation with corrosive sublimate, alum, salts of iron, of platinum, of palladium, of uranium, and, for certain tissue elements and certain colours, chromium. And further, the mordanting substance may not only be present unintentionally in the fixing or hardening agents, it may be present unintentionally, or with imperfect realisation of its import, in the staining solutions themselves. Such is presumably the part played by alum in many of the stains in which it figures as an ingredient. Iodine also plays in some staining processes a part which seems only explicable on the supposition that it acts as a mordant.

---

* For an excellent popular exposition of this subject see Benedikt and Knecht's 'Chemistry of the Coal-tar Colours' (George Bell and Sons).

In some staining processes, however, mordants are intentionally resorted to in order to fix the stain. Mordanting has long been employed in some hæmatein staining processes, such as the iron-alum process of BENDA and M. HEIDENHAIN. More lately it has been resorted to for staining with tar colours, as in the curious "inversion" process of RAWITZ. It must be admitted that mordants are in some cases of use by enabling us to fix colouring matter in tissue elements that would otherwise be rebellious to staining. And they have in some cases the advantage of affording a very convenient means of regressive staining. For it happens that the colour-compounds thrown down in mordanted tissues are in many cases specially soluble in an excess of the mordant; so that the solution of the mordant itself forms a very appropriate decolourising agent.

Recognising these advantages, it must still, I think, be said that there seems to be some danger at the present moment that the practice of employing mordants may degenerate into an abuse. For surely the primary use and intention of an histological stain (not of an industrial dye) is, that it should select and reveal those elements of tissues that have a *natural* affinity for its colouring matter. That end is attained in the manner least open to objection by the use of substantive stains, the natural affinities of the tissues and the colouring matter here coming spontaneously and unconstrained into play. Not so in the case of adjective staining. Here the colour is, as it were, forcibly compelled into an *unnatural* union with all or many of the elements of the tissue, including many which have no natural affinity whatever for the colour. In such preparations (*e. g.* in the "inversion" stain of RAWITZ) the distinction between chromatic and achromatic elements is obliterated; and the interpretation of the images afforded by them is open to more serious causes of error than in the case of substantive stains.

The following substances may be found to act usefully after the manner of mordants, for enhancing the resistance of many tar colours to the alcohol employed for decolourising, and for producing a stronger stain.

Iodine: sections may be treated for a few minutes before staining with tincture of iodine.

Permanganate of potash: *see* HENNEGUY'S process.

Formaldehyde : *see* OHLMACHER'S process.

203. Choice of a Stain.—The following may be recommended to the *beginner* for general work :—*For sections,* MAYER'S *hæmalum ;* or, for chromosmium objects more especially, BENDA'S or HEIDENHAIN'S iron hæmatoxylin.

For staining *in toto* Grenacher's alcoholic *borax-carmine,* or Mayer's *carmalum,* or hæmalum, unless the object be so impermeable as to require a more highly alcoholised stain, in which case take Mayer's *paracarmine,* or for chromic acid objects Mayer's *hæmacalcium.*

For *fresh tissues* or small entire objects, *methyl green,* if it is not important to have permanent preparations ; if it is, take *carmalum* or *alum-carmine* (but both of these may give precipitates with marine animals).

Picric acid may be used for double-staining in bulk after carmine or hæmatoxylin.

The *beginner* will probably do well not to use a double stain where a single one will do. To do so is too often to go farther and fare worse.

204. Staining Reagents and Chemicals.—You are not likely to succeed in staining, especially in staining with coal-tar colours, unless you see to it that you are working with chemicals of the proper quality. You *cannot* ensure this by going to a generally trustworthy house for chemical products—at all events, not in the case of coal-tar colours. It is not sufficient that these should be what they are commercially described to be ; they may be pure, and yet not give good stains. They must (in the case of coal-tar colours, at all events) be the identical products used in their work by the authors who have described and recommended them (see the note on the numerous safranins in the market, *sub voce Safranin*). I therefore feel constrained to advise everybody to get his reagents—at all events his anilins—from the well-known chemists GRÜBLER & HOLLBORN or MÜNDER. Grübler & Hollborn have all the tried reagents in stock, and supply only such as have been found by experiment with tissues to furnish the desired stain. They also make up fixing and staining solutions, injection and imbedding masses, etc., according to the classical formulæ, and send them out neatly packed and ready for use. From experience I can most highly recommend these preparations, which are in nine cases out of ten better than those the observer is likely to make for himself. They may be ordered from the price list, or by quoting the numbers of the formulæ in this work. The address is: Herrn Dr. G. GRÜBLER & HOLLBORN, Chemiker, Baiersche Strasse 63, Leipzig. They can correspond in English.

Their preparations can be obtained in London from Mr. CHARLES BAKER, 244, High Holborn, W.C., who is also agent for the microscopes and apparatus of Zeiss, also for the microtomes of Jung, Becker and others, and the bacteriological apparatus of F. and M. Lautenschlaeger, etc.

Münder's address is: Herrn Dr. G. MÜNDER, Mikroskopisch-chemisches Institut, Göttingen.

CHAPTER XII.

CARMINE AND COCHINEAL STAINS.

205. The Theory of Carmine Staining.—I take the following from the important paper of MAYER, "Ueber das Färben mit Carmin, Cochenille, und Hämateïn-Thonerde," in *Mitth. a. d. Zool. Station zu Neapel*, Bd. x, Heft 3, 1892, p. 480. The *rationale* of staining with carmine has hitherto been obscured by the erroneous notion that carmine is nothing but carminic acid with at most certain impurities. This is not the case. According to the analysis of LIEBERMANN (*Ber. d. Chem. Ges.*, Jahrg. 18, 1886, pp. 1969—1975) carmine is a *very peculiar alumina-lime-protein compound of carminic acid*, a true chemical compound from which at all events *aluminium* and *calcium* can no more be absent than sodium from salt. Analysis gave him about 17 per cent. of water, 20 per cent. nitrogenous matters, 56 per cent. carminic acid, at least 3 per cent. alumina, and 3 per cent. lime, together with a small proportion of magnesia, potash, soda, phosphoric acid, and a trace of wax. Mayer has come to the conclusion that in the processes of histological staining (*not* of industrial dyeing) the active factors of the compound are, besides the carminic acid, always the alumina, and in some cases the lime. *The other bases are inactive*; the nitrogenous matters, so far as they have any influence at all, are an obstacle, as it is they that give rise to the well-known putrefaction of the solutions.

Having arrived at these conclusions, it seemed logical to admit that *carminic acid, instead of carmine, should be taken as the basis of staining solutions*. This had already been proposed by DIMMOCK, whose paper (*Amer. Natural.*, xviii, 1884, pp. 324–7) I quoted at length in the first edition of this work. But Dimmock's proposals were not very successful, for the reason that he had omitted from his solutions the essential element, the alumina. He stained, for instance, with pure alcoholic solution of carminic acid, or of carminate of ammonia. Such solutions stain, but stain weakly and diffusely.

Mayer therefore sought for appropriate means of introducing the necessary alumina into the solutions; with the results that will be set forth in the next §.

206. Carminic Acid occurs as a purple-brown mass, easily soluble both in water and in alcohol. It ought not to be hygroscopic, nor leave an ash after glowing on a platinum foil. It is (according to Nietzki, *Chemie der organischen Farbstoffe*, Berlin, 1889, pp. 231—234) a weak (Liebermann says a strong) dibasic acid, which forms soluble salts with the alkaline metals, insoluble violet-coloured ones with the earthy and heavy metals. Very little is known concerning the chemical nature of these salts.

The alumina salt (carminate of alumina) has the remarkable property of being soluble not only in acids and acid salts, such as alum, but also in alkalies and alkaline salts, such as borax, provided that only water or weak alcohol be employed as the menstruum. It may be obtained by precipitating a solution of carminic acid or of carminate of ammonia by means of acetate of alumina. It is also precipitated from the above-named solutions by chloride of aluminium, but only in part; whilst if alum be taken no precipitate is produced, the carminate of alumina remaining in solution, and forming the staining fluid given below under the name of **Carmalum**.

When chloride of aluminium is taken, a precipitate is formed, as stated above. But this precipitate will redissolve if more chloride of aluminium be cautiously added. This gives the staining fluid described in § 212, which may be convenient in cases in which it is not desirable to work with a fluid containing alum.

Both of these solutions stain in a violet tone, something like alum-carmine. A redder tone may be obtained by adding calcium chloride to the carmalum solution. But this is not advisable, for calcium chloride added to carmalum precipitates the solution with formation of gypsum. Of course, this does not occur with the aluminium chloride solution; but for other reasons the addition does not give satisfactory results with the chloride of aluminium solution mentioned above. But it does give good results when combined with an *alcoholic* chloride of aluminium solution, and thus solves at once the problem of obtaining a *red* stain and an *alcoholic* staining fluid. This is described below under the name of **Paracarmine.**

If the foregoing explanations of the *rationale* of carmine staining be compared with the remarks on the theory of staining with hæmatoxylin given in the next Chapter, an interesting parallelism will be observed. In both processes it is not the colouring matter alone which is active, but the colouring matter combined with *alumina*. The stain is always got with carminic acid + alumina, or with hæmateïn + alumina; other substances, such as lime, occasionally playing a part.

207. The Theory of Staining with Cochineal.—According to Mayer, whose earliest researches are confirmed by his latest (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. zu Neapel*, x, 3, 1892, p. 496), the active principle of extract or tincture of cochineal (as used in histology) is not free carminic acid, but carminic acid chemically combined with a base which is not lime, but some alkali. The pure aqueous extract contains only traces of lime, the alcoholic none at all. The watery extract made with *alum*, or cochineal-alum carmine (§ 214), owes its staining power to the formation of carminate of alumina (for which see last §). The tincture made with *pure alcohol*, on the other hand, contains only the above-mentioned carminate of some alkali. This carminate *alone* stains weakly and diffusely (like carminic acid alone). But if in the tissues treated with it it meet with lime salts, alumina or magnesia salts, or even metallic salts capable of combining with it and forming insoluble coloured precipitates in the tissues, then a strong and selective stain may result. As a matter of fact, the simple cochineal tincture of Mayer given in § 230 does give splendid results with certain objects (*i. e.* such as contain the salts in question). But it is unfortunately equally certain that such objects are rather rare than otherwise, and that with the majority of objects the stain is a very poor one.

But if the necessary salts be added to the tincture itself, then a solution ought to result containing the necessary elements for affording a strong and selective stain with all classes of objects. This proves to be the case; whence Mayer's new formula, § 231.

208. General Remarks.—What are the carmine stains useful for? Is it for staining fresh tissues? With the exception of aceto-carmine, no. Is it for staining sections? Again, no; for, in nine cases out of ten, sections are better stained by some of the anilin stains and by some hæmateïn stains than they can be in any carmine stain. Is it for staining entire objects?—for staining in the mass? Yes; for in many, if not in most cases, that can be done more satisfactorily by means of carmine than by means of any other known agent. For most hæmateïn solutions have a disastrous tendency to overstain; and the tar-colours are with hardly an exception entirely inapplicable to staining in bulk.

Overstains may in all cases be washed out with weak HCl (*e.g.* 0·1 per cent.). HENNEGUY (*Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Physiol.*, xxvii, 1891, p. 400) states that overstains may be completely removed by means of permanganate of potash. (But that removes the stain bodily, rather than differentiates it.) All carmine stains, with the exception of aceto-carmine, are permanent in balsam. None of the acid stains, nor any of Grenacher's fluids, should be used with calcareous structures that it is wished to preserve, unless they be taken in a state of extreme dilution.

209. Choice of a Carmine Stain.—Grenacher's alcoholic borax-carmine may be recommended to the beginner as being the easiest of these stains to work with. Carmalum, or one of the alum-carmines, is also an easy and safe reagent.

210. Pure Carminic Acid is best obtained at present from GRÜBLER & HOLBORN. The price at present is 3*s.* per 10 grms.

Dr. MAYER writes me that samples obtained elsewhere are sometimes not all that could be desired, containing a perceptible quantity of inorganic impurities, or being hygroscopic, or being too dear.

A. AQUEOUS CARMINE STAINS.

a. Acid.

211. MAYER'S **Carmalum** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. zu Neapel*, x, 3, 1892, p. 489).—Carminic acid, 1 grm.; alum, 10 grms.; distilled water, 200 c.c. Dissolve with heat (if necessary: I have been able to make my solutions in the cold). Decant or filter. Add some antiseptic, either a few crystals of thymol, or 0·1 per cent. salicylic acid, or 0·5 per cent. salicylate of soda. The solution will then keep. A clearish red fluid with a violet tinge. It stains well in bulk even osmium objects. If washed out with distilled water only, the plasma will remain somewhat stained. If this be not desired, wash out carefully with alum solution, or, in difficult cases, with weak acid, followed in either case with water. The general effect is that of an alum-carmine stain. A notable difference between the two is that carmalum stains well in bulk, which alum-carmine is not very suitable for when used in the ordinary way; but see § 215.

A weaker solution may be made by taking from three to five times as much alum and five times as much water, and dissolving in the cold, which may be convenient. This is a very close equivalent of alum-carmine, giving, however, a somewhat redder stain. I find this solution very weak for ordinary work.

With either solution the objects to be stained should *not* have an *alkaline reaction*. The other properties of these solutions are very similar to those of alum-carmine.

RAWITZ (*Anat. Anz.*, xv, 1899, p. 438) takes 2 grms. carminic acid, 20 grms. ammonia-alum, 150 c.c. water, and 150 c.c. glycerin. A strongly staining solution which keeps well. He recommends it only for sections. Mayer does not admit the supposed advantages of the ammonia-alum.

212. MAYER'S **Aqueous Aluminium-Chloride-Solution** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. zu Neapel*, x, 3, 1892, p. 490).—Carminic acid 1 grm., chloride of aluminium, 3 grms.; water 200 c.c. Add an antiseptic, as for carmalum.

Use as carmalum. The stain is of a blue-violet colour, very powerful, and elective. But it is not so pure a stain as that of carmalum, plasma being more strongly coloured. It is recommended only as a substitute for carmalum in cases in which the latter is counter-indicated on account of the presence of alum or the like.

213. Alum-carmine (Grenacher's formula, *Arch. mik. Anat.*, xvi, 1879, p. 465).—An aqueous solution (of 1 to 5 per cent. strength, or any other strength that may be preferred) of common or ammonia alum is boiled for ten or twenty minutes with ½ to 1 per cent. of powdered carmine. (It is perhaps the safer plan to take the alum solution highly concentrated in the first instance, and after boiling the carmine in it dilute to the desired strength.) When cool filter.

This stain must be avoided in the case of calcareous structures that it is wished to preserve.

Tizzoni (*Bull. Sc. Med. Bologna*, 1884, p. 259), Pisenti (*Gazz. degli Ospetali*, No. 24; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 1885, p. 378), and Grieb (*Mem. Soc. Ital. Sci.*, t. vi, No. 9, 1887; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 47) have given modifications of Grenacher's formula which do not appear to me rational.

Mayer (*ibid.*, xiv, 1897, p. 29) makes a stronger stain by taking 2 grms. carmine, 5 grms. alum, and 100 c.c. water, and boiling for an hour, which sets some carminic acid free. The same result may be obtained by adding carminic acid to alum-carmine or carmalum.

Alum-carmine is one of the best stains to be found outside the coal-tar colours. It is particularly to be recommended to the beginner, as it is easy to work with; it is hardly possible to overstain with it (except muscle). Its chief defect is that it is not very penetrating, and therefore quite unsuitable for staining objects of considerable size in bulk. This defect may, however, be to some extent overcome by employing the acid formula of Henneguy (§ 215), if it be not convenient to use Mayer's carmalum.

The stain is permanent in balsam; as to aqueous media I cannot say.

214. Cochineal Alum-carmine (Partsch, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xiv, 1877, p. 180).—Powdered cochineal is boiled for some time in a 5 per cent. solution of alum, the decoction filtered, and a little salicylic acid added to preserve it from mould.

Another method of preparation has been given by Czokor (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xviii, 1880, p. 413). Mayer has carefully examined both, and finds that Partsch's is the more rational, the proportion of alum in it being exactly right, whilst in Czokor's it is insufficient. Partsch's fluid has also the advantage of keeping better.

Rabl (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 168) takes 25 grms. each of cochineal and alum, 800 c.c. of water, and boils down to 600 c.c.

These solutions are to all intents and purposes "alum-carmines." They give a stain that is practically identical with that of alum-carmine made from carmine, with perhaps even more delicate differentiations (but that depends so much on the quality of the carmine, the quality of the cochineal, and the nature of the objects to be stained, that no absolute rule can be stated). They should be used in exactly the same way as the carmine fluid.

215. Acetic Acid Alum-Carmine (Henneguy, in *Traité des Méth. techn.*, Lee et Henneguy, 1887, p. 88).—Excess of carmine is boiled in saturated solution of potash alum. After cooling add 10 per cent. of glacial acetic acid, and leave to settle for some days, then filter.

For staining, enough of the solution is added to distilled water to give it a deep rose tint. In order to ensure rapid diffusion, it is well to bring the tissues into the stain direct from alcohol. Stain for twenty-four to forty-eight hours, and wash for an hour or two in *distilled* water. Mount in balsam. You can mount in glycerin, but the preparations do not keep so well as in balsam.

The advantage of this carmine is that it has greater power of penetration than the non-acidified alum-carmine, and stains deep-seated layers of tissue just as well as the superficial ones. The colour of the stain is a somewhat inelegant violet, but this can be changed to a warmer tone by treating the objects with dilute HCl, as for borax-carmine objects.

216. Alum-Carmine and Picric Acid.—Alum-carmine objects may be double-stained with picric acid. Legal (*Morph. Jahrb.*, viii, p. 353) combines the two stains by mixing ten vols. of alum-carmine with one of saturated picric acid solution. I consider this to be a very recommendable practice.

217. Aceto-Carmine (Acetic Acid Carmine) Schneider's formula, *Zool. Anzeig.*, No. 56, 1880, p. 254).—To boiling acetic acid of 45 per cent.

strength add carmine until no more will dissolve and filter. (Forty-five per cent. acetic acid is, according to Schneider, the strength that dissolves the largest proportion of carmine.)

To use the solution you may either dilute it to 1 per cent. strength, and use the dilute solution for slow staining; or a drop of the concentrated solution may be added to a fresh preparation under the cover-glass. If you use the concentrated solution it *fixes* and stains at the same time, and hence may render service for the study of fresh objects. It is very penetrating, a quality that enables it to be used where ordinary reagents would totally fail. The stain is a pure nuclear one. Unfortunately the preparations cannot be preserved, and for this and other reasons the stain is *of very restricted applicability.*

A similar stain has been prepared with formic acid by PIANESE (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1894, p. 502). Probably for almost all the purposes for which aceto-carmine is useful, methyl-green will give better results.

For BURCHARDT's pyroligneous-acid carmines see *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, liii, 1898, p. 232: *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 4, p. 453; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 453.

218. Iron Carmine (ZACHARIAS, *Zool. Anz.*, No. 440, 1894, p. 62).—Stain for several hours in carmine (Zacharias stains in an aceto-carmine, of which I suppress the formula, for, as pointed out to me by Dr. MAYER, and as I have verified, carmalum does just as well). Rinse the objects with dilute acetic acid, and bring them (taking care not to touch them with metallic instruments if the aceto-carmine have been taken) into a 1 per cent. solution of ammoniated citrate of iron (the pharmaceutical *Ferri et Ammoniæ Citras*). Leave them till thoroughly penetrated, for as much as two or three hours if need be. In this solution they take on a black tint (with sections this happens in a few minutes). They should be removed as soon as the reaction has taken place throughout, otherwise there is risk of over-blackening. Wash for several hours in distilled water, dehydrate and mount in balsam.

This is at the same time a chromatin stain and a plasma stain. In my preparations chromatin is blue and plasmatic elements brown. I consider the method may render service in some cases.

PFEIFFER VON WELLHEIM (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1, 1898, p. 123) mordants for six to twelve hours in a very weak solution of chloride of iron in 50 per cent. alcohol, washes in 50 per cent. alcohol, and stains for a few hours in a dilute solution of carminic acid in 50 per cent. alcohol. Overstains may be corrected with 0·1 to 0·5 per cent. HCl alcohol.

β. So-called "Neutral," and Alkaline.

219. Ammonia-Carmine.—In my opinion there is no valid excuse for using ammonia-carmine at all at the present day.

If, however, such a stain be used, care should be taken to get rid of the free ammonia as completely as possible. This may be done by boiling until the excess of ammonia has evaporated. (So long as free ammonia is present *large* bubbles are formed in the fluid, and the latter shows a dark purple colour. When the free ammonia has evaporated *small* bubbles appear, and the solution takes a brighter red tint.)

One per cent. each of carmine and ammonia in distilled water is a good proportion.

But a safer mode of preparation is that of RANVIER, as follows (kindly communicated by Dr. MALASSEZ, see *Traité des Méthodes techniques*, etc., of Lee and Henneguy, 1st edit., p. 82).—Make a simple solution of carmine in water with a *slight* excess of ammonia, and expose it to the air in a deep crystallising dish until it is entirely dried up. It should be allowed to putrefy if possible. Dissolve the dry deposit in pure water, and filter.

220. Magnesia-carmine (MAYER, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 23). —Take 1 grm. carmine, 0·1 grm. magnesia usta, and 50 c.c distilled water, boil for five minutes, filter, and add three drops of formol. This is the *stock* solution. A *weak* solution may be made by boiling 0·1 grm. carmine for half an hour in 50 c.c. of magnesia water (made by leaving 0·1 grm. of magnesia usta in contact with 100 c.c. of spring water for a week with frequent agitation, and decanting when required for use). Mayer says these solutions are less injurious to tissues than the other alkaline carmines.

221. As to Picro-carmine.—The term "picro-carmine" is commonly used to denote a whole tribe of solutions in which carmine, ammonia, and picric acid exist *uncombined* in haphazard proportions. RANVIER, to whom we owe the invention of picro-carmine, claims that when prepared by his process it results as a definite chemical substance, a double salt of picric and carminic acid and ammonia, or *picro-carminate of ammonia*. But this is certainly not the case, for carmine is *not* carminic acid, see *supra*, § 205. It should be understood that the *raison d'être* of picro-carmine does not lie in its capacity of affording a double stain. The double stain, if that is all that is wanted, can be just as well or better obtained by staining first with borax-carmine, or the like, and after-staining with picric acid. The essential point about picro-carmine is that it is less alkaline than ammonia-carmine. Ranvier was, in fact, led to add picric acid to ammoniacal solution of carmine by the desire of neutralising the ammonia, that is all. But it always is alkaline, and is frequently injurious to tissues.

Compare the paper of MAYER, *Ueber Pikrocarmin*, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1, 1897, p. 18.

222. Ranvier's **Picro-carmine, Original Formula** (*Traité*, p. 100). To a saturated solution of picric acid add carmine (dissolved in ammonia) to saturation. Evaporate down to one fifth the original volume in a drying oven; and separate by filtration the precipitate, pour in carmine, that forms in the liquid when cool. Evaporate the mother-liquid to dryness, and you will obtain the picro-carmine in the form of a crystalline powder of the colour of red ochre. It ought to dissolve completely in distilled water; a 1 per cent. solution is best for use.

For slow staining, dilute solutions may advantageously have 1 or 2 per cent. of chloral hydrate added to them.

Overstains may be washed out with hydrochloric acid, say 0·5 per cent., in water, alcohol, or glycerin.

Preparations should be mounted in balsam, or if in glycerin, this should be acidulated with 1 per cent. of acetic acid, or better, formic acid.

223. Ranvier's **Newer Formula** does not give a more constant product (see *previous editions*).

224. Mayer's **Picro-magnesia Carmine** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 25) is relatively constant and innocuous to tissues. It consists of 1 vol. of the *stock* solution of magnesia-carmine (§ 220), and 10 vols. of a 0·6 per cent. solution of picrate of magnesia, or of equal parts of the *weak* solution and the picrate solution. The picrate may be obtained from Grübler & Hollborn, or the solution may be made by heating 0·25 grms. of carbonate of magnesia in 200 c.c. of 0·5 per cent. solution of picric acid, allowing to settle and filtering.

225. Other Formulæ for Picro-carmine.—I have tried most of them, and found no real advantage in any of them (see *previous editions*).

226. Other Aqueous Carmines (Acid and Alkaline).—For all of them see *previous editions.*

B. Alcoholic Carmine Stains.

227. Alcoholic Borax-carmine (Grenacher, *Arch. f. Mik. Anat.*, xvi, 1879, p. 466, *et seq.*).—Make a *concentrated* solution of carmine in borax solution (2 to 3 per cent. carmine to 4 per cent. borax) by boiling for half an hour or more; dilute it with about an equal volume of 70 per cent. alcohol, allow it to stand some time (twenty-four hours—Mayer), and filter. Or the mixture of carmine and borax solution is *allowed to stand for two or three days* and occasionally stirred; the greater part of the carmine will dissolve. To the solution is added an equal bulk of 70 per cent. alcohol; the mixture is allowed to stand for a week, and then is filtered. If on keeping more carmine is deposited, it must be refiltered.

Preparations should remain in the stain until they are thoroughly penetrated (for days if necessary), and then be brought (*without first washing out*) into alcohol (of 70 per cent.; this is absolutely necessary—MAYER) acidulated with 4 to 6 drops of hydrochloric acid to each 100 c.c. of alcohol. They are left in this until the stain is differentiated, and may then be washed or hardened in neutral alcohol. Four drops of HCl is generally enough. Three drops I find not quite sufficient. The stained objects should remain in the acidulated alcohol till they acquire a bright transparent look. This may require days (MAYER).

For delicate objects, and for very impermeable objects, it may be well to increase the proportion of alcohol in the stain; it may conveniently be raised to about 50 per cent. It should not exceed 60 per cent. in any case (MAYER).

This stain is probably by far the most popular of any for staining in bulk. It is easy to use, and gives a most splendid coloration. But it is not so penetrating as is commonly supposed, and has the defect of sometimes forming precipitates in the cavities of bulky objects which cannot be removed by washing out. And it must be remembered that the fluid is alkaline, and therefore may not be suitable for delicate cytological work.

228. MAYER'S **Paracarmine** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. zu Neapel*, x, 3, 1892, p. 491).—Carminic acid, 1 grm.; chloride of aluminium, 0·5 grm.; chloride of calcium, 4 grms.; 70 per cent. alcohol, 100 c.c. Dissolve cold or warm, allow to settle, and filter. A light red liquid, specially adapted for staining in bulk, and much like Grenacher's alcoholic borax-carmine.

Objects to be stained *should not have an alkaline reaction*, nor contain any considerable amount of carbonate of lime (spicules or skeletal parts of corals, etc.) which would give rise to precipitates (MAYER). Wash out sections, or objects intended to be sectioned, with pure 70 per cent. alcohol. Objects intended to be mounted whole may be washed out with a weak solution of aluminium chloride in alcohol, or if this be not sufficient, with 5 per cent. common acetic acid (or

2·5 per cent. glacial acetic acid) in alcohol. This may also be done with section-material, if it is desired to obtain a more purely nuclear stain.

For staining bulky objects with large cavities, such as *Salpa*, the solution should be diluted (with alcohol); and as this may cause precipitates to form during the staining, especially if the objects are not very clean, it is advisable to *slightly acidify the dilute solutions.*

Paracarmine gives a nuclear stain of a red colour, though not so fiery red as that of borax-carmine. Its points of superiority over borax-carmine are that it is less hurtful to tissues; that it is more highly alcoholic, therefore more penetrating; that it has less tendency to form granular precipitates in the interior of objects, and that it generally keeps perfectly without precipitating (mine has precipitated somewhat, though not to an injurious extent).

229. **Alcoholic Hydrochloric-Acid Carmine.**—Sometimes it is desirable to possess a powerful staining medium more highly alcoholised than the foregoing, and of acid reaction. Hydrochloric-acid carmine possesses these qualities, and may, for instance, be frequently useful in work on Arthropoda, especially the marine forms.

GRENACHER's receipt (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xvi, 1879, p. 468) will be found extremely troublesome by those who are not expert at neutralising. The following method, due to PAUL MAYER (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, iv, 1883, p. 521; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N.S.], iv, 1884, p. 317; *Intern. Monatsschr. f. Anat., etc.*, 1897, p. 43), is better:—Carmine 4 grms.; water, 15 c.c.; hydrochloric acid, 30 drops. Boil till the carmine is dissolved, add 95 c.c. of 85 per cent. alcohol, and neutralise by adding ammonia until the carmine begins to precipitate.

If it be desired to dilute the solution, it should be done with alcohol, not water, and alcohol of 80 to 90 per cent. should be taken for washing out.

If it be desired to have a purely nuclear stain, the alcohol must be *very slightly* acidulated with HCl.

230. **Alcoholic Cochineal,** MAYER's **Old Formula** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neap.*, ii, 1881, p. 14).—Cochineal in coarse powder is macerated for several days in alcohol of 70 per cent. For each gramme of the cochineal there is required 8 to 10 c.c. of the alcohol. Stir frequently. Filter, and the resulting clear, deep red solution is fit for staining. (If the filter paper should contain much lime, flakes of lime carminate may be thrown down.)

The objects to be stained must previously be imbibed with alcohol of 70 per cent., and alcohol of the same strength must be used for washing out or for diluting the staining solution. The washing out must be repeated with fresh alcohol until the latter takes up no more colour. Warm alcohol acts more rapidly than cold. Overstaining seldom happens; it may be corrected by means of 70 per cent alcohol, containing $\frac{1}{10}$ per cent. hydrochloric or 1 per cent. acetic acid.

Small objects and thin sections may be stained in a few minutes; larger animals require hours or days.

A nuclear stain, slightly affecting protoplasm. The colour varies with the reaction of the tissues, and the presence or absence of *certain salts* in them. Crustacea with thick chitinous integuments are generally stained red, most other organisms blue. The stain is also often of different colours in different tissue elements of the same preparation. Glands or their secretion often stain grey-green.

Acids lighten the stain and make it yellowish red. Caustic alkalies turn it to a deep purple.

The best stains are obtained in the case of objects that have been prepared with chromic or picric acid combinations, or with absolute alcohol. Osmic acid preparations stain very weakly unless they have been previously *bleached*. All acids must be carefully washed out before staining, or a diffuse stain will result. The stain is permanent in oil of cloves and balsam.

The object for which this stain was imagined is to obtain an *alcoholic* staining fluid whose high penetrating power allows it to be employed in the case of organisms, such as Arthropoda, whose chitinous investments are but very slightly permeable by aqueous solutions.

This fine stain has over the new fluid (next §) the (for some cases considerable) advantage of being more highly alcoholic; and it does not contain free acid, so that it *can be used with calcareous structures* which it is wished to preserve —which the new fluid cannot. For specimens of *Pluteus*, for instance, I find it excellent.

231. Mayer's **Alcoholic Cochineal, New Formula** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 3, 1892, p. 498).—Cochineal, 5 grms.; chloride of calcium, 5 grms.; chloride of aluminium, 0·5 grm.; nitric acid of 1·20 sp. gr., 8 drops; 50 per cent. alcohol, 100 c.c. Powder the cochineal finely and rub up in a mortar with the salts, add the alcohol and acid, heat to boiling-point, leave to cool, leave for some days standing with frequent agitation, filter.

Use as the old tincture, the objects being prepared and washed out with 50 per cent. alcohol. The stain is like that of paracarmine, but not quite so strong and not so sharp. Mayer only recommends it as a *succedaneum* of paracarmine.

Since this fluid contains in itself all the necessary salts (see § 207), it has over the old one the advantage of giving good results with *all classes of objects,* with the disadvantage of being less highly alcoholic.

CHAPTER XIII.

HÆMATEIN (HÆMATOXYLIN) STAINS.

232. Theory of Hæmatoxylin Staining.—It appears to be now thoroughly well established (see NIETZKI, *Chemie der organischen Färbstoffe,* Berlin, Springer, 1889, pp. 215—217, and MAYER, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* x, 1891, p. 170) that the active colouring principle of the usual histological staining solutions is *hæmatein,*—a product of the oxidation of their contained hæmatoxylin by means of the air to which they are exposed (see MAYER, "*Ueber das Farben mit Hämatoxylin,*" in *Mitth. a. d. Zool. Station zu Neapel,* Bd. x, Heft 1, 1891, pp. 170—186; UNNA, "*Ueber die Reifung unserer Färbstoffe,*" in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* viii, 4, 1892, p. 483). This change is known as "ripening," and until it has taken place the solutions are not fit to use for staining.

Hitherto it has been the practice to rely (quite unconsciously so far as the chemical theory is concerned) on the spontaneous absorption by the solutions of oxygen from the air to effect this "ripening," but it has now been discovered (by both MAYER and UNNA independently) that nothing is easier than to bring about the reaction artificially; all that is necessary being, for instance, to add to a solution of hæmatoxylin containing alum a little neutralised solution of peroxide of hydrogen or other powerful oxidising agent. The solution becomes almost instantaneously dark blue, "ripe," and fit for staining, thus definitely confirming the truth of the hypothesis.

A solution of pure, uncombined hæmatein, however, would not afford a selective stain such as we require in histology; it would be at most a feeble dye. The *usual* solutions (I am not here speaking of Weigert's or Heidenhain's or similar processes) all contain *alum,* and Mayer holds that the active agent in them is a compound of hæmatein with *alumina* (much as in carmine the active agent is a compound of carminic acid with alumina, cf. § 206).* These solutions of alumina-hæmatein lakes are in general the ones employed for *substantive* staining (see § 202). Besides these, some other compounds, viz. those of chrome, iron, copper, vanadium, and molybdenum, are also employed in histology, but mostly in the *adjective* way of staining (§ 202). The compounds of hæmatoxylin with the other heavy or alkaline metals have been tried, but do not afford histological stains. Neglecting all these for the present, let us return to the consideration of the stains composed of the alumina lakes.

The first difficulty with which the worker with these solutions has to contend is that of getting his hæmatoxylin duly oxidised into hæmatein, in order to the formation of the desired hæmatein-alumina compound, or lake. If this be done by the hitherto customary process of leaving the solutions to "ripen" by the action of the air, it is necessary to wait for a long time before the reaction is obtained. During all this time, it may be weeks or months, there is no means, except repeated trial, of ascertaining whether the solution at any moment contains sufficient hæmatein to afford a good stain. And here a second difficulty arises; the oxidising process continuing, the solutions become "over-ripe;" the hæmatein, through further oxidation, passes over into colourless compounds, and the solutions begin to precipitate. They are therefore, in reality, a mixture in constantly varying proportions of "unripe," "ripe," and "over-ripe" constituents (the first and last being useless for staining purposes), and, in consequence, their staining power is very inconstant.

The great point in Mayer's work is that not hæmatoxylin, but *hæmatein*, should be taken in the first instance for making the staining solutions. This at once relieves us from the tedious and uncertain process of "ripening" in the old way. We have a ripe solution to begin with, and we know that it must be ripe. A discovery of Unna's, to be mentioned below, affords a means of preventing the "over-ripening" brought about by excessive oxidation.

---

* I restrict this assertion to the case of the alumina-hæmatein stains, as it seems possible that in the iron or chrome processes the colouring agent may be hæmatoxylin, or even some higher oxidation product of it than hæmatein. Cf. MAYER in *Anat. Anz.*, xiii, 1897, p. 318.

If, however, it be still preferred to use hæmatoxylin, this should not be done by dissolving the hæmatoxylin crystals straight away in the other ingredients of the solution. The solutions should be made up from a strong stock solution made by dissolving hæmatoxylin crystals in absolute alcohol: one in ten is a good proportion. This solution should be kept for a long time—months, at least, a year if possible; it gradually becomes brown, and should not be used till it has become quite dark. It has then become to a great extent oxidised into hæmatein, and the staining solutions made up from it will be at once fairly ripe.

233. **Unna's Half-ripe Constant Stock Solution** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 4, 1892, p. 483).—A ripe solution may be made constant (see last §) by simply adding a *reducing agent* to it. Various reducing agents are available for this purpose (see the original paper); the most convenient method is the simple addition of a little sulphur. The following formula is recommended:

Hæmatoxylin	1
Alum	10
Alcohol	100
Water	200
Sublimed sulphur	2

If the sulphur be added to the hæmatoxylin solution only when the latter has become somewhat strongly blue, *i. e.* after two or three days' time, the stage of oxidation attained by the solution will be fixed by the sulphur. The solution in this state may be used for staining. Mayer (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 2, 1896, p. 309) finds that the sulphur process does not preserve the solutions for long, whilst for some unexplained reason the simple addition of *glycerin* does; see below, "Glychæmalum."

234. **Concerning Hæmatein.**—The following is taken from the two papers of Mayer quoted above, §§ 205, 232. Hæmatein is entirely, though with difficulty, soluble in distilled water and in alcohol, giving a yellowish-brown solution, which remains clear on addition of acetic acid. Alkalies dissolve it with a blue-violet tint.

It is now found in commerce; but Mayer has hitherto only been able to procure it in a perfectly pure state from Geigy & Co., in Bâle. But there is also found in commerce an ammonia-compound of hæmatein—*Hæmateïn-Ammoniak*, also known in commerce as *Hæmateinum crystallisatum*; this may be obtained in a sufficiently pure state from Grübler & Hollborn.

This is somewhat more easily soluble in both water and alcohol than hæmatein is, and does quite as well for staining purposes. The histologist can easily prepare it for himself as follows:

235. Hæmateate of Ammonia (Mayer, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 1891, p. 172).—Dissolve 1 grm. of hæmatoxylin with the aid of heat in 20 c.c. of distilled water, filter if necessary, add 1 c.c. of caustic ammonia (of 0·875 sp. gr.), and bring the purple liquid into a capsule of such dimensions that its bottom be not covered to a depth of more than half a centimetre. Let the liquid evaporate at the ordinary temperature and protected from dust. The dry product will consist of hæmateate of ammonia, about equal in weight to the hæmatoxylin taken in the first instance. The evaporation should not be hastened by heat, as this may give rise to the formation of substances that are insoluble in alcohol. The preparation should not be touched, until it is dry, with any other instruments than such as are made of glass, porcelain, or platinum.

236. Characters of the Alumina-Hæmatein Stains (or of the So-called Alum-Hæmatoxylin Stains).—The alum-hæmatein lakes stain in **different tones of blue or of red,** according to the composition of the staining solution. Neutral or alkaline solutions give a blue stain; acid solutions give a red one. In order to *get a blue stain* in preparations that have come out red through the acidity of the staining bath, it is a common practice to treat them with weak ammonia, in the belief that the blue colour is restored by neutralisation of the acid that is the cause of the redness. According to Mayer, the ammonia acts not by neutralising the acid, but by precipitating the alumina, which carries down the hæmatein with it (if no alumina were present the colour would be purple, not blue).* The *same result* can generally be obtained by merely washing out with common tap-water, which is usually sufficiently alkaline (Squire has obtained the reaction with distilled water, free from even a trace of ammonia), and can be obtained with certainty by treatment with bicarbonate of soda or acetate of soda or potash. And this is the preferable course, as ammonia is certainly a dangerous thing to treat delicate tissues with. Of course this is a different question from that of *neutralising* with an alkali tissues that have been treated with an acid to correct over-staining. Here the neutralisation may be indicated in the interest of the *preservation* of the stain.

---

* Fischer, in his *Fixirung, Färbung u. Bau des Protoplasmus,* pp. 156, 157, does not admit this explanation. He proposes another one of a highly speculative nature.

SQUIRE (*Methods*, p. 22) finds that sections can be blued in a few seconds by treatment with a 1 : 1000 solution of bicarbonate of soda in distilled water. MAYER holds that acetate of potash is the most inoffensive reagent to take; a strength of 0·5 to 1 per cent. may be taken.

Several of these solutions have a great tendency to over-stain. Over-stains may be corrected by washing out with weak acids (*e. g.* 0·1 to 0·2 or even 0·5 per cent. of hydrochloric acid, or with oxalic or tartaric acid), but this is not favourable to the permanence of the stain. CARNOY (*La Cellule*, xii, 2, 1897, p. 215) recommends iodised water. If acids be used, it is well to neutralise afterwards with ammonia or bicarbonate of soda (0·1 per cent.).

Bicarbonate of soda may be used for neutralisation with 70 per cent. alcohol as the vehicle (VON WISTINGHAUSEN, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 1891, p. 41; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 480).

Over-staining may be avoided by staining very carefully and slowly in extremely dilute solutions. It should be noted that the purest chromatin stains are obtained by staining for a short time (sublimate sections half an hour, say) in solutions of *medium* strength, such as hæmalum diluted ten to twenty-fold with water. The stain obtained either with very strong solutions, or with the slow stain of the dilute solutions, is at the same time a plasma-stain, which of course may or may not be desired (MAYER, in the *Grundzüge*, p. 151, says that very dilute solutions will give a pure nuclear stain if they have been diluted with *alum-solution*, or have been *acidified*). Chromosmium material will not yield a pure chromatin stain unless it is very *fresh*; it is consequently next to impossible to obtain the reaction with paraffin sections of such material; they constantly give a plasma-stain in addition to the chromatin stain, which is not the case with sublimate material.

The stain is fairly permanent in balsam, but is very liable to fade a little, and may fade a great deal. If acids have been used after staining, great care should be taken to wash them out thoroughly before mounting. In aqueous media the stain cannot be relied on to keep (this refers to the old solutions: Mayer finds that his hæmatein preparations have kept well for at least some months in glycerin, if not acid, and, with certain precautions, in balsam). Turpentine-balsam should not be used (Mayer, *in litt.*).

237. General Remarks.—We have the coal-tar colours for staining sections, and we have carmine and cochineal for staining in bulk. What, then, do we want hæmatein for? The answer is that we sometimes want it for staining, either sections or in the mass, on account of the faculty it has of staining tissues that have been treated with chromic and osmic mixtures. This it does in general better than any carmine or cochineal, and sometimes better than any of the coal-tar colours. It is also a more powerful stain than carmine; and according to the mode of employment affords either a chromatin stain or a sometimes valuable plasma-stain. The chief hæmatein or hæmatoxylin plasma-stains are found not amongst the alum-hæmatein lakes, but amongst the other compounds, iron or chrome compounds, etc.

A. *Alumina-hæmatein Lakes.*

238. Mayer's **Hæmalum** (Mayer, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 1, 1891, p. 172).—One grm. of the colouring matter (either hæmatein or the ammonia salt, §§ 234, 235) dissolved with heat in 50 c.c. of 90 per cent. alcohol, and added to a solution of 50 gr. of alum in a litre of distilled water. Allow the mixture to cool and settle, and filter if necessary. Or more recently (*Grundzüge*, p. 152), instead of dissolving the hæmatein or salt in alcohol, Mayer rubs it up in a mortar with a very little glycerin.

It is not necessary to conform exactly to the proportions given, and a rough and ready hæmalum solution may be at any time extemporised by adding a few drops of alcoholic solution of hæmatein to an alum solution of any desired strength.

A dark liquid of about the tint, at first, of borax-carmine, becoming more blue-violet with time. It stains equally well, *either at first, for it is ripe from the beginning, or later*. Concentrated, it stains sometimes almost instantaneously, or in any case very rapidly. Diluted twenty-fold with distilled water it will still stain through the tentacles of a *Tubularia* in an hour. (Spring water or tap-water containing lime must not be used for diluting; perhaps weak solution of alum in distilled water is the best means of all.) After staining, sections may be washed out either with distilled or common water. The solution is *admirable for staining in bulk*. Large objects will, however, require twenty-four hours' staining, and should be washed out for the same time (this should be done with 1 per cent. alum solution if a sharp nuclear stain be desired). All alum must be carefully washed out of the tissues before mounting in balsam; and it is well to blue the stain with tap-water or otherwise, § 236. The solution unfortunately does not keep perfectly, but precipitates and becomes weak with age. When this has occurred, it is well to withdraw the quantity required for staining from the middle of the stock solution by means of a pipette, which should be wiped outside before allowing the liquid to run out of it. The stain is generally a nuclear one; in any case such may be obtained by washing out with alum-solution. Mayer's preparations have kept well in glycerin (care being taken not to have it acid), also in balsam. It is to be noted that if oil of bergamot be used for clearing, it must be thoroughly removed by means of oil of turpentine before mounting; and that oil of cloves is dangerous. It is best (Mayer, *in litt.*) to use only xylol, benzol, or chloroform, and to mount in xylol-balsam or chloroform-balsam or benzol-balsam.

Hæmalum may be mixed with alum-carmine, Säurefuchsin, or the like, to make a double staining mixture; but it seems preferable to use the solutions in succession.

239. MAYER'S **Acid Hæmalum** (*ibid.*, p. 147, note).—This is hæmalum with 2 per cent. glacial acetic acid (or 4 per cent. common acetic acid). To be used as the last, washing out with ordinary water in order to obtain a blue-violet tint of stain. It is a perhaps even more precise nuclear stain, and the solution keeps better.

240. Mayer's **Glychæmalum** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 2, 1896, p. 310).—Hæmatein (or hæmateate of ammonia) 0·4 grm. (to be rubbed up in a few drops of glycerin in a mortar till it dissolves); alum, 5 grms.; glycerin, 30; distilled water, 70. The stain is *not purely nuclear*, but may be made so by washing out with alum solution or a weak acid (§§ 236, 238). The solution *keeps admirably*.

241. Hansen's **Solution** (*Zool. Anz.*, 1895, p. 158).—See *last edition*. Hansen oxidises a mixture of alum and hæmatoxylin by means of permanganate of potash. He fancies that by destroying all germs that may be present in the ingredients, the permanganate should make the solution keep better than the usual solutions. As a matter of fact it does not; mine formed a pellicle and strong precipitate in a few days, and the same was found at the Naples station (Mayer, *in litt.*). See further the remarks of Mayer on this process in *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii. 1896, p. 309, or the *Grundzüge*, p. 153.

242. Harris's **Solution** (*Micr. Bull.*, xv, 1898, p. 47; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 236).—Alum-hæmatoxylin solution ripened by addition of mercuric oxide.

243. Böhmer's Hæmatoxylin (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, iv, 1868, p. 345; *Aerzt. Intelligenzbl.*, *Baiern*, 1865, p. 382).—Make (A) a solution of hæmatox. cryst. 1 part, alcohol (absolute) 12 parts and (B) alum 1 part, water 240. For staining, add two or three drops of A to a watch-glassful of B.

The alcoholic solution of hæmatoxylin ought to be old and brown (§ 232). I consider this stain to be of merely historical interest.

244. Delafield's Hæmatoxylin (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 1885, p. 288: frequently attributed erroneously to Grenacher or Prudden).—To 400 c.c. of saturated solution of ammonia-alum* add 4 grms. of hæmatox. cryst. dissolved in 25 c.c. of strong alcohol. Leave it exposed to the light and air in an unstoppered bottle for three or four days. Filter, and add 100 c.c. of glycerin and 100 c.c. of methylic alcohol (CH_4O). Allow the solution to stand until the colour is sufficiently dark, then filter and keep in a tightly stoppered bottle.

This solution keeps well,—it may be said to keep for years. It is well to allow it to ripen for at least two months before using it.

For staining, enough of the solution should be added to pure water to make a very dilute stain; and even then care should be taken not to leave objects too long in the fluid. It is an extremely powerful stain.

---

* Ammonia-alum dissolves in about 11 parts of water.

Bütschli (*Unters. üb. mikroscopische Schäume u. das Protoplasma*, etc., 1892; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 197) recommends, under the name of "acid hæmatoxylin," solution of Delafield very strongly diluted. and with enough acetic acid added to it to give it a decidedly red tint. This gives a sharper and more differentiated nuclear stain than the usual solution.

245. Ehrlich's Acid Hæmatoxylin (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 150).—

Water	100 c.c.
Absolute alcohol	100 ,,
Glycerin	100 ,,
Glacial acetic acid	10 ,,
Hæmatoxylin	2 grms.
Alum in excess.	

Let the mixture ripen in the light (with occasional admission of air) until it acquires a dark red colour. It will then *keep*, with constant staining power, *for years*, if kept in a well-stoppered bottle. Sections are stained in a few minutes. It is stated that the solution is also very appropriate for staining in bulk, as over-staining does not occur.

Of all the old formulæ I have tried, this is the one that has given me the sharpest chromatin stain.

Mann (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 4, 1895, p. 487) makes up this stain with an equal quantity of hæmatein instead of hæmatoxylin.

Mayer (*Grundzüge*, p. 154) finds that this is too much, and makes the mixture overstain; 0·4 grm. of hæmatein is quite enough.

246. Mayer's Hæmacalcium (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 1, 1891, p. 182).—Hæmatein (or hæmateate of ammonia, §§ 234, 235), 1 grm.; chloride of aluminium, 1 grm.; chloride of calcium, 50 grms.; glacial acetic acid, 10 c.c. (or common acetic acid, 20 c.c.); 70 per cent. alcohol, 600 c.c. Rub up finely together the first two ingredients, add the acid and alcohol, dissolve either cold or with heat; lastly add the chloride of calcium.

A reddish-violet liquid. If the objects stain in too red a tone they may be treated with a solution (of about 2 per cent.) of chloride of aluminium in 70 per cent. alcohol, or with a 0·5 to 1 per cent. solution of acetate of soda or potash in absolute alcohol; but washing with neutral alcohol will generally suffice.

The solution is not perfectly stable, but in course of time (*Mitth. a. d. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 3, 1892, p. 499) turns blue and precipitates. To avoid this the mixture should be made up in two separate bottles, each containing half of the alcohol and of the acid, and one containing besides all the calcium chloride, the other all the hæmatein and all the aluminium chloride, equal quantities being taken from each when required for staining.

With certain objects this solution does not penetrate well, the stain being confined to their superficial parts. This may be remedied by acidifying the solution, or, which is better, by leaving the objects for some time before staining in acid alcohol. Anyway objects ought NOT to have an alkaline reaction. If these precautions be taken, it will not be necessary to use acid for washing out. For some objects also (*e. g.* Hydroida) the penetrating effect is enhanced by diluting the solution with one third volume of glycerin, or by increasing the proportion of aluminium chloride up to about eight times that of the hæmatein.

The solution is not recommended as giving as good results as hæmalum,—as a stain it is distinctly inferior; and Mayer is of opinion that no alcoholic hæmatein solution can be made to give as precise a stain as the aqueous solutions. He recommends it merely as a substitute for Kleinenberg's (in cases in which an *alcoholic* hæmatein stain seems indicated), as being convenient, easy to prepare, and constant in its effects, none of which qualities belong to Kleinenberg's formula.

247. APÁTHY'S **Hæmatein Mixture I A** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1897, p. 712).—Make (A) a solution of 9 per cent. alum, 3 per cent. glacial acetic acid, and 0·1 per cent. salicylic acid in water, and (B) a 1 per cent. solution of hæmatoxylin in 70 per cent. alcohol, preserved for six to eight weeks in a bottle not quite full. Mix one part of A with one of B and one of glycerin. The solution will keep for years, and stains either sections or material in bulk. Apáthy uses it for staining nerve "primitive-fibrils;" it is, therefore, not a purely nuclear stain.

248. KLEINENBERG'S **Hæmatoxylin** (*Quart. Journ. Micr. Sci.*, lxxiv, 1879, p. 208).—Highly irrational and very inconstant in its composition and its effects; see earlier editions; also the elaborate criticism of **MAYER**

(*Mitth. a. d. Zool. Stat. zu Neapel*, x, 1, 1891, p. 174), and that of SQUIRE, in his *Methods and Formulæ*, p. 25, and the alternative formulæ of SQUIRE (*loc. cit.*) and of VON WISTINGHAUSEN (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 1891, p. 41; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 479).

249. BURCHARDT'S **Pyroligneous Acid Hæmatoxylin** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, liii, 1898, p. 232; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 4, 1899, p. 453; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 453) would seem to be superfluous at least.

250. Other Alumina-hæmatein Solutions.—A large number of suppressed receipts will be found given in the *earlier editions.*

B. *Other Hæmatein or Hæmatoxylin Compounds.*

251. Introduction.—There remain to be described the stains derived from the compounds of hæmatein or hæmatoxylin with iron, copper, chrome, vanadium, and molybdenum. Only those, however, of general applicability will be described in this place; those which are only employed as specific stains for nervous tissue (Weigert-Pal, etc.) finding their place under *Neurological Methods*. The iron stains can only be employed for sections; the chrome stains may also be used on material in bulk.

252. R. HEIDENHAIN'S **Chrome Hæmatoxylin** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxiv, 1884, p. 468, and xxvii, 1886, p. 383).—Stain for twelve to twenty-four hours in a $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. solution of hæmatoxylin in distilled water. Soak the objects for the same length of time in a 0·5 per cent. solution of neutral chromate of potash, which should be changed, if necessary, several times. Wash out the excess of chromate with water.

The above is a slightly modified form of the original process, in which staining was done in a stronger hæmatoxylin solution (0·5 to 1 per cent.), and bichromate was used for washing out instead of neutral chromate. The more recent process gives a sharper chromatin stain.

The stain succeeds best with alcohol or picric acid objects, but it will succeed with chromic objects if they have been very well washed, or with material fixed in Flemming's mixture.

Objects that have been fixed in corrosive sublimate ought to be very carefully washed out with iodine, or the like (see § 66), as neutral hæmatoxylin forms a black precipitate with any excess of sublimate that may remain in the tissues (see TORNIER, in *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1886, p. 181).

The stain is black to grey. It is a sharp stain, remarkably rich in detail. It is *a plasma-stain as well as a chromatin stain.*

The process is *adapted to staining in bulk.* You can decolour the objects to any extent by prolonging the washing in the chromate.

The method may be varied by washing out after staining with alum solution (1 per cent.) instead of a chromate. In this case the stain will be blue.

253. Apáthy's **Modification of Heidenhain's Process** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1, 1888, p. 47).—This is an *alcoholic* method. Stain in a 1 per cent. solution of hæmatoxylin in 70 or 80 per cent. alcohol. Wash out (for "thin" sections, *i. e.* sections of 10 to 15 μ, half the time of staining—for "thicker" sections of 25 to 40 μ twice the time of staining) in 1 per cent. solution of bichromate of potash in 70 to 80 per cent. alcohol.

The bichromate solution is conveniently prepared by mixing one part of a 5 per cent. aqueous solution with about four parts of 80 to 90 per cent. alcohol. The mixture should be made immediately before using, and should be kept from the light (light precipitates it) during the process of decoloration, and should also be changed for fresh several times during the process. After the differentiation of the colour has been accomplished, the objects should be thoroughly washed (still in the dark) in several changes of 70 per cent. alcohol.

Preparations made in this manner are said to be more transparent and better preserved than those made by Heidenhain's process.

For celloidin series of sections, Apáthy (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 2, 1889, p. 170) stains in the hæmatoxylin solution as above for ten minutes; then removes the excess of hæmatoxylin fluid from the sections by means of blotting-paper, and brings the series for five to ten minutes into 70 per cent. alcohol containing only a few drops of a strong (5 per cent.) solution of bichromate. This must be done in the dark. If the hæmatoxylin be not removed with blotting-paper as described, the celloidin will take the stain. The sections should appear steel-blue to steel-grey.

254. Benda's **later Iron Hæmatoxylin** (*Verh. d. Anat. Ges.*, vii, 1, 1893, p. 161; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1, 1894, p. 69; for his earlier method see *Arch. Anat. Phys.*, *Phys. Abth.*, 1886, p. 564).—Tissues fixed in any way may be employed. Sections are mordanted for twenty-four hours in *Liquor ferri sulphurici oxidati*, P. G., diluted with one or two volumes of water (this preparation consists of sulphate of iron 80 parts, water 40, sulphuric acid 15, and nitric acid 18, and contains 10 per cent. of Fe). They are then well washed, first with distilled water, then with tap-water, and are brought into a 1 per cent. solution of hæmatoxylin in water, in which they remain till they have become thoroughly black. They are then washed and differentiated. The differentiation may be done either in 30 per cent. acetic acid, in which case the progress of the decoloration must be watched; or in a weaker acid, which will not require watching; or in the sulphate solution strongly diluted with water.

This process is applicable to all sorts of organs, and gives in particular excellent images of axis-cylinders, and of the achromatic figure of cell-division. It is sometimes useful to add a second stain with Säurefuchsin, or Bordeaux. If the iron solution be taken for the differentiation, it should be taken extremely diluted (of a *very pale* straw-colour), and the progress of the differentiation watched; as if it be only diluted about tenfold, for instance, the decoloration is extremely rapid.

The stain is nuclear or nuclear and plasmatic according to the amount of differentiation, and is one of the most splendid stains known. The tone varies somewhat between dark blue and dead black (see next §). After most carefully comparing it with that of M. Heidenhain (next §) I find that in result the two are *absolutely identical*, Benda's process having the advantage that his *Liq. fe. sulph.* keeps indefinitely, which Heidenhain's ferric solution does not. Either of these processes, when successful, gives a stain of an *optical quality* that is peculiarly suited to the employment of high microscopic powers, and will allow of the employment of *deeper eye-pieces* than any other stain known to me. Both the processes are somewhat crotchety, and I have met with material with which it has been impossible to obtain the correct stain (probably on account of some peculiarity in the fixation).

255. Iron Hæmatoxylin (M. Heidenhain, "Über Kern und Protoplasma," in *Festschr. Herrn. Geheimr. A. v. Kölliker, etc., gewidm.*, 1892, p. 118).—Sections are treated from half an hour to at most two or three hours with a 1·5 to 4 per cent. solution of ferric alum (ammonio-ferric sulphate). By this is meant the double salt of the sesquioxide of iron $(NH_4)_2Fe_2(SO_4)_4$, in clear violet crystals; the double salt of the protoxide, or salt of Mohr in green crystals, will not serve. If the crystals have become yellow and opaque, they have gone bad, and should be rejected. They ought to be kept in a stoppered bottle, and the solution should be made in the cold (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xliii, 3, 1894, pp. 431, 435). The sections are then washed with water and stained for half an hour in an aqueous solution (of about 0·5 per cent.) of hæmatoxylin. (Hæmatoxylin is stated by Heidenhain to give better results than hæmatein.) They are then rinsed with water, and again treated with the iron solution, which slowly washes out the stain. The progress of the differentiation ought to be controlled under the microscope. The sections should to this end be removed from time to time from the alum solution, and put into tap-water whilst they are being examined. This is favourable to the stain. As soon as a satisfactory differentiation has been obtained, the preparations are washed for at least a quarter of an hour in running water, but not more than an hour, and mounted. The results differ, in Heidenhain's view, according to the duration of the treatment with the iron and the stain. If the baths have been of short duration, viz. not more than half an hour in the iron and as much in the stain, *blue* preparations will be obtained. These show a very intense and highly differentiated stain of all nuclear structures, cytoplasmic structures being pale. If the baths in the iron and in the stain have been prolonged (twelve to eighteen hours), and the subsequent differentiation in the second iron bath also duly prolonged, *black* preparations will result. These show chromosomes stained, "central corpuscles" stained intensely black, cytoplasm sometimes colourless, sometimes grey, in which case achromatic spindle-fibres and cell-plates are stained, connective-tissue fibres black, red blood-corpuscles black, micro-organisms sharply stained, striated muscle very finely shown.

Dr. Mayer, writing to me, doubts that the blue or black tone is conditioned by the duration of the mordanting and staining baths; and my observations confirm this view.

I most highly recommend this stain, which, like Benda's, is one of the very finest I am acquainted with. It may be used either with sublimate or alcohol material, or after liquid of Flemming. The process is extremely easy to manage. It is *only applicable to sections*, which should be thin, best not more than 8 μ in thickness. The preparations are perfectly permanent. It has been said that this process frequently gives rise to amorphous precipitates in the tissues. I find that it does sometimes, but not to any very injurious extent.

Later (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 186), Heidenhain gives further instructions for the employment of this stain in the study of his "central corpuscles." All alcohol should be removed from the tissues by means of distilled water before bringing them into the mordant. This should be a

2½ per cent. solution of ferric alum, *not weaker*. Leave the sections therein (fixed to slides by the water method, § 182) for six to twelve hours, or at least not less than three. Keep the slides upright in the mordant, not lying flat. Wash out *well* with water before staining. Stain in a "ripened" hæmatoxylin solution, *i. e.* one that has stood for four weeks (of course if you make it up with the ripened brown alcoholic solution recommended § 232, *sub fin.*, this will be superfluous). Stain for twenty-four to thirty-six hours. Use the same staining solution over and over again until it becomes spoilt; for the solution after having been used gives a more energetic stain, owing to its containing a trace of iron brought over by the sections. Differentiate in a 2½ per cent. solution of ferric alum. Rinse for ten minutes in running water, clear with xylol, *not* with any essential oil, and mount in xylol-balsam. See further on this subject under "Cytological Methods."

256. Iron Hæmatoxylin (Bütschli, *Unters. über mikroskopische Schäume u. das Protoplasma*, etc., 1892; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 197).—Sections treated with a weak brown aqueous solution of ferric acetate, washed with water, and stained in 0·5 per cent. aqueous solution of hæmatoxylin. This treatment gives a blue-black or brown-black stain of extraordinary intensity. The process was used by Bütschli for staining sections, 1 μ in thickness, of Protozoa. It does not appear to be of general applicability.

257 Janssens' **Iron Hæmatoxylin** ("**Hématoxyline noire**;" *La Cellule*, xiv, 1, 1897, p 207).—A similar mixture to that of Delafield, § 244, ferric alum being taken instead of ammonia alum, the rest as in Delafield's. A progressive stain, nuclear.

258. Benda's **Copper Hæmatoxylin** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxx, 1887, p. 49). See last edition. According to my experience, not to be compared with iron hæmatoxylin, and superfluous.

259. Mallory's **Phospho-molybdic Acid Hæmatoxylin** (*Anat. Anzeig.*, 1891, p. 375; see also *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 3, 1891, p. 341).—One part of 10 per cent. phospho-molybdic acid solution, 1 part hæmatoxylin, 100 parts water, and 6 to 10 parts chloral hydrate. Let the solution ripen for a week in sunlight, and filter. This stain is recommended for preparations of central nervous system, but has been found useful in other cases. Sections should be stained for from 10 minutes to 1 hour, and washed out in two or three changes of 40 to 50 per cent. alcohol. Dehydrate and mount as usual. Celloidin remains colourless. The stain is blue, and in its general effect something like a nigrosin stain. Besides ganglion-cells and glia-cells, axis-cylinders are stained, also many other tissue-elements. It is necessary that the solution be *saturated* with hæmatoxylin in order to obtain the best results; if a good stain be not obtained at once, more hæmatoxylin must be added.

See also Ribbert (*Centralb. f. allg. Path.*, vii, 1896, p. 427; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1, 1898, p. 93).

Sargent (*Anat. Anz.*, xv, 1898, p. 214) quotes this stain, preceded by mordanting for twenty-four hours in 5 per cent. sulphate of copper, as Kenyon's.

260. Mallory's **Phosphotungstic Acid Hæmatoxylin** (*Journ. Exper. Med.*, ii, 1897, No. 5, p. 531).—Dissolve 0·1 grm. hæmatoxylin in a little hot water, and when cool add to 100 c.c. of 1 per cent. solution of phosphotungstic acid (Merck). Stain for 2 to 24 hours. Nuclei blue, connective-tissue substances pink.

261. Minot's **Hæmatoxylin Methods** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 2, 1886, p. 177).

See also Bolton, *Journ. Anat. and Phys.*, xxxii, 1898, p. 247, and xxxiii, 1899, p. 297.

CHAPTER XIV.

ON STAINING WITH COAL-TAR COLOURS.

262. Basic, Acid, and Neutral Coal-tar Colours.—Histologists generally conceive of the coal-tar colours as divided into three groups, according to a principle of classification founded on chemical considerations, and introduced into histological literature by EHRLICH (*Zeit. klin. Med.*, 1, 1880, p. 555; *Verh. d. Berl. Phys. Ges.*, May 16th, 1879; in REICHERT AND DU-BOIS REYMOND'S *Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., Phys. Abth.*, 1879, p. 571). These three groups are those of the *basic* colours, the *acid* colours, and the *neutral* colours. By a "basic" colour is meant a compound in which the colouring principle or molecular group to which the compound owes its colouring properties exists as or chemically plays the part of a base combined with a colourless acid. For instance, fuchsin or magenta is a basic colour. It is the hydrochloride of rosanilin, and its colouring properties are due to the rosanilin which exists as a base in the compound, and not to the hydrochloric acid of the compound. By an "acid" colour is meant a compound in which the colouring principle exists as or plays the part of an acid. The dye known as acid fuchsin or acid magenta (Säurefuchsin) is an "acid" colour. It is the soda salt of di- or tri-sulphoconjugated rosanilin, that is of rosanilin di- or tri-sulphonic acid, and its colouring properties are due to the rosanilin which exists as an acid in the compound, and not to the soda. Or to take a simpler case, picrate of ammonia is an "acid" colour in Ehrlich's sense, and its colouring properties are evidently due to the picric acid in it, and not to the ammonia. The neutral colouring matters form a very small group; the only example that I can find mentioned in BENEDIKT and KNECHT'S *Chemistry of the Coal-tar Colours* being artificial indigo, obtained from propiolic acid. It appears, however, to be established that neutral colours are frequently formed by the mixture of the solutions of an acid colour and a basic colour. They are generally insoluble in pure water, and hence precipitate when the mixture is made, but may be got to redissolve by adding an excess of the acid colour, or of the basic, and are always soluble in alcohol.

See further as to the "neutral" colours thus obtained, Rosin, "Ueber eine neue Gruppe der Anilinfarbstoffen," in *Berliner klin. Wochenschr.*, xii, 1898, p. 251; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 2, 1899, p. 223; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 547.

Now, according to Ehrlich, the basic colours are in general chromatin stains,—that is, they have a special affinity for the element of nuclei known as chromatin, so that they are mostly sharp nuclear stains. The acid colours, on the other hand, are, according to him, in general plasma stains,—that is, they have a special affinity for cytoplasm and intercellular substances. And lastly the neutral colours exhibit special affinities for certain cell-contents; amongst them are found some important granule stains.

I think that that is a generalisation which requires to be supplemented by a good deal of explanation and restriction. In practical histology we have to take account not only of the "affinities" of a dye for this or that cellular element, as they are manifested in *progressive* staining under narrowly limited conditions; we have also to take account of the resistance of the stain to the liquids employed for washing, for dehydration, for clearing; in short, we have to take into account the way in which the dye behaves when employed as a *regressive* stain. This is of peculiar importance in the case of the coal-tar colours, seeing that they are largely used for the *regressive* staining of sections destined to be dehydrated by alcohol and mounted in balsam. Now Erhlich's experiments take no account of these conditions. He worked with "cover-glass preparations" of isolated cells, such as blood and lymph cells, and was thus able to avoid the prolonged washing necessary for most sections, and to suppress altogether the dehydration by alcohol, his cover-glass preparations being simply dried after staining in a stove. In consequence, his chemical categories of *basic colours* and *acid* *colours* fail to correspond precisely to the technical categories of *chromatin stains* and *plasma stains.*

For instance, orange is an acid colour; but used as a regressive stain I find it will give a very sharp stain of chromatin: it cannot, therefore, be classed as a mere plasma stain, though it is also a very good plasma stain. Säurefuchsin is a very acid colour. It behaves in general as a decided plasma stain. But used as a regressive stain it sometimes, under conditions which I am not able to specify, gives a very vigorous stain of chromatin. Safranin is a basic colour, but by the use of appropriate mordants it can be made to behave as a plasma stain. Methylen blue is a basic colour. But, as is well known, when employed according to the method worked out by Ehrlich for the so-called *intra-vitam* staining of nerves, it affords a stain that is essentially plasmatic, such staining of nuclei as may occur in this process being an accidental epiphenomenon. Nigrosin is, according to Ehrlich, an acid colour, and should therefore be essentially a plasma stain. Yet I find that, used as a regressive stain in the same way as safranin, it gives a vigorous chromatin stain, cytoplasm being only faintly coloured. Bordeaux is an acid colour, but it stains chromatin as well as cytoplasm; and many similar cases might be mentioned. Indeed, it is not too much to assert that there is hardly any colour, either basic or acid, that may not be made to afford either a chromatin stain or a plasma stain, according to the way in which it is employed.

It would seem, therefore, that Ehrlich's generalisation does not hold good as a statement of the behaviour of tar colours when employed for staining sections *in the usual way.* It is *roughly* true that the basic colours are in general chromatin stains, and the acid colours in general plasma stains; but the rule is subject to many exceptions.

263. Progressive and Regressive Coal-tar Stains.—Very few tar colours give a precise nuclear or chromatin stain by the *progressive* or *direct* method (§ 199). Two of them—methyl green and Bismarck brown—are pre-eminently chromatin stains. Many of the others—for instance, safranin, gentian, and especially dahlia—may be made to give a nuclear stain with fresh tissues by combining them with acetic acid; but in ninety-nine cases out of a hundred are not so suitable for this kind of work as the two colours first-named, which practically form a class apart.

Again, very few tar colours give a pure plasmatic stain (one leaving nuclei unaffected). The majority give a diffuse stain, which in some few cases becomes, by the application of the *regressive* or *indirect* method (§ 199), a most precise and splendid chromatin stain.

The regressive staining method will form the subject of the present chapter, and the chromatin stains will be treated of in the next chapter, the plasma stains being reserved for treatment in a later chapter.

*General Directions for the Regressive Staining Method, as applied to Coal-tar Colours.**

264. **Staining.**—*Sections only*, or material that is thin enough to behave like sections, such as some membranes, can be stained by this method.

The solutions employed are made with alcohol, water, or anilin, or sometimes other menstrua, according to the solubility of the colour. There seems to be no special object in making them with alcohol if water will suffice, the great object being to get *as strong a solution as possible*. Indeed, the solutions made with strong alcohol are found not to give quite such good results as those made with water or weak alcohol. Alcohol of 50 per cent. strength, however, may be said to constitute a very generally desirable medium. The sections must be *very thoroughly* stained in the solution. As a general rule they cannot be left too long in the staining fluid. With the powerful solutions obtained with anilin a few minutes or half an hour will frequently suffice, but to be on the safe side it is frequently well to leave the sections twelve to twenty-four hours in the fluid. Up to a certain point the more the tissues are stained the better do they resist the washing-out process, which is an advantage. For researches on nuclei it is said that the solutions made with anilin had better be employed *only* with preparations well fixed in chromo-aceto-osmic acid, as the basic anilin oil may easily attack chromatin if not specially well fixed.

---

* Historically the principle of this method is due to HERMANN and BOETTCHER; but it is generally known by the name of FLEMMING, to whom is due the credit of having greatly improved the method in its practical details.

Material fixed in chromo-osmic mixtures gives a *sharper and more selective* stain than material fixed in sublimate or the like. During the staining the tissues become *overstained,* that is charged with colour in an excessive and diffuse manner. The stain must therefore now be *differentiated* by removal of the excess of colour.

265. Differentiation.—This is generally done with alcohol, sometimes pure, sometimes acidulated (with HCl). The stained sections, if loose (celloidin sections), are brought into a watch-glassful of alcohol; if mounted in series on a slide they are brought into a tube of alcohol (differentiation *can* be done by simply pouring alcohol on to the slide, but it is better to use a tube or other bath). It is in either case well to *just rinse* the sections in water, or even to wash them well in it, before bringing them into alcohol.

The sections in the watch glass are seen to give up their colour to the alcohol in clouds, which are at first very rapidly formed, afterwards more slowly. The sections on the slide are seen, if the slide be gently lifted above the surface of the alcohol, to be giving off their colour in the shape of rivers running down the glass. In a short time the formation of the clouds or of the rivers is seen to be *on the point of ceasing;* the sections have become *pale* and somewhat *transparent,* and (in the case of chrom-osmium objects) have *changed colour,* owing to the coming into view of the general ground colour of the tissues, from which the stain has now been removed. (Thus chrom-osmium-safranin sections turn from an opaque red to a delicate purple.) At this point the differentiation is complete, and the extraction of the colour by the alcohol *must be stopped instantly* (see § 267).

It is generally directed that absolute alcohol be taken for differentiation. This may be well in some cases, but in general 95 per cent. is found to answer perfectly well.

The hydrochloric-acid-alcohol process had better only be employed with tissues well fixed with "Flemming," as with tissues imperfectly fixed it may cause swellings. Further, the acid extracts the colour *much more quickly from resting nuclei than from kinetic nuclei*, which is an advantage or a disadvantage according to the end in view.

The proportion of HCl with which the alcohol should be acidified for the acid process should be about 1 : 1000, or less; seldom more.

As a rough and ready guide to the beginner, it may be stated that washing out should be done with neutral alcohol whenever it is desired to have resting nuclei stained as well as dividing nuclei; the other processes serving chiefly to differentiate karyokinetic figures.

Differentiation with neutral alcohol is known as "neutral differentiation," or "neutral extraction;" and differentiation with hydrochloric acid is known as "acid differentiation," or "acid extraction."

The length of time necessary for differentiating to the precise degree required varies considerably with the nature of the tissues and the details of the process employed; all that can be said is that it generally lies between thirty seconds and two minutes. The acid process is vastly more rapid than the neutral process, and therefore of course more risky.

Other differentiating media than alcohol and hydrochloric acid are also employed, and will be mentioned in their proper places.

266. Substitution.—There exists a mode of differentiation that is both of practical importance and of theoretical interest—one stain may be made to wash out another. Thus methylen blue and gentian violet are discharged from tissues by aqueous solution of vesuvin or of eosin; fuchsin is discharged from tissues by aqueous solution of methylen blue. The second stain "substitutes" itself for the first in the general "ground" of the tissues, leaving, if the operation have been successfully carried out, the nuclei stained with the first stain, the second forming a "contrast" stain.

FLEMMING differentiates in a solution of Orange G. sections that have been previously stained with gentian violet (see his orange method, § 283). Flemming attributes the differentiation in this case to the "acid" qualities of the Orange. I am not able to say how far the "acid" nature of dyes in Ehrlich's sense confers on them the power of extracting the stains of basic colours, or of less acid colours. It is certain at any rate that this property is also possessed by some basic colours, as is testified by two of the examples given above, both vesuvin and methylen blue being basic colours, and other examples might be quoted.

In the paper of RESEGOTTI in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v. 3, 1888, p. 320, it is stated as a very general rule that colours that do *not* give a nuclear stain by the regressive method will wash out those that *do*. But RESEGOTTI's experiments do not seem to me to constitute a case in point. For he used the second colour, if I understand him rightly, in *alcoholic* solution; so that it remains uncertain how far the differentiation should be attributed to the second colour itself, and how far to the alcohol used as a vehicle. The same remark applies to BENDA's Safranin-and-Lichtgrün process.

267. Clearing.—The differentiation having been carried to a satisfactory point, as described in § 265, the extraction of the colour may be stopped by putting the sections into water; but the general practice is to clear and mount them at once.

You may clear with clove oil, *which will extract some more colour* from the tissues. Or you may clear with an agent that does not attack the stain (cedar oil, bergamot oil, xylol, toluol, etc.; see the chapter on Clearing Agents). If you have used neutral alcohol for washing out, you had perhaps better clear with clove oil, as neutral alcohol does not always, if the staining have been very prolonged, extract the colour perfectly from extra-nuclear parts. But if you have not stained very long, and if you have used acidulated alcohol for washing out, clove oil is not necessary, and it may be better not to use it, as it somewhat impairs the brilliancy of the stain. A special property of clove oil is that it helps to differentiate karyokinetic figures, as it *decolours resting nuclei more rapidly than those in division.*

Some colours are much more sensible to the action of clove oil than others; and much depends on the quality of this much-adulterated essence. New clove oil extracts the colour more quickly than old.

Series of sections on slides are conveniently cleared by pouring the clearing agent over them.

When the clearing is accomplished to your satisfaction, either mount in damar or balsam; or, stop the extraction of the colour, if clove oil have been used, by putting the sections into some medium that does not affect the stain (xylol, cedar oil, etc.). Chloroform should be avoided, either as a clearer or as the menstruum for the mounting medium.

268. General Results.—The results depend in great measure on the previous treatment of the tissues. If you have given them a prolonged fixation in Flemming's *strong* chromo-aceto-osmic mixture, and have differentiated after staining with acid alcohol and cleared with clove oil, you will get, with some special exceptions, nothing stained but nucleoli and the chromatin of dividing nuclei, that of resting nuclei remaining unstained. If you have given a lighter fixation, with Flemming's weak mixture or some other fixing agent not specially inimical to staining, and have differentiated after staining with neutral alcohol, you will get the chromatin of resting nuclei stained as well.

269. HENNEGUY's **Permanganate Method** (*Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Physiol.*, xxvii, 1891, p. 397).—This method is based on the fact, discovered by HENNEGUY, that permanganate of potassium is a mordant for many anilin dyes, and will enable a good stain to be procured in cases in which the usual methods fail.

Sections are treated for five minutes with 1 per cent. solution of permanganate of potassium. They are then washed with water and stained (for about half the time that would have been taken if they had not been mordanted with the permanganate) in safranin, rubin, gentian violet, vesuvin, or the like. The stain that succeeds the best is a safranin solution prepared with anilin water and absolute alcohol (see below, § 272). After staining they are differentiated with alcohol, followed by clove oil in the usual way. The progress of the decoloration should be controlled under the microscope, in order that it may be stopped at the proper moment. It goes on in general slowly, and the slower it proceeds the more selective will be the resultant stain. The decoloration sometimes continues even after the sections have been mounted in balsam, especially if all traces of clove oil have not been removed before mounting. It may thus happen that preparations which are insufficiently washed out at the moment of mounting show a perfectly differentiated stain twenty-four or forty-eight hours afterwards. The stain is either purely nuclear, or in part plasmatic, according to the extent of the differentiation. I consider that it may occasionally be useful.

The mordanting action of permanganate of potassium on anilin stains is so energetic that if it have been overmuch prolonged before staining with safranin, or, still more, with rubin, it becomes almost impossible to wash out the sections properly; it may be necessary to leave them for a month or more in clove oil.

270. OHLMACHER's **Formaldehyde Process** (*Medical News*, February 16th, 1895).—Ohlmacher states that formaldehyde is a powerful mordant for tar colours. Tissues may either be mordanted separately by treatment for a short time (one minute is enough for cover-glass preparations) with a 2 per cent. to 4 per cent. formalin solution; or the formalin may be combined with the stain. One gramme of fuchsin dissolved in 10 c.c. of absolute alcohol may be added to 100 c.c. of 4 per cent. formalin solution. Or saturated alcoholic solution of gentian violet, or methyl violet 5 B, may be added to 4 per cent. formalin solution in the proportion of 1 : 10. Or formalin-methylen blue may be made by dissolving 1 grm. of methylen blue in 100 c.c. of the formalin solution. Sections are said to stain in half a minute, and to resist alcohol much more than is the case with those treated by the usual solutions. The formalin solution of safranin (*Safranin O*, from Grübler) is said to give a plasma stain behaving in all particulars like eosin.

271. Choice of a Stain.—One might think that it would be quite sufficient for all practical purposes to possess one good red stain and one good blue one, so that, for instance, safranin and gentian violet should be sufficient for the most exacting of laboratories. But I think that for delicate work, at any rate, it is desirable to possess one or two more. We have to take account of the manner in which these colours behave when used in combination with the plasma stains that it may be desired to employ. And there is another point that is not undeserving of attention. Some of the dyes discussed in the following chapter give a stain of a somewhat dead or dull quality, so much so that chromosomes and nucleoli frequently come out quite opaque. Gentian violet is in this case ; whilst dahlia, which is otherwise near to it in hue, is not. Safranin and methyl green, on the other hand, leave the structures beautifully transparent. This is an advantage with thick sections, and sometimes for other reasons ; but this transparency of the elements is unfortunately favourable to the production of diffraction lines, which may be a hindrance to good definition in delicate work. So that the dead colours, such as gentian, have a certain advantage for work with very thin sections and where very fine definition of chromatin is required ; whilst the transparent or semi-transparent colours, such as safranin, should be preferred for thick sections. I would also add that it always seems to me that the blue stains, such as gentian, are less favourable for work with artificial light. They give more or less dichroic images, which are not favourable to good definition.

To sum up, I would recommend safranin for a red chromatin stain, and gentian for a blue one, except where special conditions suggest another choice.

CHAPTER XV.

THE COAL-TAR CHROMATIN STAINS.

A. *Regressive Stains.*

272. Safranin.—One of the most important of these stains, on account of its great power, brilliancy, and superior permanence in balsam, and also on account of the divers degrees of electivity that it displays for the nuclei and other constituent elements of different tissues.

The great secret of staining with safranin is *to get a good safranin.* It is needful here to insist most urgently on what was said above (§ 204). Before thinking of working with this important reagent you should go to Grübler & Hollborn or to Münder, and order the safranin you want, specifying whether you want it for staining nuclei or for staining elastic fibres, or for what other purpose you may require it.

There are presumably at least a score of sorts of safranin in the market, differing to a considerable extent in colour, weight, solubility, and histological action. Some are easily soluble in water and not so in alcohol, some the reverse, and some freely soluble in both. Fourteen brands, supplied by Grübler and by Münder, have been studied by Resegotti (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 3, 1888, p. 320). Resegotti obtained his best results with the brands "Safranin wasserlöslich," "Safranin spirituslöslich," "XX," "XXBN," "TB," furnished by Grübler, and with the brands "Rein," "O," "FII," and "Conc.," supplied by Münder.

The brand I have been using for a long time, and which gives good results, is the "Safranin O" of Grübler & Co. It should be remembered that as the processes of manufacture are constantly changing, the properties of the products are sure to vary somewhat from time to time.

Staining.—The majority of safranins are not sufficiently soluble in water, so that solutions in other menstrua must be employed.

A solution much used some time ago is that of Pfitzner (*Morph. Jahrb.*, vi, p. 478, and vii, p. 291), composed of safranin 1 part, absolute alcohol 100 parts, and water 200 parts, the last to be added only after a few days.

The solution of Flemming (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xix, 1881, p. 317) is a concentrated solution in absolute alcohol, diluted with about one half of water.

The solutions of Babes (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1883, p. 356) are (a) a mixture of equal parts of concentrated alcoholic solution and concentrated aqueous solution (this is very much to be recommended), and (b) a concentrated or supersaturated aqueous solution made with the aid of heat.

Some people still employ simple aqueous solutions.

The anilin solution of Babes (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 470) consists of water 100 parts, anilin oil 2 parts, and an excess of safranin. The mixture should be warmed to from 60° to 80° C., and filtered through a wet filter. This solution will keep for a month or two.

Zwaardemaker (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 2, 1887, p. 212) makes a mixture of about equal parts of alcoholic safranin solution and anilin water (saturated solution of anilin oil in water;—to make it, shake up "anilin oil," which is nothing but pure anilin, with water, and filter). This, I find, will keep for many months, perhaps indefinitely.

I myself use equal parts of saturated solution in anilin water, and saturated solution in absolute alcohol.

Any of these stains may be used with any of the following differentiation processes. Of course you will have to stain longer in the weaker solutions. As to the anilin solutions see *ante*, § 264.

Differentiation.—For general directions for differentiation and clearing see above, §§ 265 and 267.

Neutral differentiation with pure alcohol, followed by clove oil gives resting chromatin stained, as well as kinetic chromatin.

Flemming's *acid* differentiation (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 3, 1884, p. 350).—Differentiate, until hardly any more colour comes away, in alcohol acidulated with about 0·5 per cent. of hydrochloric acid, followed by pure alcohol and clove oil.

(You may use the HCl in watery solution if you prefer it.) Or you may use a lower strength, viz. 0·1 per cent. at most (see *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxvii, 1891, p. 249); and this I find is generally preferable.

Objects are supposed to have been well fixed—twelve hours at least—in the *strong* chromo-aceto-osmic mixture, and stained for some hours. In this way you get kinetic chromatin and nucleoli alone stained (if the fixation have been performed as above directed).

Podwyssozki (*Beitr. z. path. Anat.*, i, 1886; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 3, 1886, p. 405) differentiates (for from a few seconds to two minutes) in a strongly alcoholic solution of picric acid, followed by pure alcohol. Same results (except that the stain will be brownish instead of pure red).

Babes recommends, for sections stained in the anilin solution, treatment with iodine, according to the method of Gram (see next section). This process has also been recommended by Prenant (*Int. Monatsschr. f. Anat.*, etc., iv, 1887, p. 368).

It has been shown by Ohlmacher (*Journ. Amer. Med. Ass.*, vol. xx, No, 5, Feb. 4, 1893, p. 111) that if tissues be treated with solutions containing iodine or picric acid after staining with safranin, there may be produced in the tissue elements a precipitate of a dark red substance of a crystalline nature, but of lanceolate, semilunar, falciform, or navicellar forms. This precipitate is formed both in normal and pathological tissue, readily in carcinomatous tissues; and Ohlmacher concludes that many of the bodies that have been described as "coccidia," "sporozoa," or other "parasites" of carcinoma are nothing but particles of this precipitate.

See also the differentiation process of Martinotti and Resegotti (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 3, 1887, p. 328) for alcohol-fixed material; and of Garbini (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 2, 1888, p. 170.

In preparations made with chromo-aceto-osmic acid, safranin stains, besides nuclei, elastic fibres, the cell bodies of certain horny epithelia, and the contents of certain gland-cells (mucin, under certain imperfectly ascertained conditions).

The stain is perfectly permanent.

273. Gentian Violet.—One of the best of these stains. It may be used in aqueous solution, or in alcoholic solution diluted with about one half of water (Flemming, *Zells. Kern. u. Zellth.*, 1882, p. 384), and the stain may be differentiated with neutral alcohol, or (Flemming, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1, 1884, p. 350) acidulated alcohol, as directed for safranin. Bizzozero (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 1, 1886, p. 24) stains in a solution borrowed from that of Ehrlich for bacteria, and consisting of—

Gentian violet	1 part.
Alcohol	15 parts.
Anilin oil	3 ,,
Water	80 ,,

The complicated chromic-acid differentiation process recommended by him appears to me quite superfluous.

In some cases it may be useful to employ the method devised by Gram for the differentiation of bacteria in tissues (*Fortschr. d. Medicin.*, ii, 1884, No. 6; *British Med. Journ.*, Sept. 6th, 1884, p. 486; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N.S.], iv, 1884, p. 817).

In Gram's method the sections are treated, after staining, with a solution composed of—

Iodine	1 gramme,
Iodide of potassium . .	2 grammes,
Water	300 ,,

for two or three minutes, until they become black. They are then differentiated with neutral alcohol, until they turn grey, and are then finally differentiated with clove oil.

By this process, in resting nuclei the nucleoli alone are stained, or the chromatin if stained is pale; in dividing nuclei the chromatin is stained with great intensity, being nearly black in the equatorial stage.

Gentian violet is an exceedingly powerful stain, quite as precise as safranin, to which it is perhaps even preferable for much work with very thin sections (thick sections with closely packed nuclei may easily come out too dark). It lends itself well to double-staining with red or yellow plasma stains.

The stain keeps well if the preparations be not *unduly exposed to light.*

Gentian violet in acid solution stains the nuclei of fresh tissues, and dissolved in indifferent media is sometimes very useful for staining *intra vitam* (see § 201).

Hermann (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xxxiv, 1889, p. 58) first stains for twenty-four hours or more in safranin, differentiates incompletely with alcohol, then stains for three to five minutes in the anilin-water gentian solution, treats with the iodine solution for one to three hours, and finally differentiates with alcohol.

274. Thionin.—The hydrochloride of thionin, or violet of Lauth, is a colour chemically nearly allied to methylen blue. It may be obtained from Grübler & Hollborn. I have classed it here as a regressive stain, but its action is so selective from the first that it may almost be considered to be a progressive stain. If you stain for only a short time (a few minutes) in a concentrated aqueous solution, hardly anything but the chromatin will be found to be stained. If the staining be prolonged, plasmatic elements will begin to take up the colour. After a short stain no special differentiation is required; all that is necessary is to rinse with water, dehydrate, and mount. After a strong stain you differentiate with alcohol in the usual way, with this advantage, that the stain is so highly resistent to alcohol that there is no risk whatever of overshooting the mark; the stain will not be more extracted in an hour than that of gentian or dahlia is in a minute, so that the process may be controlled under the microscope if desired. For this reason I think this stain may be useful to beginners, but I myself prefer gentian. It is a very powerful stain.

Thionin is a specific stain for mucin, *q. v.* Some observers have found the stain to fade. Wolff (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 3, 1899, p. 312) says that, to avoid this, preparations should be mounted in a little solid colophonium or balsam melted over a flame.

275. Other Regressive Stains.—The foregoing, I think, may suffice for most practical purposes, but the following may be mentioned.

Dahlia (Flemming, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xix, 1881, p. 317).—The stain is paler in the nuclei than with gentian or safranin. The cytoplasmic granulations of certain cells are sharply stained.

Dahlia is also a useful nuclear stain for fresh tissues (*v.* Ehrlich, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xiii, 1876, p. 263). For these the aqueous solution must be acidulated with (7·5 per cent.) acetic acid; or you may stain in a neutral solution, and wash out with acidulated water.

Victoria Blue (Victoriablau) (Lustgarten, *Med. Jahrb. k. Ges. d. Aerzte zu Wien*, 1886, pp. 285—291).

Victoria has a special affinity for *elastic fibres*. For this object Lustgarten recommends an alcoholic solution of the dye diluted with two to four parts of water. Fixation in chrom-osmium, or at least in a chromic mixture, is, I believe, a necessary condition to this reaction. And you must stain for a long time.

Victoria has also a special affinity for *mucus-cells*, from which it is not washed out by alcohol.

MAGDALA RED (NAPTHALIN RED, ROSE DE NAPTHALINE).

Fuchsin (meaning the basic fuchsins, a series of Rosanilin salts having very similar reactions, and found in commerce under the names of FUCHSIN, ANILIN RED, RUBIN, ROSEIN, MAGENTA, SOLFERINO, CORALLIN).—GRASER (*Deutsche Zeit. f. Chirurgie*, xxvii, 1888, pp. 538—584; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 3, 1888, p. 378) stains for twelve to twenty-four hours in a dilute aqueous solution, washes out for a short time in alcohol, stains for a few minutes in aqueous solution of methylen blue, and dehydrates with alcohol. A double stain. Chromatin and nucleoli red, all the rest blue.

ZIEHL'S **Carbolic Fuchsin** (from *Zeit. f. wiss Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 39).

The stain is made either by taking—

Fuchsin	1 gramme,
Acid. carbol. crist. . .	5 grammes,
Alcohol	10 ,,
Aq. dest.	100 ,,

or by saturating a 5 per cent. aqueous solution of carbolic acid with concentrated alcoholic solution of fuchsin (the saturation of the carbolic solution with fuchsin is made manifest by the formation of a metallic-looking pellicle on the surface of the liquid). The stain is washed out with alcohol followed by clove oil.

Bismark Brown has this advantage, that being sufficiently resistent to alcohol it may be utilised for staining entire objects.

KAISER (*Biblioth. Zool.*, H. 7, 1 Hälfte, 1891; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 3, 1891, p. 363) stains for forty-eight hours, and at a temperature of 60 C. in saturated solution of Bismarck brown in 60 per cent. alcohol (the solution to be made in boiling alcohol), and washes out (until all is decoloured except the karyokinetic figures) in 60 per cent. alcohol, containing 2 per cent. hydrochloric acid or 3 per cent. acetic acid.

METHYL VIOLET.

BENZOAZURIN (MARTIN, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 3, 1889, p. 193). Stain for an hour or so in dilute aqueous solution, and wash out with HCl alcohol.

METHYLEN BLUE.

Nigrosin (ERRERA *Proc.-Verb. Soc. Belge de Mic.*, 1881, p. 134). The stain resists alcohol well.

With **Toluidin Blue** I have had some superb stains of chromatin, unfortunately accompanied by a diffuse staining of cytoplasm.

Mann (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 4, 1894, p. 489) states that he has had good results by staining with it after eosin, thus obtaining a double stain.

See further as to the micro-chemical properties of this dye, Harris, *The Philadelphia Medical Journal*, May 14th, 1898. It much resembles methylen blue.

B. *Progressive Stains.*

276. As regards the progressive nuclear stains, the reader is reminded that many, if not most, of the basic coal-tar colours give a nuclear stain of greater or less purity if they are used in solutions acidified with acetic acid. Under the present heading, only those are mentioned which give in all respect, alike as regards precision and permanence, simplicity of manipulation and other qualities, a really valuable stain.

277. Methyl Green.—This is the most common in commerce of the "anilin" greens. It appears to go by the synonyms of *Methylanilin green, Grünpulver, Vert Lumière, Lichtgrün*; these two last are in reality the name of another colour. When first studied by Calberla, in 1874 (*Morphol. Jahrb.*, iii, 1887, p. 625), it went by the name of *Vert en cristaux*. It is commonly met with in commerce under the name of more costly greens, especially under that of Iodine green. It is important not to confuse it with the latter, nor with Aldehyde green (*Vert d'Eusèbe*), nor with the phenylated rosanilins, *Paris green*, and *Vert d'Alcali*, or *Véridine*.

Methyl green is the chloromethylate of zinc and penta-methyl-rosanilin-violet. It is obtained by the action of methyl chloride on methyl violet. The commercial dye always contains unconverted methyl violet as a consequence of defective purification. It is sometimes adulterated with anilin blue (soluble blue). It is also sometimes adulterated with a green bye-product of the manufacture,—the chloride of nona-methyl-para-leukanilin (see Benedikt and Knecht's *Chemistry of the Coal-tar Colours*).

Mayer (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1896, p. 312) says that the presence of the blue impurity can be demonstrated by placing a drop of the solution of the dye on filter paper, and holding the green spot over a bottle of ammonia. If the methyl green is pure, the spot will disappear; if not pure, it will turn violet. He also says that the violet can be easily removed by agitating the aqueous solution with chloroform. Fischer (*Fixirung, Färbung, u. Bau d. Protoplasmus*, p. 89) shakes up the solution in a burette with a little amyl alcohol, which quickly becomes violet and collects at the top, whence it may be decanted off and the operation repeated.

Methyl green is extremely sensitive to the action of alkalies. It is therefore important to use it only in acidified solutions, and to use only acid, or at least perfectly neutral fluids for washing and mounting.

This is an *extremely important histological reagent.* Its chief use is as a *chromatin* stain for *fresh, unfixed tissues.* For this purpose it should be used in the form of a strong aqueous solution containing a little acetic acid (about 1 per cent. in general). *The solutions must always be acid.* (If the tissues have been previously fixed with acetic acid you will not get a chromatin stain. The same applies to fixation with acetic acid sublimate: whilst pure sublimate will allow of a chromatin stain (Burckhardt, *La Cellule*, xii, 1897, p. 364). You may wash out with water (best acidulated) and mount in some acid aqueous medium containing a little of the methyl green in solution. The mounting medium, if aqueous, *must be acidulated.*

Employed in this way, with *fresh, unfixed* tissues, methyl green is a pure chromatin stain, in the sense of being a precise colour reagent for chromatin. For *in the nucleus* it stains nothing but chromosomes, or chromatin elements: it does not stain plasmatic nucleoli, nor caryoplasm, nor achromatic filaments. *Outside* the nucleus it stains some kinds of cytoplasm and some kinds of formed material, especially glandular secretions (silk, for instance, and mucin). The chromatin elements are invariably stained of a bright green (with the exception of the nuclein of the head of some spermatozoa), whilst extra-nuclear structures are in general stained in tones of blue or violet. But this metachromatic reaction is probably due to the methyl-violet impurity, and is not obtained with a chemically pure methyl green.

Besides being a perfectly precise test for chromatin in the fresh nucleus, methyl green has other advantages. Staining is *instantaneous;* overstaining never occurs. The solution is very penetrating, kills cells instantly without swelling or other change of form, and preserves their forms for at least some hours, so that it may be considered as a delicate fixative. It may be *combined without precipitating* with divers fixing or preserving agents. Osmic acid (0·1 to 1 per cent.) may be added to it, or it may be combined with solution of Ripart and Petit (this, by the way, is an excellent medium for washing out in and mounting in).

Alcoholic solutions may also be used for staining. They also *should be acidulated with acetic acid.*

The stain does not keep easily. It is difficult to mount it satisfactorily in balsam, because the colour does not resist alcohol sufficiently (unless this be charged with the colour). The resistance of the colour to alcohol is, however (at all events if it be used in the Ehrlich-Biondi combination), considerably increased by treating the sections for a few minutes with tincture of iodine before staining (M. Heidenhain). And Squire declares that thorough washing with water before passing into the alcohol has the same effect.

Of preparations mounted with excess of colour in the usual aqueous media the most fortunate only survive for a few months. Dr. Henneguy, however, writes to me that it keeps well in Brun's glucose medium.

Undoubtedly methyl green is one of the most valuable stains yet known. *It is the classical chromatin stain for fresh tissues.*

It was first pointed out, I believe, by Heschl (*Wiener med. Wochenschr.*, 2, 1879), that methyl green is a reagent for amyloid degeneration. His observations were confirmed by Curschmann (*Virchow's Arch.*, vol. lxxix, 1880, p. 556), who showed that it colours amyloid substance of an intense violet; but this (as pointed out by Squire, *Methods and Formulæ*, etc., Churchill, 1892, p. 37) is undoubtedly due to its containing methyl violet as an impurity.

278. Bismarck Brown (Manchester Brown, Phenylen Brown, Vesuvin, La Phénicienne).—A fairly pure nuclear stain that will work either with fresh tissues or with such as have been hardened in chromic acid.

The colour is not very easily soluble in water. You may boil it in water, and filter after a day or two (Weigert, in *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xv, 1878, p. 258). You may add a little acetic or osmic acid to the solution. Maysel (*ibid.*, xviii, 1880, pp. 237, 250) dissolves the colour in acetic acid (this solution does not give a permanent stain). Alcoholic solutions may also be used, *e. g.* saturated aqueous solution diluted with one third volume of 90 per cent. alcohol; or Calberla's glycerin-and-alcohol mixture, or dilute glycerin (say of 40 per cent. to 50 per cent.) may very advantageously be employed.

The watery solutions must be frequently filtered. The addition to them of carbolic acid has been recommended (vide *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1886, p. 908). Mayer, however (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1896, p. 315), points out that frequent filtering has the disadvantage that the paper absorbs a great deal of the colour. Bismarck brown stains rapidly, but never overstains. The stain is permanent both in balsam and in glycerin.

The chief use of this colour is for staining objects *in toto;* but it may be employed for staining sections by the regressive method (§ 275), and also for *intra-vitam* staining (§ 201) (for this purpose it is necessary to see that the colour employed be pure *and neutral*).

279. Methyl Violet (Methylanilin Violet, Anilin Violet, Paris Violet).—Graser (*Deutsche Zeit. f. Chirurgie*, xxvii, 1888, pp. 538—584; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 3, 1888, p. 378) recommends the following process:

Sections are stained for from twelve to twenty-four hours in a (presumably aqueous) solution so dilute that at the end of that time the sections will have taken up all the colour from the liquid. They are then washed out for a short time in acidulated alcohol, and then in pure alcohol (followed presumably by clearing and mounting in balsam). Schiefferdecker, whose account is here quoted, says that the results, as regards nuclear figures, are even finer than with safranin. The method is applicable to objects fixed in "Flemming."

A useful stain for fresh tissues is also obtained by using dilute acetic acid in the manner recommended above (by Ehrlich) for Dahlia (§ 275).

CHAPTER XVI.

THE COAL-TAR PLASMA STAINS.

280. As to Plasma Stains.—By a plasma stain is generally meant, rather vaguely, one that stains the extra-nuclear parts of cells and the formed material of tissues, or one of these. To be precise the class ought to be subdivided, and we ought to speak of cytoplasm stains, granule stains, ground-substance stains, or the like. But the vague general sense of the term will be sufficient for the purposes of the present chapter.

Good plasma stains are much wanted. Unfortunately such a thing can hardly be said to exist; for it is not enough to require of a plasma stain that it should stain extra-nuclear material. It is also desirable that it should do so in as selective a way as possible. Now all plasma stains are more or less diffuse stains. Many exhibit considerable selectivity, but it is by no means always easy to get them to display the particular selectivity that is desired. Those that do not display it are of little use, or of none at all. I have therefore suppressed a large number of formulæ which appear to me to have little or no scientific value. Most of them, if required, will be found quoted in the previous editions.

281. Picric Acid.—I follow FLEMMING (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 1884, p. 360) in pointing out that picric acid is one of the most generally useful of all secondary stains. It gives useful plasma stains with most of the nuclear stains, and particularly with carmine and hæmatoxylin. The *modus operandi* is as simple as possible: it consists merely in adding picric acid to the alcohols employed for dehydrating the objects after staining with a nuclear stain.

It should be borne in mind that picric acid has considerable power of washing out other anilin stains; and that *in combination with hydrochloric acid it very greatly enhances* the power with which this acid washes out carmine stains. It should, therefore, not be added to the acidulated alcohol taken for differentiating borax-carmine stains, or the like, but only to the neutral alcohol used afterwards. It has the great quality, shared by very few plasma stains, that it can be used for staining *entire objects*. And as it is extremely penetrating, it is very much indicated for the preparation of such objects as small Arthropods or Nematodes, mounted whole.

It can in some cases be employed by dissolving it in the solution of another dye (see Picro-carmine, LEGAL's alum-carmine, § 216, etc.); or (for sections) by dissolving it in the xylol or chloroform used for clearing.

282. Orange G.—This is the benzenazo-beta-naphthol-disulphonate of soda (to be obtained from Grübler & Hollborn, and not to be confounded with about a dozen other colours that are on the market under the name of "Orange," with or without a suffix). As indicated by its chemical description, this is an "acid" colour in Ehrlich's sense; and according to FLEMMING (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xxxvii, 1891, p. 685) it is also an acid colour in the usual sense, its solution in water having an acid reaction. My sample, however, obtained from Grübler & Hollborn, and stated to be identical with that supplied to Flemming, shows no sign of an acid reaction. MAYER has examined two samples, with the same result. Probably Flemming's sample was not pure. The solutions do not keep well, throwing down very quickly a pulverulent deposit.

I think this is one of the most precise cytoplasm stains that I have met with, but the stain is a very pale one. I use a saturated solution in water, and allow it to act for five or ten minutes (sections only).

283. FLEMMING's **Orange Method** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxvii, 1891, p. 249; *ibid.*, p. 685; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, p. 223, and viii, 3, p. 343).—Stain (for as much as two or three days, or even weeks if you want a very powerful stain) in strong alcoholic safranin solution diluted with anilin water (§ 272); rinse in distilled water; differentiate in absolute alcohol, containing at most 0·1 per cent. of hydrochloric acid, until hardly any more colour comes away; stain for one to three hours in gentian violet (§ 273); wash for a short time in distilled water; treat with concentrated, or at least fairly strong, aqueous solution of orange G, which "in virtue of its acid properties" washes out most of the gentian. After at most a few minutes, whilst pale violet clouds are still being given off from the sections on agitation, bring them into absolute alcohol until hardly any more colour comes away, clear in clove or bergamot oil, and mount in damar or balsam before the last pale clouds of colour have ceased to come away. The orange *must* be the *orange G* (last section).

This is not a triple stain in the sense of giving three different colours in the result; it is a nuclear and plasmatic stain in mixed tones; the orange, according to Flemming, does not act as a separate stain, but as an agent for the differentiation of the gentian stain. I am unable to find that it acts in this way, for I do not find that it washes out any of the gentian; at all events, in my preparations no perceptible clouds of colour come away (but see last section). It seems to me more probable that it acts by forming a "neutral" colour with the gentian (see next section and § 262).

See also FLEMMING in *Arch. Anat. Phys., Anat. Abth.*, 1897, p. 175.

Never popular, this clumsy and uncertain process is now little used.

284. REINKE's Modification of FLEMMING's Orange Method (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xliv, 2, 1894, p. 262).—Sections of material fixed in liquid of HERMANN are put for twenty-four hours into a concentrated solution of potassium sulphite. They are washed with water and stained for an hour or two in safranin. They are then well washed with water, and stained for twenty-four hours in a "neutral" mixture of gentian and orange, prepared as follows:

To a concentrated aqueous solution of gentian violet are added "a few drops" of a like solution of orange G. The solution precipitates in part, owing to the formation of an imperfectly soluble "neutral" colour; but becomes almost clear again if an excess of water be added. A drop of the mixture placed on blotting-paper should form a violet or brown spot with a narrow orange border. The solution is not to be filtered, but the sections are to be stained in it as it is (it is impossible to make out whether REINKE means the undiluted mixture, or the mixture made almost clear by addition of water). It is said that the "neutral" solution may be preserved for future use by adding to it one third of alcohol. After staining, you differentiate rapidly with alcohol, and clear with clove oil.

I have tried this process, and obtained exactly the same results as with Flemming's process, and so have other workers.

285. Metanil Yellow (Metanilgelb).—See GRIESBACH (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 448; see also *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 464). It is said to have a certain affinity for various elements belonging to the group of the connective tissues.

286. Säuregelb (Echtgelb), Tropæolin O., Crocein, Gold Orange (see GRIESBACH, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxii, p. 132).

287. Säurefuchsin (Acid Fuchsin, Fuchsin S, Acid Rubin, Rubin S, Säurerubin, Acid Magenta, Magenta S).—The chemical description of this acid colour has been given (§ 262): it is important not to confound it with basic fuchsin, as seems to have been done by some writers.

This is one of the best cytoplasm stains that I know of. I use a 0·5 per cent. solution in water, and allow it to act on sections for a few minutes. The stain is sufficiently resistent to alcohol. Säurefuchsin is also used as a specific stain for nerve tissue (see "Neurological Methods" in Part II).

288. Säurefuchsin and Orange G.—I have had good results by mixing the aqueous solutions of these two dyes, but unfortunately have not noted the proportions.

289. VAN GIESON'S **Picro-Säurefuchsin** (from *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 3, 1896, p. 344).—To a saturated aqueous solution of Säurefuchsin is added a few drops of saturated aqueous solution of picric acid, until the mixture has become garnet-red. After staining, rinse with water, dehydrate, and clear in oil of origanum. According to MOLLER (*op. cit.*, xv, 2, 1898, p. 174), a good formula, due to WEIGERT, is—warm—saturated picric acid solution, 150 c.c.; saturated Säurefuchsin solution, 3 c.c.

OHLMACHER (*Journ. Exper. Med.*, ii, 1897, p. 675) adds 0·5 per cent. of Säurefuchsin to a saturated solution of picric acid which has been diluted with an equal quantity of water. He uses this after previous staining with gentian violet.

290. The EHRLICH-BIONDI **Mixture** (or EHRLICH-BIONDI-HEIDENHAIN **Mixture**) (*Pflüger's Arch.*, xlii, 1888, p. 1; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 4, 1888, p. 520).—This well-known stain is somewhat troublesome to prepare. It may be obtained ready made from Grübler & Hollborn.

The receipt is as follows:—To 100 c.c. saturated aqueous solution of orange add with continual agitation 20 c.c. saturated aqueous solution of Säurefuchsin (Acid Fuchsin) and 50 c.c. of a like solution of methyl green.

(According to Krause [*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlii, 1893, p. 59], 100 parts of water will dissolve about 20 of Säurefuchsin [Rubin S], 8 of orange G, and 8 of methyl green.) The solutions must be *absolutely saturated*, which only happens after several days.

Dilute the mixture with 60 to 100 volumes of water. The dilute solution ought to redden if acetic acid be added to it; and if a drop be placed on blotting-paper it should form a spot bluish green in the centre, orange at the periphery. If the orange zone is surrounded by a broader red zone, the mixture contains too much fuchsin.

According to M. Heidenhain's instructions ("Ueber Kern u. Protoplasma," in *Festschr. Herrn. Geh. A. v. Kölliker gewidm.*, etc., 1892, p. 115; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 202) the orange to be used should be "Orange G;" the Acid Fuchsin or Säurefuchsin should be "Rubin S" ("Rubin" is a synonym of Fuchsin); and the methyl green should be "Methylgrün OO." And it is *absolutely necessary* that these ingredients be those prepared under those names by the *Actienfabrik für Anilinfabrication in Berlin.* They can be obtained from Grübler & Hollborn, either separately, or as a mixture of the three dyes in powder (which I do not recommend).

The strong solutions directed to be taken readily precipitate on being mixed. To avoid this it is recommended by Squire (*Methods and Formulæ*, etc., p. 37) to dilute them before mixing.

Other proportions for the mixture have been recommended by Krause (*loc. cit. supra*), viz. 4 c.c. of the Säurefuchsin solution, 7 of the orange G, and 8 of the methyl green; the mixture to be diluted 50 to 100-fold with water. Thomé (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, lii, 1898, p. 820) gives the proportions 2 : 5 : 8, and dilutes 100-fold.

Stain sections (N.B., *sections only*) for six to twenty-four hours. Dehydrate with alcohol, clear with xylol, and mount in xylol balsam.

In the intention of the observers who have elaborated this stain, it is a *progressive* stain, and *not* a regressive one. It does not require any differentiation, and the sections should be got through the alcohol into xylol as quickly as possible in order to avoid any extraction of the colour. The great point of difficulty in working with this stain is to prevent the colour of the methyl green from coming out in the alcohol.

The best results are obtained with sublimate material; chrom-osmium material, and the like, give a much inferior stain. Preparations made with the usual mixture, as given above, are liable to fade; by acidifying the mixture a stronger and more sharply selective stain is obtained, which does not fade. But too much acid must not be added, as this would cause a staining of the interfilar substances. The following instructions for acidifying, due to M. HEIDENHAIN, are from a paper of WARBURG'S (quoted from *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 3, 1894, p. 383). To 2 c.c. of the Biondi mixture (1 : 30) (by this is presumably meant the original mixture as given above, but diluted with only 30 volumes of water instead of 60) add 40 c.c. of distilled water, 3 c.c. of 0·5 per cent. solution of Säurefuchsin, and 0·2 c.c. of one fifth per cent. solution of acetic acid (or, according to GROUVEN, *op. cit.*, xii, 3, 1896, p. 379, four drops). [Grouven here speaks of the mixture as "Triacid" (see next section); there is a deplorable confusion in the nomenclature of these stains.]

Another process of acidification, complicated and difficult, is given by M. HEIDENHAIN (*Ueber Kern und Protoplasma*, p. 116; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 202); for this see *last edition*. See also ISRAEL (*Praktikum Path. Hist.*, 2 Aufl., Berlin, 1893, p. 69); TRAMBUSTI (*Ricerche Lab. Anat. Roma*, v, 1896, p. 82; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 357); and THOMÉ (*op. cit. supra*).

After acidification the solution must not be filtered, for filtration may render it less acid. If it has been kept for some time a little more acid must be added; for it will have dissolved traces of glass, which is an alkaline body. M. HEIDENHAIN therefore recommends that it be preserved in rubber bottles.

Before staining (M. HEIDENHAIN, *loc. cit.*), sections should be treated for a couple of hours with 0·1 per cent. acetic acid, then for ten to fifteen minutes with officinal tincture of iodine, and be rinsed with alcohol before bringing into the stain, in which they should remain for twelve to eighteen hours. The treatment with acid is necessary in order to ensure having the sections *acid* on mounting in balsam. The primary object of the iodine is to remove any sublimate from the preparations (Heidenhain's descriptions refer to sublimate objects), but it also enhances the power of staining of the chromatin with methyl green, and produces a more selective staining of protoplasmic elements.

The stain is a very fine one when successful. But it is *very capricious,* it seldom gives the same result twice running. The correct result should be a precise chromatin stain combined with a precise stain of the plastin element or reticulum of cytoplasm by the Säurefuchsin. Now the least defect or excess of acidity causes the plasma stain of the Säurefuchsin to become a diffuse one, instead of being sharply limited to the plastin element. And the methyl green, being very little resistent to alcohol, goes out of the chromatin with such rapidity during the dehydration, that there is always danger of the chromatin stain being lost altogether. For this reason the stain will only work with very thin sections: to be quite sure of good results, the sections should be of not more than 3 μ in thickness, and if they are over five the desired results are almost hopeless. The preparations keep very badly; the majority of mine, at any rate, have become spoilt sooner or later, sometimes after only a few days. I admit that the method has its *raison d'être* for the very special objects for which it was imagined,—for the researches on cell-granulations for which EHRLICH employed the three colours, or for the researches on the plastin reticulum of cytoplasm for which MARTIN HEIDENHAIN employed the mixture; for the study of gland cells; and for similar objects. But to recommend it and to use it, as has been done by many workers, as a general stain for sections, applicable to ordinary work, is nothing but mischievous exaggeration. Far from having the qualities that should be possessed by a normal section-stain, the Ehrlich-Biondi mixture is highly unfitted for ordinary work. Workers have at length found this out, and, after a period of well-nigh unparalleled popularity, this stain is now but little used except for the special purposes above indicated.

291. EHRLICH'S **Triacid Mixture.**—According to a custom which, I believe, originated with Ehrlich himself, and which would, perhaps, be "better honoured in the breach than the observance," the name of Triacid ("Triacidlösung") has been given to a mixture of the same three dyes as in the EHRLICH-BIONDI mixture, but in such proportions that the "acid" colours therein have a larger share assigned to them. The denomination is improper, for the mixture contains only two "acid" colours, methyl green being a strongly "basic" colour. The following is a recent formula of EHRLICH, communicated to REINBACH (quoted from *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 3, 1894, p. 259).

Orange G, sol. sat. aq. . . .	120
Säurefuchsin ,, . . .	80
Methyl green ,, . . .	100
Distilled water	300
Absolute alcohol	180
Glycerin	50

Care must be taken that the solutions be absolutely saturated before mixing. The mixture must never be shaken, the quantity necessary for use at any time must be carefully taken off from the top of the stock by means of a pipette. With these precautions the mixture will keep for years.

I have not made up this mixture, but have examined a triacid solution procured from Grübler & Hollborn. Its qualities and defects appear to be very much those of the Ehrlich-Biondi mixture. It appears to be a more powerful, but perhaps less delicate stain, and the methyl green appears to have more resistance to alcohol, so that it may perhaps give better results for ordinary work.

292. Bordeaux R.—A general stain taking effect both on chromatin and cytoplasm, and, I consider, a very good plasma stain. It is much used, on the recommendation of M. HEIDENHAIN (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlii, 1894, p. 665), for staining sections *before* iron-hæmatoxylin, it being supposed that this treatment affords a sharper stain of his "central corpuscles." I use for chrom-osmium material a 1 per cent. solution, and stain for twelve to twenty-four hours. The stain resists alcohol well.

293. Bordeaux R, Thionin, and Methyl Green (GRABERG, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 4, 1896, p. 460).

294. Congo Red (Congoroth) (see GRIESBACH, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 3, 1866, p. 379).—Also an "acid" colour in EHRLICH's sense. The aqueous solution, however, has a neutral or alkaline reaction. It becomes blue in presence of the least trace of free acid (hence Congo is a valuable reagent for demonstrating the presence of free acid in tissues; see the papers quoted, *loc. cit.*). A stain much of the same nature as Säurefuchsin, and like it useful in staining axis-cylinders. See the chapter on Nerve Tissue, in Part II. It may also be used for staining some objects during life (see *ante*, § 201). I have tried it as a general plasma stain, and cannot recommend it, as the stain does not keep. Carnoy (*La Cellule*, xii, 2, 1897, p. 216) has, however, had very good results with it as a secondary stain employed after hæmatoxylin of Delafield, and found the stain keep well. He used a 0·5 per cent. solution in water. Note that this colour is not to be confounded with other Congos, as Congo yellow, or Brilliant Congo.

Loisel (*Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Phys.*, 1898, p. 230) says concerning the reaction with free acids, that the colour is azure-blue with mineral acids and dark violet with organic acids. In the presence of chlorine compounds it gives the same reaction as with acids. In the presence of ammoniacal liquids it will not give the reaction with CO_2 nor with acetic or lactic acid. See Wurster, *Centralb. f. Physiol.*, 1887, p. 240.

295. Benzopurpurin.—According to Griesbach (*loc. cit.*), another "acid" colour very similar in its results to Congo red. It has been commended as a plasma stain. I have myself been unable to obtain any results whatever with it. See, however, Zschokke (*ibid.*, v, 4, 1888, p. 466), who recommends **Benzopurpurin B**, and says that weak aqueous solutions should be used for staining, which is effected in a few minutes, and alcohol for washing out. **Deltapurpurin** has, it is said, similar properties, and may be used in the same way.

296. Neutral Red (Neutralroth) (Ehrlich, *Allg. med. Zeit.*, 1894, pp. 2, 20; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 250; Galeotti, *ibid.*, p. 193).—Up to the present this colour has chiefly been employed for *intra-vitam* staining. Tadpoles kept for a day or two in a solution of 1 : 10,000 or 100,000 absorb so considerable a quantity of the colour that all their tissues appear of a dark red. The stain is limited to cytoplasmic granules (Ehrlich), and to the contents of mucus cells (Galeotti).

S. Mayer (*Lotos*, Prague, 1806, No. 2) states that it also stains degenerating myelin. According to a further study of this colour by Ehrlich and Lazarus (*Spec. Pathol. und Therapie*, herausgeg. von Nothnagel, viii, 1, 1898, p. 1; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 3, 1899, p. 338) it may be used for *intra-vitam* staining of tissues in the same way as methylen blue (next chapter), by injection or immersion with contact of air. It is especially a *granule* stain. Similar results are recorded by Arnold (*Anat. Anz.*, xvi, 1899, p. 568). See also Loisel (*Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Physiol.*, 1898, pp. 197, 210, 217) (*intra-vitam* staining of sponges); and Prowazek, *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, lxii, 1897, p. 187 (*intra-vitam* staining of Protozoa). I myself have had very good results with it as an *intra-vitam* stain.

It has also been found useful for staining, in hardened material, the corpuscles of Nissl (*q. v.*) in nerve-cells. These bodies are basophilous; hence, it is suggested, their staining by neutral red, which is a "*basic*" colour. The term "neutral" refers to the hue of its solution, not to its chemical composition. Its neutral red tint is turned bright red by acids, yellow by alkalies. The stain in tissues is in general metachromatic, nuclei being red, cell-bodies yellow (*cf.* Rosin, in *Deutsche med. Wochenschr.*, xxiv, 1898, p. 615; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 2, 1899, 238). The solutions that have been employed for staining fixed material are strong aqueous ones, 1 per cent. to concentrated. See further under Nissl, in the chapter on "Neurological Methods."

297. Biebricher Scharlach (Biebrich Scarlet), a diffuse bright red stain, may possibly be useful as a contrast stain. See Griesbach, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxii, p. 132.

298. The Eosins, found in commerce under the names of **Eosin, Saffrosin, Primerose Soluble, Phloxin, Bengal Rose, Erythrosin, Pyrosin B, Rose B, à l'Eau,** etc., are all phthaleïn colours. The preparations indicated by these names are not quite identical in their properties, but vary according to the different modes of manufacture. Most of them are soluble both in alcohol and in water, but some only in alcohol ("*Primerose à l'Alcohol*").

They are all diffuse stains, formerly much used as contrast stains, less so now.

Their chief use is in combinations or mixtures, to be given further on. For **Bengal Rose** see Griesbach, *Zool. Anz.*, No. 135, 1883, p. 172.

Eosin is a specific stain for red blood-corpuscles, and also for certain granules of leucocytes, and hence is much used in the study of blood, for which see in Part II.

The yolk of some ova takes the stain strongly, so that it is useful in some embryological researches.

299. Methyl Green and Eosin (Calberla, *Morph. Jahrb.*, iii, 1877, Heft 3, p. 625; List, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 1885, p. 147; Balbiani, *Ann. Microgr.*, Paris, vii, 1895, p. 245; Rhumbler, *Zeit. wiss. Zool.*, lxi, 1895, p. 38).—See previous editions.

300. Methylen Blue and Eosin (Chenzinsky, quoted from *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 260).

Methylen blue, sol. sat. in water	40
Eosin, 0·5 per cent. in 70 per cent. alcohol . .	20
Distilled water, or glycerin	40

This solution will only keep for about eight days.

It has been recommended as a specific stain for blood.

The mixture of Pianese (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 3, 1894, p. 345) contains the same ingredients in the same proportions, with the addition of a considerable proportion of carbonate of lithia.

See also the mixture of Bremer, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlv, 1895, p. 433; or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 3, 1896, p. 380.

I have tried Chenzinsky's mixture as a tissue stain, without good results; but see Rosin, *Berliner klin. Wochenschr.*, 1898, p. 251; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 2, 1899, p. 223.

301. Light Green (Litchgrün S. F.).—An acid colour, in Ehrlich's sense, soluble in water or alcohol, and a good plasma stain.

Benda (*Verh. physiol. Ges. zu Berlin*, Dec. 18th, 1891, Nos. 4 u. 5; see also *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1892, p. 516) stains sections for twenty-four hours in anilin-water safranin solution, then for about half a minute in a solution of 0·5 grm. Lichtgrün or **Säureviolett** (Grübler) in 200 c.c. of alcohol, dehydrates and mounts in balsam. This process gives one of the most beautiful stains known to me. The Säureviolett gives, perhaps, the more brilliant preparations, and seems to be rather easier to carry out, as it may be allowed to act rather longer than the Lichtgrün. The process in either form is a rather delicate one to carry out, and requires very thin sections. The Lichtgrün stain unfortunately does not keep very well; I find my preparations much faded after two years, but they will keep sufficiently for many months at all events.

302. Malachite Green (syn. **Solid Green, Victoria Green, New Green, Benzoyl Green, Fast Green**).—A basic colour, which has been used as a plasma stain for the ova of *Ascaris* by van Beneden and Neyt (see in Part II, "Cytological Methods"). These authors used it for glycerin preparations. I have tried it for balsam sections, and find that it cannot be used, as the stain is not sufficiently resistent to alcohol.

303. Iodine Green ("Hofmann's **Grün**"), see Griesbach (*Zool. Anz.*, No. 117, vol. v, 1882, p. 406).—The colour is now no longer manufactured ial purposes, but it is said may be obtained of excellent quality from C. A. F. Kahlbaum's Chemische Fabrik, Berlin, S.C. (*Zool. Anz.*, No. 130, 1883, p. 56). Stain essentially that of methyl green, but plasma often violet through the presence of a violet impurity (Mayer, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1896, p. 311; see also earlier editions).

304. Thiophen Green (**Thiophengrün**), see Krause, *Intern. Monatsschr. f. Anat., etc.*, iv, 1887, Heft 2.

305. Anilin Green is said to have a special affinity for mucous gland cells, and other qualities; but I have not been able to identify the colour mentioned by authors.

306. Coerulein S., a green dye, is recommended for the staining of muscle-fibrils by M. v. Lenhossék (*Anat. Anz.*, xvi, 1899, p. 339).

307. Quinoleïn Blue (**Cyanin, Chinolinblau**; v. Ranvier, *Traité*, p. 102).—Quinoleïn is said to have the property of staining fatty matters an intense blue.

It is useful for staining Infusoria, which in dilute solution it stains during life. On this point see the methods of Certes (*post*, Part II).

308. Indulin and **Nigrosin.**—The **Indulins** are a group of dyes related to the base violanilin. They may be either "basic" colours or "acid" colours. The soluble indulins of commerce are generally mono- and disulphonic acids (Benedikt and Knecht, *Chemistry of Coal-tar Colours*, p. 187). They occur under the brands (not strictly synonyms) of **Indulin, Nigrosin, Indigen, Coupier's Blue, Fast Blue R, Fast Blue B, Blackley Blue, Guernsey Blue, Indigo substitute.** According to Behrens the name Indulin is generally given to a bluish brand, and that of Nigrosin to a blacker one.

Nigrosin, used with sublimate material, I find stains both nuclei and cytoplasm, the chromatin strongly. I do not consider it a very good plasma stain. It will not give the stain at all with chrom-osmium material.

According to Calberla (*Morph. Jahrb.*, iii, 1877, p. 627) the concentrated aqueous solution of *Indulin* should be diluted with six volumes of water. Sections will stain in the dilute solution in five to twenty minutes; they may be washed in water or in alcohol, and examined either in glycerin or oil of cloves.

The peculiarity of this stain is said by Calberla to be that it never stains nuclei; the remaining cell-contents and intercellular substance are stained blue. In its general effects it resembles quinoleïn blue, and is exactly the opposite of methyl green. As far as I have been able to control Calberla's assertions, they appear to me correct; but I see no special good in it.

309. Ehrlich's **Indulin-Aurantia-Eosin,** or **Acidophilous Mixture,** or **Mixture C,** or **Mixture for Eosinophilous Cells** (from the formula kindly sent me by Dr. Grübler).—Indulin, aurantia, and eosin, of each two parts; glycerin, thirty parts. This gives a very thick, syrupy solution. To use it, cover-glass preparations may be floated on to it; or sections on slides may have a few drops poured on to them, the slide being laid flat till the stain has taken effect (twenty-four hours for Flemming material). This mixture was imagined for the purpose of obtaining a specific stain of certain granules of leucocytes. It has been pointed out by NIKIFOROW (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, p. 189; and xi, 2, 1894, p. 246) that it is also available for staining sections. I find this is the case. With Flemming material it gives a powerful and good stain, which is much more resistent to alcohol than that of the EHRLICH-BIONDI mixture, and is therefore much more adapted to ordinary work. Chromatin in my preparations is of a very dark blue, cytoplasm being of a lighter blue (except where it has taken the stain of the aurantia or eosin). It will thus be seen that the Indulin in this combination behaves in a manner quite opposed to its behaviour when used alone (see last §). The stain is said to keep well.

ISRAEL (*Praktik. Path. Hist.*, Berlin, 1893, p. 68) gives a more complicated receipt.

310. Safranin and Indigo-Carmine or Nigrosin (KOSSINSKI, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 1, 1880, p. 61).—See previous editions.

311. Anilin Blue.—Under this title are comprised various derivatives of the base rosanilin. They occur under the names **Spirit Soluble Blue** (**Bleu Alcool**), **Gentian Blue 6 B**, **Spirit Blue O**, **Opal Blue**, **Bleu de Nuit**, **Bleu Lumière**, **Parma Blue**, **Bleu de Lyon**. Receipts of the older authors for staining with "Anilin blue" should, I think, be disregarded, as it would probably now be impossible to obtain the colours used by them, or even to ascertain what colour was meant by them.

The only one of the above-mentioned colours of which I have any personal knowledge, or that appears really valuable, is **Bleu de Lyon**. (Some authors give the names Bleu de Nuit and Grünstichblau as synonyms of Bleu de Lyon.) I find that though there is nothing very specific in its action, it is a very good plasma stain. It is a fairly true plasma stain, for though in a strong stain it will stain chromatin, yet in a light stain it will stain cytoplasm first, and thus works very well with carmine or safranin as a nuclear stain, leaving the chromatin of a perfectly pure red. I find it gives very good differentiations of nerve tissue, and of cartilage (as has already been pointed out by BAUMGARTEN and by JACOBY). The older mode of using it (MAURICE and SCHULGIN) was to stain in bulk with it after borax-carmine, using a very dilute alcoholic solution. BAUMGARTEN and JACOBY stain sections in a 0·2 per cent. alcoholic solution. I have experimented with safranin as the chromatin stain, and obtained some fair results. But I do not think the combination can be recommended. For if you stain first with the blue, the safranin will extract it if allowed to act for more than a short time. And if you stain first with the safranin, the blue will extract it very quickly.

312. **Methyl Blue.**—Under this title are comprised some other derivatives of the base rosanilin. They are "acid" colours, being mostly salts of triphenylrosanilin- and triphenyl-pararosanilin-trisulphonic acid. Here belong the dyes sold as **Methyl Blue, Cotton Blue, Water Blue (Wasserblau), Methyl Water-Blue, China Blue (Chinablau), Soluble Blue.**

Amongst these **Water Blue (Wasserblau)** possesses some useful properties. According to MITROPHANOW (quoted from *Zeit. f. wiss Mik.*, v, 4, 1888, p. 513), used in concentrated aqueous solution it gives a very good double stain with safranin. It is very resistent to alcohol. Using the Wasserblau first, and then the safranin, I have had some interesting results, and as the process is easy to carry out I think it may be recommended. The Wasserblau must be used first, as if used after the safranin it will destroy the stain in a short time. With chrom-osmium material, twelve to twenty-four hours in the blue, and four or five in the safranin, may not be too much. My stains have not kept well.

MANN (*op. cit.*, xi, 4, 1894, p. 490) has used it in conjunction with eosin for staining ganglion cells. For the somewhat complicated details of the process, see the place quoted.

313. **Anilin Blue-black.**—A preparation cited under this name has been recommended by BEVAN LEWIS and others for nervous tissue. Unfortunately these authors have not given the chemical description of the

colour used by them, so that it is not possible to ascertain whether they mean the **Blue-black B** of the oxyazo series, or the **Anilin black** of Lightfoot, also known under the names of **Nigranilin** and **Noir Colin**. Dr. Grübler writes me that the anilin blue-black of his list is the oxyazo colour blue-black B or Azoschwarz, and that he believes that Nigranilin and Noir Colin are no longer manufactured.

314. Carmine Blue (**Bleu Carmin Aqueux**, prepared by Meister, Lucius and Brünig, at Höchst-a-M.).—Janssens (*La Cellule*, ix, 1, 1893, p. 9) has shown that this colour possesses a special affinity for the parts of cytoplasm that are undergoing cuticular differentiation. He uses it in alcoholic solution acidified. The stain will bear mounting in balsam.

315. Violet B (or **Methyl violet B**) (S. Mayer, *Sitzb. d. k. k. Akad. d. wiss. Wien*, iii Abth., February, 1882).—This colour is a methyl violet prepared by Bindschedler and Busch of Bâle, and by the Aktienfabrik für Anilinfarben at Berlin. Used in solutions of 1 grm. of the colour to 300 grms. of 0·5 per cent. salt solution, and with *fresh tissues* that have not been treated with any reagent whatever, this colour gives a stain so selective of the elements of the vascular system that favourable objects, such as serous membranes, appear as if injected. The preparations do not keep well; acetate of potash is the least unsatisfactory medium for mounting them in, or a mixture of equal parts of glycerin and saturated solution of picrate of ammonia (*Anat. Anz.*, 1892, p. 221).

316. Säureviolett, see § 301.

317. Benzoazurin may be made to give either a diffuse or a nuclear stain, according to Martin (see *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 114).

318. Baumgarten's Fuchsin and Methylen Blue (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 1884, p. 415).—Stain sections (of chromic objects) for twenty-four hours in a stain made by adding 8 to 10 drops of concentrated alcoholic solution of fuchsin to a watch-glassful of water. Rinse with alcohol, and stain for four or five minutes in concentrated aqueous solution of methylen blue, wash out with alcohol for five to ten minutes, and clear with clove oil. Nuclei red, tissues blue, by *substitution*.

319. Rawitz' "**Inversion**" **Plasma Stains**.—It has been discovered by Rawitz that by means of appropriate mordants certain basic anilins, which by the usual methods of regressive staining are pure chromatin stains, may be made to afford a pure plasma stain—one not affecting chromatin at all, thus giving an "inversion" of the usual stain. The stain, in my opinion, is a vile one. For details of the process see *last edition*, or Rawitz (*Sitzb. Ges. naturf. Freunde, Berlin*, 1894, p. 174; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 4, 1895, p. 503; and his *Leitfaden f. hist. Untersuchungen*, Jena, 1895, p. 76).

320. Artificial Alizarin (Rawitz, *Anat. Anz.*, xi, 10, 1895, p. 294).—Rawitz has also worked out a process of obtaining a double stain (chromatin and cytoplasm being stained of different colours) by means of artificial Alizarin, or Alizarin-cyanin. The process is an adjective one, requiring the use of special mordants supplied by the colour manufacturers and is as follows:

Both the Alizarin and the mordants are those prepared by the "Farbwerke vorm. Meister Lucius & Brüning in Höchst," and may be procured through Grübler & Hollborn. The Alizarin should be Alizarin 1, or SDG, or RX. A 5 per cent. *suspension* of it (it will not dissolve) should be made in distilled water. The mordant should be that known as Chrombeize GA I or GA III. A stock solution should be made by mixing 70 parts of it with 130 of distilled water.

Sections of Flemming material are brought into some of the stock solution of mordant diluted with an equal volume of water; sections from chromic or chrome-picro-nitric material into the same diluted with 2 to 4 vols. of water; sections from picro-nitric material into the same diluted with 6 to 10 vols. of water. In either case they remain in the mordant for twenty-four hours, and are then washed in distilled water until no more colour comes away from them.

They are then brought into the staining bath. This consists for Flemming material of a portion of the stock suspension of Alizarin diluted with 1 vol. of water; for chromic and chrome-picro-nitric material of the same diluted with 2 to 4 vols. of water; for picro-nitric material of the same diluted with 6 to 10 vols. of water. To each staining bath there are added a few drops of 1 per cent. solution of acetate of calcium (to be procured from the Chemische Fabrik A. F. Kahlbaum, 35, Schlesischstrasse, Berlin, S.O.). They remain in the bath for twenty-four hours in the warm, *i.e.* at a temperature of about 40° C. They are then washed for half an hour to an hour in distilled water, then for one to two hours in 96 per cent. alcohol, and are cleared with bergamot oil and mounted in balsam. The sections must remain in the alcohol until all excess of Alizarin has been removed from them, which may be known by their becoming clear and no longer covered with a sort of fog.

In the result, chromosomes ought to be deep reddish brown, plasma orange.

Rawitz also gives, *loc. cit.*, another process, with "Alizarin-cyanin RRR doppelt," procured from the "Farbenfabriken vorm. Friedrich Bayer & Co. in Elberfeld." Sections are mordanted for twenty-four hours in liquor ferri sulfurici oxydati (see § 254) diluted with 5 to 20 vols. of distilled water, and are well washed with distilled water before coming into the staining bath. This consists of a 5 per cent. suspension of the dye, diluted with water just as for Alizarin, and with acetate of calcium added to it in the same way. They are stained therein and further treated in all respects as directed for Alizarin. The stain is a blue one.

CHAPTER XVII.

METHYLEN BLUE.

321. Methylen Blue is the chloride or the zinc chloride double salt of tetramethylthionin, and is a "basic" colour in EHRLICH's sense. It appears that some persons have confounded it with methyl blue, to which it has not, histologically, any resembance.

Commercial methylen blue sometimes contains as an impurity a small quantity of a red dye, which used to be taken to be methylen red. This impurity is present from the beginning in many brands of methylen blue, is frequently developed in solutions of the dye that have been long kept (so-called "ripened" solutions), and is still more frequently found in kept *alkaline* solutions. It is a reddish-violet dye, and according to NOCHT (*Centralb. f. Bacteriol.*, xxv, 1899, pp. 764—769; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 2, 1899, p. 225) it is not methylen red, nor methylen violet either, but a new colour, for which NOCHT proposes the name "Roth aus Methylenblau." The presence of this impurity in methylen blue is not always an undesirable factor; on the contrary, it sometimes affords differentiations of elements of tissues or of cells that cannot be produced by any other means. Methylen blue that contains it is known as *polychromatic methylen blue*, and is employed for staining certain cell-granules. It can be obtained from Grübler & Hollborn. (See also UNNA's method of producing it, in Part II.)

The colour to be employed for *intra-vitam nerve staining* should, on the contrary, be as pure as possible. APÁTHY has a note in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 466, to the effect that the best methylen blue for impregnation—in fact, the only one that will give *exactly* the results described by him (see § 327)—is that obtained from E. MERCK, of Darmstadt, and quoted in his price list as "*medicinisches* Methylenblau," and described on the label as "Anilin-blau, Methylen, chemisch rein und chlorzinkfrei." It is therefore highly desirable, when ordering methylen blue, to specify for what purpose it is required.

322. The Uses of Methylen Blue.—As a histological reagent it is used for sections of hardened central nervous tissue, in which it gives a specific stain of medullated nerves (*post*, Part II). It is a valuable specific reagent for plasma-cells (for which see also Part II). In stains a large number of tissues *intra vitam*, with little or no interference with their vital functions. And last, not least, it can be made to furnish stains of nerve tissue, intercellular cement substances, lymph spaces, and the like, that are essentially identical with those furnished by a successful impregnation with gold or silver, and are obtained with greater ease and certainty; with this difference, however, that gold stains a larger number of the nervous elements that are present in a preparation, sometimes the totality of them; whilst methylen blue stains only a selection of them, so bringing them more prominently before the eye, and allowing them to be traced for greater distances. So that in this respect methylen blue behaves more like Golgi's chrome-silver impregnation.

323. Staining *in toto* during Life.—Small and permeable aquatic organisms may be stained during life by adding to the water in which they are confined enough methylen blue to give it a very light tint. If transparent organisms be taken, they may be examined alive without further manipulation at any desired moment, and will be found after a time to be partially stained—that is, it will be found that certain tissues have taken up the colour, others remaining colourless. If now you put back the animals into the tinted water and wait, you will find on examination after a sufficient lapse of time that further groups of tissues have become stained. Thus it was found by Ehrlich (*Biol. Centralb.*, vi, 1886, p. 214; *Abh. k. Akad. Wiss. Berlin*, February 25, 1885), to whom the principle of this method is due, that on injection of the colour into living animals axis-cylinders of *sensory* nerves stain, whilst *motor* nerves remain colourless. [The motor nerves, however, will also stain, though later than the sensory nerves.] It might be supposed that by continuing the staining for a sufficient time, a point would be arrived at at which all the tissues would be found to be stained. This, however, is not the case. It is always found that the stained tissues only keep the colour that they have taken up for a short time after they have attained the maximum degree of coloration of which they are susceptible; as soon as that point is attained they begin to discharge the colour even more quickly than they took it up. And it is very often found that the elements which have stained first will have lost much or all of their colour by the time that those which stain later have attained their maximum coloration. It may even happen, as I have observed, that the whole of the stainable tissues of an animal may run through the total gamut of coloration and decoloration until the animal has become as colourless as when first put into the tinted water, and that without any apparent change in its vital activities. The stain, therefore, that has thus been produced and lost is not a true histological stain, but a *quasi*-stain (see § 201).

It follows that a total stain of all the tissues of an organism can hardly be obtained under these conditions, but that a specific stain of one group or another of elements may be obtained in one of two ways. If the tissue to be studied be one that stains earlier than the others, it may be studied during life at the period at which it alone has attained the desired intensity of coloration, and the remaining tissues are not yet coloured at all, or not coloured enough to be an obstacle to observation. If it be one that stains later than the others, it may be studied during life at the period at which the earlier stained elements have already passed their point of maximum coloration and have become sufficiently decoloured; the later stained ones being at a point of desired intensity. Or the observer may fix the stain in either of these stages and preserve it for leisurely study by means of one of the processes given below under the heading "Preservation of the Preparations."

The proper strength of the very dilute solutions to be employed in the manner here considered must be made out by experiment for each object. I think the tint is practically a sufficient guide, but it may be stated that when in doubt a strength of 1 : 100,000 may be taken, and increased or diminished as occasion may seem to require. Zoja (*Rendic. R. Ist. Lombardo*, xxv, 1892; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 208) finds that for Hydra the right strength is from 1 : 20,000 to 1 : 10,000.

The stain is capricious. It is not possible to predict without trial which tissues will stain first in any organism. It is to be remarked that the stain penetrates very badly, which is perhaps the chief cause of its capriciousness, and, I take it, the chief determining condition of the order in which tissues stain. Gland cells generally stain early; then, in no definable order, other epithelium cells, fat cells, plasma cells, "Mastzellen," blood and lymph corpuscles, elastic fibres, smooth muscle, striated muscle. There are other elements that stain in the living state, but *not* when the staining is performed by *simple immersion of intact animals* in a dilute staining solution in the manner we are considering. Chief amongst these are *nerve-fibres* and *ganglion cells, which remain unstained in the intact organism*,—most likely, so far as I can see, for the simple reason that the stain is not able to penetrate them.

324. Staining Nervous Tissue during Life.—As stated above, it was made out by Ehrlich that by injecting a solution of methylen blue into the vessels or tissues of living animals there may be obtained a specific stain of axis-cylinders of sensory nerves. He held, and it has long been held by observers, that the stain so obtained is a product of a *vital* reaction of the tissues, and that it cannot be obtained with dead material. From the point of view maintained in § 201 the contrary would be the real state of the case. The stain is, of course, an *intra-vitam* phenomenon, in so far as it takes place during the life of the *organism*; but I hold that the *tissue itself* does not take on the stain till it is dead or pathologically affected.

As said before, it was formerly held that the reaction could not be obtained with dead material. Dogiel, however (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxv, 1890, pp. 305 *et seq.*), found that muscle nerves of limbs of the frog could be stained as much as from three to eight days after the limbs had been removed from the animal. He concludes, indeed, that the reaction shows that the nerves were still living at that time. But it seems more natural to conclude with Apáthy (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, pp. 15 *et seq.*) that nerve tissue can be stained after life has ceased.

Apáthy has directly experimented on this point, and sums up the necessary conditions as follows:—The tissue need not be living, but must be fresh; nothing must have been extracted from it chemically, and its natural state must not have been essentially changed by physical means. For example, the tissue must not have been treated with even dilute glycerin, nor with alcohol, though a treatment for a short time with physiological salt solution is not very hurtful; it must not have been coagulated by heat.

Another common belief concerning the methylen-blue nerve reaction is that the presence of oxygen is necessary to the reaction. It is, therefore, the usual practice to dissect out the organ to be investigated after having exposed it to the action of methylen blue by injection or immersion, and leave it for some time exposed to the air. Apáthy has also investigated this point, and finds (*loc. cit.*, p. 25) that the practice is in some cases correct, but the belief erroneous. His point of view is that the stain is a *regressive* one. It has been explained above that shortly after a tissue has attained the maximum degree of coloration of which it is susceptible it begins to give up its colour again to the surrounding liquid.

The larger the volume of liquid with which the tissue is surrounded, the faster will this washing-out process go on; and in order that it may not go on with excessive rapidity, washing out the stain from the nerve-fibres as well as from the earlier stained elements (which alone it is desired to wash out, so as to leave a differentiated specific stain of nervous elements), it is in many cases desirable to have the process go on in presence of as little liquid as possible. Another consideration that justifies the practice is that by exposure to air the preparations take up a trace of *ammonia*, and Apáthy has experimentally established that this is an important factor in the sharpness of the stain. Oxygen has, according to him, nothing to do with it. But the point does not seem to be definitively settled. Rubaschkin (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 3, 1899, p. 372) has lately concluded that the staining of nerve-fibres (not of all tissues) is furthered by oxygen, and also by CO_2.

325. Staining Nerve Tissue by Injection or Immersion.—The practice of the earlier workers at this subject was (following Ehrlich) to inject methylen blue into the vascular system or body-cavity of a living animal, wait a sufficient time for it to take effect on the organ to be stained, then remove the organ for further preparation and study. And there appears to have been a belief with some workers that it was an essential or at least a desirable condition to the production of the stain that it should have been brought about by injection of the colouring matter into the entire animal. It is now known that this is generally immaterial, and that the reaction can equally well be obtained by removing the organ and subjecting it to a bath of the colouring matter in the usual way. But it would also appear that in some cases the procedure by injection is preferable, if not necessary.

326. The Solutions employed.—The solutions used *for injection* are generally made in salt solution (physiological, or a little weaker); those for staining by immersion either in salt solution or other "indifferent" liquid, or in pure water. Very various strengths have been employed. The earlier workers generally took concentrated solutions. Thus Arnstein (*Anat. Anz.*, 1887, p. 125) injected 1 c.c. of saturated (*i. e.* about 4 per cent.) solution into the vena cutanea magna of frogs, and removed the organ to be investigated after the lapse of an hour. Biedermann (*Sitzb. d. k. Akad. Wiss. Wien, Math. Nat. Cl.*, 1888, p. 8) injected 0·5 to 1 c.c. of a nearly saturated solution in 0·6 per cent. salt solution into the thorax of crayfishes, and left the animals for from two to four hours before killing them. S. Mayer (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1889, p. 423) took a strength of 1 : 300 or 400 of 0·5 per cent. salt solution. This can be introduced into the system either by means of a syringe or other injecting apparatus, or by auto-injection through the heart. Even rabbits support this operation if artificial respiration be maintained. The solutions of Retzius are of the same strength. But the tendency of more recent practice is decidedly towards the employment of weaker solutions. Apáthy (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, pp. 25, 26, *et seq.*) finds that it is not only superfluous, but positively disadvantageous, to take solutions stronger than 1 : 1000.

For staining *by immersion* similar solutions to those used for injecting may be employed, but they should, if anything, be still weaker. Dogiel (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxv, 1890, p. 305 ; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 509) places objects in a few drops of aqueous or vitreous humour, to which are added two or three drops of a $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{15}$ per cent. solution of methylen blue in physiological (0·75 per cent.) salt solution, and exposes them therein to the air. In thin pieces of tissue the stain begins to take effect in five or ten minutes, and attains its maximum in from fifteen to twenty minutes. For thicker specimens—retina, for instance—several hours may be necessary, the preparation being kept just moist by occasional treatment with a drop or two of indifferent liquid or methylen blue solution, added by turns. The reaction is quickened by putting the preparations into a stove kept at 30° to 35° C. Rouget (*Compt. Rend.*, 1893, p. 802) found it useful to modify the procedure of Dogiel by employing a 00·5 per cent. solution in 0·6 per cent. salt solution (for muscles of Batrachia). Allen (*Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, 1894, pp. 461, 483) takes for embryos of the lobster a solution of 0·1 per cent. in 0·75 per cent. salt solution, and dilutes it with 15 to 20 volumes of sea water.

327. Apáthy's **Methods.**—As a good example of this kind of work, I subjoin a short account of the procedure recommended by Apáthy (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 15; see also his *Mikrotechnik*, p. 172) for *Hirudinea*. A portion of the ventral cord is exposed, and if it be considered desirable dissected out, but the sinus and pigmented connective tissue around it had better not be removed till the staining and fixation are completed. If, however, it be desired to stain as many ganglion cells as possible, as well as fibres, the lateral nerves, as well as the connectives, should be cut through near a ganglion. The preparation is then treated with the stain. This is, for the demonstration chiefly of fibres in *Hirudo* and *Pontobdella*, either a 1 : 1000 solution in 0·5 to 0·75 per cent. salt solution, allowed to act for ten minutes; or a 1 : 10,000 solution allowed to act for an hour to an hour and a half; or a 1 : 100,000 solution allowed to act for three hours (*Lumbricus* requires twice these times; *Astacus* and *Unio* require three times; medullated nerves of Vertebrates four times). For the demonstration of ganglion cells the stain is allowed to act three or four times as long.

The staining having been accomplished, the preparations from the 1 : 1000 solution are washed in salt solution for an hour; those from the 1 : 10,000 solution for a quarter of an hour; those from the 1 : 100,000 solution need not be washed at all. They are then treated with one of the ammoniacal fixing and differentiating liquids described below in the next section. This is done by pouring the liquid over them, and leaving them in it *without moving them about in it* for at least an hour, and by preference in the dark. The further treatment is as described in the next section.

The object of the ammonia in these liquids is to *differentiate* the stain—to produce an artificial "secondary differentiation." It acts by washing out the absorbed colour from certain elements, others resisting its action longer, much as HCl alcohol washes out a borax-carmine stain. In this case the elements that are washed out are the protoplasmic parts of nerve-fibres, and their "interfibrillar" and "perifibrillar" substance, the "primitive fibrils" still retaining the colour strongly. It is of theoretical interest to remark that according to Apáthy the coloration thus obtained is a true *stain* of the "primitive fibrils," not an *impregnation*. The "primitive fibrils" are sharply stained of a violet-blue, showing no granular precipitate, and the "interfibrillar" and "perifibrillar" substance, as well as nuclei, are either colourless or very lightly stained. The usual methods, on the other hand, give an "inverse" reaction, the "primitive fibrils" remaining colourless, whilst the interfibrillar substance and protoplasm of the nerve-fibres are *impregnated* with a finely granular greenish-black or violet precipitate, and the nuclei are usually stained.

328. Preservation of the Preparations.—There are considerable difficulties in the way of obtaining permanent preparations, as the stain is so very unstable that, as above explained, it begins to discharge after a short time, even in the living and not yet totally impregnated tissue. It may, however, be fixed, and more or less permanent preparations be made by one or other of the following methods:

Dogiel (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxiii, 4, 1889, pp. 440 *et seq.*), following Arnstein (*Anat. Anzeig.*, 1887, p. 551), brings the preparations, in order to fix the colour, into saturated aqueous solution of picrate of ammonia, in which they are allowed to remain for half an hour or more, and are then removed, washed in fresh picrate of ammonia solution, and studied in dilute glycerine, or mounted permanently in glycerine saturated with picrate of ammonia. More recently (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1, 1891, p. 15) he has recommended an increased duration of the picrate of ammonia bath up to eighteen or twenty-four hours, and mounting, without washing out, in chemically pure glycerin, free from acid. There is a defect in this process, namely, that picrate of ammonia has a very injurious action, of a macerating nature, on some tissues. This may, however, be avoided by adding to the fixing-bath 1 to 2 per cent. of a 1 per cent. osmic acid solution. (If it be desired to harden the tissues so that sections may be cut, the proportion of osmium solution should be increased fourfold.)

S. Mayer (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1889, p. 422) preferred a mixture of equal parts of glycerin and saturated picrate of ammonia solution, which served to fix the colour and mount the preparations in. This was also in principle the method followed by Retzius (*Intern. Monatsschr. Anat. u.

Phys., Bd. vii, H. 8, 1890, p. 328). Dogiel, after careful study, quite refuses to admit that this is in any way an improvement.

Other workers have employed saturated solution of iodine in iodide of potassium (so Arnstein) or picro-carmine (so Feist, *Arch. f. Anat. u. Entwickel.*, 1890, p. 116; cf. *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 231), the latter having the advantage of preserving the true blue of the stain if it be not allowed to act too long, and the preparation be mounted in pure glycerin.

Picric acid has been used by Lavdowsky, but this too, after careful study, is rejected by Dogiel.

Apáthy (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 30) has found, as stated above, that free ammonia is a capital factor in the differentiation of the stain. He brings preparations (after washing in salt solution if the staining have been performed with a strong methylen blue solution, or without washing if it have been done with a very dilute solution) either into a concentrated aqueous solution of picrate of ammonia *free from picric acid*, and containing five drops of concentrated ammonia for every 100 c.c.; or, which is generally preferable, into a 1 to 2 per cent. freshly prepared solution of neutral carbonate of ammonia saturated with picrate. They remain in either of these solutions, preferably in the dark, for *at least an hour*. They are then brought into a *small* quantity of saturated solution of picrate of ammonia in 50 per cent. glycerin, where they remain until thoroughly saturated. They are then removed into a saturated solution of the picrate in a mixture of 2 parts 50 per cent. glycerin, 1 part cold saturated sugar solution, and 1 part similarly prepared gum-arabic solution. When thoroughly penetrated with this they are removed and mounted in the following gum-syrup medium (*loc. cit.*, p. 37):

Picked gum-arabic . . .	50 grms.
Cane-sugar (not candied) . .	50 ,,
Distilled water	50 ,,

Dissolve over a water-bath and add 0·05 grm. thymol. This mounting medium sets quickly and as hard as balsam, so that no cementing of the mounts is necessary. Farrants' medium (with omission of the arsenious acid) will also do.

In neither case should either ammonium picrate or methylen blue be added to the medium.

Preparations that have been *fully* differentiated by ammonia do not keep more than a few weeks; whilst those in which the differentiation has not been carried to the point of thorough tinctorial isolation of the "neurofibrils" have kept for five or six years (APÁTHY, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1897, p. 712).

Preparations preserved by these methods (I do not know whether it is the case with preparations preserved by PARKER'S or BETHE'S method, next section) are extremely sensitive to the influence of light. APÁTHY finds that lamplight is particularly injurious, especially the intense lamplight used with high powers.

329. Methods for Sections.—None of the preceding methods can be said to be anything like perfectly satisfactory. They do not give preparations that will resist the operations necessary for imbedding in paraffin. The stain is generally not preserved in its true blue colour, but turns to a grey, varying in tone from reddish brown to bluish or greenish black. The preparations seldom keep even in that state for more than a very few months, and it is not satisfactory to be obliged to mount preparations only in aqueous media. A strong solution of platinum chloride is said to give a fixation that will resist the treatment necessary for imbedding either in celloidin or paraffin (see FEIST, *Arch. f. Anat. und Entw.*, 1890, p. 116; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 231); but the precipitate it gives is a flocculent one, and the preparations are not very satisfactory.

For the earlier method of PARKER (*Zool. Anzeig.*, No. 403, 1892, p. 375) with methylal see previous editions. Later (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1895, p. 4) he fixes the stain by dehydrating the objects in successive alcohols of 30, 50, 70, 95, and 100 per cent. strength, each containing 8 per cent. of corrosive sublimate, then brings them into a mixture of the last with an equal volume of xylol, and lastly into pure xylol.

The method of BETHE (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xliv, 1894, p. 585), in its first form, is as follows:—A solution is made of—

Molybdate of ammonium . .	1 grm.
Distilled water	10 grms.
Peroxide of hydrogen . . .	1 grm.

On adding the peroxide a yellow colour is produced. A drop of hydrochloric acid is added (white precipitate of molybdic acid which dissolves on agitation). After staining and rinsing in salt solution the preparations are put into the molybdic solution. The solution ought not to be more than eight days old, and it is well to use it cooled to zero. The preparations are left in it for two or three hours if they are small, or four or five hours if they are large (of a centimetre in size). They are then washed for from half an hour to two hours in water, dehydrated in alcohol (which it is well to use cooled to zero), and cleared in clove oil, or, better, in xylol. They may then be imbedded either in paraffin or celloidin in the usual way.

This is for tissues of Vertebrates. For Invertebrates Bethe takes one grm. of molybdate, 10 c.c. of water, and 0·5 c.c. of peroxide.

Peabody (*Zool. Bull.*, i, 1897, p. 163; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1, 1899, p. 73) adds a drop of 1 per cent. osmic acid.

Bethe's later method (*Anat. Anz.*, xii, 1896, p. 438) is as follows:—After staining, pieces of tissue of 2 to 3 mm. thickness are treated for ten to fifteen minutes with a concentrated aqueous solution of picrate of ammonia and are then brought into a solution of 1 grm. of molybdate of ammonium, either in 20 of water, or in 10 of water and 10 of 0·5 per cent. osmic acid or 2 per cent. chromic acid; or into a solution of phosphomolybdate of sodium in the same proportions, each of these solutions having added to it 1 drop of hydrochloric acid, and if desired 1 grm. of peroxide of hydrogen. They remain in one of these solutions for three quarters to one hour (or from four hours to twelve in the osmic acid one), and are then passed through water, alcohol, xylol, balsam, or paraffin. (The objects that have been treated with one of the solutions of the sodium salt are not thoroughly resistent to alcohol, so that for them it is well to cool the alcohol to under 15° C.) Sections may be after-stained with alum carmine, or "neutral" tar colours.

Slight modifications of this method are given by Dogiel

(*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlix, 1897, p. 772; liii, 1898, p. 237; and *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, lxvi, 1899, p. 361).

Pleschko (*Anat. Anz.*, xiii, 1897, p. 16) fixes with picrate of ammonia, and then puts into 10 per cent. formol for a few days.

Harris (*Philadelphia Medical Journ.*, May 14th, 1898) after staining rinses with water, and brings the specimens into a saturated solution of either ferrocyanide or ferricyanide of potassium which has been cooled to within a few degrees of zero (a trace of osmic acid may be added to prevent maceration). They remain therein for three to twenty-four hours, and are then washed in distilled water for an hour, and are dehydrated in absolute alcohol kept at a low temperature, cleared in xylol or cedar oil, and imbedded in paraffin.

330. Methylen Blue Impregnation of Epithelia, Lymph-spaces, etc. (Dogiel, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxiii, 4, 1889, p. 440, *et seq.*). —Suitable pieces of tissue (thin membranes by preference) are brought fresh into a 4 per cent. solution of methylen blue in physiological salt solution. After a few minutes therein they are brought into saturated solution of picrate of ammonia, soaked therein for half an hour or more, then washed in fresh picrate of ammonia solution, and examined in dilute glycerin.

If it be wished only to demonstrate the outlines of endothelium cells, the bath in the stain should be a short one, not longer than ten minutes in general; whilst if it be desired to obtain an impregnation of ground-substance of tissue, so as to have a negative image of juice canals or other spaces, the staining should be prolonged to fifteen or thirty minutes, and it is advisable to remove the endothelial covering of the objects operated on before putting them into the stain.

If it be desired to preserve the preparations permanently, they had better be mounted in glycerin saturated with picrate of ammonia. (For an improvement in the method of preservation given in a later paper see *supra*, § 328.)

The effect is practically identical (except as regards the colour) with that of a negative impregnation with silver nitrate.

331. Mayer's (S.) **Impregnation Methods** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1889, p. 422).—Mayer's experiments cover much the same ground as those of Dogiel, and give the same results. Mayer stained tissues for about ten minutes in a 1 : 300 or 400 solution of methylen blue in 0·5 per cent. salt solution, rinsed in salt solution, and put up in the glycerin-picrate of ammonia mixture given above, § 328. He finds that by this method *all the essential results of a nitrate of silver impregnation may be produced by means of methylen blue.* The images are either positive or negative, as with silver. If the stain be brought about by injection of the colour into the vascular system, the positive impregnation is the more frequent; whilst if it have been brought about by the immersion of the tissues (cornea), a negative image is more frequently obtained.

332. Toluidin Blue or Thionin as succedanea of methylen blue.—Harris (*Philadelphia Med. Journ.*, May 14th, 1898) has found that there is no reaction of methylen blue that cannot be equally well obtained with toluidin blue or thionin. Indeed, he thinks that for nerves they may have some points of superiority. For staining pieces of tissue he recommends the following:

Toluidin blue, 0·1 per cent. sol. in physiological salt solution . .	2 parts
Ammonium chloride, 0·25 per cent. in water	1 part
Egg albumen	1 ,,

For injections he uses 1 part of the dye to 1000 of physiological salt solution.

Any of the methylen blue fixing methods may be employed, and the whole technique is the same. Harris's fixing method has been given, § 329.

CHAPTER XVIII.

METALLIC STAINS (IMPREGNATION METHODS).

333. The Characters of Impregnation Stains.—By impregnation is understood a mode of coloration in which a colouring matter is deposited in certain elements of tissues in the form of a more or less finely granular or sometimes even flocculent *precipitate*—the impregnated elements becoming in consequence opaque. By staining, on the other hand, is understood a mode of coloration in which the colouring matter is retained by the tissues as if in a state of *solution*, showing no visible solid particles under the microscope, the stained elements remaining in consequence transparent. But it should be understood that it is not correct to draw a hard and fast line between the two kinds of coloration. Some of the metallic salts treated of in this chapter give, besides an impregnation, in some cases a true stain. And some of the dyes that have been treated of in preceding chapters give, besides a stain, a true impregnation. Methylen blue, for instance, will give in one and the same preparation an impregnation and a stain; and critical examination of most fairly successful gold chloride preparations will show that the coloration is in places of the nature of a finely divided solid deposit, in others a perfectly transparent stain.

Thus is justified the alternative title that this chapter has always borne—Metallic Stains, *or* Impregnation Methods.

334. Negative and Positive Impregnations.—Impregnations are distinguished as *negative* and *positive*. In a negative impregnation intercellular substances alone are coloured, the cells themselves remaining colourless or very lightly tinted. In a positive impregnation the cells are stained and the intercellular spaces are unstained. (This explanation is the more needful as a directly contrary statement is made in a recent *Lehrbuch*.)

Negative impregnation is generally held to be *primary* because it is brought about by the direct reduction of a metal in the intercellular spaces. Positive impregnation is held to be *secondary* (in the case of silver nitrate at least) because it is brought about by the solution in the liquids of the tissues of the metallic deposit formed by a primary or negative impregnation, and the consequent staining of the cells by the new solution of metallic salt thus formed. These secondary impregnations take place when the reduction of the metal in the primary impregnation is not sufficiently energetic (see on these points His, *Schweizer Zeit. f. Heilk.*, ii, Heft 1, p. 1; Gierke, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, p. 393; Ranvier, *Traité*, p. 107).

335. Nature of the Metallic Deposit.—As to the nature of the black or brown deposit or stain formed in the intercellular spaces in cases of primary impregnation see *previous editions*, or Schwalbe, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, vi, 1870, p. 5; Gierke's *Färberei zu mikroskopischen Zwecken*, in vols. i and ii of *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*; Joseph, *Sitzb. d. k. preuss. Akad. d. Wiss. Berlin*, 1888; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1, 1894, p. 42, *et seq.*

336. Action of Light on Solutions of Metallic Salts.—Stock solutions of metallic salts are generally kept in the dark, or at least in coloured bottles, under the belief that exposure to light spoils them by precipitating the metal in a state of reduction. It has been pointed out in § 33 that in the case of osmic acid not light, but dust is the reducing agent; and that solutions may be exposed to light with impunity if dust be absolutely denied access to them. I have now good evidence to the effect that the same is the case with other metallic solutions; and the interesting point is raised whether such solutions are not positively improved for impregnation purposes by exposure to light! Dr. Lindsay Johnson has been examining this question both from a histological and from a photographic point of view, and writes me as follows:

"One may (I find by experiment) state as a rule without exception that all the solutions of the chlorides and nitrates of the metals will keep indefinitely in clean white stoppered bottles in the sunlight; and as far as osmium, uranium, gold and silver, and platinum are concerned, actually improve or ripen by a good sunning. All photographers tell me their papers salt more evenly by old well-sunned silver nitrate than by a fresh solution kept in the dark; and I go so far as to say that this is one of the reasons why gold stains are so unsatisfactory."

Apáthy (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* xii, 1897, p. 722) leaves his gold solutions exposed to light, so long as there are no tissues in them.

337. State of the Tissues to be impregnated.—It has been pointed out in earlier chapters that the majority of histological stains are not obtained with fresh tissues, but with tissues that have been more or less charged with metallic salts, or otherwise changed in their composition by the action of fixing and preservative reagents. With metallic impregnations the case is different; perfectly *fresh* tissues—that is such as are either living, or at all events have not been treated by any reagent whatever—will also impregnate with the greatest ease and precision. Indeed, some sorts of impregnations will not succeed at all with tissues that are not fresh in the sense above explained.

Silver.

338. Silver Nitrate: Generalities.—This is the most commonly used salt of silver. The general principles of its employment are so well stated by Ranvier (*Traité*, p. 105) that I cannot do better than abstract his account.

Silver nitrate may be employed either in solution or in the solid state. The latter method is the less frequently employed, but is easy and gives good results. It is useful for the study of the cornea and of fibrous tissue, but is not suitable for epithelia. For the cornea, for instance, proceed as follows:—The eye having been removed, a piece of silver nitrate is quickly rubbed over the anterior surface of the cornea, which is then detached and placed in distilled water; it is then brushed with a camel's hair brush in order to remove the epithelium. The cornea is then exposed to the action of light. On subsequent examination it will be found that the silver nitrate, which was dissolved by the liquid that bathes the surface of the cornea, has traversed the epithelium and soaked into the fibrous tissue, on the surface of which it is reduced by the action of light. The cells of the tissues will be found unstained.

Silver nitrate is generally employed in solution in the following manner:—A 1 per cent. solution is taken, to which two, three, or four volumes of water are added. The mode of employment varies in its details according to circumstances, a point which is very important to observe. In the case of a membrane such as the epiploön, the membrane must be stretched like a drum-head over a porcelain dish,* and washed with distilled water, in order to remove the albuminates and white blood-corpuscles that are found on its surface; it is then washed with the solution of silver nitrate. In order to obtain a powerful stain it is necessary that this part of the operation be performed in direct sunlight, or at least in a very brilliant light. As soon as the tissue has become white, and has begun to turn of a blackish grey, the membrane is removed, washed in distilled water, and mounted on a slide in some suitable examination medium.

If the membrane were left in the water the cells would become detached, and would not be found in the finished preparation.

If the membrane had not been stretched as directed the silver would be precipitated not only in the intercellular spaces, but in all the small folds of the surface, and the forms of the cells would be disguised.

If the membrane had not been washed with distilled water before impregnation there would have been formed a deposit of silver on every spot on which a portion of an albuminate was present, and these deposits might easily be mistaken for a normal structure of the tissue. It is thus that very often impurities in the specimen have been described as stomata of the tissue.

---

* **The Hoggans Histological Rings** will be found much more convenient. They are vulcanite rings made in pairs, in which one ring just fits into the other, so as to clip and stretch pieces of membrane between them. They will be found described and figured in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, ii, 1879, p. 357, and in ROBIN'S *Journ. de l'Anat.*, 1879, p. 54. They may be obtained, in sets of various sizes (that of seven eighths of an inch being the most convenient for 3 × 1 slides), of Burge & Warren, 42, Kirby Street, Hatton Garden, London, E.C., price ten shillings the dozen pairs.

This useful little apparatus has been re-invented by ETERNOD (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 1, 1887, p. 39), and is made according to his designs by Demaurex, Bandagiste, Fusterie, Geneva (Switzerland).

If the solution be taken too weak—for instance, 1 : 500 or 1 : 1000, or if the light be not brilliant—a *general* instead of an *interstitial* stain will result; nuclei will be most stained, then protoplasm, and the intercellular substance will contain but very little silver.

The tissues should be constantly *agitated* in the silver-bath in order to avoid the formation on their surfaces of deposits of chlorides and albuminates of silver, which would give rise to deceptive appearances.

In general in a good "impregnation" the contents of cells, and especially nuclei, are quite invisible.

Impregnation with silver may be followed by treatment with picro-carmine (or other carmine stain), which will bring out the nuclei, provided the impregnation has not been overdone.

It should be noticed that these impregnations only succeed with *fresh* tissues, and cannot be made to succeed with tissues preserved in any way.

339. Silver Nitrate: the Solutions to be employed (Ranvier). —The solutions generally employed by Ranvier vary in strength from 1 : 300 to 1 : 500. Thus 1 : 300 is used for the epiploön, pulmonary endothelium, cartilage, tendon: whilst a strength of 1 : 500 is employed for the study of the phrenic centre, and for that of the epithelium of the intestine. For the impregnation of the endothelium of blood-vessels (by injection) solutions of 1 : 500 to 1 : 800 are taken.

M. Duval (*Précis*, p. 229) recommends solutions of 1, 2, or at most 3 per cent.

v. Recklinghausen used, for the cornea, a strength of from 1 : 400 to 1 : 500 (*Die Lymphgefässe*, etc., Berlin, 1862, p. 5).

Robinski (*Arch. de Physiol.*, 1869, p. 451) used solutions varying between 0·1 and 0·2 per cent., which he allowed to act for thirty seconds.

Reich (*Sitzb. d. wien. Akad.*, 1873, Abth. 3, April; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, p. 397) takes solutions of from 1 : 600 to

1 : 400 for the study of the endothelium of vessels by injection.

Rouget (*Arch. de Physiol.*, 1873, p. 603) employed solutions as weak as 1 : 750, or even 1 : 1000, exposing the tissues to their action several times over, and washing them with water after each bath.

The Hertwigs take, for marine animals, a 1 per cent. solution (*Jen. Zeit. f. Naturk.*, xvi, pp. 313 and 324).

The Hoggans (*Journ. of Anat. and Physiol.*, xv, 1881, p. 477) take, for lymphatics, a 1 per cent. solution.

Tourneux and Herrmann (Robin's *Journal de l'Anat.*, 1876, p. 200) for the epithelia of Invertebrates employed a solution of 3 : 1000 strength, and in some cases weaker solutions. The tissues were allowed to remain in the silver-bath for one hour, and were washed out with alcohol of 90 per cent.

Hoyer (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1876, p. 649) takes a solution of nitrate of silver of known strength, and adds ammonia to it until the precipitate that is formed just redissolves, then dilutes the solution until it contains from 0·75 to 0·50 per cent. of the salt.

This *ammonio-nitrate* solution is intended principally for the impregnation of the endothelium of vessels by injection, but can also be used for the impregnation of membranes by pouring on. It has the advantage of impregnating absolutely nothing but endothelium or epithelium; connective tissue is not affected by it. It is also said to give a sharper localisation of the stain than the ordinary solutions.

Dekhuysen (*Anat. Anz.*, iv, 1889, No. 25, p. 789; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 3, 1890, p. 351) has applied to tissues of terrestrial animals the method of Harmer for marine animals (see below, § 343). For details see *previous editions*.

Regaud (*Journ. Anat. et Phys.*, xxx, 1894, p. 719; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1, 1895, p. 74) recommends for the study of lymphatics a process devised by Renaut, for the details of which see also *previous editions*.

340. Other Salts of Silver.—Alferow (Duval, *Précis*, p. 230) recommends the picrate, lactate, acetate, and citrate, as giving better results than the nitrate. He employs them in solutions of 1 : 800, and adds to the solution employed for staining a small quantity of the acid of the salt taken (10 to 15 drops of a concentrated solution of the acid to 800 c.c. of the solution of the salt). The object of the free acid is to decompose the precipitates formed by the action of the silver salt on the chlorides, carbonates, and other substances existing in the tissues.

341. Silver Nitrate: **Reduction.**—Reduction may be effected in other media than distilled water.

v. RECKLINGHAUSEN washed his preparations in salt solution before exposing them to the light in distilled water (*Arch. f. path. Anat.*, xix, p. 451). Physiological salt solution (0·75 per cent.) is commonly used for these washings.

MÜLLER (*Arch. f. path. Anat.*, xxxi, p. 110), after impregnation by immersion for two or three minutes in a 1 per cent. solution of nitrate of silver in the dark, adds to the solution a small quantity of 1 per cent. solution of iodide of silver (dissolved by the aid of a little iodide of potassium). After being agitated in this mixture the preparations are washed with distilled water, and exposed to the light for two days in a 1 per cent. solution of nitrate of silver (see also GIERKE, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 1884, p. 396).

ROUGET (*Arch. de Physiol.*, 1873, p. 603) reduces in glycerin.

SATTLER (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxi, p. 672) exposes to the light for a few minutes in water acidulated with acetic or formic acid. THANHOFFER (*Das Mikroskop*, 1880) employs a 2 per cent. solution of acetic acid.

KRAUSS brings his preparations, after washings, into a light red solution of permanganate of potash. Reduction takes place very quickly, even in the dark. The method does not always succeed (see GIERKE, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 1884, p. 400).

OPPITZ brings his preparations for two or three minutes into a 0·25 or 0·50 per cent. solution of chloride of tin. Reduction takes place very rapidly (GIERKE, *loc. cit.*).

JAKIMOVITCH (*Journ. de l'Anat.*, xxiii, 1888, p. 142; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 297) brings nerve preparations, as soon as they have become of a dark brown colour, into a mixture of formic acid 1 part, amyl alcohol 1 part, and water 100 parts. The objects exposed to the light in this mixture for two or three days at first become brighter, a part of the reduced silver being dissolved: hence the mixture must be renewed from time to time. When all the silver has dissolved, a darker colour is permanently assumed. The nerve-cells are left in this mixture for five to seven days.

Gerota (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., Phys. Abth.*, 1897, p. 428; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 3, 1899, p. 348) greatly recommends reduction in a hydroquinone developing solution, followed by fixation in hyposulphite of soda, just as in photography.

342. After-blackening.—Legros (*Journ. de l'Anat.*, 1868, p. 275) washes his preparations after reduction in hyposulphite of soda, which he says prevents after-blackening. According to Duval (*Précis*, p. 230) they should be washed for a few seconds only in 2 per cent. solution, and then in distilled water.

343. Silver Impregnation of Marine Animals.—On account of the considerable quantity of chlorides that bathe the tissues of marine animals, these cannot be treated *directly* with nitrate of silver.

Hertwig (*Jen. Zeit.*, xiv, 1880, p. 322) recommends fixing them with a weak solution of osmic acid, then washing with distilled water until the wash-water gives no more than an insignificant precipitate with silver nitrate, and then treating for six minutes with 1 per cent. solution of silver nitrate.

Harmer (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, v, 1884, p. 445) washes them for some time (half an hour) in a 5 per cent. solution of nitrate of potash in distilled water; they may then be treated with silver nitrate in the usual way. This method gave good results with *Loxosoma* and *Pedicellina*, with Medusæ, Hydroids, *Sagitta* and *Appendicularia*.

Harmer thinks that for some animals other solutions having the same density as sea water might be substituted for the nitrate of potash, and recommends a 4·5 per cent. solution of sulphate of soda.

344. Impregnation of Nerve Tissue.—For this subject, which includes the important bichromate-and-silver method of Golgi, see Part II.

345. Double-staining Silver-stained Tissues.—The nuclei of tissues impregnated with silver may be stained with the usual reagents, provided that solutions containing free ammonia be avoided, as this would dissolve out the silver. These stains will only succeed, however, with successful negative impregnations, as nuclei that have been impregnated will not take the second stain.

Impregnation with silver may be followed by impregnation with gold. In this case the gold generally substitutes itself for the silver in the tissues, and though the results are sharp and precise, the effect of a double stain is not produced. See hereon GEROTA, *loc. cit.* § 341.

Gold.

346. The Characters of Gold Impregnations.—Gold chloride differs from nitrate of silver in that it generally gives *positive* (§ 334) impregnations only. It only gives negative images, so far as I know, when caused to act on tissues that have first received a negative impregnation with silver, the gold substituting itself for the silver. In order to obtain these images you first impregnate very lightly with silver; reduce; treat for a few minutes with a 0·5 per cent. solution of gold chloride, and reduce in acidulated distilled water.

This process, however, is in but little use, and except for the staining of cytoplasm for cytological researches and for certain special studies on the cornea, and on connective tissue, the almost exclusive function of gold chloride is the impregnation of nervous tissue. For this tissue, gold chloride exhibits a remarkable selectivity, in virtue of which it justly ranks as a most valuable reagent for the study of nerve end-organs and the distribution of nerves.

For all the objects above named gold chloride is capable of furnishing preparations that for beauty and clearness cannot be surpassed, if even they can be equalled by any other means. But not every gold preparation *is* successful. Further, gold chloride is very uncertain in its action.

It is now acknowledged that the very best gold preparations give images that are only worthy of credence as to what they show, and furnish absolutely no evidence whatever as to the non-existence of anything that they do not show; for you can never be sure that the imbibition of the salt has not capriciously failed, or its reduction capriciously stopped at any point. That the images frequently *do* stop capriciously short in the representation of reality there is abundant evidence.

Few of the methods about to be described give perfectly permanent preparations. Most of them will not retain all their beauty for more than a few weeks. Still, the greater the care taken in preparation, and particularly the greater the care taken to ensure thorough reduction of the gold, the longer will be the life of the preparations.

Careful attention to the devices to this end detailed in the following paragraphs will do much; and possibly LINDSAY JOHNSON's suggestion (*supra*, § 336) of the utility of "sunning" the solutions before use may prove an unexpected help.

347. As to the Commercial Salts of Gold.—SQUIRE's *Methods and Formulæ*, etc. (p. 43), an excellent authority on the chemistry of histological reagents, says: "Commercial chloride of gold is not the pure chloride, $AuCl_3$, but the crystallised double chloride of gold and sodium, containing 50 per cent. of metallic gold.

"Commercial chloride of gold and sodium is the above crystallised double chloride mixed with an equal weight of chloride of sodium, and contains 25 per cent. of metallic gold."

This, however, appears not to be the case in Germany. Dr. GRÜBLER, writing to MAYER (see the *Grundzüge*, LEE und MAYER, p. 215) says: "*Aurum chloratum fuscum* contains about 53 per cent. Au, the *flavum* about 48 per cent.; in both of them there should be only water and hydrochloric acid besides the gold, no sodium chloride. Pure *Auronatrium chloratum* contains 14·7 per cent. of sodium chloride, though samples are found in commerce with much more."

APÁTHY (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1897, p. 722) formerly employed the *aurum chloratum flavum*, but now prefers the *fuscum*.

348. Foregilding and Aftergilding.—Gold methods may be divided into two groups; the one, chiefly concerned with the study of *peripheral* nerves or nerve end-organs, is characterised by employing either *perfectly fresh* tissues or tissues that have been subjected to a special treatment by organic acids; the other, concerned chiefly with the study of nerve-centres, is characterised by the employment of *fixed and hardened* tissues.

These two groups of methods may be distinguished with Apáthy as the *Foregilding* methods (*Vorvergoldung*), and the *Aftergilding* methods (*Nachvergoldung*). Amongst the latter is one at least, that of Apáthy, which affords not only a stain of nervous tissue, but also an excellent nuclear and plasmatic stain of tissues in general.

A. *Foregilding.*

349. The State of the Tissues to be impregnated.—The once classical rule, that for researches on nerve-endings the tissues should be taken perfectly fresh, seems not to be valid for all cases. For Drasch (*Sitzb. k. k. Akad. Wiss. Wien*, 1881, p. 171, and 1884, p. 516; and *Abhand. math.-phys. Cl. d. K. Sach. Ges. d. Wiss.*, xiv, No. 5, 1887; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 492) finds that better results are obtained with tissues that have been allowed to lie after death for twelve, twenty-four, or even forty-eight hours in a cool place. He even suspects that the function of the organic acids in the methods inspired by Löwit's method is to bring the tissues into somewhat the state in which they are naturally found at a certain moment of post-mortem process—a state, namely, in which the nerves have a special susceptibility for impregnation with gold.

350. Cohnheim's **Method** (*Virchow's Arch.*, Bd. xxxviii, pp. 346—349; *Stricker's Handb.*, p. 1100).—This, the archetype of the gold methods, was as follows:—Fresh pieces of cornea (or other tissue) are put into solution of chloride of gold of 0·5 per cent. strength until they are thoroughly yellow, and then exposed to the light in water acidulated with acetic acid until the gold is thoroughly reduced, which happens in the course of a few days at latest. They are then mounted in acidulated glycerin.

The method in this, its primitive form, often gave splendid results, but was very uncertain, giving sometimes a nuclear or protoplasmic stain, sometimes an extra-cellular impregnation similar to that of nitrate of silver. And the preparations thus obtained are anything but permanent.

351. Löwit's **Method** (*Sitzgsber. Akad. Wien*, Bd. lxxi, Abth. 3, 1875, p. 1).—The principle of this process is that, in order to facilitate the penetration of the gold and its subsequent reduction in the tissues, the tissues are made to swell up by treatment with formic acid before being brought into the gold-bath, and formic acid is employed to assist the reduction after impregnation.

The following directions, which may serve as a type, are taken from Fischer's paper on the corpuscles of Meissner (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xii, 1875, p. 366).

Small pieces of *fresh* skin are put into dilute formic acid (one volume of water to one of the acid of 1·12 sp. gr.), and remain there until the epidermis peels off. They then are put for fifteen minutes into gold chloride solution ($1\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. to 1 per cent.), then for twenty-four hours into dilute formic acid (1 part of the acid to 1—3 of water), and then for twenty-four hours into undiluted formic acid. (Both of these stages are gone through in the dark.) Thin sections are then made and mounted in dammar or glycerin. Successful preparations show the nerves alone stained, but it is not possible always to control the results.

352. Ranvier's **Formic Acid Method** (*Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.* [N. S.], lxxx, 1880, p. 456).—The method of Löwit has been modified by many workers by omitting the final treatment with undiluted formic acid, and also in some other details. Ranvier proceeds as follows:—Reflecting that the action of the one third formic acid in which Löwit placed his tissues must be hurtful to the final ramifications of the nerves, he combines the formic acid with a fixing agent designed to antagonise its altering action, and takes for this purpose the chloride of gold itself. The tissues are placed in a mixture of chloride of gold and formic acid (four parts of 1 per cent. gold chloride to one part of formic acid) which has been boiled and allowed to cool (Ranvier's *Traité*, p. 826). They remain in this until thoroughly impregnated (muscle twenty minutes, epidermis two to four hours); the reduction of the gold is effected either by the action of daylight in acidulated water, or in the dark in dilute formic acid (one part of the acid to four parts of water).

The object of boiling the mixture of gold chloride and formic acid is this, that "by boiling in the presence of the acid the gold acquires a great tendency to reduction, and for this reason its selective action on nervous tissues is enhanced."

353. Ranvier's **Lemon-juice Method** (*Traité*, p. 831).—Ranvier finds that of all acids lemon juice is the least hurtful to nerve-endings. He therefore soaks pieces of tissue in fresh lemon juice, filtered through flannel, until they become transparent (five or ten minutes in the case of muscle). They are then rapidly washed in water, brought for about twenty minutes into 1 per cent. gold chloride solution, washed again in water, and brought into a bottle containing 50 c.c. of distilled water and two drops of acetic acid. They are exposed to the light for twenty-four to forty-eight hours. The preparations thus obtained are good for immediate study, but are not permanent, the reduction of the gold being incomplete. In order to obtain perfectly reduced, and therefore permanent, preparations, the reduction should be done in the dark in a few cubic centimetres of dilute formic acid (1 part acid to 4 of water). The reduction is complete in twenty-four hours.

354. Viallane's **Osmic Acid Method** (*Hist. et Dév. des Insectes*, 1883, p. 42).—The tissues are treated with osmic acid (1 per cent. solution) until they begin to turn brown, then with 25 per cent. formic acid for ten minutes; they are then put into solution of chloride of gold of 1 : 5000 (or even much weaker) for twenty-four hours in the dark, then reduced in the light in 25 per cent. formic acid. According to my experience this is an excellent method.

355. Other Methods.—The numerous other methods that have been proposed differ from the foregoing partly in respect of the solutions used for impregnation, but chiefly in respect of details imagined for the purpose of *facilitating* *the reduction* of the gold, and rendering it as complete as possible.

Thus BASTIAN modified COHNHEIM'S original method by employing a solution of gold chloride of a strength of 1 to 2000, acidulated with HCl (1 drop to 75 c.c.), and performing the reduction in a mixture of equal parts of formic acid and water *kept warm*, heat being an agent that furthers reduction.

HÉNOCQUE (*Arch. de l'Anat. et de la Physiol.*, 1870, p. 111) impregnates in a 0·5 per cent. solution of gold chloride, washes in water for twelve to twenty-four hours, and reduces, with the aid of heat, in a nearly saturated solution of tartaric acid. The tartaric acid solution must be contained in a well-stoppered bottle. The best temperature for reduction is 40° to 50° C. Reduction is effected very rapidly, sometimes in a quarter of an hour.

This process has been described as the method of CHRSCHTSCHONOWIC (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, vii, 1872, p. 383).

HOYER (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, ix, 1873, p. 222) says that the double chloride of *gold and potassium* has the following advantages over the simple gold chloride. It is more easy to be obtained of unvarying composition, it is more perfectly neutral, and its solutions are more perfectly stable. He uses it in solutions of the same strength as chloride of gold, viz. 0·5 per cent. In order to demonstrate the intra-epithelial ramifications of nerves of the cornea, the gold is partially reduced by exposure of the tissue, after impregnation for sixteen to twenty-four hours in (one or two ounces of) distilled water, and there are added to the water one or two drops of a pyrogallic acid developing solution, such as is used in photography (*vide* GERLACH, *Die Photographie als Hülfsmittel der mikroskopischen Forschung*, Leipzig, 1863). Or instead of treating them with the developing solution, the cornea may be removed to a warm concentrated solution of tartaric acid, and remain there at the temperature of an incubating stove until the gold is fully reduced.

I have myself used the double chloride of *gold and sodium* with good results.

CIACCIO (*Journ. de Microgr.*, vii, 1883, p. 38; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N.S.], iii, 1883, p. 290) prefers the double chloride of *gold and cadmium*.

Flechsig (*Die Leitungsbahnen in Gehirn*, 1876; *Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys.*, 1884, p. 453) reduces in a 10 per cent. solution of caustic soda.

Nesteroffsky treats impregnated preparations with a drop of sulphydrate of ammonium, and finishes the reduction in glycerin (quoted from Gierke's *Färberei z. mik. Zwecken*).

Böhm reduces in Pritchard's solution—amyl alcohol, 1; formic acid, 1; water, 98.

Manfredi treats fresh tissues as follows (*Arch. per le Sci. med.*, v, No. 15):—Gold chloride, 1 per cent., half an hour; oxalic acid, 0·5 per cent., in which they are warmed in a water-bath to 36°, allowed to cool, and examined. Mount in glycerin. Sunny weather is necessary.

Boccardi (*Lavori Instit. Fisiol. Napoli*, 1886, i, p. 27; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 155) recommends oxalic acid of 0·1 per cent. or of 0·25 to 0·3 per cent., or a mixture of 5 c.c. pure formic acid, 1 c.c. of 1 per cent. oxalic acid, and 25 c.c. of water. Objects should remain in this fluid in the dark not longer than two to four hours.

Kolossow (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1, 1888, p. 52) impregnates for two or three hours in a 1 per cent. solution of gold chloride acidulated with 1 per cent. of HCl, and reduces for two or three days in the dark in a 0·01 per cent. to 0·02 per cent. solution of chromic acid.

Geberg (*Intern. Monatsschr.*, x, 1893, p. 205) states that previous treatment of tissues for twenty-four hours with lime-water (Arnstein's method) greatly helps the reduction.

Bernheim (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., Phys. Abth.*, 1892, Supp., p. 29; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 484) adds to Lowit's dilute formic acid a piece of sulphite of sodium (must be fresh and smell strongly of sulphurous acid).

Dr. Lindsay Johnson writes to me that besides the "sunning" of the impregnating solution recommended above (§ 336), the following precautions should be taken:—"The tissue must be well washed in distilled water, and the gold carefully acidulated with a neutral acetate or formiate, or acetic or formic acid, at least twenty-four hours before using; and then afterwards the tissue must be washed until no reaction occurs to test-paper."

Apáthy (*Mikrotechnik*, p. 173; *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1897, pp. 718—728) lays stress on the necessity of having the objects thoroughly penetrated by light from all sides during the process of reduction. Objects, therefore, should always be so thin that light can readily stream through them ; they should either be membranes or sections. They should be either stretched out (*e.g.* on a slide) or hung up in the reducing bath in such a way as to be lighted from both sides. He impregnates for a few hours in 1 per cent. gold chloride (§ 347) in the dark, then brings the objects without washing out with water, the gold solution being just superficially mopped up with blotting-paper, into 1 per cent. formic acid. They are to be set up in this, in a tube or otherwise, so that the light *may come through them from all sides*, and exposed to diffused daylight in summer, or direct sunlight in winter, for six to eight hours *without a break*. They must *not be moved about* more than can be helped in the acid. If the acid becomes brown it may be changed for fresh. The temperature of the acid should not be allowed to rise over 20° C., whence direct sunlight is to be avoided during the summer. He mounts in glycerin or his syrup (§ 328). He finds such preparations absolutely permanent.

B. *Aftergilding.*

356. Gerlach's **Method** (Stricker's *Handb.*, 1872, p. 678) :—Spinal cord is hardened for fifteen to twenty days in a 1 to 2 per cent. solution of bichromate of ammonia. Thin sections are made and thrown into a solution of 1 part of double chloride of gold and potassium to 10,000 parts water, which is very slightly acidulated with HCl. They remain there from ten to twelve hours, and having become slightly violet, are washed in hydrochloric acid of 1 to 2 : 3000 strength, then brought for ten minutes into a mixture of 1 part HCl to 1000 parts of 60 per cent. alcohol, then for a few minutes into absolute alcohol, and thence into clove oil, for mounting in balsam.

(See further, for Nerve Centres, under "Neurological Methods.")

357. Golgi (*Mem. Accad. Torino* [2], xxxii, 1880, p. 382) treats tissues previously hardened in 2 per cent. solution of bichromate of potash, as follows:—They are put for ten to twenty minutes into 1 per cent. solution of arsenic acid, then into ½ per cent. solution of chloride of gold and potassium for half an hour, washed in water, and reduced in sunlight in 1 per cent. arsenic acid solution, which is changed for fresh as fast as it becomes brown. Mount in glycerin. Sunny weather is necessary.

358. APÁTHY'S **Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 1893, p. 349; *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1897, p. 729; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1, 1898, p. 79).—The material to be used must have been fixed either in sublimate or in a mixture of equal parts of saturated solution of sublimate in 0·5 per cent. salt solution and 1 per cent. osmic acid (this more particularly for Vertebrates). The material should be imbedded as quickly as possible, either in paraffin or in celloidin. The paraffin material will keep in a good state indefinitely, and so will the celloidin material provided that the blocks be preserved in a thick solution of glycerin jelly with a piece of thymol in it (the jelly is removed before cutting by warming and washing with warm water). Sections are made when desired and fixed on slides, and after the usual treatment with iodine, etc., are either put into distilled water for from two to six hours, or are rinsed in water, treated for one minute with 1 per cent. formic acid, and again well washed with water.

They are then put for twenty-four hours, or at least overnight, into the gold-bath, which is preferably 1 per cent. gold chloride (see § 347), but may be weaker, down to 0·1 per cent., after which they are just rinsed with water or superficially dried with blotting-paper. The slides are then set up on end in a sloping position, the sections looking downwards, so that precipitates may not fall on them, in glass tubes filled with 1 per cent. formic acid. The tubes are then exposed to light until the gold is reduced, as directed in § 355 (you may set them up near a window, and place a reflector of some sort behind them; a sheet of white paper will do). After reduction you may counterstain, if desired, and mount in any way. After trial I highly recommend this process. I have found it advantageous to reduce in weak solution of *formaldehyde*, either with or without formic acid. A few drops of formol added to the tube with the objects will suffice.

359. Impregnation of Marine Animals.—For some reason that I am unable to explain, the tissues of marine animals do not readily impregnate with gold in the fresh state. It is said by Fol that impregnation succeeds better with spirit specimens.

360. Ulterior Treatment of Impregnated Preparations.—Preparations may be mounted either in balsam or in acidulated glycerin (1 per cent. formic acid).

Theoretically they ought to be permanent if the reduction of the metal has been completely effected, but they are very liable to go wrong through after-blackening. Ranvier states that this can be avoided by putting the preparations for a few days into alcohol, which he says possesses the property of stopping the reduction of the gold. But this must be taken to mean that by this device the period of usefulness of the preparations may be prolonged for some time, not indefinitely.

Blackened preparations may be *bleached* with cyanide or ferrocyanide of potassium. Redding employs a weak solution of ferrocyanide; Cybulsky a 0·5 per cent. solution of cyanide. But the results are far from being perfectly satisfactory.

Preparations may be double-stained with the usual stains (safranin being very much to be recommended), but nuclei will only take the second stain in the case of negative impregnation.

Other Metallic Stains.

361. Osmic Acid and Pyrogallol.—This method was first published by me in 1887 (*La Cellule*, t. iv, fasc. 1, p. 110). It consists essentially in putting tissues that have been treated with osmic acid into a weak solution of pyrogallol, in which they quickly turn greenish black, sometimes much too much so.

At that time I had only tried the reaction with tissues impregnated with *pure* osmic acid Since then Hermann (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxvii, 4, 1891, p. 570) tried it with tissues fixed in his platino-aceto-osmic mixture (§ 50). With this modification of the process incomparably better results are obtained.

Hermann's procedure is as follows:—The tissues are put for one or two days into the platino-aceto-osmic mixture, washed thoroughly in water, and hardened in successive alcohols; after which, to obtain the black reaction, they are put for twelve to eighteen hours into raw *pyroligneous* acid. This acid ought (*Ergebnisse der Anat.*, ii, 1893, p. 28) to be as raw as possible, and to be of a dark brown colour and evil-smelling. (The stain obtained in this way is *not* due to a mere reduction of the osmic acid, but also to coloration by the brown pyroligneous acid; for Hermann has obtained the same stain with sublimate material, or alcohol material [*op. cit.*, i, 1891 (1892), p. 7]).

According to my experience, the procedure of Hermann is not that which gives the best results. I now proceed as follows:

Either the mixture of Hermann or the mixture of Flemming may be used for fixing. You may leave the tissues therein for twelve or twenty-four hours if you think that this is desirable in the interest of a complete fixation; but in the interest of the stain alone, half an hour is enough and *is preferable.* It is not only useless but hurtful to put the preparations into alcohol after fixation, for it is desirable that the tissue should be in as *fresh* a state as possible on coming into the pyrogallol. In consequence it is not possible to obtain the best results by treating paraffin sections. The tissues are therefore brought in bulk, directly after fixing, into *pyrogallol.* You may use Hermann's pyroligneous acid if you like, but I consider that a weak solution of pyrogallol is preferable. The tissues may remain in either of these liquids for twenty-four hours, but for small objects an hour or less is sufficient. An alcoholic solution of pyrogallol *may* be taken if desired, and this *may* be indicated in certain cases. I have not obtained the reaction with tannin used on chrom-osmium material.

There is thus obtained a black stain, which is at the same time a plasma stain and a nuclear stain, chromatin being so far stained that it is not necessary to have recourse afterwards to a special chromatin stain. This is one of the best methods that I know of for the study of Nebenkerne. With Invertebrates it sometimes gives very elegant differentiations of nervous tissue. It is a *very easy* method, and if pyrogallol be used a very *safe* one (with pyroligneous acid not so safe).

Although, as said, this method enables one to dispense with a special second chromatin stain, yet it is frequently very advantageous to use one. I greatly recommend safranin (stain very strongly, twenty-four hours at least, and start the extraction with acid alcohol).

This method has been attributed to VON MAEHRENTHAL. A modification of this method is said by AZOULAY to give a specific stain of the medullary sheath of nerves; see his process under "Neurological Methods" in Part II. See also a similar process for medullated nerve by HELLER and GUMPERTZ, quoted *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 3, 1896, p. 385.

The communications of KOLOSSOW (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 38, and ix, 3, 1893, p. 316) do not appear to me to constitute a useful contribution to the subject.

362. Perchloride of Iron.—This reagent, introduced by POLAILLON (*Journ. de l'Anat.*, iii, 1866, p. 43), sometimes gives useful results, especially in the study of peripheral nerve-ganglia, in which it stains the nervous tissue alone, the connective tissue remaining colourless. The method consists in impregnating in perchloride of iron, and reducing in tannic, gallic, or pyrogallic acid.

The HOGGANS proceed as follows (*Journ. Quekett Club*, 1876; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, ii, 1879, p. 358):—The tissue (having been first fixed with silver nitrate, which is somewhat reduced by a short exposure to diffused light) is dehydrated in alcohol, and treated for a few minutes with 2 per cent. solution of perchloride of iron in spirit. It is then treated with a 2 per cent. solution of pyrogallic acid in spirit, and in a few minutes more, according to the depth of tint required, may be washed in water and mounted in glycerin.

FOL (see *ante*, § 80) fixes in perchloride solution, and treats the preparations for twenty-four hours with alcohol containing a trace of gallic acid.

POLAILLON (*loc. cit.*) reduces in tannic acid.

This method is not applicable to chromic objects.

I have found it useful in certain special cases.

363. Pyrogallate of Iron (ROOSEVELT, *Med. Rec.*, ii, 1817, p. 84; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 157).—A stain composed of 20 drops of saturated solution of iron sulphate, 30 grms. water, and 15 to 20 drops pyrogallic acid.

364. Palladium Chloride (see F. SCHULTZE, *ante*, § 78). **Prussian Blue** (see LEBER, *Arch. f. Ophthalm.*, xiv, p. 300; RANVIER, *Traité*, p. 108). **Cupric Sulphate** (see LEBER, *ibid.*). **Lead Chromate** (see

LEBER, *ibid.*). **Sulphides** (see LANDOIS, *Centralb. f. d. med. Wiss.*, 1885, No. 55; and GIERKE, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 1884, p. 497). **Molybdate of Ammonium** (MERKEL; KRAUSE) (see GIERKE, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 1884, p. 96). **Oxychloride of Ruthenium** (NICOLLE and CANTACUZÈNE) (see *Ann. Inst. Pasteur*, vii. 1893, p. 331). **Ruthenium Red** (Ruthenium Sesquichloride) (EISEN, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 2, 1897, p. 200; in my hands totally useless). **Impregnation with Fats, Altmann's Method** (see *post*, "Corrosion").

MARINE BIOLOGICAL LABORATORY
WOODS HOLL
LIBRARY

CHAPTER XIX.

OTHER STAINS AND COMBINATIONS.

365. Kernschwarz (Platner, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 3, 1887, p. 350 ; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 675).—Kernschwarz is a black liquid prepared for histological purposes by a Russian chemist, and imported by Grübler & Hollborn. Its exact composition is unknown, but it is certainly an *ink*. Mayer (*Grundzüge*, p. 202) finds that it contains a metallic base, namely iron, combined with an organic acid, which is highly probably some gallic acid. The liquid keeps indefinitely, and affords a progressive or regressive stain, according to circumstances. I use it as follows :

Sections (I have not tried material in bulk) are fixed on slides and treated with Kernschwarz until they become grey or black. If the material is fresh, the required depth of stain may be obtained in a few minutes, and in that case it may be well to first dilute the Kernschwarz with about ten volumes of water if it be desired not to run the risk of overstaining. If the material is not fresh, that is if it has been kept for some months, it will be necessary to stain for twenty-four hours in the undiluted liquid.

There is obtained a black or neutral-tint stain, which is, according to the previous treatment of the material, either a pure chromatin stain, or at the same time a plasma stain. If overstaining should have occurred, or if there has been obtained a plasma stain that it is desired to remove, the stain is easily differentiated by means of any weak acid, either in water or alcohol. Platner took alkalies, preferably carbonate of lithia, for differentiation ; but that is clearly faulty practice.

In either case the stain is an excellent one. The chromatin stain is frequently as fine as any that I know of, except that of iron-hæmatoxylin, resting and dividing nuclei being differentiated just as in the best chromatin stains.

If a plasma stain has been obtained, it is generally a very good one, the cytoplasmic reticulum being well brought out, and spindle-relics, Nebenkerne, and other enclosures being very well stained. It may be well, if a good plasma stain has been obtained, to after-stain for twenty-four hours with safranin, followed by differentiation in either neutral or acid alcohol, and clove oil. This gives a fine double-stain, chromatin and nucleoli being of a dark, somewhat brownish red, the plasma purple-grey. The stain is perfectly permanent in balsam.

I most highly recommend this stain, which is safe, easy to carry out, and applicable to the study of very various tissues.

The stain is stated to be a good one for preparations that it is desired to photograph.

366. Brazilin, the colouring matter of Brazilian redwood or Pernambuco wood, has been recommended by EISEN (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 198). MAYER (*Grundzüge*, p. 203) finds that it gives a stain similar to that of hæmatein, but much weaker, and is therefore at the least superfluous.

367. Orchella (Orseille) (WEDL, *Arch. f. path. Anat.*, lxxiv, p. 143; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, ii, 1879): for an account of this substance *vide* COOLEY'S *Cyclopædia*, *sub voce* "Archil;" and see FOL, *Lehrb.*, p. 192, and former editions of this work.

368. Orcein (ISRAEL, *Virchow's Archiv*, cv, 1886, p. 169; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 514, and ISRAEL, *Prakticum der path. Hist.*, 2 Aufl., Berlin, 1893, p. 72).—Orcein is a dye obtained from the tinctorial lichen, *Lecanora parella*, and is not to be confused with *orcin*, another derivative of the same lichen. It is said to unite in itself the staining properties of the basic and acid stains, and also the combination of two contrast colours. Israel stains sections in a solution containing 2 grms. of orcein, 2 grms of glacial acetic acid, and 100 c.c. of distilled water, washes in distilled water, and passes rapidly through absolute alcohol to thick cedar oil, in which the preparations remain definitively mounted. Nuclei blue, protoplasm red.

For the specific staining of elastic and connective tissue by means of this reagent see the paragraphs on the "Connective Tissues" in Part II.

369. Purpurin, see RANVIER's *Traité technique*, p. 280; DUVAL's *Précis de Technique histologique*, p. 221; and GRENACHER's formula in *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xvi, 1879, p. 470.

370. Indigo.—Indigo is employed in histology in the form of solutions of so-called indigo-carmine, or sulphindigotate of soda or potash. The simple aqueous solution gives a diffuse stain, and is therefore not capable of being usefully employed *alone*. It is, however, of use when employed to bring about a *double* stain in conjunction with carmine, see below.

Thiersch's Oxalic Acid Indigo-carmine (see *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, i, 1865, p. 150).

Carmine Combinations.

371. Seiler's Carmine followed by Indigo-Carmine (*Am. Quart. Mic. Journ.*, i, 1879, p. 220; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, ii, 1879, p. 613).—Stain in borax-carmine, wash out with HCl alcohol, wash out the acid, and after-stain in an *extremely dilute* alcoholic solution of indigo-carmine (two drops of saturated aqueous solution added to an ounce of alcohol and filtered).

I find this method gives good results when applied to sections, but very bad results if it be attempted to stain in the mass with the indigo. The indigo overstains the superficial layers before it has penetrated to the deeper layers. The instructions given refer to sublimate material or the like; I find chrom-osmium material will not take the stain at all.

372. Merkel's Carmine and Indigo-Carmine in One Stain (MERKEL, *Unters. a. d. anat. Anst. Rostock*, 1874; *Month. Mic. Journ.*, 1877, pp. 242 and 317).

Also NORRIS and SHAKESPEARE, *Amer. Journ. Med. Sc.*, January, 1877; MERKEL, *Mon. Mic. Journ.*, 1877, p. 242; MARSH, *Section Cutting*, p. 85; BAYERL, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxiii, 1885, pp. 36, 37; MACALLUM, *Trans. Canad. Instit.*, ii, 1892, p. 222; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, v, 1892, p. 698.

MERKEL's formula, as has been pointed out by PAUL MAYER (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 2, 1896, p. 320) is not only highly irrational, and inconvenient to employ, but gives an alkaline fluid that may be injurious to tissues. I agree with him that it should be suppressed.

373. P. MAYER's **Carmalum (or Hæmalum) and Indigo-Carmine in One Stain.**—In the place quoted in the last section, MAYER states that he obtains very good results by taking a solution of 0·1 gramme of indigo-carmine in 50 c.c. of distilled water, or 5 per cent. alum solution, and combining it with from four to twenty volumes of carmalum or hæmalum.

374. Carmine and Picro-Indigo-Carmine (CAJAL, *Rev. de Cienc. med.*, 1895; CALLEJA, *Rev. trim. Microgr.*, ii, 1897, p. 101; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 3, 1899, p. 323).—For use after a carmine stain, CAJAL takes a solution of 0·25 gramme of indigo-carmine in 100 grammes saturated aqueous solution of picric acid. Stain (*sections*) for five to ten minutes, wash in weak acetic acid, then in water, then remove the excess of picric acid with absolute alcohol, clear and mount. Employed in this way, the indigo is said to give a sharper plasma stain than without the picric acid.

375. Carmine and Anilin Blue (or Bleu Lumière, or Bleu de Lyon) (DUVAL, *Précis de technique microscopique*, 1878, p. 225).—Stain with carmine "in the ordinary way;" dehydrate, and stain for a few minutes (ten minutes for a section of nerve-centres) in an alcoholic solution of anilin blue (ten drops of saturated solution of anilin blue soluble in alcohol to ten grammes of absolute alcohol, for sections of nerve-centres). Clear with turpentine, without further treatment with alcohol, and mount in balsam.

Recent authors recommend, instead of anilin blue, bleu de Lyon, dissolved in 70 per cent. alcohol acidulated with acetic acid (MAURICE and SCHULGIN), or bleu lumière, which has hardly any effect on nuclei.

The solutions of both these colours should be extremely dilute for sublimate material, but strong for chrom-osmium material. It is possible to use them for staining in bulk.

BAUMGARTEN (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xl, 1892, p. 512) stains sections (of material previously stained in borax-carmine) for twelve hours in a 0·2 per cent. solution of bleu de Lyon in absolute alcohol, and washes out for about half that time before mounting in balsam. He recommends the process for cartilage and nerve-centres.

376. Carmine and Malachite Green.—MAAS (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, l, 4, 1890, p. 527; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, p. 205) recommends borax-carmine followed by weak alcoholic solution of malachite green, with a final washing out with stronger alcohol, see also § 302.

377. Carmine and Picro-nigrosin (PIANESE) (see *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 292).

378. Carmine and Picric Acid. See § 281.

Hæmatein or Hæmatoxylin Combinations.

379. Hæmatoxylin and Picric Acid.—See § 281.

380. Hæmatoxylin and Eosin or Benzopurpurin (§ 295).—Objects may be stained with hæmatoxylin (either in the mass or as sections) and the sections stained for a few minutes in eosin. I think it is better to take the eosin weak, though it has been recommended (STÖHR, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 1884, p. 583) to take it saturated. Either aqueous or alcoholic solutions of eosin may be used.

HICKSON (*Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, 1893, p. 129) gives the following instructions for staining sections on the slide:—One hour in a strong solution of eosin in 90 per cent. alcohol, wash with alcohol, and stain for twenty minutes in a weak solution of hæmatoxylin.

This method is most particularly recommendable for embryological sections, as vitellus takes the eosin stain energetically, and so stands out boldly from the other germinal layers in which the blue of the hæmatoxylin dominates.

See also LIST (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 1885, p. 148); BUSCH (*Verh. Berl. Phys. Ges.*, 1887); GIERKE (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 1884, p. 505).

It should be noted that sections should be very well washed before being passed from eosin into hæmatoxylin or the reverse, as eosin very easily precipitates hæmatoxylin.

381. RENAUT'S **Hæmatoxylic Eosin** (FOL'S *Lehrbuch*, p. 196). A very complicated glycerin mixture, which acts so slowly that it may take weeks to stain, and, I think, superfluous.

EVERARD, DEMOOR and MASSART (*Ann. Inst. Pasteur*, vii, 1893, p. 166) prepare a similar mixture as follows:—A solution is made with 1 grm. of eosin, 25 grms. of alcohol, 75 of water, and 50 of glycerin. Then 20 grms. of alum are dissolved by the aid of heat in 200 grms. of water, the solution is filtered, and after twenty-four hours there is added to it 1 grm of hæmatoxylin dissolved in 10 grms. of alcohol. This solution is allowed to stand for eight days, then filtered again, and combined with an equal volume of the eosin solution.

382. Hæmatein and Congo.—See § 294.

383. Hæmatein and Säurefuchsin.—Get a sharp chromatin stain with iron-hæmatoxylin or hæmalum, then stain (sections) in 0·5 per cent. aqueous solution of Säurefuchsin, dehydrate and mount. The time required for staining varies much with the material, but is easily found by trial.

384. Hæmatoxylin and Säurefuchsin and Orange.—Proceed as above, using for the second stain the following mixture: Säurefuchsin, 1 grm.; orange, 6 grms.; rectified spirit, 60 c.c.; water, 240 c.c. (from SQUIRE's *Methods and Formulæ*, p. 42). Using orange G (not mentioned by SQUIRE), I have had very good results.

The process described by CAVAZZANI (*Riforma Med.*, Napoli, 1893, p. 604; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 3, 1894, p. 344) is far too complicated to be recommendable.

385. Hæmatoxylin and Picro-Säurefuchsin (VAN GIESON, *New York Med. Journ.*, 1889, p. 57; quoted from MOELLER, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 2, 1898, p. 172, which see for further details). Proceed as above, using for the second stain the picro-Säurefuchsin mixture, § 289. The second stain must not be too prolonged or the hæmatoxylin stain may be attacked. This stain is now very much in vogue.

386. Hæmatoxylin and Safranin.—RABL (*Morph. Jahrb.*, x, 1884, p. 215) stained *very lightly* with *very dilute* DELAFIELD's hæmatoxylin for twenty-four hours, then for some hours in (PFITZNER's) safranin, and washed out with pure alcohol.

CHAPTER XX.

EXAMINATION AND PRESERVATION MEDIA.

387. Introductory.—I comprehend under this heading all the media in which an object may be examined. The old distinction of "indifferent" liquids, and those which have some action on tissues, appears to be misleading more than helpful; inasmuch as it is now well understood that *no* medium is without action on tissues except the plasma with which they are surrounded during the life of the organism; and this plasma itself is only "indifferent" whilst all is *in situ;* as soon as a portion of tissue is dissected out and transferred to a slide in a portion of plasma the conditions become evidently artificial.

It does not appear necessary to create a separate group for mounting media, as all preservative media may be used for mounting, though the only media that will afford an *absolutely sure* preservation of soft tissues are the resinous ones.

For directions as to making permanent mounts in fluid media see the early sections of Chap. XXI.

Watery Media.

388. Water.—To preserve it from mould, a lump of thymol or camphor should be kept in the supply. Water may be employed without inconvenience, and sometimes (on account of its low index of refraction) with great advantage for the examination of all structures that have been fixed with osmic or chromic acid, or some salt of the heavy metals; but it is by no means applicable to the examination of fresh tissues,—that is, tissues that have not been so fixed. It is important that the beginner should bear in mind that water is very far from being an "indifferent" liquid; many tissue elements are greatly changed by it (nerve-end structures, for instance), and some are totally destroyed by its action if prolonged (for instance, red blood-corpuscles).

389. Theory of Indifferent Liquids.—In order to render water inoffensive to such tissues as these it must, firstly, have dissolved in it some substance that will give it a density equal to that of the liquids of the tissue, so as to prevent the occurrence of osmosis, to which process the destructive action of pure water is mainly due. Salt solution is a medium suggested by this necessity. But salt solution by no means fulfils all the conditions implied in the notion of an "indifferent" liquid. In so far as it possesses a density approaching to that of the liquids of the tissues, one cause of osmosis is eliminated; but there remains another, due to the difference of composition of the liquids within the tissues and that without. Cell contents are a mixture of colloids and crystalloids; salt solution contains only a crystalloid, whose high diffusibility causes it to diffuse over into the colloids of the tissues. In order to reduce the consequent osmotic processes to a minimum, it is necessary that the examination medium contain, in addition to a due proportion of salt or other crystalloid, also a due proportion of colloids. By adding, for instance, white of egg to salt solution this end may be attained; and, as a matter of fact, the liquids recommended as indifferent are found invariably to contain both crystalloids and colloids. Thus (as stated by Frey) vitreous humour contains 987 parts of water to about 4·6 of colloid matters and 7·8 of crystalloids (common salt). In 1000 parts of liquor amnii are contained about 3·8 parts of colloid matter (albumen), 5·8 of salt, and 3·4 of urea. In blood-serum, 8·5 of colloids and 1 of crystalloid substance are found.

390. Salt Solution ("normal salt solution," "physiological salt solution").—0·75 per cent. sodium chloride in water. Carnoy recommends the addition of a trace of osmic acid.

According to Locke (*Boston Med. Surg. Journ.*, 1896, p. 514) there should be added to salt solution (which to be isotonic should contain, according to Hamburger, 0·9 to 1 per cent. of salt)—0·01 per cent. chloride of potassium and 0·02 per cent. chloride of calcium, in order to obtain an indifferent liquid. Malassez (*C. R. Soc. Biol.*, iii, 1896, pp. 504 and 511) takes for erythrocytes about 1 per cent. sodium chloride.

391. Pictet's **Liquid** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 1, 1891, p. 89).—5 to 10 per cent. solution of chloride of manganese. According to my experience, this solution is excellent, and very often advantageously takes the place of "normal salt solution." The proportions given are for *marine* animals, and for terrestrial animals will generally be found much too high. For these from 1 per cent. to 3 per cent. will be nearer the mark.

392. Iodised Serum.—Iodised serum was first recommended by MAX SCHULTZE (*Virchow's Archiv*, xxx, 1864, p. 263). I take the following instructions concerning it from RANVIER (*Traité*, p. 76).

The only serum that gives really good results is the amniotic liquid of mammals. A gravid uterus of a sheep or cow having been obtained (in large slaughterhouses such can be obtained without difficulty), an incision is made through the wall of the uterus and the fœtal membranes. A jet of serum issues from the incision, and is caught in a flask prepared for the purpose. Flakes of iodine are then added, and the flask is frequently agitated for some days. Two points should be noted. A perfectly fresh amnios must be taken, for the merest incipience of putrefaction will spoil the preparation. The flask should have a wide bottom, so that the serum may form only a shallow layer in it; otherwise the upper layers will not be sufficiently exposed to the action of the iodine.

Another method is as follows:—Serum is mixed with a large proportion of tincture of iodine; the precipitate of iodine that forms is removed by filtration, and there remains a strong solution of iodine in serum. This should be kept in stock, and a little of it added every two or three days to the serum that is intended for use.

RANVIER explains that at the outset serum dissolves very little iodine; but if an excess of iodine be kept constantly present in the solution, it will be found that after two or three weeks iodides are formed, and allow fresh quantities of iodine to dissolve; so that after one or two months a very strongly iodised serum is obtained. It should be dark brown. Such a solution is the most fitting for the purpose of iodising fresh serum in the manner directed above, and for making the different strengths of iodised serum that are required for different purposes. In general for maceration purposes a serum of a pale brown colour should be employed.

393. Aqueous Humour, Simple White of Egg.—Require no preparation beyond filtering. They may be iodised if desired.

394. Artificial Iodised Serum (FREY, *Das Mikroskop*, 6 Aufl., 1877, p. 75).

Distilled water	270 grms.
White of egg	30 ,,
Sodium chloride	2·5 ,,

Mix, filter, and add tincture of iodine.

395. KRONECKER'S **Artificial Serum** (from VOGT et YUNG, *Traité d'Anat. comp. prat.*, p. 473).

Common salt	6 grms.
Caustic soda	0·06 grm.
Distilled water . . .	1000 grms.

BÖHM und OPPEL (*Taschenbuch*, 3 Aufl., p. 19) take carbonate of soda instead of caustic soda.

396. MIGULA'S **Glycerized Blood-serum** (see the paper in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 172; also *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 804).

397. Syrup.—An excellent medium for examining many structures in the fresh state. To preserve it from mould, chloral hydrate may conveniently be dissolved in it (1 to 5 per cent.). I have used as much as 7 per cent., and found no disadvantage, or carbolic acid may be employed instead of chloral; 1 per cent. is sufficient.

Either of these syrups may be used as a mounting medium, but they are not to be recommended for that purpose, as there is always risk of the sugar crystallising out.

A good strength for syrup is equal parts of loaf sugar and water. Dissolve by boiling.

398. Chloride of Calcium (HARTING, *Das Mikroskop*, 2 Aufl., p. 297). —The aqueous solution, either saturated or diluted with 4 to 8 parts of water, has a low refractive index and does not dry up.

399. Acetate of Potash (MAX SCHULTZE, *Arch. mik. Anat.*, vii, 1872, p. 180).—A nearly saturated solution in water. The index of refraction is lower than that of glycerin.

This medium has been frequently recommended as having the property of preventing the blackening of objects that have been treated with osmium; but it seems extremely doubtful whether this is really the case.

400. Chloral Hydrate.—5 per cent. in water (LADOWSKY, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1876, p. 359).

Or, 2·5 per cent. in water (BRADY, *British Copepods*).

Or, 1 per cent. in water (MUNSON, *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1881, p. 847).

401. Alcohol.—Not recommendable for mounting, as if taken weak it is not an efficient preservative, and if taken strong it attacks the cement of mounts.

The chief use of alcohol for preservation purposes is of course for preserving specimens in till wanted for further preparation and study. See on this point the remarks in Chap. I, § 3.

402. Formaldehyde.—See § 104.

Mercurial Liquids.

(*I give these as examination media only, not as permanent mounting media. Media containing sublimate always end by making tissues granular.*)

403. GILSON'S **Fluid** (CARNOY'S *Biologie cellulaire*, p. 94).

Alcohol of 60 per cent.	60 c.c.
Water	30 ,,
Glycerin	30 ,,
Acetic acid (15 parts of the glacial to 85 of water)	2 ,,
Bichloride	0·15 grm.

A really excellent examination medium for the study of fine cellular detail with well-fixed objects.

404. GAGE'S **Albumen Fluid** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 223).

White of egg	15 c.c.
Water	200 ,,
Corrosive sublimate	0·5 grm.
Salt	4 grms.

Mix, agitate, filter, and preserve in a cool place. Recommended for the study of red blood-corpuscles and ciliated cells.

405. PACINI'S **Fluids** (*Journ. de Mic.*, iv, 1880; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, [N. S.], ii, 1882, p. 702, and previous editions of this work).—Antiquated and superfluous. They consist essentially of corrosive sublimate of from one half to one third per cent. strength, with the addition of a little salt or acetic acid.

406. GOADBY'S **Fluids** (*Micro. Dict.*, art. "Preservation," or previous editions of this work).—Quite unsuited for histological purposes.

Other Fluids.

407. **Chloride and Acetate of Copper** (RIPART et PETIT'S fluid, *Brebissonia*, 1880, p. 92; CARNOY'S *Biol. cell.*, p. 95).

Camphor water (not saturated)	75	grms.
Distilled water	75	,,
Crystallised acetic acid	1	grm.
Acetate of copper	0·30	,,
Chloride of copper	0·30	,,

A *valuable* medium for work with delicate fresh tissues. It may be used in combination with methyl green, *which it does not precipitate*. The addition of a drop of osmic acid or corrosive sublimate does not cause the least turbidity, and enhances its *fixing* action.

408. **Tannin** (CARNOY, *loc. cit.*).

Water	100 grms.
Powdered tannin	0·40 grm.

As an examination medium only.

409. **Methyl Green.**—See § 277. The aqueous solution is very useful as an examination medium for fresh tissues. It should be taken fairly concentrated, in which state it has sufficient fixing power, which is enhanced by the addition of a trace of osmic acid.

410. WICKERSHEIMER'S **Fluid** (*Zool. Anz.*, 1879, p. 670; *cf. Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1882, p. 427; *id.*, 1880, p. 355; and *Entomol. Nachr.*, 1880, p. 129).—Worthless for histological purposes.

411. Meyer's **Salicylic Vinegar Preservative Solutions** (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xiii, 1876, p. 868).—Solution of salicylic acid in pyroligneous acid and glycerin. See *previous editions.*

412. Noll's **Salicylic Vinegar and Gum Medium** (*Zool. Anz.*, 1883, p. 472).—A mixture of Meyer's fluid and medium of Farrants. See *previous editions.*

413. Deane's **Medium** (see *Micro. Dict.*, art. "Preservation").

414. Hoyer's **Gum with Chloral Hydrate or Acetate of Potash** (*Biol. Centralb.*, ii, 1882, pp. 23–4; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], iii, 1883, pp. 144–5).—A high 60 c.c. glass with a wide neck is filled two thirds full with gum arabic (in pieces), and then *either* a solution of chloral (of several per cent.) containing 5—10 per cent. of glycerin is added, *or* officinal solution of acetate of potash or ammonia. The gum with frequent shaking dissolves in a few days, and forms a syrupy fluid, which is slowly filtered for twenty-four hours. The clear filtered fluid will keep for a long time, but if spores of fungi begin to develop a little chloral can be added and the fluid refiltered. The solution with chloral is for carmine or hæmatoxylin objects—that with acetate for anilin objects.

415. Medium of Farrants (Beale, *How to Work*, etc., p. 58).

Picked gum arabic	4 ounces.
Water	4 ,,
Glycerin	2 ,,

To be kept in a stoppered bottle with a lump of camphor. Slightly different receipts for this are given by the *Micrographic Dictionary*, and A. F. Stanley Kent, in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 820.

416. Gum and Glycerin Medium (Langerhans, *Zool. Anzeig.*, ii, 1879, p. 575).

Gummi arab.	5·0
Aquæ	5·0

To which after twelve hours are added—

Glycerini	5·0
Sol. aquosa acid. carbol. (5·100) . . .	10·0

417. Faris's **Glycero-gum** (*The Microscope*, x, 1890, p. 59; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 414).—Gum arabic 2 ounces, glycerin 1·5 ounces, water 1·5 ounces, thymol 1 grm. Mix, dissolve with heat, and filter.

418. Gum and Glycerin Jelly (Shimer, *The Microscope*, ix, 1889,

p. 138; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 411).—Equal parts of glycerin jelly (Fol's second formula, *post*, § 432), Farrants' solution, and glycerin.

419. Cole's **Gum and Syrup Medium.** See § 178.

420. Apáthy's **Gum and Syrup Medium** (see § 328).—This medium is recommended by Apáthy in a general way, and not merely for the special purpose for which it is quoted in § 328. It sets very hard, and, combined with a paper cell (see § 453), may be used for ringing glycerin mounts.

421. Fabre-Domergue's **Glucose Medium** (*La Nature*, No. 823, 9 Mars, 1889, supp.).

Glucose syrup diluted to twenty-five degrees of the areometer (sp. gr. 1·1968) . .	1000 parts.
Methyl alcohol . . .	200 ,,
Glycerin	100 ,,
Camphor to saturation.	

The glucose is to be dissolved in warm water, and the other ingredients added. The mixture, which is always acid, must be neutralised by the addition of a little potash or soda.

This medium is said to preserve without change almost all animal pigments.

421a. Brun's **Glucose Medium** (from Fabre-Domergue's *Premiers Principes du Microscope et de la Technique microscopique*, Paris, 1889, p. 123).

Distilled water	140 parts.
Camphorated spirit . . .	10 ,,
Glucose	40 ,,
Glycerin	10 ,,

Mix the water, glucose, and glycerin, then add the spirit, and filter to remove the excess of camphor which is precipitated on mixing. Dr. Henneguy informs me that this liquid is often preferable to glycerin, because it preserves the colour of preparations stained with anilin dyes, *methyl green included*.

422. Levulose is recommended as a mounting medium by Behrens, Kossel, u. Schiefferdecker (*Das Mikroskop u. d. Meth. d. mik. Unters.*, Braunschweig, 1889). It is uncrystallisable, and preserves well carmine and coal-tar stains (hæmatoxylin stains fade somewhat in it). The index of refraction is somewhat higher than that of glycerin. Objects may be brought into it out of water.

Glycerin Media.

423. Glycerin.—Glycerin diluted with water is frequently employed as an examination and mounting medium. Dilution with water is sometimes advisable on account of the increased visibility that it gives to many structures by lowering the index of refraction of the glycerin. But from the point of view of efficacious preservation it is always advisable to use undiluted glycerin, the strongest that can be procured.

Long soaking of tissues in glycerin of gradually increased strength is a necessary preliminary to mounting in all cases in which it is desired to obtain the best possible preparations, and to ensure that they shall keep well. If this soaking is done on the slide (the cover being removed and the object treated with fresh glycerin every one or two days), it is well to take the precaution recommended by Beale, of luting the edges of the cover so as to make the preparation air-tight, as glycerin is so highly hygroscopic that a drop of it exposed to the air rapidly diminishes in strength to a very considerable degree. In order to facilitate the removal of the cover in this process, the slide may be gently warmed by passing it two or three times through the flame of a spirit lamp. No preparation can be considered to be made *secundum artem* until every part of the object has been thoroughly impregnated with strong pure glycerin.

For closing glycerin mounts, the edges of the cover should first (after having been cleansed as far as possible from superfluous glycerin) be painted with a layer of *glycerin jelly;* as soon as this is set a coat of any of the usual cements may be applied. See next Chapter.

Glycerin dissolves carbonate of lime, and is therefore to be rejected in the preparation of calcareous structures that it is wished to preserve.

424. Extra-refractive Glycerin.—The already high index of refraction of glycerin (Price's glycerin, $n = 1{\cdot}46$) may be raised to about that of crown glass by dissolving suitable substances in the glycerin. Thus the refractive index of a solution of chloride of cadmium ($CdCl_2$)[*] in glycerin may be 1·504; that of a saturated solution of sulphocarbolate of zinc[†] in glycerin may be 1·501; that of a saturated solution of SCHERING's[‡] chloral hydrate (in crusts) in glycerin is 1·510; that of iodate of zinc in glycerin may be brought up to 1·56.[§] The clearing action of glycerin may thus be greatly increased, and the full aperture of homogeneous objectives brought to bear on objects mounted in one of the above-named solutions. For further details see *previous editions.*

425. BARFF's **Boroglyceride** (see *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1882, p. 124). —This preparation may be obtained (price 1*s.* per bottle) from *The Kreochyle Company, Viaduct House, Farringdon Street, E.C.*, or all wholesale chemists.

426. Glycerin and Alcohol Mixtures.—These most useful fluids afford one of the best means of bringing delicate objects gradually from weak into strong glycerin. The object is mounted in a drop of the liquid, and left for a few hours or days, the mount not being closed. By the evaporation of the alcohol the liquid gradually increases in density, and after some time the mount may be closed, or the object brought into pure glycerin or glycerin jelly.

1. CALBERLA'S LIQUID (*Zeit. wiss. Zool.*, xxx, 1878, p. 442).

Glycerin	1 part.
Alcohol	2 parts.
Water	3 ,,

As already pointed out (§ 2), this liquid is in many cases to be preferred to alcohol for keeping fixed objects in until required for dissection or other further preparation.

2. I strongly recommend the following for very delicate objects:

Glycerin	1 part.
Alcohol	1 ,,
Water	2 parts.

3. HANTSCH'S LIQUID.

Glycerin	1 part.
Alcohol	3 parts.
Water	2 ,,

---

[*] *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, ii, 1879, p. 346.

[†] *Ibid.*, iii, 1880, p. 1051.

[‡] *Ibid.* (N. S.), i, 1881, p. 943.

[§] *Ibid.*, p. 366.

4. Jäger's Liquid (Vogt and Yung's *Traité d'Anat. comp. prat.*, p. 16).

Glycerin	1 part.
Alcohol	1 „
Sea water	10 parts.

Glycerin Jellies.

427. Deane's **Glycerin Jelly** (from Frey's *Le Microscope*, p. 231).—120 grammes glycerine, 60 grammes water, 30 grammes gelatin. Dissolve the gelatin in the water, and add the glycerin. *This, and the following glycerin jellies, must of course be used warm.*

428. Lawrence's **Glycerin Jelly** (Davies, *Preparation and Mounting of Microscopic Objects*, p. 84).—" He takes a quantity of Nelson's gelatin, soaks it for two or three hours in cold water, pours off the superfluous water, and heats the soaked gelatin until melted. To each fluid ounce of the gelatin, *whilst it is fluid but cool*, he adds a fluid drachm of the white of an egg. He then boils this until the albumen coagulates and the gelatin is quite clear, when it is to be filtered through fine flannel, and to each ounce of the clarified solution add 6 drachms of a mixture composed of 1 part of glycerin to 2 parts of camphor water."

429. Beale's **Glycerin Jelly** (*How to Work*, etc., p. 57).—Gelatin or isinglass, soaked, melted, and clarified if desired, as in the last formula. To the clear solution add an equal bulk of strong glycerin.

430. Brandt's **Glycerin Jelly** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 1880, p. 69; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, iii, 1880, p. 502).—Melted gelatin 1 part, glycerin 1½ parts.

The gelatin to be soaked in water and melted in the usual way. After incorporating the glycerin, the mixture is to be filtered. This is a point of vital importance, as the gelatin of commerce is always mixed with particles of dust and minute threads. Swedish filtering paper does not allow the fluid to pass through sufficiently, and flannel produces more threads than before. Brandt filters through spun glass pressed into the lower part of a funnel. He describes a simple arrangement for keeping the funnel warm during the filtering (see *previous editions*).

Some drops of carbolic acid should be added to the fluid product of the filtering.

431. Kaiser's **Glycerin Jelly** (*Bot. Cent.*, i, 1880, p. 25; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, iii, 1880, p. 504).—One part by weight finest French gelatin is left for two hours in 6 parts by weight distilled water, 7 parts of glycerin are added, and for every 100 grammes of the mixture 1 gramme of concentrated carbolic acid. Warm for ten to fifteen minutes, stirring all the while, until the whole of the flakes produced by the carbolic acid have disappeared. Filter whilst warm through the finest spun glass laid wet in the funnel.

I prepared some of this jelly many years ago, and find it is still perfectly clear.

432. Fol's **Glycerin Jellies** (*Lehrb.*, p. 138).

1. Melt together one volume of Beale's jelly (§ 429) and one half to one volume of water, and add 2 to 5 per cent. of salicylic acid solution, or carbolic acid or camphor.

2.	Gelatin	30	parts.
	Water	70	,,
	Glycerin	100	,,
	Alcoholic solution of camphor	5	,,

Prepare as before, adding the camphor last.

3.	Gelatin	20	parts.
	Water	150	,,
	Glycerin	100	,,
	Alcoholic solution of camphor	15	,,

433. Squire's **Glycerin Jelly** (Squire's *Methods and Formulæ*, etc., p. 84).—Soak 100 grms. of French gelatin in chloroform water, drain when soft, and dissolve with heat in 750 grms. of glycerin. Add 400 grms. of chloroform water with which has been incorporated about 50 grms. of fresh egg-albumen; mix thoroughly, and heat to boiling-point for about five minutes. Make up the total weight to 1550 grms. with chloroform water. Filter in a warm chamber.

434. Gilson's **Chloral Hydrate Jelly** (communicated by Prof. Gilson).—1 vol. of gelatin, melted *secundum artem*, and

1 vol. of Price's glycerin. Mix, and add 1 vol. of chloral hydrate (*i.e.* add crystals of chloral until the volume of the mixture has increased by one half); warm till dissolved. This gives a very highly refractive aqueous mounting medium, which is found useful for opaque tissues that it is desired not to dehydrate.

A similar medium is published by GEOFFROY, *Journ. de Botan.*, 1893, p. 55 (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 476). He dissolves, by the aid of as little heat as possible, 3 to 4 grms. of gelatine in 100 c.c. of 10 per cent. aqueous solution of chloral hydrate.

High Refractive Liquids.

435. STEPHENSON'S **Biniodide of Mercury and Iodide of Potassium** (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], ii, 1882, p. 167).—A solution of the two salts in water. "This is very easily prepared by adding the two salts to the water until each shall be in excess; when this point of saturation has been reached the liquid will be found to have a refractive index of 1·68, by far the highest of any aqueous solution known to me." Any lower index can be obtained by suitable dilution with water.

This fluid is very dense, its specific gravity being 3·02. It is highly antiseptic.

"For marine animals a weak solution is probably well adapted, as about a 1 per cent. solution (5 minims to the ounce) will give the specific gravity of sea water, with no appreciable difference in the refractive index."

Covers should be sealed with white wax, and the mounts finished with two or three coatings of gold-size and one of shellac.

I have experimented both with strong and with weak solutions. They are not adapted, I find, for the purposes of a *permanent* mounting medium. Tissues are well preserved, but the preparations are ruined by a precipitate which forms in the fluid. But as a temporary examination medium I have occasionally found this solution valuable. Its optical properties are wonderful; it allows of the examination of watery tissues, *without any dehydration*, in a medium of refractive index surpassing that of any known resinous medium.

See further details in *previous editions*.

436. Monobromide of Naphthalin.—See *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1880, p. 1043 (Abbe and van Heurck), and *Zool. Anz.*, 1882, p. 555 (Max Flesch).

437. Thompson's **High Refractive Medium.**—See *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 902.

Resinous Media.

438. Resins and Balsams.—Resins and balsams consist of a vitreous or amorphous substance held in solution by an essential oil. By distillation or drying in the air they lose the essential oil and pass into the solid state. It is these solidified resins that should, in my opinion (and that, I believe, of the best microscopists), be employed for microscopical purposes; for the raw resins always contain a certain proportion of water, which makes it difficult to obtain a clear solution with the usual menstrua, is injurious to the optical properties of the medium and to its preservative qualities, and, further, especially hurtful to the preservation of stains. I therefore do not share the contrary opinion expressed by Fol (*Lehrb.*, pp. 138–9), but recommend that all solutions be made by heating gently the balsam or resin in a stove until it becomes brittle when cold, and then dissolving in an appropriate menstruum. Solid resins are now easily found in commerce.

Solutions made with volatile menstrua, such as xylol and chloroform, set rapidly, but become rapidly brittle. Solutions made with non-volatile media, such as turpentine, set much less rapidly, and pass much less rapidly into the brittle state. The former should, therefore, be employed whenever it is desired to have a mount that sets hard rapidly; but the latter should be employed whenever it is above all desired to have a mount that will prove as durable as possible.

According to my experience, *there is no such thing as a faultless resinous mounting medium for histological purposes.* Solutions of gum damar in xylol are very beautiful from the physical point of view, and frequently afford a better definition of delicate detail than Canada balsam does. But I very strongly suspect that *no damar solution is perfectly stable.* A review of some old damar mounts has shown that the majority of them have developed granules that have deteriorated the preparations to a greater or less extent. (These granules are in the worst cases large enough to at once attract attention even with low powers; at other times they are so small that they can only be seen with the highest powers, and in this case may be mistaken for normal elements of cells.) Xylol-balsam and benzol-balsam mounts are in the same case, but to a less degree. Chloroform balsam keeps much better, so far as granules are concerned. But it becomes very brown with age, and has the defect that it is injurious to stains made with coal-tar colours. Seiler's alcohol-balsam keeps remarkably well, but it also will not preserve the coal-tar stains. For these and other stains I now often use *turpentine colophonium.* It gives very good definition of delicate detail, and keeps perfectly. (Dr. PAUL MAYER, however, writes me that turpentine solutions are not at all good for alum-hæmatein stains.) Turpentine colophonium has a rather low index of refraction for objects that require much clearing. For these I very frequently use *oil of cedar* wood in preference to any resinous medium. It keeps perfectly. With time it thickens sufficiently to hold the cover in place; or, if desired, preparations may be luted with BELL'S cement. After using an oil immersion objective on a fresh mount, it is always easy to change the cover by floating it up with a drop of the oil placed at the side.

Another reason for preferring turpentine colophonium, where possible, is that it does not shrink in drying nearly so much as the media made with volatile solvents.

Still another motive is that turpentine media preserve the *index of visibility* of the preparations much longer than do media made with volatile menstrua. Preparations made with these last become so transparent in course of time that much fine detail is often lost. (Such mounts may, however, be revivified without removing the cover by putting them for a day or two into a tube of benzol; the benzol penetrates the balsam, and brings it down to a lower refractive index.)

The *visibility* of minute structures is proportional to the *difference* between the refractive indices of the object and of the medium in which it is mounted. The majority of the elements of soft tissues are (after fixation) of an index of refraction somewhat superior to that of Canada balsam. It follows that by lowering the index of the balsam, increased visibility is obtained, and the desideratum in any case is to find a medium just low enough to give good *visibility,* and yet not so low as to seriously cut down the N.A. of the objectives employed.

439. Choice of a Mounting Medium.—For the foregoing reasons I recommend *turpentine colophonium* for general work, with the restrictions mentioned, § 443; whilst for cases in which a more highly refractive medium is desired, I would recommend *oil of cedar* or xylol-balsam for coal-tar stains. Xylol-balsam is certainly a very fine medium. I have merely wished to point out that it is not *perfectly* safe, on the score of the possible formation of granules. (P. Mayer, *in litt.*, is of the same opinion.) I also recommend for carmine or iron-hæmatoxylin stains Seiler's *alcohol-balsam* (Mayer prefers Vosseler's *turpentine,* § 444). For hæmalum stains, xylol-balsam.

440. Canada Balsam.—Prepare with the solid balsam as above described, § 438. The usual menstrua are xylol, benzol; chloroform, and turpentine. Dissolve the solid balsam in one of these to the required consistence. The turpentine solution is to be preferred only in cases where it is desired to have a medium that sets very slowly. (The objection to turpentine as a solvent is that it does not always give a homogeneous solution with Canada balsam as it does with colophonium.) For most other purposes the xylol solution is the best. If time be an object, a benzol solution should be preferred, as it sets much quicker than the xylol solution.

Sahli (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ii, 1885, p. 5) dissolves in cedar oil.

Samples of balsam that are *acid* are frequently met with, and are injurious to some stains. Grübler & Hollborn now prepare a *neutral balsam,* in which Mayer has found that very delicate preparations, that lost colour immediately in any other sort of balsam, have kept perfectly for many months. For a process of neutralising balsam with carbonate of soda or potash see Colucci (*Giorn. Ass. Med. Natural. Napoli*, vii, 1897, p. 172).

441. Seiler's **Alcohol Balsam** (*Proc. Amer. Soc. Mic.*, 1881, pp. 60–2; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], ii, 1882, pp. 126–7).—"Take a clear sample of Canada balsam and evaporate it in a water- or sand-bath to dryness; *i. e.* until it becomes brittle and resinous when cold. Dissolve this while warm in warm absolute alcohol, and filter through absorbent cotton."

The advantage of this medium is stated to be that objects may be mounted in it direct from absolute alcohol, without previous treatment with an essential oil or other clearing agent; Seiler considers that by this means "shrivelling is avoided, as well as *the solution of fat in the cells.*"

The process of mounting direct from alcohol is not very easy to carry out, and I cannot recommend it for general work. But used in the ordinary way, after clearing by an essence, or by xylol or the like, Seiler's solution is for many purposes admirable.

As stated above, I find that it is *one of the most stable solutions known to me.* (My stock, made up fifteen years ago, is still perfectly limpid, and has not darkened in colour to an injurious extent.) It works pleasantly enough (if care be taken not to breathe on it during the process of mounting, as this may easily cause cloudiness). The definition is very fine, and the preservation of the preparations almost invariably perfect; my oldest preparations only show a few granules of little importance. Of course it has the limitation that it cannot be used with the soluble coal-tar colours.

442. Damar (Gum Damar, or Dammar, or d'Ammar).—The menstrua are the same as for balsam, and the solution should be prepared in the same way. The most beautiful of all these mounting media is the solution of damar in xylol. Heat is not necessary to make the solution.

Minute directions (which I think unnecessary) for preparing a working solution are given by Martinotti in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 2, 1887, p. 156, and in *Malpighia*, ii, 1888, p. 270; *cf.* also *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 163.

Flemming, Pfitzner, and a writer signing C. J. M., all employ a mixture of benzol and turpentine (see *Arch. mik.*

Anat., xix, 1881, p. 322; *Sci. Gossip*, 1882, p. 257; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], iii, 1883, p. 145; *Morphol. Jahrb.*, vi, 1880, p. 469; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], ii, 1882, p. 583).

See further details concerning these and other solutions in former editions.

I quite acknowledge the special beauty of definition obtained by means of damar solutions, but I am convinced that *not one of these solutions can be depended on for really permanent preservations.* Sooner or later, sometimes after a few weeks or days, or it may be only after months or years the granules mentioned in § 438 will make their appearance.

443. Colophonium.—A solution of colophonium in turpentine was first recommended by KLEINENBERG. I find it to be *most highly recommendable.*

This medium sets very slowly, so that ample time is afforded for arranging objects in it. Both KLEINENBERG and MAYER warn against the employment of absolute alcohol as a solvent; the preparations are beautiful at first, but soon become spoiled by the precipitation of crystals or of an amorphous substance.

The turpentine solution *keeps perfectly limpid,* gives *very good definition,* and is altogether so excellent a medium that I am surprised that it is not more used. It should be recommended to beginners. And, as stated in § 438, I consider that for many purposes it is perhaps the best and *most reliable* medium known. To make the solution, I add small lumps of colophonium to a quantity of rectified oil of turpentine kept in a stove, and when a sufficiently thick solution has been obtained, filter twice, the filtering being done in the stove. About a fortnight is required for the whole process. The solution should not be too thick, as it thickens somewhat with age. The palest sorts of colophonium should of course be selected.

Of course the slowness of drying of this medium is a great objection to its use in cases in which it is required to study the preparations with *oil-immersion lenses* as soon as possible after mounting. In the winter a slide will take about a month before it will be hard enough to be safe with *oil-immersion lenses;* whereas an alcohol-balsam mount will be dry enough in a couple of days.

Rehm (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1893, p. 387) recommends a solution of 1 part of colophonium in 10 of *benzin;* and later writers also recommend a similar solution.

444. Venice Turpentine for Mounting (Vosseler, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 3, 1889, p. 292, *et seq.*).—Commercial Venice turpentine is mixed in a tall cylinder glass, with an equal volume of 96 per cent. alcohol, allowed to stand in a warm place for three or four weeks, and decanted. It is stated that preparations may be mounted in this medium without previous clearing with essential oils or the like. The index of refraction being lower than that of the above-named balsams, delicate details are more distinctly brought out. Stains keep well, according to Vosseler.

Mayer (*Grundzüge*, p. 236) notes hereon that not *all* stains will keep well in it on account of the alcohol and oil of turpentine in it; hæmalum stains fade rapidly in it. He considers it a very valuable medium on account of its faculty of supporting a notable proportion of water in the preparations. Celloidin sections can be mounted direct from 96 per cent. alcohol; it does not cause turbidity in the albumen of Mayer's fixative for sections, and you may breathe on it with impunity whilst mounting. This faculty of withstanding moisture makes it especially valuable at the seaside.

This medium is also recommended by Suchannek (*ibid.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 463). He advises that it be prepared with equal parts of Venice turpentine and neutral absolute alcohol (obtained by treating commercial absolute alcohol with calcined cupric sulphate and quicklime). The mixture should be agitated frequently and kept in a tile stove for a day or two until clear and sufficiently inspissated.

445. Thickened Oil of Turpentine ("Verhärtzes Terpentinöl" of German writers) has been used as a mounting medium by some workers. It is prepared by exposing rectified oil of turpentine in thin layers for some days to the air. All that is necessary is to pour some oil into a plate, cover it lightly so as to protect it from dust without excluding the air, and leave it until it has attained a syrupy consistency.

446. Cedar Oil.—I most highly recommend this oil, both as a temporary examination medium and as a mounting medium. See § 438.

447. Castor Oil.—This was recommended as a mounting medium for certain delicate tissues (sections of eyes of Cephalopods) by GRENACHER (*Abhandl. naturf. Ges. Halle-a.-S.*, Bd. xvi; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 244). This was with the idea that its low refractive index ($n = 1·49$, whilst Canada balsam $n = 1·54$) would give a useful augmentation of visibility for the more refractive elements of the tissues.

With the objects with which I have experimented I have not had good results.

448. Photographic Negative Varnish (for mounting large sections without cover-glasses).—See WEIGERT, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 2, 1887, p. 209.

449. Styrax and Liquidambar.—See *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1883, p. 741; *ib.*, 1884, pp. 318, 475, 655, and 827; and the places there quoted. Also *Bull. Soc. Belge de Mic.*, 1884, p. 178; and FOL, *Lehrb.*, p. 141. These are very highly refractive media, which is just what is not wanted in general in histology.

450. Sandarac (LAVDOWSKY, from *Ref. Handbook Med. Sci.*, Supp., p. 438).—Gum sandarac 30 grs., absolute alcohol 50 c.c. This may, if desired, be diluted with an equal volume of absolute alcohol, and used for clearing sections.

450a. Gum Thus, dissolved in xylol, is recommended by EISEN, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 201.

CHAPTER XXI.

CEMENTS AND VARNISHES.

451. Introduction.—Two, or at most three, of the media given below will certainly be found sufficient for all useful purposes. For many years I have used only one cement (Bell's). I recommend this as a cement and varnish; gold size may be found useful for turning cells; and Miller's caoutchouc cement may be kept for occasions on which the utmost solidity is required.

Marine glue is necessary for making glass cells.

Carpenter lays great stress on the principle that the cements or varnishes used for fluid mounts should always be such as contain *no mixture of solid particles;* he has always found that those that do, although they might stand well for a few weeks or months, yet always become porous after a greater lapse of time, allowing the evaporation of the liquid and the admission of air. All fluid mounts *should be ringed with glycerin jelly before applying a cement; by this means all danger of running in is done away with.* See §§ 453 and 454.

The reader who requires more information concerning microscopical cements and varnishes than can be given in this chapter may consult with advantage the papers of Aubert, *The Microscope,* xi, 1891, 150, and *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.,* 1891, p. 692; Beck, *The Microscope,* xi, 1891, pp. 338, 368, and *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.,* 1892, p. 293; Behrens' *Tabellen zum Gebrauch bei mikroskopischen Arbeiten* (Bruhn, Braunschweig, 1892); and Rousselet, "On some Micro-Cements," *Journ. Quekett Mic. Club,* vii, 1898, p. 93.

452. Comparative Tenacity of Cements (see Behrens, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* ii, 1885, p. 54, and Aubert, *Amer. Mon. Mic.*

Journ., 1885, p. 227; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1886, p. 173). —BEHRENS gives the palm to amber varnish; AUBERT places MILLER's caoutchouc cement at the head of the list, LOVETT's cement coming halfway down, and zinc white cement at the bottom, with less than one quarter the tenacity of the caoutchouc cement.

453. The Paper Cell Method.—According to my experience, the best way to make a fluid mount safe is the following:—By means of two punches I cut out rings of paper of about a millimetre in breadth, and of about a millimetre smaller in diameter than the cover-glass. *Moisten* the paper ring with mounting fluid, and centre it on the slide. Fill the cell thus formed with mounting fluid; arrange the object in it; put the cover on; fill the annular space between the paper and the margin of the cover with glycerin jelly (a turn-table may be useful for this operation); and as soon as the gelatin has set turn a ring of gold-size on it, and when that is quite dry, varnish with BELL's cement.

For greater safety, the gelatin may, of course, be treated with bichromate, according to MARSH's plan, next §.

454. Gelatin Cement (MARSH's *Section-cutting*, 2nd ed., p. 104).—Take half an ounce of NELSON's opaque gelatin, soak well in water, melt in the usual way, stir in 3 drops of creasote, and put away in a small bottle. It is used warm.

When the ring of gelatin has become quite set and dry, which will not take long, it may be painted over with a solution of bichromate of potash made by dissolving 10 grains of the salt in an ounce of water. This should be done in the daytime, as the action of daylight is necessary to enable the bichromate to render the gelatin insoluble in water. The cover may then be finished with BELL's cement.

This process is particularly adapted for glycerin mounts.

455. ROUSSELET's **Method for Aqueous Mounts** (*op. cit.*, § 451). —Close the mount with a ring of a mixture of two parts of a solution of damar in benzol and one part gold-size. When dry, put on three or four thin coats of pure gold-size at intervals of twenty-four hours, and finish with a ring of WARD's brown cement.

456. WARD'S **Brown Cement** is a shellac-alcohol solution, made by E. Ward, Oxford Road, Manchester, and presumably now obtainable from the opticians. Its best solvent, Mr. ROUSSELET writes me, is a mixture of wood-naphtha and alcohol. He considers it the best shellac varnish he has met with, better than BELL'S.

457. BELL'S **Cement.**—Composition unknown. May be obtained from the opticians, or from J. Bell & Co., chemists, 338, Oxford Street, London.

This varnish flows easily from the brush, and sets quickly. For glycerin or other fluid mounts the cover should be ringed, as above described, with glycerin jelly before applying the varnish. This precaution is especially necessary with glycerin. This is the best varnish for fluid mounts known to me. It is soluble in ether or chloroform. It is not attacked by oil of cedar.

458. MILLER'S **Caoutchouc Cement.**—Composition unknown. May be obtained from the opticians. A very tenacious and, which is frequently an important point, a quickly drying cement. It may be diluted by a mixture of equal parts of chloroform and strong alcohol (see ROUSSELET, *Journ. Quek. Club*, v, ii, 1895, p. 8).

459. CLARKE'S **Spirit-proof Cement.**—Mr. CH. ROUSSELET has highly recommended this to me. It may be procured from Mr. J. Bolton, 25, Balshall Heath Road, Birmingham.

ROUSSELET finds it the best he has tried for alcoholic liquids, but not perfectly proof against watery media.

460. **Asphalt Varnish** (*Bitume de Judée*).—Unquestionably one of the best of these media, either as a cement or a varnish, *provided it be procured of good quality*. It can be procured from the opticians or from the oil-shops.

461. **Brunswick Black.**—See *previous editions*, or BEALE, *How to Work*, etc., p. 49.

462. **Gold-Size.**—Receipts for preparing it may be found in the *Micrographic Dict.* or in COOLEY'S *Cyclopædia*; but it is certainly best to obtain it from the opticians or oil-shops. It is soluble in oil of turpentine. A good cement, *when of good quality,* and very useful for turning cells.

463. Marine Glue.—Found in commerce. Carpenter says the best is that known as G K 4.

It is soluble in ether, naphtha, or solution of potash. Its use is for attaching glass cells to slides, and for all cases in which it is desired to cement glass to glass.

Receipts for preparing it may be found in Beale, p. 40, or in Cooley's *Cyclopædia.*

464. Turpentine, Venice Turpentine (Csokor, *Arch. mik. Anat.*, xxi, 1882, p. 353; Parker, *Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, ii, 1881, pp. 229-30; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], ii, 1882, p. 724).—Venice turpentine (Terebinthina veneta) is the liquid resinous exudation of *Abies larix.* Parker gives the following directions:

Dissolve true Venice turpentine in enough alcohol, so that after solution it will pass readily through a filter, and, after filtering, place in an evaporating dish, and by means of a sand-bath evaporate down to about three quarters of the quantity originally used. After it has evaporated down to about that much, drop some of the mass into cold water; if on being taken out of the water it is hard and breaks with a vitreous fracture on being struck with the point of a knife, cease evaporation and allow to cool.

Or (Csokor), common resinous turpentine of commerce is put in small pieces to melt over a water-bath, then poured into a suitable vessel and allowed to cool. It should form a brittle, dark brown mass, not yielding to the pressure of a finger. It is sometimes useful, in order to attain the right degree of hardness in the cold mass, to add a little resinous oil of turpentine to the melted mass, and then to evaporate for several hours over the water-bath.

This cement is used for closing glycerine mounts; it is applied in the following manner:—Square covers are used, and superfluous glycerin is cleaned away from the edges in the usual way.

The cement is then put on with a piece of wire bent at right angles; the short arm of the wire should be just the length of the side of the cover-glass. The wire is heated in a spirit lamp, plunged into the cement, some of which adheres to it, and then brought down flat upon the slide at the margin of the cover. The turpentine distributes itself evenly along the side of the cover, and hardens immediately, so that the slide may be cleaned as soon as the four sides are finished. It is claimed for this cement that it is perfectly secure, very handy, and never runs in. The cement sets hard in a few seconds.

465. **Colophonium and Wax** (Krönig, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1886, p. 657; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 344).—Seven to nine parts of colophonium are added piecemeal to two parts of melted wax, the whole filtered and left to cool. For use, the mass is melted by placing the containing vessel in hot water. The cement is not attacked by water, glycerin, or caustic potash.

466. Apáthy's **Cement for Glycerin Mounts** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 2, 1889, p. 171).—Equal parts of hard (60° C. melting-point) paraffin and Canada balsam Heat together in a porcelain capsule until the mass takes on a golden tint and no longer emits vapours of turpentine. On cooling, this forms a hard mass, which is used by warming and applying with a glass rod or brass spatula. One application is enough. The cement does not run in, and never cracks.

467. **Paraffin**.—*Temporary* mounts may be closed with pure paraffin, by applying it with a bent wire, as described § 464.

468. **Canada Balsam, or Damar.**—Cells are sometimes made with these. They are elegant, but in my experience are not reliable for permanent mounts.

469. **Amber Varnish.**—As above mentioned, Behrens finds this cement to possess an extreme tenacity. That used by him may be obtained from Grübler & Hollborn.

470. **Amber and Copal Varnish** (Heydenreich, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 338).—Extremely complicated; may be obtained from Ludwig Marx, at 110, Moskowskaja Sastawa,

St. Petersburg; or 79, Gaden, Vienna; or 1, Römerthal, Mayence.

471. Shellac Varnish (Beale, p. 28).—Shellac should be broken into small pieces, placed in a bottle with spirit of wine, and frequently shaken until a thick solution is obtained. The *Micro. Dictionary* says that the addition of 20 drops of castor oil to the ounce is an improvement.

Untrustworthy, but useful for protecting balsam mounts from the action of oil of cedar.

472. Sealing-Wax Varnish (*Micro. Dict.*, "Cements").—Add enough spirit of wine to cover coarsely powdered sealing-wax, and digest at a gentle heat. This should only be used as a varnish, never as a cement, as it is apt to become brittle and to lose its hold upon glass after a time.

473. Tolu Balsam Cement (Carnoy's *Biol. Cell.*, p. 129).

Tolu balsam	2 parts.
Canada balsam	1 part.
Saturated solution of shellac in chloroform	2 parts.

Add enough chloroform to bring the mixture to a syrupy consistence. Carnoy finds this cement superior to all others.

474. Other Cements and Varnishes.—See *previous editions*.

PART II.

SPECIAL METHODS AND EXAMPLES.

CHAPTER XXII.

INJECTION—GELATIN MASSES.

475. Introduction.—Injection masses are composed of a coloured substance, technically termed the *colouring mass*, and of a substance with which that is combined, technically termed the *vehicle*.

The following formulæ are grouped mainly according to the nature of the vehicle. The chief vehicles are *gelatin* and *glycerin*.

For injections made for the study of the angiology of Vertebrates, the student will do well to follow the masterly practice of Robin and Ranvier, consulting also, if necessary, the excellent instructions given in Beale's *How to Work with the Microscope*, and in the *Lehrbuch der vergleichenden mikroskopischen Anatomie* of Fol. For injections of Invertebrates (and, indeed, for Vertebrates if it is desired to demonstrate the minute structure of environing tissues at the same time as the distribution of vessels) glycerin masses are generally preferable to gelatin masses; and I would recommend as particularly convenient the Prussian blue glycerin masses of Beale. Glycerin masses have the great advantage that they are used *cold*.

All formulæ which only give opaque masses, or are only suitable for coarse injections for naked-eye study, have been suppressed.

476. Nitrite of Amyl as a Vaso-dilator.—As stated above, glycerin masses are certainly very convenient, and give very good results from the scientific—not from the æsthetic—point of view. They have a great defect for the injection of fresh specimens—that is, those in which rigor mortis has not set in; they stimulate the contraction of arteries. In these cases it may be advisable to use nitrite of amyl as a vaso-dilator. The animal may be anæsthetised with a mixture of ether and nitrite of amyl, and finally killed with pure nitrite. Or, after killing by nitrite, a little nitrite of amyl in salt solution may be injected before the injection mass is thrown in. In any case it is advisable to add a little nitrite to the mass just before using. The relaxing power is very great (see OVIATT and SARGENT, in *St. Louis Med. Journ.*, 1886, p. 207; and *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 341).

477. FOL'S **Metagelatin Vehicle** (*Lehrb.*, p. 17).—The operation of injecting with the ordinary gelatin masses is greatly complicated by the necessity of injecting them warm. FOL proposes to employ metagelatin instead of gelatin.

If a slight proportion of ammonia be added to a solution of gelatin, and the solution be heated for several hours, the solution passes into the state of metagelatin, that is, a state in which it no longer coagulates on cooling. Colouring masses may be added to this vehicle, which may also be thinned by the addition of weak alcohol. After injection, the preparations are thrown into strong alcohol or chromic acid, which sets the mass.

ROBIN'S *Masses*.

478. ROBIN'S **Gelatin Vehicle** (*Traité*, p. 30).—Take some good gelatin, soak it in cold water, then heat in water over a water-bath. One part of gelatin should be taken for every 7, 8, 9, or even 10 parts of water; it is a common error to employ solutions containing too much gelatin. The solution is now to be combined with one of the colouring masses given below.

This vehicle, like all gelatin masses, is liable to be attacked by mould if kept long; camphor and carbolic acid do not suffice to preserve it.

Chloral hydrate added to the mass is said to preserve it (HOYER). A sufficient dose, at least 2 per cent., should be employed (see below, § 485).

479. Robin's **Glycerin-gelatin Vehicle** (*Traité*, p. 32).—Dissolve in a water-bath 50 grms. of gelatin in 300 grms. of water, in which has been dissolved some arsenious acid; add of glycerin 150 grms., and of carbolic acid a few drops. Unlike the pure gelatin vehicles, this mass does keep indefinitely.

The colouring masses recommended for combination with the vehicles above described are given in §§ 480 to 483, and § 497.

Frankl (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, lxiii, 1897, p. 28) prepares a similar vehicle, and adds to it a little solution of corrosive sublimate and a crystal of thymol.

480. Robin's **Carmine Colouring Mass** (*Traité*, p. 33).—Rub up in a mortar 3 grms. of carmine with a little water and enough ammonia to dissolve the carmine. Add 50 grms. of glycerin, and filter.

Prepare 50 grms. of acid glycerin (containing 5 grms. of acetic acid for every 50 grms. of glycerin), and add it by degrees to the carmine-glycerin, until a slightly acid reaction is obtained (as tested by very sensitive blue test-paper, moistened and held over the mixture).

One part of this mixture is to be added to 3 or 4 parts of the gelatin injection vehicle (*ante*, § 478), or of the glycerin-gelatin (§ 479).

481. Ferrocyanide of Copper Colouring Mass (*ibid.*, p. 34).—Take—

(1) Ferrocyanide of potassium (concentrated solution)	20 c.c.
Glycerin	50 ,,
(2) Sulphate of copper (concentrated solution)	35 ,,
Glycerin	50 ,,

Mix (1) and (2) slowly, with agitation; at the moment of injecting combine with 3 volumes of vehicle.

482. Blue Colouring Mass (Prussian Blue) (*ibid.*, p. 35, and 2nd ed., p. 1013).

Take—

(A)	Ferrocyanide of potassium* (sol. sat.)	90 c.c.
	Glycerin	50 ,,
(B)	Liquid perchloride of iron at 30°	3 ,,
	Glycerin	50 ,,

Mix slowly and combine the mixture with 3 parts of vehicle. It is well to add a few drops of HCl.

Carmine-gelatin Masses.

483. RANVIER'S **Carmine-Gelatine Mass** (*Traité technique*, p. 116).—Take 5 grms. Paris gelatin, soak it in water for half an hour, or until quite swollen and soft; wash it; drain it; put it into a test-tube and melt it, in the water it has absorbed, over a water-bath. When melted add slowly, and with continual agitation, a solution of carmine in ammonia, prepared as follows:—2½ grms. of carmine are rubbed up with a little water, and just enough ammonia, added drop by drop, to dissolve the carmine into a *transparent* solution.

When the carmine has been added to the gelatin, you will have about 15 c.c. of ammoniacal solution of carmine in gelatin, if the operations have been properly performed. This solution is to be kept warm on the water-bath, whilst you proceed to neutralise it by adding cautiously, drop by drop, with continual agitation, a solution of 1 part of glacial acetic acid in 2 parts of water. (When the mass is near neutrality, dilute the acetic acid still further.) The instant of saturation is determined by the smell of the solution, which gradually changes from ammoniacal to sour. As soon as the sour smell is perceived the liquid must be examined under the microscope. If it contains a granular precipitate of carmine, too much acid has been added, and it must be thrown away.

RANVIER states that this is the only way to attain to perfect neutralisation. Trust must not be put in formulæ that profess to indicate the proportions of ammonia and acetic acid necessary for neutralisation, on account of the variation in strength of the solutions of ammonia kept in laboratories, and also because it often happens that commercial gelatin is acid.

---

* *Erratim* "Sulphocyanide" in 1st edition of ROBIN'S *Traité*.

The mass having been perfectly neutralised is strained through new flannel.

484. How to Neutralise a Carmine Mass (Ville, *Gaz. hebd. d. Sci. méd. de Montpellier,* Fév., 1882; may be had separately from Delahaye et Lecrosnier, Paris).—Ville points out that when carmine is treated with ammonia a certain proportion of the ammonia combines with the carmine to form a transparent purple compound, and the rest remains in excess. It is this *excess* that it is required to neutralise precisely, not the *whole* of the ammonia employed.

As to the acidity accidentally found in commercial gelatin, that source of error is easily eliminated. Instead of soaking the gelatin in water, it should be placed in a large funnel with a narrow neck, or better, in a stopcock funnel, and the whole should be placed under a tap, and a stream of water arranged in such a manner that the gelatin be constantly completely immersed. Washing for an hour or so in this way will remove all traces of acids mechanically retained in the gelatin.

As to the neutralisation of the colouring mass, Ville is of opinion that the sour smell cannot be safely relied on in practice. He considers it greatly preferable to employ exceedingly delicate dichroic litmus paper (litmus paper sensitised so as to be capable of being used equally for the demonstration of acids and bases). Such paper is, I believe, now found in commerce; for directions for preparing it and for preserving ammonia without loss of strength, and other details, see *previous editions.*

485. Hoyer's **Carmine-Gelatin Mass** (*Biol. Centralb.*, 1882, p. 21).—Take a concentrated gelatin solution and add to it the needful quantity of neutral carmine staining solution (*loc. cit.*, p. 17). Digest in a water-bath until the dark violet-red colour begins to pass into a bright red tint. Then add 5—10 per cent. by volumes of glycerin, and at least 2 per cent. by weight of chloral, in a concentrated solution. After passing through flannel it can be kept in an open vessel under a bell-glass.

486. Fol's **Carmine-Gelatin Mass** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xxxviii, p. 492).

This can be kept in the *dry state* for an indefinite length of time. (Fol finds that the addition of chloral hydrate to wet masses is not an efficient preservative.)

One kilog. of Simeon's photographic gelatin* is soaked for a couple of hours, until thoroughly soft, in a small quantity of water. The water is then poured off and the gelatin melted over a water-bath, and one litre of concentrated solution of carmine in ammonia is poured in with continual stirring. (The carmine solution is prepared by diluting strong solution of ammonia with three or four parts of water and adding carmine to saturation; the undissolved excess of carmine is removed by filtration just before the solution is added to the gelatin.)

To the mixture of gelatin and carmine, which should have a strong smell of ammonia, sufficient acetic acid is added to turn the dark purple colour of the mixture into the well-known blood-red hue. Exact neutralisation is not necessary. The mass is set aside until it has become firm, and is then cut up into pieces, which are tied up in a piece of tulle or fine netting. By means of energetic compression with the hand under water (it must be *acidulated* water, 0·1 per cent. acetic acid, otherwise the carmine will wash out; *cf. Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, iv, part 3, 1884, p. 474) the mass is driven out through the meshes of the stuff in the shape of fine strings, which are washed for several hours in a sieve placed in running water in order to free them from any excess of acid or ammonia. The strings are then again melted, and the molten mass is poured on to large sheets of parchment paper soaked with paraffin, and the sheets are hung up to dry in an airy place. When dry the gelatin can easily be separated from the sheets, and may be cut into long strips with scissors and put away, protected from dust and damp, until wanted for use. In order to get the mass ready for use, all that is necessary is to soak the strips for a few minutes in water and melt them over a water-bath.

The process may be simplified, without giving very greatly inferior results, as follows (*Lehrb.*, p. 13). Gelatin in sheets is macerated for two days in the above-described carmine solution, then rinsed and put for a few hours into water acidulated with acetic acid. It is then washed on a sieve for several hours in running water, dried on parchment paper, and preserved as above.

---

* Doubtless any good photographic gelatin will do as well.

This mass is very well spoken of.

487. Other Carmine Gelatin Masses.—Thiersch's, see *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1865, p. 148. Gerlach's, see Ranvier, *Traité*, p. 118. Carter's, see Beale, p. 113. Davies, see his *Prep. and Mounting of Mic. Objects*, p. 138.

Blue Gelatin Masses.

488. Robin's **Prussian Blue Gelatin Mass** (see above, § 482).

489. Ranvier's **Prussian Blue Gelatin Mass** (*Traité*, p. 119).—Twenty-five parts of a concentrated aqueous solution of soluble Prussian blue (prepared as directed below) mixed with one part of solid gelatin.

The mixture of the Prussian blue with the vehicle is effected in the following manner:

Weigh the gelatin, soak it in water for half an hour or an hour, wash it, and melt it in a test-tube, in the water it has absorbed, by heating over a water-bath. Put the solution of Prussian blue into another test-tube, and heat it on the same water-bath as the gelatin, so as to have the two at the same temperature. Pour the gelatin gradually into the Prussian blue solution, stirring continually with a glass rod. Continue stirring until the disappearance of the curdy precipitate that forms at first. (Some gelatins produce a *persistent* precipitate; these must be rejected; but it must be borne in mind that the precipitate that invariably forms in even the best gelatins disappears if the heating be continued.) As soon as the glass rod has ceased to show blue granulations on its surface on being withdrawn from the liquid, it may be concluded that the Prussian blue is completely dissolved. Filter through new flannel, and keep the filtrate at 40° over a water-bath until injected.

The soluble Prussian blue for the above mass is prepared as follows:

490. Soluble Prussian Blue for Injection Masses (Ranvier, *ibid.*).—Make a concentrated solution of sulphate of peroxide of iron in distilled water, and pour it gradually into a concentrated solution of yellow prussiate of potash. There is produced a precipitate of insoluble Prussian blue. (An excess of prussiate of potash ought to remain in the liquid; in order to ascertain whether this is the case take a small quantity of the liquid and observe whether a drop of sulphate of iron still precipitates it.) Filter the liquid through a felt strainer, underneath which is arranged a paper filter in a glass funnel. The liquid at first runs clear and yellowish into the lower funnel; distilled water is then poured little by little on to the strainer; gradually the liquid issuing from the strainer acquires a blue tinge, which, however, is not visible in that which issues from the lower filter. Distilled water is continually added to the strainer for some days until the liquid begins to run off blue from the second filter. The Prussian blue has now become soluble. The strainer is turned inside out and agitated in distilled water; the Prussian blue will dissolve if the quantity of water be sufficient.

The solution may now be injected just as it is, or it may be kept in bottles till wanted, or the solution may be evaporated in a stove, and the solid residuum put away in bottle.

For injections, if a simple aqueous solution be taken, it should be *saturated*. Such a mass never transudes through the walls of vessels. Or it may be combined with one fourth of glycerin, or with the gelatin vehicle above described.

491. BRÜCKE'S **Soluble Berlin Blue** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1865, p. 87).

Make a solution of ferrocyanide of potassium containing 217 grammes of the salt to 1 litre of water.

Make a solution of 1 part commercial chloride of iron in 10 parts water.

Take equal volumes of each, and add to each of them twice its volume of a cold saturated solution of sulphate of soda. Pour the chloride solution into the ferrocyanide solution, stirring continually. Wash the precipitate on a filter until soluble, dry it, press between blotting-paper in a press, break the mass in pieces, and dry in the air.

The concentrated solution of the colouring matter is to be gelatinised with just so much gelatin that the mass forms a jelly when cold.

For another method, see *previous editions.*

492. Thiersch's **Prussian Blue Gelatin Mass** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, i, 1865, p. 148).

Take—

(1) A solution of 1 part gelatin in 2 parts water.
(2) A saturated aqueous solution of sulphate of iron.
(3) A saturated aqueous solution of red prussiate of potash.
(4) A saturated aqueous solution of oxalic acid.

Now (A) mix 12 c.c. of the iron solution with one ounce of the gelatin solution at the temperature of 25° R.

Then (B) mix, at the same temperature, 24 c.c. of the prussiate solution with two ounces of the gelatin solution.

(C) To the latter mixture add first 24 c.c. of the oxalic acid solution, stir well, and then add the gelatin and iron mixture (A). Stir continually, keeping the temperature at from 20° to 25° R., until the whole of the Prussian blue is precipitated. Finally, heat over a water-bath to about 70° R. and filter through flannel.

493. Fol's **Berlin Blue Gelatin Mass** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xxxviii, 1883, p. 494).—A modification of Thiersch's formula, last §, the mass being made into strings and dried, as with the carmine mass, § 486. See previous editions.

494. Other Blue Gelatin Masses.—Hoyer's, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1876, p. 649; Guignet's, *Journ. de Microgr.*, 1889, p. 94; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 463; or previous editions of this work.

495. Hoyer's **Silver Nitrate Yellow Gelatin Mass** (*Biol. Centralbl.*, ii, 1882, pp. 19, 22; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], iii, 1883, p. 142).—"A concentrated solution of gelatin is mixed with an equal volume of a 4 per cent. solution of nitrate of silver and warmed. To this is added a very small quantity of an aqueous solution of pyrogallic acid, which reduces the silver in a few seconds; chloral and glycerin are added as before" (No. 485).

This mass is yellow in the capillaries and brown in the larger vessels.

496. Ranvier's **Gelatin Mass for Impregnation** (*Traité*, p. 123).—Concentrated solution of gelatin, 2, 3, or 4 parts; 1 per cent. nitrate of silver solution, 1 part.

497. Other Colours.—Hoyer's **Green** (*Biol. Centralb.*, ii, 1882, p. 19). Made by mixing a blue mass and a yellow mass. Thiersch's **Green** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1865, p. 149). Robin's Scheele's **Green** (Robin, *Traité*, p. 37). Harting's **White** (see Frey, *Le Microscope*, p. 190). Frey's **White** (*ibid.*). Teichmann's **White** (*ibid.*, p. 191). Fol's **Brown** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xxxviii, 1883, p. 494). Miller's **Purple** (see *Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, 1888, p. 50; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 518; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 3, 1888, p. 361). Fol's **Lead Chromate** (*Lehrb.*, p. 15). Robin's **Cadmium** (his *Traité*, p. 36). Thiersch's **Lead Chromate** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1865, p. 149). Hoyer's **Lead Chromate** (*ibid.*, 1867, p. 136); or, for any of these, previous editions.

CHAPTER XXIII.

INJECTIONS—OTHER MASSES (COLD).

498. Joseph's **White-of-Egg Injection Mass (Carmine)** (*Ber. naturw. Sect. Schles. Ges.*, 1879, pp. 36—40; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], ii, 1882, p. 274).—"Filtered white-of-egg, diluted with 1 to 5 per cent. of carmine solution. . . . This mass remains liquid when cold; it coagulates when immersed in dilute nitric acid, chromic or osmic acid, remains transparent, and is sufficiently indifferent to reagents."

For Invertebrates.

499. Bjeloussow's **Gum Arabic Mass** (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys.*, 1885, p. 379).—Make a syrupy solution of gum arabic and a saturated solution of borax in water. Mix the solutions in such proportions as to have in the mixture 1 part of borax to 2 of gum arabic. Rub up the transparent, almost insoluble mass with distilled water, added little by little, then force it through a fine-grained cloth. Repeat these operations until there is obtained a mass that is free from suspended gelatinous clots. (If the operation has been successful, the mass should coagulate in the presence of alcohol, undergoing at the same time a dilatation to twice its original volume.)

The vehicle thus prepared may be combined with any colouring mass except cadmium and cobalt.

After injection the preparation is thrown into alcohol, and the mass sets immediately, swelling up as above described, and consequently showing vessels largely distended.

Cold-blooded animals may be injected whilst alive with this mass. It does not flow out of cut vessels. Injections keep well in alcohol. Glycerin may be used for making them transparent.

If it be desired to remove the mass from any part of a preparation, this is easily done with dilute acetic acid, which dissolves it.

Glycerin Masses.[*]

500. Beale's **Carmine Glycerin Mass** (*How to Work,* etc., p. 95).—Five grains of carmine are dissolved in a little water with the aid of about five drops of ammonia, and added to half an ounce of glycerin. Then add half an ounce of glycerin with eight or ten drops of acetic or hydrochloric acid, gradually, with agitation. Test with blue litmus paper, and if necessary add more acid till the reaction is decidedly acid. Then add half an ounce of glycerin, two drachms of alcohol, and six drachms of water. I have found this useful, but not so good as the Prussian blue injections.

501. Beale's **Prussian Blue** (*How to Work,* etc., p. 93).

Common glycerin	1 ounce.
Spirits of wine	1 ,,
Ferrocyanide of potassium	12 grains.
Tincture of perchloride of iron	1 drachm.
Water	4 ounces.

Dissolve the ferrocyanide in one ounce of the water and glycerin, and add the tincture of iron to another ounce. These solutions should be mixed together *very gradually,* and well shaken in a bottle, *the iron being added to the solution of the ferrocyanide of potassium.* Next, the spirit and the rest of water are to be added very gradually, the mixture being constantly shaken.

Injected specimens should be preserved in acidulated glycerin (*e. g.* with 1 per cent. acetic acid), otherwise the colour may fade.

502. Beale's **Acid Prussian Blue** (*ibid.,* p. 296).

Price's glycerine	2 fluid ounces.
Tinct. of sesquichloride of iron	10 drops.
Ferrocyanide of potassium	3 grains.
Strong hydrochloric acid	3 drops.
Water	1 ounce.

---

[*] See the remarks on Glycerin Masses, § 476.

Proceed as directed above, dissolving the ferrocyanide in one half of the glycerin, the iron in the other, and adding the latter drop by drop to the former. Finally add the water and HCl. Two drachms of alcohol may be added to the whole if desired.

I consider this a most admirable formula. The mass runs well, and has not so much tendency to exude from cut capillaries as might be supposed. Unfortunately it is a rather expensive preparation.

503. Ranvier's **Prussian Blue Glycerin Mass** (*Traité*, p. 120).—Consists of the Prussian blue fluid, § 490, mixed with one fourth of glycerin.

504. Other Colours.—Any of the colouring masses, §§ 480 to 482, or other suitable colouring masses, combined with glycerin, either dilute or pure.

505. Gamboge Glycerin (Harting, *Das Mikroskop*, 1866, 2 Theil, p. 124).—Gamboge rubbed up with water and added to glycerin; or a saturated alcoholic solution of gamboge added to a mixture of equal parts of glycerin and water. Any excess of alcohol may be got rid of by allowing the mass to stand for twenty-four hours.

Aqueous Masses.

506. Ranvier's **Prussian Blue Aqueous Mass** (*Traité*, p. 120).—The soluble Prussian blue, § 490, injected without any vehicle. It does not extravasate.

507. Müller's **Berlin Blue** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1865, p. 150).—Precipitate a concentrated solution of Berlin blue by means of ½ to 1 volume of 90 per cent. alcohol.

The precipitate is very finely divided; and the fluid may be injected at once.

508. Mayer's **Berlin Blue** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, 1888, p. 307).—A solution of 10 c.c. of tincture of perchloride of iron in 500 c.c. of water is added to a solution of 20 gr. of yellow prussiate of potash in 500 c.c. of water, allowed to stand for twelve hours, decanted, the deposit washed with distilled water on a filter until the washings come through dark blue (one to two days), and the blue dissolved in about a litre of water.

509. EMERY'S **Aqueous Carmine** (*ibid.*, 1881, p. 21).—To a 10 per cent. ammoniacal solution of carmine is added acetic acid, with continual stirring, until the colour of the solution changes to blood-red through incipient precipitation of the carmine. The supernatant clear solution is poured off, and injected cold without further preparation. The injected organs are thrown at once into strong alcohol to fix the carmine. For injection of fishes.

510. TAGUCHI'S **Indian Ink** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1888, p. 565; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1888, p. 503).—Chinese or (better) Japanese ink well rubbed up on a hone until a fluid is obtained that does not run when dropped on thin blotting-paper, nor form a grey ring round the drop. Inject until the preparation appears quite black, and throw it into some hardening liquid (not pure water).

I believe this will be found useful for work amongst Invertebrates, as well as for lymphatics, juice canals, and the like.

Celloidin Masses.

511. SCHIEFFERDECKER'S **Celloidin Masses** (*Arch. Anat. u. Phys.*, 1882 [*Anat. Abth.*], p. 201). (For Corrosion preparations.)—See previous editions of this work, or WHITMAN'S *Methods in Microscopical Anatomy.*

512. HOCHSTETTER'S **Modification of** SCHIEFFERDECKER'S **Mass** (*Anat. Anz.*, 1886, p. 51; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 159).

Other Masses.

513. BUDGE'S **Asphaltum Mass.**—See *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xiv, 1877, p. 70, or previous editions.

514. HOYER'S **Shellac Mass** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1876, p. 645).—For this and that of BELLARMINOW (*Anat. Anz.*, 1888, p. 650; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 150), see previous editions.

515. HOYER'S **Oil-colour Masses** (*Internat. Monatsschr. f. Anat.*, 1887, p. 341; see also *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1888, p. 80, and *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*,

1888, p. 848). PANSCH's **Starch Mass** (see *Arch. f. Anat. u. Entw.*, 1877, p. 480; 1880, pp. 232, 371; 1881, p. 76; 1882, p. 60; 1883, p. 265; and a modification of the same by GAGE, *Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, 1888, p. 195; and *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 1056). TEICHMANN's **Linseed-Oil Masses** (see *S. B. Math. Kl. Krakau Akad.*, vii, pp. 108, 158; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1882, pp. 125 and 716, and 1895, p. 704).

516. Natural Injections (ROBIN, *Traité*, p. 6).—To preserve these throw the organs into a liquid composed of 10 parts of tincture of perchloride of iron and 100 parts of water.

RETTERER and ZELLNER use solution of Müller, see *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1894, p. 641.

CHAPTER XXIV.

MACERATION AND DIGESTION.

Maceration.

517. Methods of Dissociation.—It is sometimes necessary, in order to obtain a complete knowledge of the forms of the elements of a tissue, that the elements be artificially separated from their place in the tissue and separately studied after they have been isolated both from neighbouring elements and from any interstitial cement-substances that may be present in the tissue. Simple teasing with needles is often insufficient, as the cement-substances are frequently tougher than the elements themselves, so that the latter are torn and destroyed in the process. In this case recourse must be had to maceration processes, by which is meant treatment with media which have the property of dissolving, or at least softening, the cement-substances or the elements of the tissue that it is not wished to study, whilst preserving the forms of those it is desired to isolate. When this softening has been effected, the isolation is completed by teasing, or by agitation with liquid in a test-tube, or by the method of tapping, which last gives in many cases (many epithelia, for instance) admirable results which could not be attained in any other way. The macerated tissue is placed on a slide and covered with a thin glass cover supported at the corners on four little feet made of pellets of soft wax. By tapping the cover with a needle it is now gradually pressed down, whilst at the same time the cells of the tissue are segregated by the repeated shocks. When the segregation has proceeded far enough, mounting medium may be added, and the mount closed.

The student will do well not to neglect this simple method.

A good material for making *wax feet* is obtained (Vosseler, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 461) by melting white wax and stirring into it one half to two thirds of Venice turpentine. Care must be taken if the operation be performed over a naked flame, as the turpentine vapours are inflammable.

518. Iodised Serum (§ 392).—The manner of employing it for maceration is as follows :—A piece of tissue smaller than a pea must be taken, and placed in 4 or 5 c.c. of weakly iodised serum in a well-closed vessel. After one day's soaking the maceration is generally sufficient, and the preparation may be completed by teasing or pressing out, as indicated above ; if not, the soaking must be continued, fresh iodine being added as often as the serum becomes pale by the absorption of the iodine by the tissues. By taking this precaution the maceration may be prolonged for several weeks.

These methods are intended to be applied to the preparation of *fresh* tissues, the iodine playing the part of a fixing agent with regard to protoplasm, which it slightly hardens.

519. Artificial Iodised Serum (§ 394).—RANVIER has been unable to obtain good results, for purposes of maceration, with it.

520. Alcohol.—RANVIER employs one third alcohol (1 part of 90 per cent. alcohol to 2 parts of water). Epithelia will macerate well in this in twenty-four hours. RANVIER finds that this mixture macerates more rapidly than iodised serum.

Other strengths of alcohol may be used, either stronger (equal parts of alcohol and water) or weaker ($\frac{1}{4}$ alcohol, for isolation of the nerve-fibres of the retina, for instance—THIN).

All observers are agreed that one third alcohol is a macerating medium of the highest order.

521. Salt Solution.—10 per cent. solution of sodium chloride is a well-known and valuable macerating medium.

522. MOLESCHOTT and PISO BORME's **Sodium Chloride and Alcohol** (MOLESCHOTT's *Untersuchungen zur Naturlehre*, xi, pp.

99—107; Ranvier, *Traité*, p. 242).—10 per cent. solution of sodium chloride, 5 volumes; absolute alcohol, 1 volume.

For vibratile epithelium Ranvier finds the mixture inferior to one third alcohol.

523. Formaldehyde.—Gage recommends the addition of 2 parts of formalin (40 per cent. solution of formaldehyde) to 1000 parts of normal salt solution. The mixture acts quickly, and yet retards deterioration for some time (quoted from Fish, *Proc. Am. Mic. Soc.*, xvii, 1895, p. 328).

524. Chloral Hydrate.—In not too strong solution, from 2 to 5 per cent., for instance, chloral hydrate is a mild macerating agent that admirably preserves delicate elements. Lavdowsky (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1876, p. 359) recommends it greatly for salivary glands. Hickson (*Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, 1885, p. 244) recommends it for the study of the retina of Arthropods.

525. Caustic Potash, Caustic Soda.—These solutions must be employed *strong*, 35 to 50 per cent. (Moleschott); so employed they do not greatly alter the forms of cells, whilst weak solutions destroy all the elements. (Weak solutions may, however, be employed for dissociating the cells of epidermis, hairs, and nails.) The strong solutions may be employed by simply treating the tissues with them on the slide. To make permanent preparations, the alkali should be neutralised by adding acetic acid, which forms with caustic potash acetate of potash, a well-known mounting medium (see Behrens, Kossel, and Schiefferdecker, *Das Mikroskop*, i, 1889, p. 156). See also Gage, *Proc. Amer. Soc. of Microscopists*, 1889, p. 35; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 3, 1890, p. 349.

526. Sulphocyanides of Ammonium and Potassium (Stirling, *Journ. Anat. and Phys.*, xvii, 1883, p. 208).—10 per cent. solution of either of these salts, for epithelium. Macerate small pieces for twenty-four to forty-eight hours.

527. Soulier's **Sulphocyanide Mixtures** (*Travaux de l'Inst. Zool. de Montpellier*, Nouv. Sér., 2, 1891, p. 171).—Soulier has found that Stirling's solution greatly deteriorates cellular elements, but that good results are obtained by *combining it with a fixing agent.*

The best results were obtained with a 2 per cent. solution of sulphocyanide combined with liquid of Ripart and Petit.

Soulier also obtained good results by combining liquid of Ripart and Petit with artificial serum of Kronecker instead of sulphocyanide, or with pepsin, eau de Javelle, 10 per cent. sulphate of soda, or 1·5 per cent. solution of caustic soda.

And he further found that good results are obtained by combining solutions of chloride of sodium, or solutions of caustic potash or soda, with any of the usual fixing agents.

528. Saliva, Artificial (for embryology of nerve and muscle) (Calberla, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xi, 1875, p. 449).

Second formula (the first is suppressed):

Potassium chloride	0·4
Sodium chloride	0·3
Phosphate of soda	0·2
Calcium chloride	0·2
	1·1

These are dissolved in 100 parts of water, saturated with carbonic acid, and the solution combined with half a volume of Müller's solution and a volume of water.

The Müller's solution may be replaced by a 2½ per cent. solution of chromate of ammonia. The best results were obtained when the solutions were saturated with the CO_2 just before using.

529. Landois's **Solution** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1885, p. 445).

Saturated sol. of neutral chromate of ammonia	5 parts.
Saturated sol. of phosphate of potash	5 ,,
Saturated sol. of sulphate of soda	5 ,,
Distilled water	100 ,,

Small pieces of tissue are macerated for one to three, or even four to five days, in the liquid, then brought for twenty-four hours into ammonia carmine diluted with one volume of the macerating liquid.

Gierke particularly recommends this liquid for all sorts of macerations, but especially for the central nervous system, for which he finds it superior to all other agents. It is also recommended for the same purpose by NANSEN (v. *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 2, 1888, p. 242).

530. Permanganate of Potash.—Has an action similar to that of osmic acid, but more energetic. Is recommended, either alone or combined with alum, as the best dissociating agent for the fibres of the cornea (ROLLETT, *Stricker's Handbuch*, p. 1108).

531. Chromic Acid.—Generally employed of a strength of about 0·02 per cent. Specially useful for nerve tissues and smooth muscle. Twenty-four hours' maceration will suffice for nerve tissue. About 10 c.c. of the solution should be taken for a cube of 5 mm. of the tissue (RANVIER).

532. Bichromate of Potash.—0·2 per cent.

EISIG (*Fauna u. Flora Golf. Neapel*, 16 Monog., 1887, p. 297) macerates Capitellidæ in 0·5 to 1 per cent. solution for months or years, a little thymol being added against mould.

533. Müller's Solution.—Diluted to same strength.

534. Müller's Solution and Saliva (see above, § 528).

535. BROCK'S **Medium** (for nervous system of Mollusca, *Intern. Monatssch. f. Anat.*, i, 1884, p. 349).—Equal parts of 10 per cent. solution of bichromate of potash and visceral fluid of the animal.

536. MÖBIUS'S **Media** (*Morph. Jahrb.*, xii, 1887, p. 174).

1. One part of sea water with 4 to 6 parts of 0·5 per cent. solution of bichromate of potash.

2. 0·25 per cent. chromic acid, 0·1 per cent. osmic acid, 0·1 per cent. acetic acid, dissolved in sea water. For Lamellibranchiata. Macerate for several days.

537. GAGE'S **Picric Alcohol** (*Proc. Amer. Soc. of Microscopists*, 1890, p. 120; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, pp. 87, 88).—95 per cent. alcohol, 250 parts; water, 750; picric acid, 1.

Recommended especially for epithelia and muscle. A few hours' maceration is generally sufficient.

538. Osmic and Acetic Acid (the HERTWIGS, *Das Nervensystem u. die Sinnesorgane der Medusen*, Leipzig, 1878, and *Jen. Zeitschr.*, xiii, 1879, p. 457; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, iii, 1880, p. 441, and [N. S.] iii, 1883, p. 732).

0·05 per cent.	osmic acid . .	1 part.
0·2 ,,	acetic acid . .	1 ,,

Medusæ are to be treated with this mixture for two or three minutes, according to size, and then washed in repeated changes of 0·1 per cent. acetic acid until all traces of free osmic acid are removed; they then remain for a day in 0·1 per cent. acetic acid, are washed in water, stained in BEALE'S carmine, and preserved in glycerin.

For *Actiniæ* the osmic acid is taken weaker, 0·04 per cent.; both the solutions are made with sea water; and the washing out is done with 0·2 per cent. acetic acid. If the maceration is complete, stain with picro-carmine; if not, with BEALE'S carmine.

539. BÉLA HALLER'S **Mixture** (*Morphol. Jahrb.*, xi, p. 321). —One part glacial acetic acid, 1 part glycerin, 2 parts water. Specially recommended for the central nervous system of Mollusca (Rhipidoglossa). A maceration of thirty to forty minutes may be sufficient, the cells showing less shrinkage than with other liquids.

540. Nitric Acid.—Most useful for the maceration of muscle. The strength used is 20 per cent. After twenty-four hours' maceration in this, isolated muscle-fibres may generally be obtained by shaking the tissue with water in a test-tube. Preparations may afterwards be washed with water and put up in strong solution of alum, in which they may be preserved for a long time (HOPKINS, *Proc. Amer. Soc. of Microscopists*, 1890, p. 165; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 86).

Maceration is greatly aided by heat, and at a temperature of 40° to 50° C. may be sufficiently complete in an hour (GAGE).

541. Nitric Acid and Chlorate of Potash (KÜHNE, *Ueber die peripherischen Endorgane*, etc., 1862; RANVIER, *Traité*,

p. 79).—Chlorate of potash is mixed, in a watch-glass, with four times its volume of nitric acid. A piece of muscle is buried in the mixture for half an hour, and then agitated with water in a test-tube, by which means it entirely breaks up into isolated fibres.

542. Nitric and Acetic Acid (APÁTHY, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 1898, p. 49).—3 vols. glacial acetic acid, 3 of nitric acid, and 20 each of water, glycerin, and absolute alcohol. Macerate leeches for twenty-four hours, and bring them into 70 per cent. alcohol, in which they swell; then after twenty-four hours, 50 per cent. glycerin, changed till the acid is removed.

543. Sulphuric Acid (RANVIER, *Traité*, p. 78).—Macerate for twenty-four hours in 30 grms. of water, to which are added 4 to 5 drops of concentrated sulphuric acid. Agitate. For nasal mucosa, crystalline, retina, etc.

ODENIUS found very dilute sulphuric acid to be the best reagent for the study of nerve endings in tactile hairs. He macerated hair-follicles for from eight to fourteen days in a solution of from 3 to 4 grains of "English sulphuric acid" to the ounce of water.

Hot concentrated sulphuric acid serves to dissociate horny epidermic structures (horn, hair, nails).

544. Oxalic Acid.—Maceration for many days in concentrated solution of oxalic acid has been found useful in the study of nerve endings.

545. SCHIEFFERDECKER'S **Methyl Mixture** (for the retina) (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxviii, 1886, p. 305).—Ten parts of glycerin, 1 part of methyl alcohol, and 20 parts of distilled water. Macerate for several days (perfectly fresh tissue).

546. Lysol (REINKE, *Anat. Anz.*, viii, 1892, p. 582; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 2, 1893, p. 224).—Lysol is an industrial product consisting in a solution of cresol in a neutral soap. REINKE uses a 10 per cent. solution in distilled water or in water containing alcohol and glycerin. Spermatozoa of the rat or cortical cells of hairs are said to be resolved into fibrils in a few minutes. Epithelial cells of salamandra are said to be dissociated instantaneously.

Digestion.

547. Beale's **Digestion Fluid** (*Archives of Medicine*, i, 1858, pp. 296—316).—The mucus expressed from the stomach glands of the pig is rapidly dried on glass plates, powdered, and kept in stoppered bottles. It retains its properties for years. Eight tenths of a grain will dissolve 100 grains of coagulated white of egg.

To prepare the digestion fluid, the powder is dissolved in distilled water, and the solution filtered. Or the powder may be dissolved in glycerin. The tissues to be digested may be kept for some hours in the liquid at a temperature of 100° F. (37° C.).

548. Brücke's **Digestion Fluid** (from Carnoy's *Biologie cellulaire*, p. 94).

Glycerinated extract of pig's stomach .	1 vol.
0·2 per cent. solution of HCl . . .	3 vols.
Thymol, a few crystals.	

549. Bickfalvi's **Digestion Fluid** (*Centrabl. f. d. med. Wiss.*, 1883, p. 833).—One grm. of dried stomachal mucosa is mixed with 20 c.c. of 0·5 per cent. hydrochloric acid, and put into an incubator for three or four hours, then filtered. Macerate the tissue in the solution for not more than half an hour to an hour.

550. Kuskow's **Digestion Fluid** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxx, p. 32; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 3, 1887, p. 384).—One part of pepsin dissolved in 200 parts of 3 per cent. solution of oxalic acid. The solution should be freshly prepared, and the objects (sections of hardened Ligamentum Nuchæ) remain in it at the ordinary temperature for ten to forty minutes.

551. Schiefferdecker's **Pancreatin Digestion Fluid** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 4, 1886, p. 483).—A saturated solution of the "Pankreatinum siccum," prepared by Dr. Witte, Rostock, is made in distilled water, cold, and filtered. Pieces of tissue (epidermis) are macerated in it for three to four hours at about body temperature.

552. KÜHNE'S **Trypsin Methods** (see *Unters. a. d. Phys. Inst. Univ. Heidelberg*, i, 2, 1877, p. 219).—Very complicated.

553. GEDOELST'S **Methods** (see *La Cellule*, iii, 1887, p. 117, and v, 1889, p. 126; also *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, i, 1890, p. 57).

CHAPTER XXV.

CORROSION, DECALCIFICATION, DESILICIFICATION, AND BLEACHING.

Corrosion.

554. Caustic Potash, Caustic Soda, Nitric Acid.—Boiling, or long soaking in a strong solution of either of these, is an efficient means of removing soft parts from skeletal structures (appendages of Arthropods, spicula of sponges, etc.).

555. Eau de Javelle (Hypochlorite of Potash) (NOLL'S **Method,** *Zool. Anzeig.*, 122, 1882, p. 528).—The usual method of preparing the skeleton of siliceous sponges and similar structures by corroding away the soft parts by means of caustic potash has many disadvantages, of which a principal one is that the spicula are not preserved in their normal positions. NOLL proceeds as follows:—A piece of sponge is brought on to a slide and treated with a few drops of eau de Javelle, in which it remains until all soft parts are dissolved. (With thin pieces this happens in twenty to thirty minutes.) The preparation is then cautiously treated with acetic acid, which removes all precipitates that may have formed, and treated with successive alcohols and oil of cloves, and finally mounted in balsam.

The same process is stated to be applicable to calcareous structures. I feel convinced, however, that if the structures are *delicate*, they will suffer, or be entirely destroyed.

556. Eau de Labarraque (Hypochlorite of Soda) may be used in the same way as eau de Javelle. Looss (*Zool. Anz.*, 1885, p. 333) finds that either of these solutions will completely dissolve chitin in a short time with the aid of heat. For this purpose the commercial solution should be taken concentrated and boiling (see also § 576).

If solutions diluted with 4 to 6 volumes of water be taken, and chitinous structures be macerated in them for twenty-four hours or more, according to size, the chitin is not dissolved, but becomes transparent, soft, and permeable to staining fluids, aqueous as well as alcoholic. The most delicate structures, such as nerve endings, are stated not to be injured by the treatment. The method is applicable to Nematodes and their ova (objects well known for the resistance they oppose to ordinary reagents), and also to the removal of the albumen from ova of Amphibia, etc.

557. Altmann's Corrosion Method (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1879, p. 471).—See previous editions, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1879, p. 610.

On injections for corrosions see Rejsek, *Bibliogr. Anat.*, iv, 1897, p. 229.

Decalcification.

558. Decalcification.—In order to obtain the best results, it is important to employ only material that has been *duly fixed and hardened*, and it is well not to put too much confidence in reagents that are said to have the property of hardening and decalcifying fresh material at the same time (Fish, *Ref. Handb. Med. Sci.*, Supp., p. 425).

Rousseau (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 207) imbeds fixed material in celloidin, brings it into 85 per cent. alcohol, decalcifies in a very acid mixture (15 to 40 per cent. of nitric acid in alcohol), washes out the acid in alcohol containing precipitated carbonate of lime, then cuts sections. This for Porifera, corals, Echinoderms, etc. Tissues are said to be well preserved.

559. Decalcification of Bone.—I take the following from Busch, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xiv, 1877, p. 481; see also the paper of Haug, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, i, 1891, p. 1.

The most widely used agent for decalcification is *hydrochloric* acid. Its action is rapid, even when very dilute, but it has the disadvantage of causing serious swelling of the tissues. To remedy this, chromic acid may be combined with it, or alcohol may be added to it. Or a 3 per cent. solution of the acid may be taken and have dissolved in it 10 to 15 per cent. of common salt. Or (WALDEYER) to a $\frac{1}{1000}$ per cent. solution of *chloride of palladium* may be added $\frac{1}{10}$ of its volume of HCl.

Chromic acid is also much used, but has a very weak decalcifying action and a strong shrinking action on tissues. For this latter reason it should never be used in solutions of more than 1 per cent. strength, and for delicate structures much lower strengths must be taken.

Phosphoric acid has been recommended for young bones.

Acetic, lactic, and *pyroligneous acids* have considerable decalcifying power, but cause great swelling. *Picric acid* has a very slow action, and is only suitable for very small structures.

560. Nitric Acid (BUSCH, *loc. cit.*).—To all other agents BUSCH prefers nitric acid, which causes no swelling and acts most efficaciously, whilst at the same time it does not injuriously attack tissue-elements.

One volume of chemically pure nitric acid of sp. gr. 1·25 is diluted with 10 vols. water. It may be used of this strength for very large and tough bones; for young bones it may be diluted down to 1 per cent.

Fresh bones are first laid for three days in 95 per cent. alcohol; they are then placed in the nitric acid, *which is changed daily,* for eight or ten days They must be *removed as soon as* the decalcification is complete, or else they will become stained yellow. When removed they are washed for one or two hours in running water and placed in 95 per cent. alcohol. This is changed after a few days for fresh alcohol.

Young and fœtal bones may be placed in the first instance in a mixture containing 1 per cent. bichromate of potash and $\frac{1}{10}$ per cent. chromic acid, and decalcified with nitric acid of 1 to 2 per cent., to which may be added a small quantity of chromic acid ($\frac{1}{10}$ per cent.) or bichromate of potash (1 per cent.). By putting them afterwards into alcohol the well-known green stain is obtained.

561. Nitric Acid and Alcohol.—3 per cent. of nitric acid in 70 per cent. alcohol. Soak specimens for several days or weeks. I do not know who first recommended this admirable medium (Mayer has long used 5 per cent. acid in 90 per cent. alcohol). Pure nitric acid, even if weak, readily exercises a gelatinising action on bone; whilst the addition of alcohol (or of *alum*) counteracts this action (Fish, *Ref. Handb. Med. Sci.*, Supp., p. 425).

Thoma (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, p. 191) takes five vols. of 95 per cent. alcohol and 1 volume pure concentrated nitric acid. Leave bones in this mixture, changing the liquid every two or three days, until thoroughly decalcified, which should happen, even with large bones, in two or three weeks. Wash out until every trace of acid is removed (*i. e.* for some days after no acid reaction is obtained with litmus paper) in 95 per cent. alcohol containing an excess of precipitated chalk. This may take eight to fourteen days, after which the tissues will stain well and may be treated as desired.

562. Nitric Acid and Alum (Gage, quoted from Fish, *loc. cit.* last §).—A saturated aqueous solution of alum is diluted with an equal volume of water, and to each 100 c.c. of the dilute solution is added 5 c.c. of strong nitric acid. Change every two or three days, until the decalcification is complete. For teeth this is said to be, perhaps, a better decalcifier than the alcohol mixture.

563. Hydrochloric Acid (see above, § 559).—Ranvier says that it may be taken of 50 per cent. strength, and then has a very rapid action. To counteract the swelling action of the acid, sodium chloride may be added (von Ebner), see Haug's paper quoted § 559. He takes either 100 c.c. cold saturated solution of sodium chloride in water, 100 c.c. water, and 4 c.c. hydrochloric acid. Preparations to be placed in this, and 1 to 2 c.c. hydrochloric acid added daily until they are soft. Or, 2·5 parts of hydrochloric acid, 500 of alcohol, 100 of water, and 2·5 of sodium chloride. Haug prefers the proportions of 1·0 to 5·0 of acid, 70 of alcohol, 30 of water, and 0·5 of salt.

564. Hydrochloric Acid and Chromic Acid (Bayerl, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1885, p. 35).—Equal parts of 3 per cent. chromic acid and 1 per cent. hydrochloric acid. For ossifying cartilage. Haug recommends equal parts of 1 per cent. hydrochloric acid and 1 per cent. chromic acid (*loc. cit.*).

565. Hydrochloric Acid and Glycerin.—Glycerin, 95; hydrochloric acid, 5 (Squire's *Methods and Formulæ*, p. 12).

566. Picric Acid should be taken saturated, and changed frequently. Its action is weak.

Picro-sulphuric acid should of course be avoided on account of the formation of gypsum.

Picro-nitric or Picro-hydrochloric Acid.—MAYER points out that their action is very rapid, and that the copiously evolved CO_2 often produces, mechanically, lesions in tissues; so that in many cases chromic acid is to be preferred, the more so as it more effectually hinders any *collapsing* of the structures that might result from the withdrawal of their supporting calcareous elements.

567. Phosphoric Acid.—10 to 15 per cent. (HAUG, *loc. cit.* in § 559). Somewhat slow, staining not good.

568. Lactic Acid.—10 per cent. or more. Fairly rapid, preserves well, and may be recommended (HAUG, *loc. cit.*).

569. Chromic Acid is employed in strengths of from 0·1 per cent. to 2 per cent. (but see § 559), the maceration lasting two or three weeks (in the case of bone). It is better to take the acid weak at first, and increase the strength gradually. In any way the action is extremely slow, and it is therefore better to take one of the mixtures of chromic acid with a more energetic agent.

570. Chromic and Nitric Acid.—FOL takes 70 volumes of 1 per cent. chromic acid, 3 of nitric acid, and 200 of water (*Lehrb.*, p. 112).

Even with the addition of nitric or hydrochloric acid the action is excessively slow, frequently requiring months to be complete.

571. Chromo-aceto-osmic Acid (VAN VER STRICHT, *Arch. Biol.*, ix, 1889, p. 29; and SCHAFFER, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 1893, p. 179).—Objects to be left in it for months, the liquid being changed at first every two days, afterwards less frequently. Structure well preserved.

572. Arsenic Acid.—4 per cent. aqueous solution, used at a temperature of 30° to 40° C. (SQUIRE'S *Methods and Formulæ, etc.*, p. 11).

573. Phloroglucin with Acids (ANDEER, *Centralbl. f. d. med. Wiss.*, xii, xxxiii, pp. 193, 579; *Intern. Monatsschr.*, i, p. 350; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, pp. 375, 539; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 504; HAUG, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1, 1891, p. 8; FERRERI, *ibid.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 236; *Bull. R. Accad. Med. di Roma*, 1892, p. 67).—This is the most rapid method of any. Phloroglucin by itself is not a solvent of lime salts;

its function in the mixtures given below is so to protect the organic elements of tissues against the action of the mineral acids that these can be used in a much more concentrated form than would be otherwise advisable.

Haug advises the following procedure :—Bring one grm. of phloroglucin into 10 c.c. of pure, not fuming nitric acid (1·4 sp. gr.), and warm very slowly and carefully with gentle agitation. There is formed a clear solution of (presumably) a nitrate of phloroglucin. Dilute the solution with 100 c.c. of distilled water, and add 10 c.c. of nitric acid. This gives a solution containing 20 per cent. of acid, which is the proper proportion. More water may be added to the solution, to make it up to 300 c.c., if nitric acid be also added in the proportion given. But the dilution must not be carried beyond this point, in order that the preservative action of the phloroglucin be not overmuch weakened. The process of decalcification in this solution is extremely rapid, and therefore should be carefully watched. Fœtal and young bones become quite soft in half an hour; small pieces of old and hard bones (femur, temporal bone) in a few hours. Teeth take longer, and may require, if time be an object, a solution made with 35 to 45 per cent. of nitric acid. Wash out for two days in running water. The tissues stain well.

The solution may be made with hydrochloric acid instead of nitric acid, 30 per cent. of acid being taken, and 0·5 per cent. of sodium chloride added.

For slow decalcification a 2 to 5 per cent. nitric acid solution may be used, or a mixture containing of phloroglucin 1 part, nitric acid 5, alcohol 70, and distilled water 30 parts.

For the labyrinth, Ferreri advises a mixture containing 1 grm. of phloroglucin, dissolved with the aid of heat in 10 grms. of hydrochloric acid with 100 of water, 200 of 70 per cent. alcohol being added after cooling. The mixture should be changed once a week during thirty to forty days.

Desilicification.

574. Hydrofluoric Acid (Mayer, *Zool. Anz.*, 1881, p. 593).—The objects are brought in alcohol into a glass vessel coated internally with paraffin (otherwise the glass would be corroded by the acid). Hydrofluoric acid is then added drop by drop (the operator taking great care to avoid the fumes, which attack mucous membranes with great energy). Small pieces of siliceous sponges will be completely desilicified in a few hours, or at most a day. The tissues do not suffer.

This dangerous method is best avoided as far as possible. As regards sponges, I would point out that if well imbedded good sections may be made from them without previous removal of the spicula. The spicula appear to be cut; probably they break very sharply when touched by the knife. Knives are of course not improved by cutting such sections.

Rousseau imbeds the objects in celloidin, as described § 558, then brings the block, in a covered caoutchouc dish, for a day or two into a mixture of 50 c.c. alcohol and 20 to 30 drops of hydrofluoric acid, and washes out the acid with alcohol containing carbonate of lithia in powder.

Bleaching.

575. Mayer's **Chlorine Method** (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* ii, 1881, p. 8).—Put into a glass tube a few crystals of chlorate of potash, add two or three drops of hydrochloric acid, and as soon as the green colour of the evolving chlorine has begun to show itself, add a few cubic centimetres of alcohol of 50 to 70 per cent. Now put the objects (which must have previously been soaked in alcohol of 70 to 90 per cent.) into the tube. They float at first, but eventually sink. They will be found bleached in from a quarter of an hour to one or two days, without the tissues having suffered. Only in obstinate cases should the liquid be warmed or more acid taken. Sections on slides may be bleached in this way. Instead of hydrochloric acid nitric acid may be taken, in which case the active agent evolved is oxygen instead of chlorine.

This method serves both for removing natural pigments, such as those of the skin or of the eyes of Arthropods, and also for bleaching material that has been blackened by osmic acid, and, according to renewed experiments of Mayer's, is to be preferred to the peroxide of hydrogen method.

For bleaching chitin of insects, not alcohol but water should be added to the chlorate and acid (Mayer, *Arch. Anat. Phys.,* 1874, p. 321).

576. Eau de Labarraque. Eau de Javelle (see §§ 555, 556).—These are bleaching agents. For the manner of preparing a similar solution see previous editions, or *Journ. de Microgr.*, 1887, p. 154, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 518. Of course the method cannot be used for bleaching soft parts which it is desired to preserve.

577. Peroxide of Hydrogen (Oxygenated Water) (POUCHET's method, M. DUVAL, *Précis*, etc., p. 234).—Macerate in glycerin, to which has been added a little oxygenated water (5 to 6 drops to a watch-glass of glycerin). SOLGER (*Centralbl. med. Wiss.*, xxi, 1883, p. 177) takes a 3 per cent. solution of peroxide. FÜRST (*Morph. Arb., Schwalbe*, vi, 1896, p. 529) points out that after a time it macerates.

The method serves both for removing pigments and for bleaching osmic and chromic material.

578 Peroxide of Sodium (CARAZZI, *Zool. Anz.*, 444, 1894, p. 135).—See *previous editions.*

579. Sulphurous Acid.—Prof. GILSON writes me that he finds alcoholic solution of sulphurous anhydride (SO_2) very convenient for the rapid decoloration of bichromate objects. A few drops suffice. MÖNCKEBERG and BETHE (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, liv, 1899, p. 135; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 2, 1899, p. 244) obtain the acid by adding to 10 c.c. of a 2 per cent. solution of bisulphide of sodium 2 to 4 drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Objects are put into the freshly prepared solution for six to twelve hours.

580. Permanganate of Potash.—ALFIERI (*Monitore Zool. Ital.*, viii, 1897, p. 57) bleaches celloidin sections of the choroid, etc., for eight to twenty-four hours in a 1 : 2000 solution of permanganate of potash, then washes them out for a few hours in a solution of oxalic acid of 1 : 300 strength, or weaker.

581. GRENACHER's **Mixture for Eyes of Arthropods and other Animals** (*Abh. nat. Ges. Halle-a.-S.*, xvi; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 244).

Glycerin	1 part.
80 per cent. alcohol	2 parts.

Mix and add 2 to 3 per cent. of hydrochloric acid.

Pigments [*i. e.* those in question] dissolve in this fluid, and so doing form a stain which suffices in twelve to twenty-four hours for staining the nuclei of the preparation.

582. Nitric Acid.—PARKER (*Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool.*, Cambridge, U.S.A., 1889, p. 173; see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1, 1891, p. 82) says that for eyes of scorpions the usual 5 to 10 per cent. solutions are not strong enough. He treats sections, fixed to the slide with SCHÄLLIBAUM's medium, for about a minute with a solution of up to 50 per cent. of nitric acid in alcohol, or, still better, with a 35 per cent. solution of a mixture of equal parts of nitric and hydrochloric acid in alcohol. To make the solution, the acid should be poured slowly into the alcohol (not *vice versâ*), and the mixture kept cool.

JANDER (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 2, 1898, p. 163) takes for removal of pigments FOL's chromo-nitric acid (§ 570); twelve to forty-eight hours is enough for small objects.

584. Caustic Soda.—RAWITZ (*Leitfaden*, p. 29) dissolves the pigment of the mantle of Lamellibranchiata by means of 3 to 9 drops of officinal caustic soda solution added to 15 to 20 c.c. of 96 per cent. alcohol.

CHAPTER XXVI.

EMBRYOLOGICAL METHODS.

585. Artificial Fecundation.—This practice, which affords the readiest means of obtaining the early stages of development of many animals, may be very easily carried out in the case of the Amphibia anura, Teleostea, Cyclostomata, Echinodermata, and many Vermes and Cœlenterata.

In the case of the Amphibia, both the female and the male should be laid open, and the ova should be extracted from the uterus and placed in a watch-glass or dissecting-dish, and treated with water in which the testes, or, better, the vasa deferentia, of the male have been teased.

Females of Teleostea are easily spawned by manipulating the belly with a gentle pressure; and the milt may be obtained from the males in the same way. (It may occasionally be necessary, as in the case of the Stickleback, to kill the male, and dissect out the testes and tease them.) The spermatozoa of fish, especially those of the Salmonidæ, lose their vitality very rapidly in water; it is therefore advisable to add the milt immediately to the spawned ova, then add a little water, and after a few minutes put the whole into a suitable hatching apparatus with running water.

Artificial fecundation of Invertebrates is easily performed in a similar way. It is sometimes possible to perform the operation under the microscope, and so observe the penetration of the spermatozoon and some of the subsequent phenomena, as has been done by FOL, the HERTWIGS, SELENKA, and others for the Echinodermata and other forms.

586. Superficial Examination.—The development of some animals, particularly some Invertebrates, may be to a certain extent followed by observations of the living ova under the microscope. This may usefully be done in the case of various Teleosteans, such as the Stickleback, the Perch, *Macropodus*, and several pelagic forms, and with *Chironomus*, *Asellus aquaticus*, Ascidians, *Planorbis*, many Cœlenterata, etc.

Some ova of Insecta and Arachnida which are completely opaque under normal conditions become transparent if they are placed in a drop of oil; if care be taken to let their surface be simply impregnated with the oil, the normal course of development is not interfered with (BALBIANI).

587. Preparation of Sections.—Osmic acid, employed either alone or in combination with other reagents, is an excellent fixing agent for small embryos, but not at all a good one for large ones. It causes cellular elements to shrink somewhat, and therefore bring out very clearly the slits that separate germinal layers, and any channels or other cavities that may be in course of formation.

In virtue of its property of blackening fatty matters, myelin amongst them, it is of service in the study of the development of the nervous system.

Chromic acid is indispensable for the study of the external forms of embryos; it brings out elevations and depressions clearly, and preserves admirably the mutual relations of the parts; but it does not always preserve the forms of cells faithfully, and is a hindrance to staining in the mass.

Picric liquids have an action which is the opposite of that of osmic acid; they cause cellular elements to swell somewhat, and thus have a tendency to obliterate spaces that may exist in the tissues. But notwithstanding this defect, the picric compounds, and especially Kleinenberg's picro-sulphuric acid, are amongst the best of embryological fixing agents.

RABL (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 165) highly recommends for embryos of Vertebrates, and also for other objects, the following platino-sublimate mixture:

Platinic chloride, 1 per cent. solution .	1 vol.
Saturated aqueous sublimate solution .	1 ,,
Distilled water	2 vols.

This serves for a large number of blastoderms and *young* embryos (Pisces, Amphibia, Aves, Mammalia). *Advanced* embryos of Teleostea ought to be fixed in the *warmed* mixture, in order to avoid rupture of the muscles and shrinkage of the chorda.

Rabl's picro-sublimate mixture has been given § 61. It is recommended especially for somewhat advanced embryos, such as embryo chicks from the third or fourth day, and other embryos of a similar size.

Boveri (*Verh. Physik. Med. Ges. Würzburg*, xxix, 1895, p. 4), in order to imbed and cut together numbers of ova of Echinoderms, wraps them in pieces of sloughed epidermis of *Cryptobranchus* (of course other Urodela will do). Sobotta (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, l, 1897, p. 31) takes pieces of amnios of Mammalia.

588. Reconstruction of Embryos from Sections.—The study of a series of sections of any highly differentiated organism is so complicated that it is often necessary to have recourse to elaborate methods of geometrical or of plastic reconstruction in order to obtain an idea or a model of the whole. These methods have now been brought to so high a degree of complexity that a volume rather than a paragraph would be necessary to describe them. See Born, "Die Plattenmodellirmethode," in *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1883, p. 591, and *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 4, 1888, p. 433; Strasser, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 2, 1886, p. 179, and iv, 2 and 3, pp. 168 and 830; Kastschenko, in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 2 and 3, 1887, pp. 235–6 and 353, and v, 2, 1888, p. 173; Schaper (*ibid.*, xiii, 1897, p. 446; Alexander, *ibid.*, p. 334, and xv, 1899, p. 446; Born and Peter, *ibid.*, xv, 1, p. 31; Johnston, *Anat. Anz.*, xvi, 1899, p. 261. For a method of Fol (*Lehrb.*, p. 35) see *previous editions*.

In simple cases it may be sufficient to adopt the plan described by Schaffer (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 3, 1890, p. 342). Careful outlines of the sections to be reconstructed are drawn on tracing-paper with the aid of the camera lucida, superposed, and held up against the light for examination by transparence. Vosmaer (*Anat. Anz.*, xvi, 1899, p. 269) draws on plates of celluloid, and sets them up in a rack for examination.

A method for simple graphic reconstructions without camera drawings is described by WOODWORTH (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1, 1897, p. 15): 1. Draw an axial line of the length of the object multiplied by the magnification employed. 2. Measure with a micrometer the greatest diameter of each section. 3. Plot these diameters down transversely on the axial line at distances corresponding to the thickness of the sections multiplied by the magnification. 4. Join the extremities of these diameters; this will give you an outline of the object. 5. Measure off on each section the nearest and farthest limits (from the margin) of the organs to be filled in, and plot them down on the transverse lines (3), and join the points as before, *i. e.* from section to section; this will give you the outlines of the organs.

This process is best applicable to reconstruction from transverse sections, but it can be applied to reconstruction from sections in any plane if the object can be provided with a plane of definition at right angles to the plane of section. This may be established by cutting off one end of the object, or the like (see also *Orientation*, §§ 133, 155).

Mammalia.

589. Rabbit—Dissection.—For the study of the early stages the ova must be sought for in the *tubæ* a certain number of hours after copulation. The dehiscence of the follicles takes place about ten hours after the first coitus. The *tubæ* and *cornua* having been dissected out should be allowed to cool, and remain until the muscular contractions have ceased. Then, with the aid of fine scissors or a good scalpel, all the folds of the genital duct are carefully freed from their peritoneal investment.

The tubæ are then (if the ova are still within them, which is the case up to the end of the third day after coition) laid out on a long slip of glass, and slit up longitudinally by means of a pair of fine, sharp scissors. By means of needles and forceps the tubal mucosa is spread out so as to smooth out its folds as much as possible, and is carefully looked over with a strong lens or with a lower power of the microscope. When the ova are found, a drop of some "indifferent" liquid is dropped on each, and it is carefully taken up with the point of a scalpel, a cataract needle, or a small pipette. They may be examined in the peritoneal fluid of the mother if the animal has been killed, or in its aqueous humour, or in amniotic liquid, or in blood-serum, or in KRONECKER's or other artificial serum.

If you have not been able to find the ova with the lens or the microscope, scrape off the epithelium of the tubal mucosa with a small scalpel, mix it with a little indifferent liquid, and look for the ova under the microscope by transmitted light.

Another method, employed by KÖLLIKER, consists in injecting solution of MÜLLER or weak osmic acid into the oviduct by means of a small syringe, and collecting the liquid that runs out in a series of watch-glasses, in which the ova can very easily be found by the microscope.

The same doe may be made to serve for two observations, at some hours' or days' interval. A longitudinal incision of 8 to 10 centimetres' length is made on the median or a lateral line of the abdomen; an assistant keeps the intestines in their place; a ligature is placed at the base of one of the uterine cornua, beneath the neck, and a second ligature around the mesometrium and mesovarium. The ovary, the tuba, and the cornu of that side are then detached with scissors. The abdomen is then closed by means of a few sutures passing through the muscle-layers and the skin. The animals support the operation perfectly well, and the development of the ova of the opposite side is not in the least interfered with. When it is desired to study these the animal may be killed, or may be subjected to a second laparotomy if it be desired to preserve it for ulterior observations.

During the *fourth*, *fifth*, and *sixth* days after copulation the ova of the rabbit are free in the uterine cornua; they are easily visible to the naked eye, and may be extracted by the same manipulations as those of the tubes. After the sixth day they are at rest in the uterus, but have not yet contracted adhesions with the mucosa, so that they can still be extracted whole. At this stage the parts of the cornua where the ova are lodged are easily distinguishable by their peculiar aspect, the ova forming eminences of the size of a pea. The cornua should be cut up transversely into as many segments as there are eminences, care being taken to have the ova in the centre of the segments. You then fix each segment by means of two pins on the bottom of a dissecting dish, with the mesometrial surface downwards and the ovular eminence upwards.

The dissecting-dish is then filled up with serum or liquid of Müller, or 0·1 per cent. solution of osmic acid, or Kleinenberg's picro-sulphuric acid, or nitric acid, or acetate of uranium solution. With a small scalpel a longitudinal incision is made on the surface of the ovular eminence, not passing deeper than the muscular layer; the underlying uterine mucosa is then gently dilacerated with two pairs of small forceps, and the ovum set free in the liquid.

From the moment the ova have become adherent to the uterine mucosa they can no longer be extracted whole. The embryo being always situated on the mesometrial surface, the ovular eminence is opened by a *crucial* incision, and the strip of mucosa to which the embryo remains adherent is fixed with pins on the bottom of the dish. Ed. v. Beneden (see *Arch. de Biol.*, v, fasc. iii, 1885, p. 378) has been able by operating in this way in serum of Kronecker, and keeping the whole at blood temperature, to observe the circulation of the embryo for hours together. (If this be desired to be done, the crucial incision should not be too extended, so as to leave the terminal sinus intact.)

Retterer (*C. R. Soc. de Biol.*, 1887, p. 99) advises that for ova of the seventh day the segment of uterus containing them be opened *on the mesometrial surface*, for at that date no adhesion has yet been contracted with that side. By running in liquid of Kleinenberg by means of a pipette between the ovum and the free surface of the uterus, the ovum may be got away in the shape of a closed vesicle.

590. Rabbit; **Microscopic Preparations**.—In order to make permanent preparations of the different stages of fecundation and segmentation, v. Beneden (*Arch. de Biol.*, i, 1, 1880, p. 149) recommends the following process:—The living ovum is brought into a drop of 1 per cent. osmic acid on a slide, and thence into solution of Müller (or bichromate of ammonia or solution of Kleinenberg). After an hour the liquid is changed, and the whole is put into a moist chamber, where it remains for two or three days. It is then treated with glycerin of gradually increasing strength, and at last mounted in pure glycerin acidified with formic acid. Ova may be stained after careful washing.

In order to bring out the outlines of blastoderm cells the living ovum may be brought into one third per cent. solution of nitrate of silver. After remaining there for half a minute to two minutes, according to the age of the vesicle, it is brought into pure water and exposed to the light. The preparations thus obtained are instructive, but blacken rapidly, and cannot be permanently preserved.

After the end of the third day the blastodermic vesicle can be opened with fine needles, and the blastoderm washed, stained, and mounted in glycerin or balsam; v. BENEDEN has also obtained good preparations by means of chloride of gold.

For embryonic areas and more advanced embryos KÖLLIKER recommends putting the ovum into 0·5 per cent. solution of osmic acid until it has taken on a somewhat dark tint, which happens in about an hour, and then treating it with successive alcohols for several hours. If the ovum be adherent to the uterine mucosa the portion of the membrane to which it is fixed should be left, stretched out with pins, in 0·1 per cent. solution of osmic acid for from four to six hours. The blastodermic vesicle can then easily be removed and further treated as before. For sections KÖLLIKER fixes with osmic acid. v. BENEDEN treats the ova for twenty-four hours with 1 per cent. solution of chromic acid, then washes well, and brings them through successive alcohols. Chromic acid has the advantage of hardening thoroughly the vesicle, and maintaining at the same time the epiblast cells perfectly adherent to the zona pellucida. v. BENEDEN also recommends the liquid of Kleinenberg. HENNEGUY writes that he frequently employs it for embryonic areas and embryos of various ages, always with excellent results. Fol's modification of the liquid of Flemming, and Ranvier and Vignal's osmic acid and alcohol mixture (§ 39 A) also give excellent results. For staining, HENNEGUY recommends borax-carmine, or Delafield's hæmatoxylin for small embryos; for large ones he found that his acetic acid alum-carmine was the only reagent that would give a good stain in the mass. I think carmalum is now indicated.

For sections imbed in paraffin.

See also WEYSSE, *Proc. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sci.*, 1894, p. 285 (blastodermic vesicle of *Sus scrofa*); SOBOTTA, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlv, 1895, p. 15 (fecundation and segmentation of the ovum of the mouse; fixation in FLEMMING's weak mixture, sections stained with BENDA's iron hæmatoxylin), and *Anat. Hefte*, 1 Abth., viii, 1897, p. 476 (Rabbit; fixation with liquid of Flemming or picro-sublimate with 2 per cent. acetic acid); BONNET, *ibid.*, ix, 1897, p. 426 (Dog; fixation in sublimate).

Aves.

591. Superficial Examination.—Instructions on this head are given in FOSTER and BALFOUR's *Elements of Embryology.* What follows here is given merely as being of more recent publication.

If it be desired to observe a living embryo by transmitted light, the egg should be opened under salt solution, as described below. A little of the white is then removed through the window, the egg is lifted out of the liquid, and a ring of gummed paper is placed on the yolk so as to surround the embryonic area. As soon as the paper adheres to the vitelline membrane, which will be in a few minutes, a circular incision is made in the blastoderm outside the paper ring. The egg is put back into the salt solution, and the paper ring removed, carrying with it the vitelline membrane and the blastoderm, which may then be brought into a watch glass or on to a slide and examined under the microscope (DUVAL).

592. Gerlach's Window Method (*Nature*, 1886, p. 497; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1886, p. 359).—Remove with scissors the shell from the small end of the egg; take out a little white by means of a pipette; the blastoderm will become placed underneath the window thus made, and the white that has been taken out may be replaced on it. Paint the margins of the window with gum mucilage, and build up on the gum a little circular wall of cotton wool; place on it a small watch glass (or circular cover-glass), and ring it with gum. When the gum is dry, the cover is further fixed in its place by means of collodion and amber varnish, and the egg is put back in its normal position in the incubator. The progress of the development may be followed up to the fifth day through the window.

A description of further developments of this method, with figures of special apparatus, will be found in *Anat. Anz.*, ii, 1887, pp. 583, 609; see also *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 3, 1887, p. 369.

593. Preparation.—During the first twenty-four hours of incubation it is extremely difficult to separate the blastoderm from the yolk, and they should be fixed and hardened together. In later stages, when the embryo is conspicuous, the blastoderm can easily be separated from the yolk, which is very advantageous. To open the egg, lay it on its side and break the shell at the broad end by means of a sharp rap; then carefully remove the shell bit by bit by breaking it away with forceps, working away from the broad end until the blastoderm is exposed. The egg should be opened in salt solution, then lifted up a little, so as to have the blastoderm above the surface of the liquid; the blastoderm is then treated with some fixing solution dropped on it from a pipette (1 per cent. solution of osmic acid, or Ranvier and Vignal's osmic acid and alcohol mixture, iodised serum, solution of Kleinenberg, 10 per cent. nitric acid, etc.). By keeping the upper end of the pipette closed, and the lower end in contact with the liquid on the blastoderm, the blastoderm may be kept well immersed for a few minutes, and should then be found to be sufficiently fixed to be excised. (Of course, if you prefer it, you can open the egg in a bath of any fixing liquid [10 per cent. nitric acid being convenient for this purpose] of such a depth as to cover the yolk; and having exposed the blastoderm, leave it till fixed [fifteen to twenty minutes]; but I think the procedure above described will generally be found more convenient.)

The egg is put back into the salt solution, and a circular incision made round the embryonic area. The blastoderm may then be floated out and got into a watch glass, in which it may be examined, or may be brought into a hardening liquid.

Before putting it into the hardening fluid, the portion of vitelline membrane that covers the blastoderm should be removed with forceps and shaking.

Fixation in 10 per cent. nitric acid has the advantage of greatly facilitating the separation of the blastoderm. The acid should be allowed to act for ten minutes, after which it is well to bring the preparation into 2 per cent. solution of alum (*cf.* Hofmann, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 485).

In order to counteract the turning up of the edges of the blastoderm that generally happens during the process of hardening, it is well to get the blastoderm spread out on the *convex* surface of a watch glass, and leave it so during the hardening.

For hardening, Henneguy prefers the osmic acid and alcohol mixture of Ranvier and Vignal, or Flemming's mixture followed by successive alcohols.

Stain and imbed by the usual methods.

Up to about the fiftieth hour embryos may be mounted entire in glycerin or balsam.

594. M. Duval's **Orientation Method** (*Ann. Sc. Nat.*, 1884, p. 3).—In the early stages of the development of the ova of Aves, before the appearance of the primitive streak, it is difficult to obtain a correct orientation of the hardened cicatricula, so as to be able to make sections in any desired direction. Duval, starting from the fact that during incubation the embryo is almost always found to be lying on the yolk in such a position that the big end of the egg is to the left, and the little end to the right of it, marks the position of the blastoderm in the following way.

With a strip of paper 5 millimetres wide and 50 millimetres long you construct a sort of triangular bottomless box. You lay this on the yolk, enclosing the cicatricula in such a position that the base of the triangle corresponds to what will be the anterior region of the embryo, and its apex to the posterior region; that is to say, if the big end of the egg is to your left, the apex of the triangle will point towards you. You now, by means of a pipette, fill the paper triangle with 0·3 per cent. solution of osmic acid. As soon as the preparation begins to darken you put the whole egg into weak chromic acid, remove the white, and put the rest into clean chromic acid solution for several days. After hardening you will find on the surface of the yolk a black triangular area, which encloses the cicatricula and marks its position; you cut out this area with scissors and a scalpel, and complete the hardening with chromic acid and alcohol.

See also the method of Hirota, *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1895, p. 118.

595. Kionka's **Orientation Method** (*Anat. Hefte*, 1 Abth., iii, 1894, p. 414; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 250).—Open the egg under salt solution, free it from the shell and albumen, and mark the poles by sticking into it, at about a centimetre from the blastoderm, two hedgehog spines, the one at the obtuse end being marked with a red thread. Put the whole for ten minutes into water at 90° C., then bring into 70 per cent. alcohol, and after twenty-four hours cut out the blastoderm and a little yolk round it in the shape of an isosceles triangle whose base marks the anterior end of the blastoderm. Paraffin sections stained with borax-carmine, washed out with acid alcohol containing one drop of concentrated solution of Orange G for each 5 c.c., which stains the yolk.

596. VIALLETON'S **Method** (*Anat. Anzeig.*, vii, 1892, pp. 624—627; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 889).—Egg opened in salt solution, blastoderm excised and removed to a glass plate, then treated with 1 per cent. nitrate of silver solution, washed with water, and put into 70 per cent. alcohol for six to twelve hours in the dark. Borax-carmine, alcohol, damar.

597. BÖHM and OPPEL (*Taschenbuch*, 1896, p. 80) fix ova with fairly large embryos in a mixture of 20 parts 3 to 5 per cent. nitric acid, and 1 to 2 parts 1 per cent. silver nitrate.

Reptilia.

598. General Directions.—The methods described above for birds are applicable to reptiles. During the early stages the blastoderm should be hardened *in situ* on the yolk; later the embryo can be isolated, and treated separately with fixatives, etc.

599. Special Cases.—MITSUKURI (*Journ. Coll. Sc. Japan*, vi, 1894, p. 229) fixes embryos of tortoises chiefly with picro-sulphuric acid. To study the blastoderm he removes the whole of the shell and as much as possible of the albumen, marks the place where the blastoderm lies with a hair, brings the whole, with the blastoderm uppermost, into the fixative, and after a few hours cuts out the blastoderm and further hardens it by itself. Young embryos generally adhere to the shell and can, therefore, be fixed in a piece of it made to serve as a watch glass, then after half an hour can be removed from it and further hardened alone. If the embryonal membranes have been formed, the shell may be scraped away at some spot and there treated with picro-sulphuric acid until a small hole is formed; then by working away from this spot, by means of scraping and dropping acid on to it, the whole of the shell may be removed.

Will (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. Morph.*, vi, 1892, p. 8) opens ova of *Platydactylus* in the fixative (chiefly chromic acid, or chromo-aceto-osmic acid with very little osmic acid) and hardens the embryos on the yolk; so also for *Cistudo* and *Lacerta* (1893 and 1895). Mehnert (*Anat. Anz.*, xi, 1895, p. 257) does not approve of these methods; for his own see *Morph. Arb. Schwalbe*, i, 1891, p. 370.

Strahl (*Arch. Anat. Phys., Anat. Abth.*, 1881, p. 123) uses picro-sulphuric acid for *Lacerta*.

Kupffer (*op. cit.*, 1882, p. 4) removes ova of *Lacerta, Emys, Coluber*, etc., from the oviduct, opens them under 0·1 per cent. osmic acid, removes as much of the albumen as possible, brings the yolk for twenty-four hours into chromic acid of 1 : 300 strength, then excises the blastoderm, washes, puts it for three hours into a mixture of glycerin, alcohol, and water in equal parts, and lastly into 90 per cent. alcohol.

See also *previous editions*.

Amphibia.

600. Preliminary.—In order to prepare ova for section-cutting, it is essential to begin by removing their thick coats of albumen. This may be done by putting them for two or three days into 1 per cent. solution of chromic acid, and shaking well; but ova thus treated are very brittle, and do not afford good sections. A better method is that described by Whitman (*Amer. Natural.*, xxii, 1888, p. 857), and by Blochmann (*Zool. Anz.*, 1889, p. 269). Whitman puts the fixed eggs into a 10 per cent. solution of sodium hypochlorite diluted with 5 to 6 volumes of water, and leaves them there till they can be shaken free, which happens (for *Necturus*) in a few minutes. Blochmann takes *eau de Javelle* (potassium hypochlorite), and dilutes it with 3 to 4 volumes of water, and agitates the eggs previously fixed with solution of Flemming, for fifteen to thirty minutes in it. Some other means of attaining the same end are given in the following paragraphs.

A great difficulty with the ova of Amphibia lies in their becoming extremely brittle on imbedding in paraffin. Carnoy and Lebrun (*La Cellule*, xii, 1897, p. 212) fix ovaries or ovarian ova for fifteen minutes to three quarters of an hour in Gilson's mercuro-nitric fluid, § 70, and preserve them in 80 per cent. alcohol. To imbed, they are brought for a quarter of an hour into 95 per cent. alcohol, five minutes in absolute alcohol, then into a mixture of alcohol and chloroform in equal parts, and as soon as they sink in that they are put into pure chloroform. Paraffin is added to the chloroform, enough to about double the volume of the whole, and the whole is put for about three hours into a stove at 35° C. Lastly, the ova are put *for not more than five minutes* into a bath of pure paraffin at 52° C.

See also Morgan, *Devel. of the Frog's Egg*, New York, 1897, p. 171.

601. Axolotl.—The ova are easier to prepare than those of the Anura, because the yoke is separated from the albuminous layer by a wide space filled with a liquid that is not coagulated by reagents. Put the eggs for a few hours into picro-sulphuric acid, then pierce the inner chorion with fine scissors or needles, and gently press out the ovum. Harden in alcohol.

602. Triton (Scott and Osborn, *Quart. Journ. Mic. Soc.*, 1879, p. 449).—The albumen is here present in the form of several concentric coats, which are very delicate. Incise each of them separately with fine scissors, turn out the ovum, and fix it. Solution of Kleinenberg is the reagent that gives the best results.

Hertwig (*Jen. Zeit. f. Naturw.*, 1881–2, p. 291) puts the eggs into a mixture of equal parts of 2 per cent. acetic acid and 0·5 per cent. chromic acid. After ten hours he incises the membranes, opening one end of the inner chorion, and turns out the embryos and brings them into successive alcohols.

Braus (*Jena Zeit.*, xxix, 1894, p. 443) fixes ova to a piece of liver by passing an entomological pin through the albumen, then incises the albumen and turns out the ova into fixing liquid.

Michaelis (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlviii, 1896, p. 528) fixes ova in a mixture of concentrated sublimate solution and concentrated picric acid, twenty parts each, glacial acetic acid 1, and water 40, but removes the envelopes before bringing into alcohol.

603. **Salamandra** (Rabl, *Morphol. Jahrb.*, xii, 2, 1886, p. 252).—For his more recent methods see § 587.

604. **Rana** (O. Hertwig, *Jen. Zeit. f. Naturw.*, xvi, 1883, p. 249).—The ova are thrown into nearly boiling water (90° to 96° C.) for five or ten minutes. The albuminous envelope of the ovum is then cut open, and the ovum extracted under water. The ova are then brought into 0·5 per cent. chromic acid for not more than twelve hours, or into alcohol of 70, 80, and 90 per cent. Chromic acid makes ova brittle and attacks the pigment, whilst alcohol preserves it, which is frequently important for the study of the germinal layers.

Morgan (*Amer. Nat.*, xxv, 1891, p. 759 ; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 284) has the following. During the periods in which it is difficult or impossible to remove the inner jelly-membrane the eggs can be freed as follows :—Each egg is cut out with scissors from the general jelly-mass, and put for from one to twelve hours into saturated solution of picric acid in 35 per cent. alcohol containing " the same amount of sulphuric acid as in Kleinenberg's solution." Wash for several hours in several changes of alcohol, beginning with 35 per cent., and increasing the strength gradually up to 70 per cent. About the second day in the 70 per cent. alcohol the inner membrane begins to swell, and on the third or fourth day may be pierced by a needle, and the egg removed and placed in 80 per cent. alcohol (see also Whitman, *Meth. of Research*, p. 156 ; and Schultze, *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xlv, 1887, p. 177).

605. **Sulphate of Copper Hardening Liquid** (Fol, *Lehrbuch*, p. 106, after Remak and Goette) ; for hardening ova of Amphibia :

2 per cent. solution of sulphate of copper	50 c.c.
Alcohol of 25 per cent.	50 ,,
Rectified wood vinegar	35 drops.

Pisces.

606. Teleostea in General.—The ova of many of the bony fishes can be studied by transmitted light in the living state; but those of the Salmonidæ must be hardened and removed from their envelopes for the study of the external forms of the embryo.

To this end the ova may be put for a few minutes into water containing 1 to 2 per cent. of acetic acid, and thence into 1 per cent. chromic acid. After three days the capsule of the ovum may be opened at the side opposite to the embryo, and be removed with fine forceps. The ovum is put for twenty-four hours into distilled water, and then into successive alcohols. Embryos thus prepared show no deformation, and their histological elements are fairly well preserved. But the vitellus rapidly becomes excessively hard and brittle, so as greatly to interfere with section-cutting.

The following processes give good results as regards section-cutting.

Put the ova for a few minutes into 1 per cent. osmic acid; as soon as they have taken on a light brown colour bring them into Müller's solution. Open them therein with fine scissors—the vitellus, which immediately coagulates on contact with air, dissolves, on the contrary, in Müller's solution—and the germ and cortical layer can be extracted from the capsule of the ovum. They should be left in clean Müller's solution for a few days, then washed with water for twenty-four hours, and brought through successive alcohols.

Another method (HENNEGUY) is as follows:—The ova are fixed in solution of Kleinenberg containing 10 per cent. of acetic acid. After ten minutes they are opened in water containing 10 per cent. of acetic acid, which dissolves the vitellus. The embryos are put for a few hours into pure solution of Kleinenberg, and are then brought through alcohol of gradually increasing strength.

607. KOLLMANN'S **Fixative** (KOLLMANN, *Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys.*, 1885, p. 296).

Bichromate of potash	5 per 100.
Chromic acid	2 ,,
Concentrated nitric acid	2 ,,

For ova of Teleostea. Fix for twelve hours, wash with water for twelve hours, then remove the chorion, and put the ova into 70 per cent. alcohol.

608. Rabl's **Method** (see § 587).

609. Kowalewsky's **Method** (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xliii, 1886, p. 434, or *Third Edition*).

610. Salmonidæ.—Harrison (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlvi, 1895, p. 505) fixes embryos of *Salmo* in saturated solution of sublimate in 5 per cent. acetic acid.

Felix (*Anat. Hefte*, 1 Abth., viii, 1897, p. 252) fixes the ova for three quarters of an hour in acetic sublimate, but dissected-out embryos in liquid of Zenker, the vitellus being removed from the abdominal cavity with a brush.

Kopsch (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, li, 1897, p. 184), on the suggestion of Virchow, fixes the embryos for five or ten minutes in a mixture of 1 part of chromic acid to 50 of glacial acetic acid and 450 of water, then removes them into chromic acid of 1 : 500, and as soon as may be removes the capsule and yolk under salt solution, and completes the hardening in the chromic acid or saturated sublimate solution.

Similarly Behrens (*Anat. Hefte*, H. 32, 1898, p. 227; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 332). He leaves the ova for about an hour in the chromic acid, not much more anyway; he opens them in the salt solution from the antipolar side, and frees the embryo from the yolk that remains by blowing the latter away with a fine-pointed glass tube; after which the embryo can be easily detached from the capsule. It is then removed for about three hours into a mixture of 1 part saturated picric acid solution, 1 part saturated sublimate solution, and 2 parts distilled water, after which it is treated in the usual way with iodine and successive alcohols.

611. Rabl-Rückhard's **Method for Salmonidæ** (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Entw.*, 1882, p. 118).—Fix in 10 per cent. nitric acid for fifteen minutes. Remove the membranes to avoid deformation of the embryos, and put the ova back into the acid for an hour. Wash out in 1 to 2 per cent. solution of alum for an hour, and harden in alcohol.

Modification of this method by Goronowitsch (see *Morph. Jahrb.*, x, 1884, p. 381).

612. Selachii—SCHMIDT's Method (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 3, 1899, p. 332).—Fix in acetic sublimate.

613. Pelagic Fish Ova—WHITMAN's Method (*Amer. Natural.*, xvii, 1883, pp. 1204–5; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], iii, 1883, p. 912; and *Methods of Research*, etc., p. 152).—Fix by treatment first for five to ten minutes with a mixture of equal parts of sea water and ½ per cent. osmic acid solution, and then for one or two days with a solution (due to Eisig) of equal parts of 0·25 per cent. platinum chloride and 1 per cent. chromic acid. Prick the membrane before transferring to alcohol. See also AGASSIZ and WHITMAN, in *Proc. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sciences*, xx, 1884; and COLLINGE, *Ann. and Mag. Nat. Hist.*, x, 1892, p. 228; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 883.

RAFFAELE (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1895, p. 169) fixes chiefly with liquid of Hermann (1 to 2 days), or with mixture of Mingazzini (absolute alcohol 1, acetic acid 1, saturated sublimate solution in water 2).

614. Amphioxus.—SOBOTTA (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, l, 1897, p. 20) advises fixing for twenty-four hours in liquid of Flemming.

Tunicata.

615. Ova.—DAVIDOFF (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ix, 1, 1889, p. 118) fixes the ova of *Distaplia* with a mixture of 3 parts of saturated solution of corrosive sublimate and 1 of glacial acetic acid. The ova to remain in it for from half an hour to an hour, and be then washed for a few minutes in water and brought through successive alcohols. Another reagent, almost as good, consists of 3 parts of saturated solution of picric acid and 1 of glacial acetic acid, the objects to remain in it for three to four hours, and then be brought into 70 per cent. alcohol.

CASTLE (*Bull. Mus. Harvard Coll.*, xxvii, 1896, p. 213) advises for ova of *Ciona* liquid of Perényi for twenty minutes, followed by 70 per cent. alcohol for twenty-four hours, and for the larvæ picro-nitric acid.

616. Test-Cells of Ascidians (MORGAN, *Journ. of Morphol.*, iv, 1890, p. 195).—Tease fresh ovaries in very weak osmic acid, wash in distilled water, treat for half an hour with 1 per cent. silver nitrate, wash for half an hour in 2 per cent. acetic acid, and reduce in sunlight. Imbed in paraffin. By this process the *limits* of the follicle cells are demonstrated.

617. Buds.—PIZON (*Ann. Sc. Nat.*, xix, 1893, p. 5) studies the gemmation of the composite Ascidians either on entire corms, which he first bleaches with peroxide of hydrogen (which acts less brutally than *eau de Javelle,* but the bubbles that arise must be removed with an air pump), and then stains; or by making sections, after anæsthetising the colonies with cocain of 1 : 1000, fixing in glacial acetic acid or picro-sulphuric or liquid of Flemming, and staining *in toto* with borax carmine or alum carmine, or with a strong solution of methylen blue in alcohol of 90 or 100 per cent. (after Bernard, *ibid.*, ix, 1890, p. 97).

Ritter (*Journ. of Morph.*, xii, 1896, p. 150) recommends for fixing *Perophora* and *Goodsiria* picro-sulphuric acid.

Bryozoa.

618. Statoblasts.—Braem (*Bibl. Zool., Chun and Leuckart,* 6 Heft, 1890, p. 95) fixes statoblasts of *Cristatella* with hot concentrated solution of sublimate for ten minutes, brings them into water and there incises them with a razor, and after half an hour passes them gradually into alcohol. He stains with picro-carmine.

Mollusca.

619. Cephalopoda (Ussow, *Arch. de Biol.*, ii, 1881, p. 582).—Segmenting ova are placed, without removal of the membranes, in 2 per cent. solution of chromic acid for two minutes, and then in distilled water, to which a little acetic acid (one drop to a watch-glassful) has been added, for two minutes. If an incision be now made into the egg-membrane the yolk flows away and the blastoderm remains; if any yolk still cling to it, it may be removed by pouring away the water and adding more.

Watasé (*Journ. of Morphol.,* iv, 1891, p. 249; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 152) kills the ova in the macerating mixture of the Hertwigs (§ 538), and as soon as the blastoderm turns white and opaque removes it under dilute glycerin. Treatment with liquid of Perényi is recommended for surface views.

Vialleton (*Ann. Sc. Nat.*, vi, 1887, p. 168) brings ovarian ova of Sepia into a freshly-prepared mixture of picro-sulphuric acid and 2 per cent. solution of bichromate of potash in equal parts, and after one or two minutes incises them in the equator, fixes for an hour and a half in picro-sulphuric acid the halves that contain the formative vitellus, separates this from the nutritive vitellus with a spatula, spreads it out, and hardens it in alcohol of 70 to 90 per cent. He fixes entire ova in liquid of Flemming or osmic acid.

Korschelt (*Festschrift Leuckart*, Leipzig, 1892, p. 348) fixes advanced embryos of Loligo in liquid of Flemming, sublimate, picro-sulphuric acid, or 0·2 per cent. chromic acid. This last is specially good for young embryos if it is washed out with many changes of picric acid.

620. Gastropoda (Henneguy).—Ova of *Helix* may be fixed for from four to six hours in Mayer's picro-nitric acid. The carbonate of lime that encrusts the external membrane is thus dissolved, and the albuminous coat of the egg is coagulated. The egg is opened with needles, the albumen comes away in bits, and the embryo can be removed. Treat with successive alcohols, and imbed in paraffin.

Miss A. Henchman (*Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harvard*, xx, 1890, p. 171; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 274; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, p. 216) fixes ova of *Limax* with 0·33 per cent. chromic acid, or with liquid of Perényi. It is best to remove only the outer envelope before putting into the chromic acid, the inner membrane being removed after two or three minutes therein. Where Perényi is used the membranes must be removed first, as the albumen will else coagulate in such a way as to prevent the removal of the embryos. For the manner of obtaining the ova, see *previous editions.*

Meisenheimer (*Zeit. wiss. Zool.*, lxii, 1896, p. 417) dissects out the embryos of *Limax* and fixes them with picro-sulphuric acid or concentrated sublimate. Advanced embryos are first got into extension by means of 2 per cent. cocain, or are rapidly killed with hot sublimate.

Schmidt (*Entw. Pulmonaten*, Dorpat, 1891, p. 4) fixes the ova *in toto* with concentrated sublimate, and dissects them out afterwards.

Similarly Kofoid (*Bull. Mus. Harvard Coll.*, xxvii, 1895,

p. 35). Or, preferably, the ova are put into salt solution, the shell removed, the albumen removed with a pipette full of salt solution, which dissolves it; the ova are then fixed for one minute in Fol's modification of liquid of Flemming, and brought direct into Orth's picro-lithium-carmine.

See also WASHBURN, *Amer. Nat.*, xxviii, 1894, p. 528 (liquid of Flemming or 0·3 per cent. chromic acid, or 1 per cent. osmic acid, followed by liquid of Merkel).

CONKLIN (*Journ. of Morph.*, xiii, 1897, p. 7) fixes ova of *Crepidula* for fifteen to thirty minutes in picro-sulphuric acid, and stains with dilute acidified hæmatoxylin of Delafield.

KOSTANECKI and WIERZEJSKI (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlvii, 1896, p. 313) fix the spawn of *Physa fontinalis* either in 1½ to 2 per cent. nitric acid, or in "sublimate and 3 per cent. nitric acid in the proportion of 2 : 1," and bring through successive alcohols. They imbed entire ova in paraffin, but isolated embryos in celloidin.

CARAZZI (*Anat. Anz.*, xvii, 1900, p. 78) for *Aplysia* takes 5 per cent. sublimate with 2·5 per cent. glacial acetic acid.

621. CHITON, see METCALF, *Stud. Biol. Lab. Johns Hopkins Univ.*, v, 1893, p. 251, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1894, p. 531.

622. Lamellibranchiata.—STAUFFACHER (*Jena Zeit.*, xxviii, 1893, p. 196) fixes embryos of *Cyclas* in sublimate, stains with hæmalum, and cuts in paraffin.

LILLIE (*Journ. of Morph.*, x, 1895, p. 7) fixes ova of *Unio* for ten to twenty minutes in liquid of Perényi, and preserves them in 70 per cent. alcohol, or advanced embryos with liquid of Merkel or sublimate, larvæ with 0·05 to 0·1 per cent. osmic acid, preserving them in glycerin. Glochidia may be cut with the shell in paraffin of 58° melting-point; they may be anæsthetised with chloral hydrate before fixing.

Arthropoda.

623. Fixation of Ova.—In most cases the ova of Arthropods are fixed by heat in a more satisfactory way than by any other means. This may be followed either by alcohol or some watery hardening agent. If it be desired to avoid heating, picro-sulphuric acid may be tried.

624. Removal of Membranes.—This is frequently very difficult, and it may often be advisable not to attempt to remove them, but to soften them with *eau de Javelle* or *eau de Labarraque* (see § 556).

MORGAN (*Amer. Natural.*, xxii, 1888, p. 357; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 1, 1889, p. 69) recommends (for the ova of *Periplaneta*) *eau de Labarraque* diluted with five to eight volumes of water, and slightly warmed. Thus used it will soften the chitin membranes sufficiently in thirty to sixty minutes, if employed before fixing. Fixed ova take longer. The fluid must, of course, not be allowed to penetrate into the interior of the ovum.

625. HENKING'S **Methods** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, p. 156).—HENKING generally kills ova by plunging them into hot water, or by pouring hot water on to them in a watch glass, and then removing into 70 per cent. alcohol. But he finds that the preservation of structures by this method is far from being perfectly satisfactory, cell contours being not at all sharply brought out by it, and achromatic cell structures being but imperfectly preserved. He finds that in some cases ova may be fixed with liquid of Flemming, which then gives incomparably better results in these respects. Suitable ova may be put into liquid of Flemming (HENKING does not say which formula) for half an hour, then for two hours into the same diluted with three volumes of water, then treated with alcohol as usual. BOVERI'S picro-acetic acid was found not to penetrate the membranes.

HENKING thinks that *eau de Javelle* for softening membranes is best avoided. They should either be dissected away or left *in situ*, and cut with the rest of the egg, according to the nature of the case. The great obstacle to section-cutting is the brittleness of the yolk. This difficulty may be overcome as follows:—After fixing and treating with alcohol, prick the chorion and stain with borax-carmine. Put the stained ova for twelve hours into a mixture containing 20 c.c. of 70 per cent. alcohol, one drop of concentrated hydrochloric acid, and a knife pointful of pepsin (it is not necessary that all the pepsin should be dissolved). The ova may then be treated with alcohol, oil of bergamot, and paraffin, and (with some exceptions, amongst which is *Bombyx mori*) will be found to cut without crumbling.

The contents of fresh ova may conveniently be studied by means of the following fluid:

Distilled water	80 c.c.
Glycerin	16 ,,
Formic acid	3 ,,
1 per cent. osmic acid	1 ,,
Dahlia	0·04 grm.

The eggs are simply teased in a drop of the liquid, and a cover-glass put on. If it be desired to preserve the preparation, nothing more is necessary than to lute the cover-glass.

626. Diptera (Henking, *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xlvi, 1888, p. 289; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1889, p. 59).—Ova still contained within the fly may be fixed by plunging the animal for some time into boiling water, then dissecting out and bringing them into 70 per cent. alcohol. Laid eggs may have boiling water poured over them, or be put into solution of Flemming in a test-tube which is plunged into boiling water until the eggs begin to darken (about a minute). Cold solution of Flemming easily causes a certain vacuolisation of the contents of the ova. Open the ova at the larger end, stain with borax-carmine for fifteen to thirty hours, and cut in paraffin.

See also (for *Chironomus*) Ritter, *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, i, 1890, p. 408; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1, 1891, p. 87 (strings of ova fixed with hot 30 per cent. alcohol containing a little sublimate, and stained in the mass by immersion for several days in picro-carmine).

Bruel (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. Morph.*, x, 1897, p. 569) fixes larvæ and pupæ in absolute alcohol heated to 70° to 75° C., and containing "a little" sublimate. See also Van Rees, *ibid.*, iii, 1888, p. 10.

Bengtsson (*Handl. Fysiogr. Sællsk. Lund.*, viii, 1897) finds hot alcoholic solution of sublimate (Frenzel's, § 70) the best fixative for larvæ of *Phalacrocera*. He could not succeed in softening the chitin with *eau de Javelle*.

627. Lepidoptera (Bobretzky, *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, 1879, p. 198).—Ova are slightly warmed in water and put for sixteen to twenty hours in 0·5 per cent. chromic acid. The membranes can then be removed, and the ova brought for a few hours into absolute alcohol, stained with carmine, and cut.

628. Blattida (PATTEN, *Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, 1884, p. 549).—The ova or larvæ are placed in cold water, which is gradually raised to 80° C. You leave off heating as soon as the ova have become hard and white. Pass very gradually through successive alcohols, beginning with 20 per cent.

WHEELER (*Journ. of Morph.*, iii, 1889, p. 292; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 250) dissects out ovarian ova in salt solution and fixes in liquid of Perényi (fifteen minutes), then treats with alcohol, and stains with borax-carmine. Laid eggs may be killed by Patten's method. After heating, the two lips of the crista of the capsule may be separated with fine forceps and pieces of the walls torn away, and the eggs pushed out of the compartments formed by their choria and hardened as desired. Good results are also obtained by heating to 80° C. for ten minutes in liquid of Kleinenberg, and preserving in 70 per cent. alcohol. This causes the envelopes to dilate and stand off from the surface of the egg, so that they can easily be dissected away.

HEYMONS (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, liii, 1892, p. 434; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 343), for young embryos, incises the cocoon at the end by which it adheres in the body of the mother, brings it for two minutes into water heated to 90° C., and opens in Flemming, in which the embryo is dissected out.

629. Coleoptera.—LÉCAILLON (*Arch. Anat. Micr.*, 1, 1897, p. 208) fixes ova for twenty-four hours in liquid of Zenker warmed to 40° C.

630. Phalangida (HENKING, *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xlv, 1886, p. 86; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 4, 1886, p. 470).—Fix with boiling water or Flemming. Preserve the ova in 90 per cent. alcohol. To open the chorion, bring them back into 70 per cent. alcohol, which causes them to swell up so that the chorion can easily be pierced with needles, and the ovum turned out.

631. Araneida.—KISHINOUYE (*Journ. Coll. Sci. Imp. Univ. Japan*, iv, 1891, p. 55; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 215) fixes in water warmed to 70° or 80° C., puts into 70 per cent. alcohol, and after twenty-four hours therein pierces the membranes and passes through stronger alcohol. Stain with alcoholic cochineal or picro-carmine, and imbed in paraffin.

See also LOCY, *Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harvard*, xii, 3, 1886; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 2, 1886, p. 242. Fix by hot water. The liquid of Perényi may also be used; it has the advantage of not making the yolk so granular.

632. Scorpionidea.—BRAUER (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, lvii, 1894, p. 405) removes ovarian tubes from living *Euscorpius*, and fixes the small ova for half an hour to an hour in liquid of Flemming, then dissects out the ova. He puts tubes with more advanced embryos for twenty-four hours into one fifth per cent. chromic acid, or for a minute to a minute and a half into almost boiling water, and then for two to six hours into chromo-acetic acid, or for ten to twenty minutes into liquid of Flemming. The chromic acid material is only good for surface views.

633. Tardigrada.—ERLANGER (*Morph. Jahrb.*, xxii, 1895, p. 493) fixes the ova (and the animals themselves) in liquid of Flemming or in picro-sulphuric acid containing 1 drop of 1 per cent. osmic acid per c.c., or in concentrated sublimate solution with 20 per cent. acetic acid. The two first require to be bleached with warm peroxide of hydrogen.

634. Limulus.—KINGSLEY (*Journ. of Morph.*, vii, 1892, p. 38) warms the ova in sea water to 70° or 75° C., and then brings them into alcohol of 30 to 70 per cent. For early stages he marks the position of the embryo with Indian ink on the chorion; the mark resists alcohol. Early stages should be imbedded in celloidin, later ones in paraffin. For the preparation of surface views see *op. cit.*, xii, 1896, p. 23.

Similarly KISHINOUYE, *Journ. Coll. Sc. Japan*, v, 1893, p. 56.

635. Astacus (REICHENBACH, *Abk. Senckenberg. Ges. Frankfurt*, xiv, 1886, p. 2; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 400).—Fix in water gradually warmed to 60° or 70° C. (if the chorion should burst, that is no evil), harden for twenty-four hours in 1 to 2 per cent. bichromate of potash or 0·5 per cent. chromic acid, wash out for the same time in running water, and bring into alcohol. Remove the chorion, and remove the embryo from the yolk by means of a sharp knife.

636. Amphipoda.—Della Valle (*Fauna u. Flora Golf. Neapel*, xx, Monog., 1893, p. 170) puts ova of *Orchestia* by means of a pipette into boiling, cold-saturated sublimate solution, removes them instantly into sea water, and thence into weak alcohol. If the chorion does not burst of itself it must be pricked with a needle.

637. Copepoda.—Haecker (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlix, 1897, p. 35) fixes ovisacs of *Cyclops* for ten minutes in vom Rath's picro-platin-osmic mixture.

638. Isopoda.—McMurrich (*Journ. of Morph.*, xi, 1895, p. 65) fixes ova of *Jaera* in a saturated solution of picric acid in 70 per cent. alcohol, to which has been added 2 per cent. of concentrated sulphuric acid. If the yolk is brittle he imbeds in celloidin; if not, in paraffin.

Vermes.

639. Polychæta.—Wilson (*Journ. of Morph.*, vi, 1892, p. 373) stains living embryos of *Nereis* with methylen blue in sea water. He fixes generally for ten to thirty minutes with liquid of Flemming or Perényi or Lang's sublimate; picro-sulphuric acid is not good.

Wistinghausen (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, x, 1891, p. 47) got his best results with advanced embryos by fixing for an hour in a mixture of 1 part 1 per cent. osmic acid, 25 parts 1 per cent. chromic acid, 5 parts acetic acid, glacial, and 70 parts water, washing out for twenty-four hours in water and bringing into 50 per cent. alcohol for three hours, then into 70 per cent.

Korschelt (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, lx, 1895, p. 545) found picro-acetic acid of Boveri the best thing for ova of *Ophryotrocha*: time, three to four hours, then 70 per cent. alcohol.

Kleinenberg (*ibid.*, xliv, 1886, p. 25) fixes larvæ of *Lopadorhynchus* with his picro-sulphuric acid, brings them into 70 per cent. alcohol, then 90 per cent., and stains with borax carmine. He also *macerates* them for one or two hours in dilute picro-sulphuric acid, and then for twenty-four hours in Beale's carmine.

Eisig (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* xiii, 1898, p. 89) fixes ova and larvæ of *Capitella* with a freshly prepared mixture of 3 parts 5 per cent. solution of sublimate in sea water and 1 part glacial acetic acid; if necessary they may be first narcotised with 2 per cent. solution of cocaine in sea water (the precipitate produced by the sublimate dissolves afterwards in alcohol). Then successive alcohols. He stains with hæmacalcium (with 5 per cent. acetic acid instead of 2 per cent.), and washes out by prolonged treatment with alcohol containing 2 per cent. of nitrate of aluminium.

640. Rotatoria.—Jennings (*Bull. Mus. Harvard Coll.*, xxx, 1896, p. 101) finds the best fixative for pregnant females is the strong liquid of Flemming, but the ova must then be bleached with chlorate of potash (§ 575). He preserves in 80 per cent. alcohol, or in a mixture of equal parts of alcohol, water, and glycerin. He dissects out the ova under the microscope, and brings them into glycerin under a cover supported on capillary glass tubes so as to allow of rolling the eggs.

641. Turbellaria.—Gardiner (*Journ. of Morph.*, xi, 1895, p. 158) finds the best fixative for ova of *Polychoerus* is a mixture of equal parts of absolute alcohol and glacial acetic acid.

Method of Iijima (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xl, 1884, p. 359).—The capsule containing the ova (of fresh-water Planaria) is opened with needles on a slide, in a drop of 2 per cent. nitric acid. The ova are extracted and covered (the cover being supported by paper or by wax feet). After half an hour they are treated with successive alcohols under the cover, and finally mounted in glycerin. For sections, the whole of the contents of a capsule is hardened in the mass in 1 per cent. chromic acid and cut together.

642. Cestoda (v. Beneden, *Arch. de Biol.*, ii, 1881, p. 187).—Ova of *Tænia* in which a chitinous membrane has formed around the embryo are impervious to reagents. They may be put on a slide with a drop of some liquid and covered. Then, by withdrawing the liquid by means of blotting-paper, the cover may be made to gradually press on them so as to burst the membranes, and the embryo may then be treated with the usual reagents.

643. Trematoda.—Coe (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. Morph.*, ix, 1896, pp. 563, 566) fixes the Miracidia of Distomum for general purposes with the usual fixatives; but for the special study of the excretory system he kills them with osmic acid, rinses with distilled water, and puts them for a couple of days into $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. solution of silver nitrate.

644. Nematoda.—Boveri (*Jena. Zeit.*, xxi, 1887, p. 423) fixes the ova of Ascaris in his picro-acetic acid (after which treatment I should say you may easily see anything you like to imagine in them).

Zur Strassen (*Arch. Entwickelungsmech.*, iii, 1896, p. 29) fixes them for twenty-four hours in a mixture of 4 parts 96 per cent. alcohol and 1 part acetic acid (much too long, I should say), brings them into pure alcohol, stains with hydrochloric acid carmine, and brings them gradually into glycerin.

Similarly Zoja (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlvii, 1896, p. 218) and Erlanger (*ibid.*, xlix, 1897, p. 309). Zoja stained with Bismarck brown and examined in dilute glycerin; Erlanger made paraffin sections and stained with iron hæmatoxylin.

Kostanecki and Siedlecki (*ibid.*, xlviii, 1896, p. 184) employed concentrated sublimate solution, or 3 per cent. nitric acid, or mixtures of these two, for ovarian ova.

I fancy the best fixative for ova furnished with their capsules will be found to be that of Gilson Carnoy-Lebrun (§ 84); see Carnoy & Lebrun, *La Cellule*, xiii, 1897, p. 68. After fixation the ova are carefully brought into 80 per cent. alcohol, in which they are preserved. Imbedding should be carefully done, as recommended for the ova of Amphibia (§ 600), but they ought not to remain in the pure paraffin for more than a minute to a minute and a half. But these authors prefer the celloidin method. At least six weeks' soaking in the different strengths of celloidin will be necessary to ensure penetration. They stain with iron hæmatoxylin.

Echinodermata, Cœlenterata, and Porifera.

See the paragraphs treating of these groups in the chapter on "Zoological Methods."

CHAPTER XXVII.

CYTOLOGICAL METHODS.

645. Study of Living Cells.—In the young larvæ of Amphibia, both Anura and Urodela, the gills and caudal "fin," and sometimes other regions, may be conveniently studied in the living state.

The larvæ may be fixed in a suitable cell, or wrapped in moist blotting-paper, or may be curarised; or the tail may be excised. (It is preferable to cut through the larva close in *front* of the hind limbs.)

In the *living animal* the epithelial cells and nuclei (in the state of repose) are so transparent as to be hardly visible in the natural state. They may, however, be brought out by curarising the larva; or, still better, by placing the curarised larva for half an hour in 1 per cent. chloride of sodium solution. Normal larvæ may be used for the study of the active state of the nucleus, but much time is saved by using curare.

Curare.—Dissolve 1 part of curare in 100 parts water, and add 100 parts of glycerin. Of this mixture add from 5 to 10 drops (according to the size of the larva), or even more for large larvæ, to a watch-glassful of water. From half to one hour of immersion is necessary for curarisation. The larvæ need not be left in the solution until they become quite motionless; as soon as their movements have become slow they may be taken out and placed on a slide with blotting-paper. If they be replaced in water they return to the normal state in eight or ten hours, and may be re-curarised several times.

Etherisation.—Three per cent. alcohol or 3 per cent. ether may be used in a similar way. These reagents cause no obstruction to the processes of cell-division, and are useful, but their action as anæsthetics is inconstant.

Indifferent Media.—One per cent. salt solution, iodised serum, syrup, cold water (+ 1° C.), and warm water (35°—40° C.). The tail may be excised from the living animal and studied for a long time in these media (PEREMESCHKO, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xvi, 1879, p. 437).

Small and transparent aquatic organisms, such as larvæ of Diptera, small specimens of *Clepsine* and *Nephelis*, etc., may be studied alive in a reversible compressorium. The vegetable kingdom also affords some good objects, for which see the botanical treatises.

For the processes of staining living cells, which are often important aids to study, see § 201.

646. Study of Fresh and Lightly fixed Cells.—So-called "indifferent" liquids must not be believed to be without action on nuclei. Iodised serum, salt solution, serum, aqueous humour, lymph, better deserve the name of weak hardening agents. Between these and such energetic hardening agents as Flemming's mixture come such light fixing agents as picric acid or very dilute acetic acid. These it is whose employment is indicated for the study of fresh isolated cells.

A typical example of this kind of work is as follows:—Tease out a piece of living tissue in a drop of acidulated solution of methyl green (0·75 per cent. of acetic acid). This is a delicate fixing agent, killing cells instantly without change of form. Complete the fixation by exposing the preparation for a quarter of an hour to vapour of osmium, and add a drop of solution of Ripart and Petit and a cover.

Or you may fix the preparation, after teasing, with vapour of osmium for half a minute to two minutes, then add a drop of methyl green, and after five minutes wash out with 1 per cent. acetic acid, and add solution of Ripart and Petit and cover.

Or you may kill and fix the cells by teasing in solution of Ripart and Petit (to which you may add a trace of osmic acid if you like), and afterwards stain with methyl green.

I have found Pictet's chloride of manganese (§ 391) useful as an examination medium. A little solution of dahlia may be added to it.

Henking's mixture, which has been given above (§ 625), may also be found useful.

Other fixing agents, such as picric acid or weak sublimate solution, may of course be used, and in some cases doubtless should be preferred. Other stains, too, such as Bismarck brown, may be used as occasion dictates; and of course other examination media than solution of Ripart may be employed. But, for general purposes, the methyl-green-osmium-and-Ripart's-medium method gives such good results, and is so very convenient, that it may be called a classical method for the study of fresh cells.

647. Some Microchemical Reactions.—*Methyl green* is a test for chromatin, in so far as it colours nothing but the chromatin *in the nucleus.* It is, however, not a perfect test, for the intensity of the coloration it produces varies greatly in different nuclei, and may in certain nuclei be extremely weak, or (apparently) even altogether wanting. In these cases other tests must be applied in order to establish with certainty the presence or absence of that element. The following suggestions are taken from Carnoy, who is, I believe, the only writer—on the zoological side, at all events—who has insisted on the necessity of applying microchemical methods in a systematic manner to the study of cells.

Chromatin is distinguished from albuminoids by not being soluble, as these are, in water and in weak mineral acids, such as 0·1 per cent. hydrochloric acid. It is easily soluble in concentrated mineral acids, in alkalies, even when very dilute, and in some alkaline salts, such as carbonate of potash and biphosphate of soda. In the presence of 10 per cent. solution of sodium chloride it swells up into a gelatinous mass, or even, as frequently happens, dissolves entirely (*Biol. Cell.*, pp. 208–9). It is only partially digestible (when *in situ* in the nucleus) in the usual laboratory digestion fluids.

The solvents of chromatin that are the most useful in practice are 1 per cent. caustic potash, fuming hydrochloric acid, or cyanide of potassium, or carbonate of potash. These last generally give better results than dilute alkalies. They may be employed in solutions of 40 to 50 per cent. strength. If it be desired to remove all the chromatin from a nucleus the reaction must be prolonged, sometimes to as much as two or three days, especially if the operation be conducted on a slide and under a cover-glass, which is the safer plan.

It must be remembered that these operations must be performed on *fresh* cells, for hardening agents bring about very considerable modifications in the nature of chromatin, rendering it almost insoluble in ammonia, potash, or sodic phosphate, etc. Hydrochloric acid, however, still swells and dissolves it, though with difficulty.

Partial digestion may render service in the study of the chromatic elements of nuclei. Chromatin resists the action of digestive fluids much longer than the albumins do ; so that a moderate digestion serves to free the chromosomes from any caryoplasmic granulations that may obscure them, whilst at the same time it clears up the cytoplasm.

Concerning the microchemistry of the cell see further *last edition ;* also CARNOY & LEBRUN, *La Cellule*, xii, 2, 1897, p. 94 ; ZIMMERMANN, *Die Morphologie u. Physiologie des Pflanzlichen Zellkernes*, Jena, 1896 (treats also of the animal cell) ; HAECKER, *Praxis u. Theorie der Zellen- und Befruchtungslehre*, Jena, 1899.

648. Cytological Fixing Agents.—It does not follow that a fixing agent that is good for one element of a cell is also good for all others. That which is good for cytoplasm is not necessarily good for the nucleus, and *vice versâ*.

As regards the nucleus, it is a rule that admits of no exception that all fixatives must be *acid ;* for if not they will not satisfactorily preserve either chromatin or nucleoli.

For instance, bichromate of potash, if not rendered acid, should be banished from the study of nuclei, because it causes chromatin and nucleoli to swell, so that clear images of them are not obtained. (I do not myself think that, as regards chromosomes at all events, the images given by bichromate are so *unnatural* as they are held to be by Flemming and the majority of authors. Chromosomes during life are always in a state that may be fittingly described as *swollen* by comparison with their state after fixation by acids. During life, in the equatorial and polar stages of division, they are mostly compacted into plates or pectiniform figures in which the separate elements are not clearly discernible, and which are more like the images given by fixation with bichromate than those which are given by fixation with acids. The acids contract them somewhat, and so give them sharper outlines, and thus render them individually distinguishable. The resulting image thus becomes clearer, but I do not admit that it is in all cases more *lifelike.*)

The fixatives chiefly employed for nuclei are liquid of Flemming and liquid of Hermann. For most purposes I think they are as good as anything that has hitherto been imagined. There is a slight difference between them. Liquid of Hermann, owing to the platinum chloride, causes chromatin to shrink more than liquid of Flemming does, and thus often gives clearer images of chromosomes, especially of their splitting.

But it is a mistake to suppose that equally good images cannot be obtained by means of other reagents. Some of the finest chromosomes I have seen have been fixed with Lindsay Johnson's mixture (§ 49), and liquid of Tellyesniczky has given me others nearly if not quite as good.

Though I have not found anything superior to these, I do not mean to imply that there are not others as good or nearly as good. Very likely there are; for the nucleus is by far the easiest thing in the cell to fix (*i. e.* so far as chromatin and nucleoli are concerned; I have left the caryoplasm, or whatever else there may be in a nucleus, out of account, as next to nothing is known concerning it). Mixture of Gilson-Carnoy-Lebrun gives very fair nuclei indeed, and will be found highly useful where very great penetration is required.

As regards the cytoplasm. Cytoplasm is made up of two elements, a fibrillar network—the spongioplasm, reticulum, or mitome; and a more or less granular liquid that bathes it—the hyaloplasm or enchylema. It does not follow that a reagent that will fix one of these will also fix the other. Nor does it follow that if both are fixed you have of necessity a perfect fixation, for that depends on the object in view.

If you fix both, you will have a *full* fixation; but in that case the granules of the hyaloplasm (be they vital, or be they only "precipitation forms," see § 27 A), and the secretions or other inclosures that may be present in it, may so mask the fibrils of the spongioplasm as to interfere with the observation of it. So that if the latter is the principal object of study, a *thin* fixation, one in which the spongioplasm is entirely preserved, but the hyaloplasm only partly, may be the better.

The *spongioplasm* is the easier to fix of the two, and the majority of acid fixatives will preserve it more or less; for instance, the osmic acid, chromic, or picric mixtures, or corrosive sublimate. The best images I have obtained are those given by liquid of Flemming or Hermann in cells in which the action of the reagent has been moderate, *i. e.* insufficient to thoroughly fix the hyaloplasm at the same time. I have also had good results with vom Rath's picro-osmic and picro-platinosmic mixtures, and with acid sublimate.

Hyaloplasm is not nearly so easy to fix, and there are only two reagents in common use that readily give a really full fixation of it; these are *osmic acid* and *bichromate of potash*.

Osmic acid acts as a fixative of hyaloplasm in liquid of Flemming or Hermann, but only gives a full fixation in the outer layers of the material; and in these it easily happens that many or most of the cells are ruined by over-fixation (see §§ 28, 39).

This defect may be to a certain degree corrected by taking the osmic acid weaker than is usual. Thus by successively reducing the proportion of this ingredient in liquid of Hermann,* I have found that it can be brought down to *one eighth* of the prescribed amount without loss of the distinctive characters of the fixation. But it cannot be entirely omitted without the character of the fixation changing altogether.

---

* Niessing (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlvi, 1895, p. 147) has the following two modifications of Hermann's mixture:

(1)	Platinic chloride, 10 per cent. solution	25
	Osmic acid, 2 per cent.	20
	Glacial acetic acid	5
	Distilled water	50

(2) The same with saturated aqueous solution of corrosive sublimate instead of the water.

They are both of them, in my opinion, as ill-imagined as possible. They contain some three times as much platinic chloride as Hermann's; and Hermann's contains already quite as much as it can bear, and, I think, much more than is advisable: see the proportions in the mixtures §§ 49 and 53. Rabl (*Anat. Anz.*, iv, 1889, p. 21) employed it of from $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ per cent. strength, which seems to me much nearer the mark.

The defect of want of penetration seems to be incurable (see §§ 28, 39, and 46). Substitution of more highly penetrating reagents, such as picric acid, for the chromic acid or platinic chloride, does not help in the least; you only get the osmic fixation outside, no whit deeper than before, and a picro-acetic fixation, instead of a chromo- or platino-acetic one, in the deeper layers, that is all. For instance, vom Rath's picro-platinosmic mixture, § 97, may often give better results in some respects than liquid of Hermann; but that is not on account of the addition of the picric acid, it is rather on account of the platinic chloride being taken weaker. The *osmic* fixation is not in the least modified by the picric acid in it.

In view, then, of these defects of osmic mixtures, it may often be advisable, where hyaloplasm, or its inclosures, is the chief object of study, to have recourse to *bichromate of potash*. The formula that has given me the finest fixations is that of LINDSAY JOHNSON, § 49, but it has the drawback that there is risk of osmication in the outer layers.

In this respect liquid of Tellyesniczky, § 56, is to be preferred.

Corrosive sublimate gives a fairly full fixation; but I believe it sometimes produces serious artefacts, HEIDENHAIN'S "Lanthanin" being one of them. I have, however, obtained with liquid of Gilson-Carnoy-Lebrun some most excellent fixations of cytoplasm, and I think that the aqueous solutions of sublimate may frequently be used in preference to liquid of Flemming on account of the facilities they afford for the employment of certain stains.

ALTMANN'S fixatives for nuclei see *last edition*, or *Arch. Anat. Entw.*, 1892, p. 223. and his *Elementarorganismen*, 1890. His mixture for his granula see § 48.

649. Chromatin Stains.—For fresh tissues see § 646.

For sections of hardened tissues, stains should be chosen amongst those that give a very intense as well as a very sharp coloration. Some years ago safranin and gentian violet, § 272, 273, were the most used. At the present time their place has been taken by the iron hæmatoxylin of BENDA or HEIDENHAIN.

To these I think Kernschwarz should be added.

For some remarks of **Bataillon** and **Koehler** on the stain of borax-methylen-blue see *Comptes Rendus*, cxvii, 1893, p. 521, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1894, p. 41.

650. Plasma Stains.—I have been unable to discover a single thoroughly satisfactory one. All of those known to me are of an imperfect electivity, in so far as it is difficult if not impossible to limit their action with the desired precision and certitude to the element that it is desired to bring into prominence by staining. Almost all of them colour too readily the enchylema or hyaloplasm at the same time as the plasmatic reticulum. And, on the other hand, there are many important elements of cells which cannot be got to stain sufficiently.

For Kernschwarz see § 365.

Flemming's Orange Method, § 283, has been much used. I do not recommend it, as it is very capricious and unreliable. Benda's *Safranin and Lightgrün or Säureviolett*, § 301, gives sometimes splendid results, but is capricious.

For *Säurefuchsin* and *Orange G* see §§ 287, 288.

Ehrlich-Biondi mixture is a celebrated plasma stain. It is of no use whatever for polar corpuscles or spindle relics. See § 290.

The *Osmic Acid and Pyrogallol Process*, § 361, gives a very fair and frequently useful plasma stain; but I do not consider it to be a method of quite the first class.

The *Iron-Hæmatein Lakes* of Benda and M. Heidenhain give good plasma stains, according to the degree of extraction. These are the stains most used for the study of the bodies known as centrosomes, central corpuscles, centrioles, polar corpuscles, etc. See § 255.

It is said by Heidenhain, and by other observers who have repeated his observations, that the stain is obtained in a sharper form by combining the hæmatein stain with a foregoing stain with *Bordeaux R*. He directs (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlii, 1894, p. 665) that the sections (sublimate sections were used by him) are to be stained for twenty-four hours or more in "a weak" solution of Bordeaux, until they have attained such an intensity of colour as that "they would just be fit for microscopic examination with high powers" (l. c., p. 440, note), and that they be then brought into the ferric alum. After mordanting and staining, the hæmatein is to be extracted in the iron alum until the chromatin has become entirely or almost entirely colourless. Instead of Bordeaux, "anilin blue" may be used in the same way.

See also Ehrlich's *triacid*, § 291, and his *acidophilous mixture*, § 309; also Wasserblau, § 312, and other reagents mentioned in Chap. XVI.

Also Gold Chloride, Apáthy's process, § 358.

HERMANN (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxvii, 4, 1891, p. 583) recommends a modification of the hæmatoxylin impregnation method of PAL, for which see *previous editions;* also his paper, "Methoden zum Studium des Archoplasmas und der Centrosomen tierischer und pflanzlicher Zellen," in *Ergebnisse der Anatomie,* Band ii, 1892 (1893), p. 23.

For HEIDENHAIN'S *Vanadium hæmatoxylin*, see COHN in *Anat. Hefte*, 1895, p. 302, or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 3, 1896, p. 359.

651. Cell Granules.—For the study of the conspicuous "granules," undoubtedly metabolic products, occurring in certain gland-cells and blood- and lymph-corpuscles, and in certain elements belonging to the group of connective tissues, see the sections on "Connective Tissues." The most generally employed stains are the mixtures of Ehrlich.

For ALTMANN'S "Bioblasts" see *previous editions*, also the critique of FISCHER, in his *Fixirung, Färbung, und Bau des Protoplasmus*, pp. 108, 295.

652. Nucleoli are "acidophilous" in so far as, in fixed material, they select the acid dye or dyes from mixtures such as the Ehrlich-Biondi stain. With this they stain mostly red, sometimes orange. With fresh material they do not stain at all with acid methyl green (distinction from chromatin).

But in fixed material treated with basic dyes (safranin, gentian, etc.) by the regressive method they stain more energetically than resting chromatin, and at least as much so as chromatin in the kinetic state. With iron-hæmatoxylin they stain sometimes full black, sometimes grey with a black shell.

They can frequently be well demonstrated in unstained preparations examined in water, being brought out by their superior refractivity.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

TEGUMENTARY ORGANS.

653. Epithelium.—Both for surface views and for sections good results are obtained by the *nitrate of silver* method, the *methylen blue method,* the *perchloride of iron and pyrogallol* method of the Hoggans, § 362, the *osmic acid and pyrogallol* process, § 361, and by *iron-hæmatoxylin.*

Heidenhain's fixative for intestinal epithelia may be useful for soft epidermis; it consists of a saturated solution of salicylic acid in one-third alcohol (*Sitz. Ber. Phys. med. Ges. Würzburg,* 26th January, 1899).

For the purpose of separating the epidermis from the corium, Loewy (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.,* xxxvii, 1891, p. 159; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* viii, 2, 1891, p. 222) recommends macerating for twenty-four to forty-eight hours, at a temperature of about 40° C., in 6 per cent. pyroligneous acid. Acetic acid of $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. (Philippson) is also good.

For *ciliated epithelium* see the methods of Englemann under "Mollusca."

654. Intercellular Bridges (and Canals).—On this subject (which includes the so-called "Prickle-cells") see the important memoirs of Ide, in *La Cellule,* iv, 2, 1888, p. 409, and v, 2, 1889, p. 321; also Kolossow, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.,* lii, 1898, p. 1; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* xv, 1, 1898, p. 92. Kolossow used an osmic-acid-tannin stain, § 361; I would suggest that iron-hæmatoxylin ought to be useful.

See also Flemming, *Anat. Hefte,* 1 Abth., vi, 1895, p. 1.

655. Keratohyalin.—See Unna, *Monatsschr. prakt. Dermat.,* xx, 1895, p. 69; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* xiii, 1897, p. 337.

656. Plasma-fibrils of Epithelium.—KROMAYER's process (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxix, 1892, p. 141; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 84, and ix, 3, 1893, p. 355) is as follows:—Sections are stained for five minutes in a mixture of equal volumes of anilin water (p. 203) and concentrated aqueous solution of methyl violet 6 B. They are well washed in water and treated with solution of iodine in iodide of potassium until they become blue-black (one to thirty seconds). They are again washed with water, dried with blotting-paper, and treated with a mixture of 1 vol. of anilin to 2 vols. of xylol until sufficiently differentiated, when they are brought into pure xylol. Very thin sections will require more xylol in proportion to the anilin, viz. 1 : 3 or 1 : 4; thicker ones may require more anilin, viz. 3 : 5 or 3 : 3. Gentian or Krystall-violett will do instead of methyl violet, but not quite so well. For some variations see *Dermatol. Zeit.*, iv, 1897, p. 335; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 3, 1897, p. 396; further, EHRMANN and JADASSOHN, *Arch. f. Dermatol. u. Syphilis*, 1892, 1, p. 303; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1893, p. 356; HERXHEIMER u. MÜLLER, *Arch. f. Dermatol.*, xxxvi, 1896, p. 93; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 2, 1897, p. 216 (they used Weigert's Neuroglia stain); SCHÜTZ, *ibid.*, pp. 111, 218; and HERXHEIMER, *Arch. mik. Anat.*, liii, 1899, p. 510.

For the same object UNNA (*Monatssch. f. prakt. Dermatol.*, xix, 1894, p. 1 and p. 277, *et seq.*; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1, 1895, pp. 61, 63) has given a whole series of minutely detailed methods, from which the following are some extracts.

1. WASSERBLAU-ORCEIN.—Stain sections for ten minutes in a neutral aqueous 1 per cent. solution of Wasserblau, rinse with water and stain for five or ten minutes in a neutral alcoholic 1 per cent. solution of Grübler's orcein. Dehydrate, clear, and mount in balsam. This method may be varied as follows:

(*a*) Ten minutes in the Wasserblau and thirty minutes or more in the orcein.

(*b*) Take for the second stain an *acid* solution of orcein.

(*c*) Stain for only one minute in the Wasserblau, but for thirty or more in the neutral orcein.

2. Stain for half an hour or more in a strong solution of hæmalum, rinse with water, stain for half a minute in a

saturated aqueous solution of picric acid, and dehydrate for thirty seconds in alcohol containing 0·5 per cent. of picric acid.

3. Hæmalum for two hours, neutral orcein as above for ten to twenty minutes.

657. Horn, Hair, and Nails.—The elements of hairs and nails may be isolated by prolonged maceration in 40 per cent. potash solution, or by heating with concentrated sulphuric acid. See also VON NATHUSIUS, *Zool. Anz.*, xv, 1892, p. 395.

Horny tissues stain well in safranin or gentian violet (REINKE, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxx, 1887, p. 183; ERNST, *ibid.*, xlvii, 1896, p. 669; RABL, *ibid.*, xlviii, 1896, p. 489).

658. Skin-nerves and Nerve-endings.—Impregnate with gold chloride. See *previous editions*, and the methods given in Chap. XVIII.

659. Tactile Corpuscles.—FISCHER (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1875, p. 366) employed the gold method of Löwit—see § 351. RANVIER (*Traité*, p. 918) also recommends this method, as well as his two gold methods, §§ 352, 353. See RANVIER, *Traité*, p. 919; LANGERHANS, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1873, p. 730; KULTSCHIZKY, *ibid.*, 1884, p. 358; and SMIRNOW, *Intern. Monatsschr. f. Anat.*, etc., x, 1893, 6, p. 241; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 2, 1893, p. 254 (this observer recommends, beside the gold method of Löwit, the rapid bichromate of silver method of Golgi).

660. Corpuscles of Herbst and Corpuscles of Grandry.—DOGIEL (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Entwickel.*, 1891, p. 182; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 4, 1892, p. 520) prefers the methylen blue method (Chap. XVII). Four per cent. solution of methylen blue, warmed to 40° C., is injected into blood-vessels of the heads of ducks or geese; pieces of skin are removed from the beaks, sectioned in pith, and the sections brought on to slides and moistened with aqueous or vitreous humour from the animal, and left for a few minutes exposed to the air (it is well to add to the aqueous or vitreous humour a few drops of $\frac{1}{16}$ per cent. methylen blue solution). After about ten to thirty minutes the nerve-endings are seen to be stained, and the sections are then brought into picrate of ammonia, and treated as described in the chapter on "Methylen Blue." GEBERG (*ibid.*, x, 2, 1893, p. 244) has also employed this method. He has also made use of simple osmic acid, and of the gold method of ARNSTEIN, for which see *previous editions.*

661. Corpuscles of Meissner and of Krause (Cornea and Conjunctiva Bulbi and Palpebrarum).—DOGIEL (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxvii, 1891, p. 602, and xliv, i, 1894, p. 15) employs the methylen blue method; for details see *previous editions.*

See also LONGWORTH's methods, *Arch. mik. f. Anat.*, 1875, p. 655.

662. Cornea.—There are three chief methods for the study of the corneal tissue—the methylen blue method, the silver method, and the gold method.

For the *methylen blue method* see Chap. XVII, particularly §§ 330 and 331.

Negative images of the corneal cells are easily obtained by the dry *silver method* (KLEIN). The conjunctival epithelium should be removed by brushing from a living cornea, and the corneal surface well rubbed with a piece of lunar caustic. After half an hour the cornea may be detached and examined in distilled water.

In order to obtain *positive* images of the fixed cells the simplest plan (RANVIER) is to macerate a cornea that has been prepared as above for two or three days in distilled water. There takes place a secondary impregnation, by which the cells are brought out with admirable precision.

The same result may be obtained by cauterising the cornea of a living animal as above, but allowing it to remain on the living animal for two or three days before dissecting it out, or by treating a negatively impregnated cornea with weak salt solution or weak solution of hydrochloric acid (HIS).

But the best positive images are those furnished by *gold chloride.* RANVIER prefers his lemon-juice method to all others for this purpose (§ 353). It is important that the cornea should *not remain too long in the gold solution*, or the nerves alone will be well impregnated.

RANVIER also recommends this method as the best for the study of the nerves.

HOYER's method has been given, § 355.

See also the methods of ROLLETT, in Stricker's *Handb.*, pp. 1102, 1115, or *previous editions;* and TARTUFERI, *Anat. Anz.*, v, 1890, p. 524; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 3, 1890, p. 365, and xi, 3, 1894, p. 346, or *previous editions.*

663. Crystalline.—LÖWE (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1878, p. 557) hardens the lens for a year and a half at least in 1 per cent. bichromate of potash; GEBHARDT (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 306) for one or two days in 4 to 10 per cent. formalin (the hardened lens is easily dissociated with needles into its fibres).

For **Maceration** you may use sulphuric acid, § 543.

CHAPTER XXIX.

MUSCLE AND TENDON (NERVE-ENDINGS).

Striated Muscle.

664. Muscle-cells.—For the study of these and allied subjects see, *inter alia*, BEHRENS, KOSSEL, und SCHIEFFERDECKER, *Das Mikroskop*, etc., vol. ii, pp. 154—161; also, for the application of the gold method to the study of muscle-cells, SCHÄFER, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, xlix, 1891, p. 280; or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 683.

Iron hæmatoxylin gives very fine images of striped muscle.

665. Nerve-endings.—For the study of nerve-endings in muscle, both motor and sensory, the four chief methods are the methylen blue method, the gold method, the silver method, and the bichromate of silver method of Golgi.

666. Nerve-endings—the Methylen Blue Method. — BIEDERMANN's procedure for the muscles of *Astacus* has been indicated in § 326 (see also *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 1, 1889, p. 65). After impregnating as there directed the carapace should be opened, and the muscles exposed to the air in a roomy moist chamber for from two to six hours, in order that the stain may differentiate. The abdominal and caudal muscles are those which give the best results.

For *Hydrophilus piceus*, BIEDERMANN proceeded by injecting 0·5 c.c. of methylen blue solution between the ultimate and penultimate abdominal rings, in the ventral furrow, and keeping the animals alive in water for three to four hours. After this time the thorax should be opened by two lateral incisions, and the muscles of the first pair of legs (which are the most suitable) removed and exposed to the air for three or four hours in a moist chamber, and finally examined in salt solution.

Gerlach (*Sitzb. k. math.-phys. Cl. k. bayer. Akad. Wiss. München,* 1889, ii, p. 125; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 220) injected frogs, either through the abdominal vein or through the aorta, with 4 to 5 c.c. of a 1 : 400 solution in 1 per cent. salt solution, and examined pieces of muscle (preferably the head and eye muscles) in serum of the animal, afterwards fixing the preparations with picrate of ammonia and mounting in glycerin jelly.

The procedure of Dogiel has been given in § 326.

667. Nerve-endings—the Gold Method.—Fischer (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1876, p. 365) used the gold method of Löwit, § 351.

Biedermann in the paper quoted in the last section recommends for *Astacus* a similar procedure, the preliminary treatment with formic acid being omitted, and the muscles being put for a couple of days into glycerin after reduction in the acid.

Ranvier (*Traité*, p. 813) finds that for the study of the motor terminations of Vertebrates the best method is his lemon-juice and gold-chloride process (§ 353). The delicate elements of the arborescence of Kühne are better preserved by this method than by the simple method of Löwit.

668. Nerve-endings—the Silver Method.—Ranvier employs it as follows (*ibid.*, p. 810):—Portions of muscle (gastrocnemius of frog) having been very carefully teased out in fresh serum, are treated for ten to twenty seconds with nitrate of silver solution of 2 to 3 per 1000, and exposed to bright light (direct sunlight is best) in distilled water. As soon as they have become black or brown they are brought into 1 per cent. acetic acid, where they remain until they have swelled up to their normal dimensions. They are then examined in a mixture of equal parts of glycerin and water.

This process gives *negative* images, the muscular substance is stained brown, except in the parts where it is protected by the nervous arborescence, which itself remains unstained.

The gold process gives *positive* images, the nervous structures being stained dark violet.

669. Nerve-endings—the Bichromate of Silver Method.—The method of GOLGI has been successfully applied by RAMÓN Y CAJAL to the study of the terminations of nerves and of tracheæ in the muscles of insects, and is doubtless susceptible of still wider applications. The process used by him is the *rapid* one. For details see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 3, 1890, p. 332, or *previous editions.*

670. Nerve-endings—other Methods.—See *previous editions.*

Tendon.

671. Corpuscles of Golgi (RANVIER, *Traité*, p. 929).—Take the tendon of the anterior and superior insertion of the gemini muscles of the rabbit. Free it as far as possible from adherent muscle-fibres. Treat it according to the formic acid and gold method (§ 352), and after reduction of the gold scrape the tendon with a fine scalpel, in order to remove the muscle-fibres that mask the "musculo-tendinous organs."

672. Corpuscles of Golgi (in the tendons of the motores bulbi oculi) (VON MARCHI's methods, *Archivio per le Scienze Mediche*, vol. v, No. 15).—The enucleated eyes, together with their muscles, were put for not less than three days into 2 per cent. bichromate of potash. The muscles and tendons were then carefully dissected out, stained with gold chloride and osmic acid (GOLGI's method), and by the method of MANFREDI, § 355.

Mount all these preparations in glycerin (balsam clears too greatly). The methods only succeed completely during fine sunny weather.

See also RUFFINI (*Atti R. Acc. Lincei Roma Rend.* [5], i, 1892, p. 442; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 237), who recommends the method of Fischer.

673. Corpuscles of Golgi (Ciaccio, *Mem. R. Acc. Sci. Bologna* [4], t. x, 1890, p. 301; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 507).—For Amphibia the usual gold methods are not satisfactory, because the ground-substance of the tendon takes the stain at the same time as the nerve-endings. Pieces of tendon should be put into 0·1 per cent. hydrochloric acid or 0·2 per cent. acetic acid until quite transparent. They should then be put for five minutes into a mixture of 0·1 per cent. gold chloride and 0·1 per cent. potassium chloride. After that they are put back into the acetic acid, and remain there for a day in the dark, and for two or three hours more in the sunlight. When they have become somewhat violet they are put for a day into 0·1 per cent. osmic acid, and finally mounted in Price's glycerin acidulated with 0·5 per cent. of acetic or formic acid.

Smooth Muscle.

674. Test for Smooth Muscle (Retterer, *Comptes Rend. Soc. Biol.*, iv, 1887, p. 645; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 843). —If a specimen of tissue be fixed in a mixture of ten volumes of 90 per cent. alcohol and one volume of formic acid, well washed, and stained for twenty-four to thirty-six hours with alum-carmine, the cytoplasm of smooth muscle will be found to be stained red, whilst connective-tissue cells remain unstained, and are swollen.

675. Smooth Muscle — Isolation of Fibres. — Methods of Schwalbe, see *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1868, p. 394, or *previous editions.*

Gage's methods.—See *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 327; and §§ 525, 537, and 540.

Möbius, liquid for maceration of the muscle of *Cardium*, see above, § 536.

Ballowitz, muscle of Cephalopoda, see *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxix, 1892, p. 291; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 344.

Schultz (*Arch. Anat. Phys., Phys. Abth.*, 1895–6, p. 521) puts smooth muscle of Vertebrates for twenty-four hours into 10 per cent. nitric acid, rinses with water, and brings pieces for six to eight days (in the dark at first) into a mixture of equal parts of $\frac{1}{20}$ per cent. osmic acid and $\frac{1}{5}$ per cent. acetic acid, teases, and mounts in glycerin.

For smooth muscle of Vermes, see APÁTHY, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 1893, pp. 36, 319.

676. Smooth Muscle, Specific Stain for (UNNA, *Monatssch. f. prakt. Dermatol.*, xix, 1894, p. 533; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 2, 1895, p. 243).—Sections stained for ten minutes in polychromatic methylen blue solution, rinsed in water, and brought for ten minutes into 1 per cent. solution of red prussiate of potash. This fixes the colour, so that the sections will now bear differentiating with acid alcohol. They are treated accordingly with alcohol acidified with 1 per cent. of hydrochloric acid for about ten minutes (until the collagen ground comes out white). Absolute alcohol, essence, balsam.

In the same place see also another stain with acid orcein, hæmatein, Säurefuchsin, and picric acid.

677. Iris (DOGIEL, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1886, p. 403).—An enucleated eye is divided into halves, and the anterior one with the iris brought for some days into a mixture of two parts one third alcohol and one part 0·5 per cent. acetic acid. The iris can then be isolated, and split from the edge into an anterior and posterior plate, and these stained according to the usual methods.

See also KOGANEI, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1885, p. 1; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1886, p. 874.

Also CANFIELD, in *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1886, p. 121; and DOSTOIEWSKY, *ibid.*, p. 91.

678. Bladder of Frog, Innervation of (WOLFF, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1881, p. 362).—Impregnation with gold chloride injected into the bladder through the anus.

For details see *previous editions.*

RANVIER (*Traité*, p. 854) also recommends one or the other of his two gold processes, the bladder being carefully distended by injection of the lemon-juice or gold chloride and formic acid through the cloaca.

See also the method followed by Bernheim, *Arch. f. Anat. u. Physiol.*, *Physiol. Abth.*, 1892, Supp., p. 29; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 484; likewise a gold method.

679. Stomach of Triton (see Stilling and Pfitzner, in *Arch. mik. Anat.*, 1886, p. 396).

CHAPTER XXX.

NEUROLOGICAL METHODS—INTRODUCTION AND SECTION METHODS.

680. Introduction.—Histological research into the structure of the nervous system pursues two ends. Either it is desired to elucidate the minute structure of the nervous elements or neurons (neurites—FISH), that is to say, the internal organisation of nerve cells and nerve fibres: the processes employed to this end forming a group of *cytological* methods. Or it is desired to study the form of nerve cells, the exact distribution of the divers groups of nerve cells in the grey matter, the connections that are formed by means of nerve fibres between these groups of nerve cells or "nuclei," and to follow out the intricate course of the tracts of fibres that enter into the constitution of the white matter of the cerebro-spinal axis. The processes employed in all these researches form a group of the *anatomical* methods of neurology. It is more especially in this group that we find highly special methods of selective coloration. This group may be divided as follows:

A. *Nerve Fibres.*

(*a*) Myelin stains; comprising the methods of WEIGERT, and similar methods.

(*b*) Axis-cylinder stains, and axis-cylinder and myelin stains.

B. *Nerve Cells.*

(*c*) Axis-cylinder-and-protoplasm *stains,* comprising the methylen blue method and some rather old-fashioned general stains.

(*d*) Axis-cylinder-and-protoplasm *impregnations,* consisting chiefly of the methods of GOLGI (the sublimate method and the three bichromate of silver methods), and certain gold methods.

A large proportion of the methods used in the study of nerve-tissue in *peripheral* organs have already been extensively treated of in the chapters on "Methylen Blue," on "Impregnation Methods," on "Tegumentary Organs," and on "Muscle and Tendon." The reader should therefore bear in mind that a considerable part of the subject properly comprehended under the term "Neurological Methods" is contained in those chapters, which should be referred to in order to complete the account given in the following pages.

The remainder of this chapter will be devoted to the special section methods employed for the *central* nervous system, and to the Cytological Methods of Neurology. Group A of the Anatomical Methods will be given in Chap. XXXI, and Group B in Chap. XXXII.

For more minute details concerning the dissection and hardening of the voluminous encephala of Man and the larger Vertebrates than can be given here see MERCIER, *Les Coupes du Système Nerveux Central* (1894, Paris, Rueff); DEJERINE, *Anatomie des Centres Nerveux,* Paris, 1895; BEVAN LEWIS, *The Human Brain; Histological and Coarse Methods of Research,* London, Churchill; and OBERSTEINER, *Anleitung beim Studium des Baues d. nervösen Centralorgane im gesunden u. kranken Zustande,* Leipzig, Toeplitz.

SECTION METHODS.

681. Fixation by Injection.—Fixation, in the proper sense of the word, is, of course, out of the question in the case of the human subject. But in the case of the lower animals it is possible to introduce fixing liquids into the living nerve centres by means of injection, thus ensuring a much more rapid penetration of the reagents than can be obtained by simple immersion. This method was, I believe, first suggested by GOLGI (*Arch. Ital. de Biologie,* t. vii, p. 30). He injected 2·5 per cent. solution of bichromate of potash through the carotid if he wished to limit the hardening to the encephalon, or through the aorta if he desired to fix the spinal cord.

De Quervain (*Virchow's Archiv*, cxxxiii, 1893, p. 489; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 507) proceeds in a similar manner, injecting solution of Müller warmed to body heat. For dogs 300 to 400 c.c. are required, for cats one third to one half that quantity. After injection the whole organ is put into solution of Müller for some weeks.

(Further details in *last edition.*)

Mann (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 4, 1894, p. 482) injects through the aorta. Before throwing in the fixing liquid, he injects for about twenty seconds physiological salt solution warmed to 39° C. This washes out the capillaries, and prevents the blood from coagulating there. The fixing solution employed by him consists of saturated solution of corrosive sublimate, warmed to 39° C. After five minutes of injection the brain ought to be fixed throughout. It is removed and put for twelve hours into the same sublimate solution, after which it is either put for permanent preservation into 0·1 per cent. solution of sublimate, or is at once passed through alcohol for imbedding in paraffin.

See also § 754.

Strong (*New York Acad. of Sci.*, January 13th, 1896; *Anat. Anz.*, xi, 21, 1896, p. 655) advises injecting formalin diluted with an equal volume of water, or (for the Golgi method) with an equal volume of 10 per cent. solution of potassium bichromate; which seems to me very heroic (see § 104).

Hardening.

682. Hardening by the Freezing Method.—The ether freezing method is to be preferred. The sections should be floated on to water, treated for a minute on the slide with 0·25 per cent. osmic acid solution, and stained or otherwise treated as desired.

For a detailed description of these manipulations see Bevan Lewis's *The Human Brain.*

Goodall's Rapid Method for preparing Spinal Cord (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, May, 1893, p. 947; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1893, p. 405.—Cut sections of fresh tissue with a freezing microtome; float them on to water, and as soon as possible drain them and float them on to pyridin. After a quarter of an hour wash in water; stain with 0·25 per cent. aqueous solution of anilin blue-black, followed by picro-carmine; dehydrate and clear in pyridin; mount in balsam thinned with pyridin. See also § 103.

683. Generalities on Hardening by Reagents.—If large pieces of nerve-tissue are to be hardened, it is necessary to take special precautions in order to prevent them from becoming deformed by their own weight during the process. Spinal cord or small specimens of any region of the encephalon may be cut into slices of a few millimetres' thickness, laid out on cotton wool, and brought on the wool into a vessel in which they may have the hardening liquid poured over them. The wool performs two functions: it forms an elastic cushion on which the preparations may lie without being distorted by their own weight; and it allows the reagent to penetrate by the lower surfaces of the preparations as well as by their exposed surfaces. A further precaution, which is useful, is to hang up the preparations, lying on or in the cotton wool, in a glass cylinder or other tall vessel; by hanging them near the top of the liquid the processes of diffusion and the penetration of the reagent are greatly facilitated.

If the preparations are placed on the bottom of the vessel, they should never be placed one on another.

If it be desired to harden voluminous organs without dividing them into portions, they should at least be incised as deeply as possible in the less important regions. It is perhaps better in general not to remove the membranes at first (except the dura mater), as they serve to give support to the tissues. The pia mater and arachnoid may be removed partially or entirely later on, when the hardening has already made some progress.

The *spinal cord*, the *medulla oblongata*, and the *pons Varolii* may be hardened *in toto*. The dura mater should be removed at once, and the preparation hung up in a cylinder-glass with a weight attached to its lower end. The weight has the double function of preventing any part of the preparation from floating above the level of the hardening liquid (a thing that easily happens where somewhat dense liquids, such as Müller's solution, are used), and of preventing the torsions of the tissues that may otherwise be brought about by the elastic fibres of the pia mater and arachnoid.

The *cerebrum* should be very delicately laid out on a layer of cotton wool, or, if possible, hung up in it. Plugs of the wool should be put into the fissure of Sylvius, and as far as possible between the convolutions. Unless there are special reasons to the contrary, the brain should be divided into two symmetrical halves by a sagittal cut passing through the median plane of the corpus callosum. BETZ recommends that after a few hours in the hardening liquid the pia mater should be removed wherever it is accessible, and the choroid plexuses also. I have found this by no means easy, and think it is an operation that can only be recommended for experienced hands.

The cerebellum should be treated after the same manner.

The temperature at which the preparations are kept in the hardening solution is an important point. The hardening action of most solutions is greatly enhanced by heat. Thus WEIGERT (*Centralb. f. d. med. Wiss.*, 1882, p. 819 ; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1884, p. 388) finds that at a temperature of from 30° to 40° C. preparations may be sufficiently hardened in solution of Müller in eight or ten days, and in solution of Erlicki in four days ; whilst at the normal temperature two or three times as long would be required.

But it is not certain that this rapid hardening always gives the best definite results. SAHLI, who has made a detailed study of the hardening action of chrome salts, is of opinion that it does not, and thinks it ought for this reason to be abandoned (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 3).

On the other hand, the slowness of the action of chromic salts at the normal temperature is such that decomposition may easily be set up in the tissues before the hardening and preserving fluid has had time to do its work. For this reason voluminous preparations that are to be hardened in the slow way should be put away in a very cool place—best of all in an ice-safe.

See also the paper of PFISTER on the preliminary hardening of Central Nervous System *in situ*, in *Neurol. Centralb.*, xvii, 1898, p. 643 (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 4, 1899, p. 494).

684. The Reagents to be employed.—The hardening agents most used are the *chromic salts*. Chromic acid was much used at one time, but most workers now agree that its action, though much more rapid than that of the salts, is much more uneven, and frequently causes a disastrous friability of the tissues. Osmic acid can hardly be used for objects of more than a cubic centimetre in size at most.

It has already been noted that the liquid of Erlicki has a more rapid action than the other solutions of chromic salts. SAHLI, however (*loc. cit.* last §), after having studied the action of the usual solutions, concludes that the best hardening agent for fresh tissues is *pure bichromate of potash,* in 3 or 4 per cent. solution, the hardening being done in a cold place. He rejects the liquid of Erlicki on account of the precipitates it so frequently gives rise to (see § 58).

OBERSTEINER is of the same opinion, recommending pure bichromate for general hardening purposes; whilst for the study of the most delicate structural relations he recommends fixing in Fol's modification of Flemming's liquid (§ 46) for twenty-four hours, followed by washing with water and hardening in 80 per cent. alcohol.

In view of the slowness of penetration of chromic salts, it is often advisable to treat preparations for twenty-four hours or more with alcohol of 80 to 90 per cent before putting them into the hardening liquid, in order to avoid maceration of the deeper layers of tissue.

BURCHARDT (*La Cellule*, xii, 2, 1897, p. 337) says that "according to the unanimous judgment of all investigators the bichromates of potash and ammonia should not be employed for the *cytological* study of nerve cells." I have not noticed any such consensus of opinion of authors.

Several observers have lately been using *acetic alcohol.* So TIMOFEEW, *Intern. Monatsschr., Anat. u. Phys.*, xv, 1898, p. 259; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1, 1899, p. 99 (CARNOY's second formula, § 83).

OHLMACHER recommends his sublimate mixture, § 84.

For formaldehyde see §§ 104, 692, and 752.

Chromic acid is not much used alone (see § 40). It forms part of some of the mixtures mentioned below. A very little chromic acid (say one to two drops of 1 per cent. solution for each ounce) added to bichromate solution will do no harm, and will quicken the hardening.

Nitric acid has been, and still is, employed in strengths of 10 to 12 per cent., and gives particularly tough preparations.

Neutral acetate of lead in 10 per cent. solution affords an excellent preservation of ganglion cells, according to ANNA KOTLAREWSKI (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 3, 1887, p. 387).

Trzebinski (*Virchow's Arch.*, 1887, p. 1; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 497) finds that, as regards the faithful preservation of ganglion cells (of the spinal cord of the rabbit and dog), the best results are obtained by hardening for eight days in 7 per cent. solution of *corrosive sublimate*, followed by hardening in alcohol containing 0·5 per cent. of iodine.

Diomidoff (*ibid.*, p. 499) also obtained very excellent results by hardening small pieces of brain (as suggested by Gaule, Ogata, and Bechtereff) for from five to nine days (not more in any case) in 7 per cent. sublimate solution, followed by alcohol. (This process produces artificial "pigment spots," similar to those produced by solution of Erlicki; they may be dissolved out by prolonged treatment with warm water, or in five minutes by strong solution of Lugol.) The tissues are of a good consistence for cutting.

Chloride of zinc has been recommended for some purposes (see §§ 691, 692).

Two recent observers, Fish (*The Wilder Quarter-Century Book*, 1893, p. 335) and Donaldson (*Journ. of Morphol.*, ix, 1894, p. 123; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1894, p. 642), have made numerous determinations of weight and volume, with the object of ascertaining what changes are produced by reagents in encephala of sheep. They have found that bichromate of potash produces a slight increase both of weight and volume, whereas all the other reagents tried produce a diminution of both these factors.

Flatau (*Anat. Anz.*, xiii, 1887, p. 323) finds that brain augments in weight slightly in 10 per cent. formol solution (spinal cord somewhat more); whilst in 1 per cent. solution it may increase as much as 24 per cent.

685. Strengths of the Reagents.—All hardening reagents (except osmic acid) should at first be taken as weak as is consistent with the preservation of the tissue, and be changed by degrees for stronger.

Osmic acid may be taken of 1 per cent. strength, and will harden small pieces of tissue sufficiently in five to ten days (Exner).

Bichromate of potash should be taken at first of not more than 2 per cent. strength; this is then gradually raised to 3 or 4 per cent. for the cord and cerebrum, and as much as 5 per cent. for the cerebellum. Obersteiner begins with 1 per cent., and proceeds gradually during six to eight weeks to 2 or 3 per cent. (This is at the normal temperature; at a temperature of 35° to 45° C. the hardening can be got through in one or two weeks.)

Bichromate of ammonia should be taken of half the strength recommended for bichromate of potash, or even weaker at first; it may be raised to as much as 5 per cent. for cerebellum towards the end of the hardening.

686. Betz's **Methods** (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1873, p. 101).—Brain and spinal cord are first subjected to a preliminary hardening, for some days or weeks, in 70 to 80 per cent. alcohol containing enough *iodine* to give it a light brown coloration. After this they are definitely hardened in bichromate of potash of 3 per cent. for spinal cord, medulla oblongata, and pons, 5 per cent. for cerebellum, and 4 per cent. for cerebrum.

For details see *previous editions.*

687. Cerebrum (Bevan Lewis, *The Human Brain*, p. 102).—Methylated spirit, twenty-four hours in a cool place. Müller's solution, three days in a cool place. Then change the liquid; and after three days more change it again, or, preferably, substitute a 2 per cent. solution of potassium bichromate. At the end of the second week a solution of double the strength may be added; and if at the termination of the third week the mass is still pliable, and of the consistence of ordinary rubber, it is as yet unfit for section cutting, and the reagent should be replaced by a solution of chromic acid.

688. Brain (Hamilton, *Journ. of Anat. and Physiol.*, 1878, p. 254).—Slices of fresh brain about one inch thick are placed flat in a large vessel padded with cotton; do not put them one above the other. Cover them with the following fluid (after cooling):

Müller's fluid	3 parts.
Methylated spirit	1 part.

Put the preparations away in an ice-safe. Turn the segments over next day. Change the solution in a fortnight or three weeks; or if on examining a section of one of the pieces it is found that the hardening reagent has penetrated to the interior, they may be at once removed to the following mixture:

Bichromate of ammonia . . .	1 grm.
Water	400 c.c.,

in which they remain for one week. Then change the solution to one of 1 per cent. for one week; and let this be followed by a solution of 2 per cent. for another week, or longer if required. The pieces will now be sufficiently hard for cutting; they may be kept permanently in solution of chloral hydrate, twelve grains to the ounce.

689. Entire Encephalon (DEECKE, *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1883, p. 449).—Bichromate of ammonia in ½ to 1 per cent. solution, according to the consistence of the brain. If it happens to be soft he adds say $\frac{1}{6}$ to $\frac{1}{10}$ per cent. of chromic acid to the solution, and always $\frac{1}{6}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ of the whole volume of alcohol.

Further details in *previous editions.*

690. Encephalon (M. DUVAL, ROBIN'S *Journal de l'Anatomie*, 1876, p. 497).—*First Method.*—Place the fresh tissues in solution of bichromate of potash 25, water 1000; change the liquid after the first twenty-four hours, and again after three or four days. After two or three weeks place the preparations in chromic acid of 3 per 1000, change the liquid every day for the first week, and after that every eight days until the middle of the second month, after which time it is no longer needful to change the liquid. The preparations must remain at least two months in the chromic acid; the longer they remain in it the better. A few fragments of camphor should be added to the liquid in order to prevent the growth of mould.

691. Encephalon (FISH, *The Wilder Quarter-Century Book*, 1893, p. 393).

Water	400 c.c.
95 per cent. alcohol . . .	400 ,,
Glycerin	250 ,,
Zinc chloride	20 grms.
Sodium chloride	20 ,,

Immerse in this, filling the cavities of the brain with it, and if practicable also injecting the blood-vessels with it, for about three days, then transfer for a week or more to a mixture of equal parts of the fluid and 70 per cent. alcohol, and finally store in 90 per cent. alcohol.

692. Formaldehyde.—*For formaldehyde in general,* see § 104.

WEIGERT (*Beitr. zur Kenntn. d. normalen menschlichen*

Neuroglia, 1895, quoted from *Neurol. Centralb.,* 1895, p. 1146) puts portions of material of not more than half a centimetre in thickness for four days into a "4 per cent. solution of formol" (by which is presumably meant commercial formol diluted with 9 volumes of water).

Marcus (quoted from Fish, see below; see also *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* xiii, 1896, p. 241) recommends hardening the spinal cord for two or four weeks in a ½ per cent. solution of formalin, then small pieces one half-centimetre thick are cut out and placed in Müller's fluid for a week in an oven at 37° C.

Van Gieson (*Anat. Anz.,* x, 1895, p. 494) states that he obtained good results by using "solutions of formalin of 4, 6, and 10 per cent.," followed by 95 per cent. alcohol. Myelin was found to be well preserved and to give the characteristic blue reaction with Weigert's hæmatoxylin (the 1885 method), just as if a chrome salt were present.

Lachi (*cf. Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* xii, 1895, p. 32) states that he has had good results with "20 per cent. solutions of formol."

Fish (*Proc. Amer. Mic. Soc.,* xvii, 1895, p. 319) recommends—

Water	2000 c.c.
Commercial formalin . . .	50 ,,
Sodium chloride	100 grms.
Zinc chloride	15 ,,

Brains should be left in this mixture for a week or ten days or more, then transferred to a 2·5 per cent. solution of formalin (water 2000 c.c., formalin 50 c.c.), in which they may remain indefinitely if the jar be kept tightly covered.

Parker and Floyd (*Anat. Anzeiger,* Bd. xi, 1895, No. 5, p. 156) find that a "2 per cent. solution of formol," by which is meant a mixture of two volumes of formol with 98 of water, will harden a sheep's brain in a week or ten days in a satisfactory manner as regards consistency, but with a marked increase of volume, which may amount to as much as 40 per cent.! To obviate this they advise a mixture of—

Alcohol 95 per cent. . . .	6 volumes,
Formol 2 per cent. (the above mixture)	4 ,,

which has the same excellent and rapid hardening qualities and gives only a hardly perceptible increase of volume.

Brains may be kept for months in the mixture (*ibid.*; 1896, p. 568).

Gerota (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 314) puts human brains into a 5 to 10 per cent. solution of formol, and after twenty-four hours removes the pia and changes the liquid; this is also further done every five to seven days, and in one or two weeks the hardening is complete. In the case of fœtal brains of *Canis*, *Felis*, and *Homo*, he first injects the vascular system with a 10 to 15 per cent. solution of formol in 85 per cent. alcohol, and then brings the heads into the 5 to 10 per cent. watery solution; after one or two days he removes the brains from the skulls and puts them back for fifteen to twenty days into the formol.

Marina (*Riv. Pat. Nerv. Ment.*, Firenze, ii, 1897, p. 20; *Neur. Centralb.*, xvi, 1897, p. 166; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, p. 231) fixes portions of central nervous system for four to eight days in a freshly prepared mixture of 100 c.c. 90 per cent. alcohol, 5 c.c. formol, and 0·1 grm. chromic acid, changing the mixture daily.

Orth (*Berl. klin. Wochenschr.*, 1896, No. 13; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 3, 1896, p. 316) recommends under the title of *Formol-Müller* (or, abbreviated, F. M.), a mixture of one part of formol to ten of liquid of Müller (§ 57). It must be freshly prepared, and changed every few days. Small pieces of tissue may be sufficiently hardened in a few hours in a stove.

Krauss (*Trans. Amer. Mic. Soc.*, xvii, 1896, p. 315; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 493) finds that formalin in different strengths hardens well, but causes a notable shrinkage of neuroglia, and prefers liquid of Müller.

See also Siemerling, *Neurol. Centralb.*, xviii, 1899, p. 472; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 4, 1900, p. 470 (10 per cent. formol gives a good consistency; but if it is allowed to act long, stains will be bad unless the material is after-hardened for some weeks in solution of Müller, and the sections mordanted [for myelin stains] with 0·5 per cent. chromic acid).

For special mixtures for Golgi impregnations see § 752.

693. Nervous Centres of Reptiles, Fishes, and Amphibia.—Mason (*Central Nervous System of Certain Reptiles*, etc.; Whitman's *Methods*, p. 196) recommends iodised alcohol, six to twelve hours; 3 per cent. bichromate, with a piece of camphor in the bottle, and to be changed once a fortnight until the hardening is sufficient (six to ten weeks).

Burckhardt (*Das Centralnervensystem von Protopterus*, Berlin, 1892;

Zeit. f. wiss. Mik., ix, 3, 1893, p. 347) recommends a liquid composed of 300 parts of 1 per cent. chromic acid, 10 parts of 2 per cent. osmic acid, and 10 parts of concentrated nitric acid, in which brains of Protopterus are hardened in twenty-four to forty-eight hours.

Fish (*Journ. of Morphol.*, x, 1, 1895, p. 234) employed for the encephalon of *Desmognathus fusca* a mixture of 100 c.c. of 50 per cent. alcohol, 5 c.c. of glacial acetic acid, 5 grms. of corrosive sublimate, and 1 grm. of picric acid, fixing for twelve to twenty-four hours, and passing through the usual alcohols.

Imbedding and Cutting.

694. The Methods of Imbedding.—The paraffin infiltration method can only conveniently used for the smaller objects of this class. Human spinal cord (which is quite at the upper limit as regards size) can be properly infiltrated with paraffin by taking the precaution of first cutting it up into slices of not more that a few millimetres—preferably not more than one—in thickness. The largest objects of this class, such as entire hemispheres of man, cannot be *really infiltrated* with any known imbedding mass in any reasonable time ; and the anatomist must be content with simple superficial imbedding —the mere production of a mould of imbedding mass round the tissues—a proceeding which is here of the greatest service. For intermediate objects—those whose size varies between that of a small nut and a walnut—it appears to me that they are best treated by the collodion method, which is at once the safest, the most convenient, and the most advantageous as regards the ulterior treatment of sections.

Imbedding is not a necessary process. Sections can be obtained from any part of the central nervous system without imbedding. The material should be very well hardened, and a suitable piece should be glued on to a piece of wood or cork by means of a rather thick solution of gum arabic. As soon as it begins to stick to the support the whole is thrown into 80 per cent. alcohol to harden the joint, after which it may be fixed in the object-holder of the microtome and cut.

If the collodion method has been taken a difficulty may arise. It may be found that, notwithstanding every precaution, the collodion has not thoroughly penetrated the tissues. Good sections may, however, still be obtained by

Duval's method of collodionising the sections. The cut surface of the tissue is dried by blowing on it, and is covered with a thin layer of collodion laid on it with a brush. As soon as this layer has somewhat dried, which happens very rapidly, a section is cut and the cut surface is collodionised as before, and so on for each section. This process gives very good results, and may be advantageously employed even with material that has been successfully imbedded, as it gives a better consistency to the tissue, and enables thinner sections to be obtained (van Gehuchten, *in litt.*).

Strasser (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1892, p. 8) obtains paraffin sections of 10 cm. breadth by 15 cm. length. He cuts out from hardened material slices of from 1 to 2 cm. in thickness, de-alcoholises them with xylol-carbolic acid mixture, § 161, allows this to evaporate, and brings them first into melted yellow vaselin, and lastly either into a mixture of vaselin and paraffin of 42° melting point, or into pure paraffin.

He also imbeds the slices in celloidin, and clears them before cutting with a mixture of xylol-carbolic acid and 80 per cent. alcohol in equal parts.

Feist (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 4, 1892) gives a useful hint for marking the right and left sides of spinal cord. He imbeds with each segment of the cord a small cylinder (of about 1 square millimetre in section) of hardened liver, stuck vertically in the imbedding mass (either celloidin or paraffin) against the side of the cord that it is desired to mark.

For further details concerning imbedding and cutting, see *last edition.*

Cytological Methods.

(*a*) *Nerve cells.*

695. Nissl's **Methylen-blue Method** (*Neurol Centralb.*, 1894, p. 508).—Fresh material is hardened in 96 per cent. alcohol, and sectioned without imbedding. The sections are brought into a watch glass with the following stain :

Methylen blue (Methylenblau pat.) .	3·75	parts.
Venice soap	1·75	,,
Distilled water	1000·0	,,

The watch glass is warmed over a flame to about 65° to 70° C., till bubbles are given off which burst at the surface of the liquid. The sections are then brought into a mixture of 10 parts of anilin oil with 90 parts of 96 per cent. alcohol, and are differentiated therein until colour is no longer given off from them. They are got on to a slide, dried with filter-paper, cleared with oil of cajeput, dried again with filter-paper, treated with a few drops of benzin, and mounted in benzin-colophonium.

Prof. VAN GEHUCHTEN writes me that he prefers to take paraffin sections, mounted on slides by the water method (§ 182), and stain them for five or six hours in Nissl's mixture in a stove kept at 35° to 40° C. Differentiation is done as above, and the sections are mounted in xylol-damar.

In a later paper (*op. cit.*, p. 781; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 2, 1896, p. 237) NISSL advises that after covering the sections with a drop of the benzin-colophonium they should be passed through a flame. The benzin gases ignite, and must be blown out immediately, and the operation repeated until the medium no longer ignites. This is said to prevent diffusion of the stain after mounting.

Slight modification by TELJATNIK, *Neurol. Centralb.*, xv, 1896, p. 1129; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 79.

SADOVSKY (*C. R. Soc. Biol.*, iii, 1896, p. 353) stains sections of formol material for a quarter of an hour to several hours in 1 per cent. methylen blue (or for one to three minutes in a concentrated solution of fuchsin in "5 per cent. carbolic acid water"), then treats them on the slide with 1 per cent. acetic acid until the grey substance is clearly differentiated from the white, dehydrates in absolute alcohol and passes through xylol into balsam. The fuchsin gives the sharper stain.

GOTHARD (*op. cit.*, v, 1898, p. 530; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 4, 1899, p. 487) stains celloidin sections for twenty-four hours in Unna's polychromatic methylen blue and differentiates in a mixture of 5 parts of creosote, 4 of oil of cajeput, 5 of xylol, and 16 of absolute alcohol.

LORD (*Journ. Ment. Sci.*, Oct., 1898; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 59) treats sections of fresh material frozen for a few seconds before staining with a mixture of equal parts of 6 per cent. formol and saturated solution of picric acid. He clears with origanum oil. See also *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 448.

Luithlen and Sorgo (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xvii, 1898, p. 640; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 359) differentiate in Unna's glycerin-ether mixture (procurable from Grübler & Hollborn), remove this with absolute alcohol and clear in origanum oil.

Ewing (*New York Med. Rec.*, 1898, p. 513; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 95) prefers to differentiate simply in absolute alcohol, clear in oil of cajeput, and mount in balsam.

See also some slight modifications in Goldscheider & Flatau, *Normale und path. Anat. der Nervenzellen*, etc., Berlin, Kornfeld, 1898; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 102, and Nissl's remarks thereon, *Deutsche Zeit. Nervenheilk.*, xiii, 1899, p. 348; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 370.

Further, Cox, *Intern. Monatsschr. Anat. Phys.*, xv, 1898, Heft 8; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 101.

696. Methylen Blue and Erythrosin.—Held (*Arch. Anat. Phys., Anat. Abth.*, 1895, 1896, p. 399) stains sections on slides, with the aid of a gentle heat, for one or two minutes in a solution of 1 grm. of Grübler's erythrosin in 150 of water with two drops of glacial acetic acid, washes out with water, and stains in a mixture of equal parts of Nissl's methylen blue and 5 per cent. solution of acetone, warming strongly the while, until all odour of acetone has disappeared. After cooling he differentiates with 0·1 per cent. solution of alum until the sections appear reddish, rinses in water, dehydrates as rapidly as possible in absolute alcohol, and passes through xylol into balsam. For some slight modifications see further Held, *op. cit.*, 1897, pp. 226—233, 273—305 (Supplementband), and Boccardi, *Mon. Zool. Ital.*, x, 1899, p. 141; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 4, 1900, p. 471 (stains in a mixture of erythrosin 0·1, toluidin blue 0·2, and water 100 parts, and differentiates in 0·5 per cent. alum solution).

697. Thionin.—Lenhossek (*Fein. Bau. d. Nervensystems*, Berlin, 1894, p. 149) stains sections of formol material for five minutes in a concentrated aqueous solution of thionin, rinses with water, differentiates in a mixture of 1 part anilin oil to 9 of absolute alcohol, and passes through oil of cajeput or xylol into damar or balsam. The stain does not keep well.

Similarly Ramón y Cajal, *Man. de Anat. Path. Gen.*, 1896 (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 375), and LUXENBURG, *Neurol. Centralb.*, xviii, 1899, p. 629; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 4, 1900, p. 477.

698. Toluidin Blue.—LENHOSSEK (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xvii, 1898, p. 577; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 492) thinks that for the study of the corpuscles of Nissl toluidin blue is preferable. Sections are stained on slides for a night in concentrated solution of toluidin blue, rinsed in water, quickly differentiated with alcohol, cleared with xylol or carbolic-acid xylol, and mounted in balsam. They may be very lightly counter-stained with erythrosin before the differentiation.

Similarly POLUMORDWINOW (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 371), who stains in a very weak alkaline solution, 1 part of 1 per cent. solution to 119 of water and 1 of carbonate of soda.

699. Neutral Red.—JULIUSBURGER (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xvi, 1897, p. 259; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 2, 1897, p. 211) stains sections of formol material for half to three quarters of a minute in *warm* 1 per cent. solution of neutral red, dehydrates in alcohol, and passes through bergamot oil to balsam.

ROSIN (*Deutsche med. Wochenschr.*, 1898, No. 39, p. 615; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 2, 1899, p. 238) stains in concentrated aqueous solution, washes out thoroughly with water, and passes through alcohol (must be free from acid) into xylol and balsam. A double, metachromatic stain, granules of Nissl red, nucleoli red, all the rest yellow.

700. Methods of REHM (*Münchener med. Wochenschr.*, 1892, No. 13; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 390), see *last edition.*

701. WEIGERT's **Stain for Nuclear Figures** (*Allg. Zeit. f. Psychiatrie*, l, 1894, p. 245).—Sections of alcohol material, cut without imbedding, are put for half an hour into *Tinct. Ferri Acet. Rademacheri*, rinsed, stained for a quarter of an hour in 1 per cent. solution of hæmatoxylin in water, rinsed, differentiated rapidly in 70 per cent. alcohol containing 1 per cent. of hydrochloric acid, and mounted in balsam.

702. Other Methods.—See COX, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 498; xv, 3, p. 369; xvi, 1, 1899, p. 101; *Anat. Hefte*, xxxi, 1898, p. 75; *Intern.*

Monatsschr., xv, 1898, H. 8; AUERBACH, *Monatsschr. Psychiatrie*, iv, 1898, p. 31; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 493; BUEHLER, *Verh. Phys.-Med. Ges. Würzburg*, xxxi, 1898, p. 285; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 351.

(*b*) *Nerve Fibres.*

703. Structure of Medullated Nerve.—In order to demonstrate the axis-cylinder and the sheath of Schwann, the myelin may be removed. This may be done by boiling in caustic soda, and then neutralising; by boiling in a mixture of absolute alcohol and ether, and adding caustic soda; by boiling in glacial acetic acid; by boiling in fuming nitric acid, and adding caustic potash; or by treating with *eau de Javelle;* or (VAN GEHUCHTEN, *in litt.*) the myelin may be extracted in the cold by leaving the nerves for some time in a mixture of alcohol and ether.

704. Axis-Cylinder, KUPFFER'S **Method** (*Sitzb. math. phys. Kl. k. Bayr. Akad. Wiss.*, xiii, 1884, p. 470; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 106).—A nerve is stretched on a cork and treated for twenty-four hours with 0·5 per cent. osmic acid. It is then washed in water for two hours and stained for twenty-four to twenty-eight hours in saturated aqueous solution of Säurefuchsin; after which it is washed out for from six to twelve hours (not more in any case) in absolute alcohol, cleared in clove oil, imbedded in paraffin, and cut.

Iron hæmatoxylin sometimes gives a sharp stain of axis-cylinders.

See also the complicated method of AUERBACH, *Neurol. Centralb.*, 1897, p. 439; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 402.

705. Formol-Methylen-Blue.—ROSSOLIMOW and MURAWIEW (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xvi, 1897, p. 722; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1898, p. 511) harden pieces of nerve in 2 per cent. formol solution for two days, then for two more in 4 per cent., tease or section, stain in warmed methylen blue, with heat, and differentiate with anilin alcohol, as in Nissl's process, clear in oil of cajeput, and mount in balsam.

706. Neuroceratin Structures (GALLI, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 1, 1886, p. 467).—Small portions of ischiatic nerve are treated for one or two days with solution of Müller diluted with 2 parts of water, then for a quarter of an hour with glycerin containing 1 or two drops of glacial acetic acid for each cubic centimetre, and finally (without previous washing with water) are stained for fifteen to twenty minutes in aqueous solution of China blue, washed out in alcohol, cleared in essence of turpentine, and mounted in damar.

PLATNER's **Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 2, 1889, p. 186).—Small nerves are fixed and hardened for several days in a mixture of 1 part of Liq. Ferri Perchlor. (Ph. G., ed. 2) and 3 to 4 parts of water or alcohol, washed out in water or alcohol till no traces of iron remain in them, stained for several days or weeks in a concentrated solution of "Echtgrün" in 75 per cent. alcohol, dehydrated, imbedded, and sectioned. See also BEER, *Jahrb. Psychiatrie*, ii, 1893, 1 Heft.

See also the papers of GEDOELST in *La Cellule*, iii, 1887, p. 117, and v, 1889, p. 126 (good details of digestion methods); also the report in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 57.

COX (*Anat. Hefte*, i, H. 31, 1898, p. 75; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 369) fixes nerves in osmic acid of 2 per cent. (rabbit) or 1 per cent. (frog), washes, dehydrates, clears with bergamot oil, and mounts in balsam. The bergamot oil dissolves out the myelin, and leaves the neuroceratin visible. It may be necessary to leave the nerves for forty-eight hours in the oil.

707. APÁTHY's **Neurofibrils** (APÁTHY, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1897, p. 712).—**The Hæmatein Method.**—Material may be fixed with sublimate, liquid of Zenker, picro-sulphuric acid, or any mixture that is not inimical to staining with alum hæmatoxylin, and should be preserved in 90 per cent. alcohol. Portions are stained for at least forty-eight hours in the hæmatein solution I A, § 247, and are then washed for up to twenty-four hours in *absolutely pure* distilled water, preferably suspended therein. Before the stain has become washed out of the neurofibrils, it is fixed therein by putting the preparations for three to five hours into spring water, after which they are put back for not more than two hours into distilled water, dehydrated as rapidly as possible by hanging them up in absolute alcohol, and imbedded in paraffin, or celloidin, or glycerin jelly; they must be protected from the light whilst in the chloroform through which they are passed into the paraffin, or whilst in the celloidin. Sections are made and mounted in a resin or in neutral glycerin.

APÁTHY's **Gold Chloride After-gilding Method** has been given, § 358; his **Fore-gilding Method**, § 355, p. 255.

See also Bethe (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, li, 1898, p. 385), where are also some details as to staining with methylen blue, and a new method with toluidin blue after mordanting with molybdic acid.

708. Other Methods for Medullated Nerve.—Ranvier, *Traité*, p. 718, *et seq.;* Rezzonico, *Arch. per le Sci. Med.*, 1879, p. 237 ; Tizzoni, *ibid.*, 1878, p. 4 (a process of boiling in chloroform for an hour or two, then staining and mounting in glycerin) ; Boveri, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 1, 1887, p. 91 ; Jakimovitch, *Journ. de l'Anat.*, xxiii, 1888, p. 142, or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 4, 1888, p. 526 (instructions for impregnating the axis-cylinder with silver, followed by reduction in formic acid and amyl alcohol) ; Schiefferdecker, in Behrens, Kossel, u. Schiefferdecker, *Das Mikroskop*, Bd. ii, p. 227 ; Huber, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 3, 1893, p. 394 (stains with Benda's safranin and Lichtgrün) ; Rabl, *ibid.*, xi, 1, 1894, p. 42 (the lines of Frommann are artefacts due to the silver nitrate) ; Fischel, *ibid.*, p. 48 (similar conclusion) ; Tirelli, *ibid.*, xi, 3, 1894, p. 391 ; Segall, *Journ. de l'Anat.*, xxix, 1893, p. 586 ; Marchesini, *Anat. Anz.*, xii, 1896, p. 211 (sublimate and sulphide of potassium).

CHAPTER XXXI.

NEUROLOGICAL METHODS—NERVE-FIBRE STAINS (WEIGERT AND OTHERS).

a. Myelin Stains.

709. Introduction.—The most important of the methods for the study of tracts of medullated nerve-fibres are the hæmatoxylin methods of WEIGERT.

There have been in all three methods of WEIGERT; the 1884 method, the 1885 method, and the 1891 method. The ordinary methods of staining with hæmatoxylin depend on the employment of an aluminium lake of hæmatoxylin. WEIGERT's method depends on the formation of another lake, a chromium or copper lake. In consequence of the formation of these lakes hæmatoxylin acquires the property of staining the myelin of nerves in a quite specific way.

In WEIGERT's process the formation of these lakes takes place in the tissue itself. The details of the process have been considerably modified, both by other workers and by WEIGERT himself. The 1884 method (*Fortschr. d. Med.*, 1884, pp. 113, 190; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1884, pp. 290, 564), which depends on the formation of a chrome lake, may be considered to be superseded. Not so the two others, which depend on the formation of a copper lake.

For a critical history of these methods, see WEIGERT, in *Ergebnisse der Anatomie*, vi, 1896 (1897), p. 5.

710. WEIGERT's **1885 Method** (*Fortschr. d. Med.*, 1885, p. 136; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, pp. 399, 484; *Ergebnisse der Anatomie*, vi, 1896 [1897], p. 10).—The tissues are to be hardened in bichromate of potash. WEIGERT takes (*Ergebnisse*, p. 10) a 5 per cent. solution, and if time is an object hardens in a stove. (Other bichromate mixtures will do, *e. g.* Müller's, Kultschizky's, Zenker's; Erlicki's is not to be recommended). The tissues are "ripe" for staining when the hardening has been carried to a certain point. They are first (*Ergebnisse*, p. 13) yellow, without differentiation of the grey matter from the white; these are unripe. Later they show the grey matter light brown, the white matter dark brown (owing to reduction of a part of the bichromate to a chrome oxide in the medullary sheaths); these are "ripe." If the hardening be continued "all the more highly oxidised chrome will pass into the lower stage of oxidation, and the tissues will become green." The tissues are then over-ripe, and cannot be used for myelin-staining without mordanting with copper or the like.

After due hardening, the preparation is imbedded by infiltration with celloidin (if desired: imbedding is not obligatory) and the celloidin block fastened on cork and hardened in the usual way. The hardened block is put for one or two days into saturated solution of neutral acetate of copper diluted with one volume of water, the whole being kept at the temperature of an incubating stove. By this treatment the tissues become green and the celloidin bluish green. The mordantage of the tissues is now terminated, and the preparation may be kept till wanted for sectioning in 80 per cent. alcohol.

Sections are made with a knife wetted with alcohol, and are brought into a stain composed of—

Hæmatoxylin	0·75 to 1 part.
Alcohol	10 parts.
Water	90 ,,
Saturated solution of lithium carbonate	1 part.

(A trace of any other alkali may be added in the place of lithium carbonate. The object of adding a little of some base is to "ripen" the hæmatoxylin solution; or the solution may be made up with hæmatein, and the alkali omitted.)

The sections remain in the stain for a length of time that varies according to the nature of the tissues: spinal cord, two hours; medullary layers of brain, two hours; cortical layers, twenty-four hours.

They are then rinsed with water, and brought into a decolourising solution composed of—

Borax	2·0	parts.
Ferricyanide of potassium	2·5	,,
Water	200·0	,,

They remain in the solution until they are decoloured to the right degree—that is, until complete differentiation of the nerves (half an hour to several hours), and are then rinsed with water, dehydrated with alcohol, and mounted in balsam. They may be previously stained, if desired, with alum-carmine for the demonstration of nuclei.

The results are most splendid. The blue-black nerves stand out with admirable boldness on a golden ground. The method is applicable to the study of peripheral nerves as well as to nerve centres, and is likely to be of utility in Vertebrate embryology.

Nerve tissue is not the only tissue stained by the process, which can be usefully applied to lymphatic glands and to skin (see SCHIEFFERDECKER, in *Anat. Anz.*, ii, 1887, p. 680).

The process is applicable to tissues that have been hardened in alcohol or in any other way, provided that they be put into a solution of a chromic salt until they become brown, before mordanting them in the copper solution.

It is not necessary that the mordantage be done in bulk. MAX FLESCH (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 1, 1886, p. 50) prefers (following LICHTHEIM) to make the sections first, and, after mordanting, bring them on a spatula into 70 per cent. alcohol, and thence into the stain.

For a method for regenerating the staining solution after use, see FANNY BERLINERBLAU, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 50, or *previous editions.*

PANETH (*ibid.*, 1887, p. 213) makes the stain with extract of logwood instead of pure hæmatoxylin.

BREGLIA (*ibid.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 236; see also *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 817) stains with liquid extract of logwood or Pernambuco wood.

For both of these see *previous editions.*

GEROTA (*Intern. Monatsschr. Anat.*, xiii, 1896, pp. 138, 139; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 3, 1896, p. 315) states that the reaction can be obtained by using the copper *after* the stain, and that an alum-hæmatoxylin may be used. He *dissolves* 6 grm. hæmatoxylin in 60 of absolute alcohol, and adds 200 of 1 per cent. alum solution, lets the solution stand for ten days, stains therein sections for four to twenty-four hours at 37° C., puts them for 2 hours into the copper acetate at 37° C., and then differentiates.

711. WEIGERT'S **1891 Method** (*Deutsche med. Wochenschr.*, 42, 1891, p. 1184; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 3, 1891, p. 392).—

The material is to be hardened in bichromate and imbedded in celloidin in the usual way. The hardened blocks of celloidin are brought into a mixture of equal parts of a cold saturated solution of neutral acetate of copper and 10 per cent. aqueous solution of potassio-tartrate of sodium ($C_4H_4O_6KNa + 4H_2O$, salt of Seignette). They are left in the mixture for twenty-four hours in an incubator. (Large specimens [pons] will require forty-eight hours, the mixture being changed for fresh at the end of twenty-four hours.) They are then brought for twenty-four hours into aqueous solution of neutral acetate of copper, either saturated or diluted with 1 volume of water, being kept as before in the incubator. They are then rinsed with water and brought into 80 per cent. alcohol, in which they may either remain till wanted or be cut after half an hour.

Sections are made and stained for from four to twenty-four hours at the temperature of the room in a freshly prepared mixture of 9 vols. of (A) a mixture of 7 c.c. of saturated aqueous solution of carbonate of lithium with 93 c.c. of water, and 1 vol. of (B) a solution of 1 grm. of hæmatoxylin in 10 c.c. of alcohol (A and B may be kept in stock, but A must not be too old). The sections should be loose ones, not such as have been seriated in celloidin, and should not be thicker than 0·025 mm. The stain is poured off and the sections are washed in several changes of water poured on to them. They are then treated with 90 per cent. alcohol, followed by carbolic-acid-and-xylol mixture (for a short time only), or by a mixture of 2 parts of anilin oil with 1 of xylol, then pure xylol and xylol balsam (not chloroform balsam, which injures the stain).

Medullated fibres dark blue on a light, sometimes rosy ground. If it be wished to have the ground particularly colourless, take instead of the second wash-water a mixture of $\frac{1}{5}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ volume of common (not glacial) acetic acid with 100 volumes of water. Thick sections or series in celloidin require a special differentiation. They may be differentiated either with the above-mentioned acetic acid mixture, or in the usual borax-ferricyanide mixture diluted with water. In the latter case the ground will be yellow.

If the impregnation with the copper be imperfect (as, for instance, may happen if the treatment with the copper salt be performed at the normal temperature instead of in an incubator) some instructive differentiations of ganglion-cells may be obtained, the processes of the cells of Purkinje in the cerebellum, for instance, being very sharply brought out; but such preparations have a tendency to after-blackening, which does not happen with those that have been thoroughly impregnated with the copper.

The advantages of the improved method are that differentiation after staining is not necessary; that the annoying precipitates formed on the surface of the preparations by the copper in the old method do not appear; that the divers manipulations are simpler and easier; the preparations are equal in beauty to those of Pal, and can be obtained with greater certainty. But it is not so well applicable to series of sections by WEIGERT'S Collodion Method, § 195, because the sections must be *thin.*

Since the first publication of this method, it has been discovered (WEIGERT, *Ergebnisse der Anat.*, iii, 1894, p. 21) that preparations made as above, without differentiation in the ferricyanide liquid, *do not keep well.* Weigert therefore now advises that they be mordanted as above with salt of Seignette, which has the advantage of preventing the formation of precipitates on the surface of the preparations, but *that they be also differentiated in the ferricyanide,* as in the 1885 method.

Modifications of Weigert's Method.

712. PAL'S **Method** (*Wien. med. Jahrb.*, 1886; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 1, 1887, p. 92; *Med. Jahrb.*, 1887, p. 589; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1888, p. 88).—This is a *chrome-lake* process. You proceed at first as in WEIGERT'S process, but *omitting the copper bath,* and you stain as in WEIGERT'S process. After staining in the hæmatoxylin solution the sections are washed in water (if they are not stained of a deep blue a trace of lithium carbonate must be added to the water). They are then brought for twenty to thirty seconds into 0·25 per cent. solution of permanganate of potash, rinsed in water, and brought into a decolouring solution composed of—

Acid. Oxalic. pur.	1·0
Potassium Sulphite * (Kalium Sulfurosum [SO_3K_2])	1·0
Aq. Dest.	200·0

In a few seconds the grey substance of the sections is decolourised, the white matter remaining blue. The sections should now be well washed out, and may be double-stained with Magdala red or eosin, or (better) with picro-carmine or acetic-acid-carmine.

For further details as to the somewhat elaborate minutiæ of the process see the papers quoted, or BEHRENS, KOSSEL, and SCHIEFFERDECKER'S *Das Mikroskop*, i, p. 199.

PAL'S process gives more brilliant results than that of Weigert, the ground of the preparations being *totally colourless*. But it has a defect; it is less certain, or, to put it in another way, less easy to control. The differentiation is more energetic and rapid than is desirable. The whole process of differentiation only lasts some seconds; evidently, then, an error of judgment of only a few seconds may entirely vitiate the result.

WEIGERT (*Ergebnisse*, vi, p. 21) considers that for very thick sections the process is superior to his own. But it is not so safe for very fine fibres, and is not applicable to his collodion series method; each section must be treated separately.

MARCUS stains by the Pal method sections of material hardened in formalin, as described § 692.

See also MARINA, § 692.

GUDDEN (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xvi, 1897, p. 24) makes celloidin sections of material hardened in 5—10 per cent. formol followed by alcohol, treats them for ten hours with 0·55 per cent. chromic acid, rinses with water, and treats with 80 per cent. alcohol, then stains by the method of Pal, adding to the hæmatoxylin a few drops of dilute nitric acid (MINNICH).

TSCHERNYSCHEW and KARUSIN (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 354), stain for twenty-four hours in the hæmatoxylin of KULTSCHITZKY.

DÖLLKEN (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 4, 1899, p. 444) stains for four or five days in the hæmatoxylin cold, then for two hours at 37° C., washes for six to eight hours in spring water, and for a quarter of an hour in distilled water containing 2 to 3 drops of caustic potash per litre, differentiates in the permanganate until the undeveloped non-medullated tracts (the method is for young animals) begin to appear, washes in distilled water, and puts into 1 per cent. oxalic acid until the non-medullated tracts appear light brown, cortex and nuclei darker. Staining with carmine, etc., is not necessary.

---

* Not "sulphide," as erroneously given in MERCIER'S *Les Coupes de Système Nerveux Central*, p. 190.

713. Kaiser (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xii, 1893, No. 11, pp. 364, 368; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 249) hardens first in liquid of Müller, then for eight days in *liquid of* Marchi (§ 719), mordants sections with sesquichloride of iron, stains, and differentiates with Pal's liquid. For details see *previous editions.*

Similarly Bolton (*Journ. of Anat. and Phys.*, xxxii, 1898, p. 245; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 4, 1899, p. 457), who makes sections of formalin material, and mordants them for a few minutes in 1 per cent. osmic acid, or for a few hours in iron-alum or ammonium molybdate, stains in Kultschitzky's hæmatoxylin (next §), and differentiates by Pal's process.

Similarly to this, Laslett (*Lancet*, 1898, p. 321; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1898, p. 600), who mordants in liquid of Marchi (1 week), makes sections, stains by Kultschitzky's method, and differentiates by Pal's.

714. Kultschitzky (*Anat. Anz.*, 1889, p. 223, and 1890, p. 519; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 2, 1889, p. 196, and vii, 3, 1890, p. 367) has given two modifications of Weigert's method, of which the following is the later :—Specimens are hardened for one or two months in *solution of Erlicki*, imbedded in celloidin or photoxylin, and cut. Sections are stained for from one to three hours, or as much as twenty-four, in a stain made by adding 1 grm. of hæmatoxylin dissolved in a little alcohol to 100 c.c. of 2 per cent. acetic acid. They are washed out in saturated solution of carbonate of lithia or soda.

Differentiation is not necessary, but by adding to the carbonate of lithia solution 10 per cent. of a 1 per cent. solution of red prussiate of potash, and decolourising therein for two or three hours or more, a sharper stain is obtained. After this the sections are well washed in water and mounted in balsam.

Wolters (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 466) proceeds as Kultschitzky, except that he stains in a solution kept warm by placing it on the top of a stove kept at 45° C. for twenty-four hours, after which time the sections are dipped in solution of Müller, and differentiated by the method of Pal.

Kaes (*ibid.*, viii, 3, 1891, p. 388; *Neurol. Centralb.*, 1891, No. 15) modifies this by staining for as much as two or three days, and performing the differentiation several times over. It appears doubtful whether either of these modifications is an improvement.

715. Mitrophanow (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 361) mordants photoxylin sections for at least twenty-four hours at 40° C. in a mixture of equal parts of saturated aqueous solution of acetate of copper and 90 per cent. alcohol, stains for ten minutes in Kultschitzky's hæmatoxylin, and differentiates with Weigert's ferricyanide. Or after the copper bath he stains for ten minutes in a solution of 1 grm. hæmatoxylin in 400 c.c. of absolute alcohol with 4 c.c. of acetic acid, brings into ¼ per cent. solution of cyanide of potassium in 45 per cent. alcohol until the photoxylin is discoloured, then into the same with addition of 1 per cent. solution of red prussiate of potash until the muscles are discoloured (this refers to sections through the head of *Anguilla*).

716. Berkley's **Rapid Method** (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xi, 9, 1892, p. 270; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 3, 1893, p. 370).—Slices of tissue of not more than two and a half millimetres in thickness are hardened for twenty-four to thirty hours in *mixture of Flemming*, at a temperature of 25° C., then in absolute alcohol, then imbedded in celloidin and cut. After washing in water the sections are put overnight into a saturated solution of acetate of copper (or they may be simply warmed therein to 35° to 40° C. for half an hour). They are then washed, and stained for fifteen to twenty minutes in the fluid given below, warmed to 40° C., allowed to cool, and differentiated for one to three minutes in Weigert's ferricyanide liquid, which may be diluted if desired with one third of water. Water, alcohol, bergamot oil, xylol-balsam.

The stain is made as follows: 2 c.c. of saturated solution of carbonate of lithia are added to 50 c.c. of boiling water and the solution boiled for two minutes more, when 1½ to 2 c.c. of 10 per cent. solution of hæmatoxylin in absolute alcohol are added.

This method is most suited to fresh material, and does not give good results with tissues that have suffered *post-mortem* changes. It suffers from the defective penetration of the liquid of Flemming.

Liquid of Flemming had been used before by Friedmann (*Neurol. Centralb.*, 1885).

717. Other Modifications or Similar Methods.—Flechsig, *Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., Phys. Abth.*, 1889, p. 537; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1890, p. 71; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 538; Breglia, *Zeit.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 36; Rossi, *ibid.*, vi, 2, 188, 1889, p. 182; Mercier, *ibid.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 480; Haug, *ibid.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 153; Walsem, *ibid.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 236; Robertson, *ibid.*, xiv, 1897, p. 80 (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1897, p. 651); Hill, *Brain*, lxxiii, 1896; *Phil. Trans.*, 184B, 1894, p. 399; Aronson, *Centralb. med. Wiss.*, 1890; *Ergebnisse der Anat.*, vi, 1896 (1897), p. 22 (differentiates in a watch-glassful of water containing a few drops of a mixture of equal parts of concentrated solution of calcium chloride and water); Boehm u. Oppel, *ibid.*, p. 23, who use in the same way hypochlorite of sodium; Harris, *Philadelphia Med. Journ.*, May 14th, 1898 (stains sections [of material hardened as for Weigert's stain] for several hours in a 1 per cent. solution of toluidin blue in 1 per cent. borax solution, and differentiates in saturated aqueous solution of tannic acid).

Other Myelin Stains.

718. Osmic Acid (Exner, *Sitzb. k. Akad. Wiss. Wien*, 1881, lxxxiii, 3 Abth., p. 151; Bevan Lewis, *The Human Brain*, p. 105).—A small portion of brain, not exceeding a cubic centimetre in size, is placed in ten times its volume of 1 per cent. osmic acid, replaced by fresh after two days. In from five to ten days it is imbedded and cut. The sections are treated by caustic ammonia (20 drops to 50 c.c. of water), which clears up the general mass of the brain substance, leaving medullated fibres black, and are examined in glycerin. According to Weigert the method shows very fine fibres indeed. The preparations are not permanent.

719. Marchi's **Method (for Degenerate Nerves)** (*Rivista sperim. di Freniatria e di Med. legale*, 1887, p. 208; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 350).—Nerves are first hardened for a week in solution of Müller, and then put for a few days into a mixture of 2 parts solution of Müller and 1 part 1 per cent. osmic acid solution. The treatment with the chrome salt deprives the medullary sheath of normal fibres of the faculty of impregnating with osmium, whilst the (fatty) degeneration products in diseased sheaths retain that faculty. In consequence the sheaths in normal nerves acquire a yellow coloration, those of degenerated tracts a black one.

For the study of degenerate nerve-tracts the method of Marchi has an advantage over that of Weigert, in that it gives *positive* images of the degenerated elements, Weigert's process only giving negative ones.

For a critical review of this method and its modifications see WEIGERT, in *Ergebnisse der Anatomie*, vii, 1897 (1898), pp. 1—8.

The method has been applied to tissues that have been hardened in formol; but this (WEIGERT, *loc. cit.*) does not seem recommendable.

VASSALE (*Arch. Ital. Biol.*, xxiv, 1895, p. 89; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 4, 1896, p. 495) modifies the fluid by taking 1 per cent. osmic acid one part, and three parts liquid of Müller, and adding twenty drops of nitric acid to 100 c.c. of the mixture, but only advises the modification for large specimens which have been a long time, four to five months, in the liquid of Müller.

FINOTTI (*Virchow's Arch.*, cxliii, 1896, p. 133; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 237) makes sections of material that has been in liquid of Müller for not more than a few weeks or months, and puts them for four to ten hours into a freshly prepared mixture of one or two parts of 1 per cent. osmic acid and one part of a concentrated solution of picric acid in one third alcohol (the mixture must be protected from light during the reaction). For peripheral nerves, myelin (normal), black.

BUSCH (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xvii, 1898, p. 476; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 373) puts formol-hardened material for five to seven days into a solution of one part osmic acid, three of iodate of sodium, and 300 of water. Same stain as Marchi's, but more penetrating and sharper.

TELJATNIK (*Neurol. Centralb.*, 1897, p. 521; WEIGERT (*op. cit.*, supra, p. 5) impregnates as Marchi, and afterwards treats with permanganate and oxalic acid as in the method of PAL (§ 712).

See also ROSSOLIMO & BUSCH, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 55.

720. AZOULAY'S **Osmic Acid Method** (*Anat. Anz.*, x, 1, 1894, p. 25).—(A) Sections of material that has been for several months in liquid of Müller are put for five to fifteen minutes into solution of osmic acid of 1 : 500 or 1 : 1000 strength. Rinse with water and put them for two to five minutes into a 5 or 10 per cent. solution of tannin, warming them therein over a flame till vapours are given off, or in a stove at 50° to 55° C. Wash for five minutes in water, double-stain if desired with carmine or eosin, and mount in balsam. Thin sections are necessary to ensure good results. If they should be too thick it will be necessary after staining to differentiate by PAL'S process, or by *eau de Javelle* diluted with 50 vols. of water. (B) Material that has been in an osmic mixture (liquid of Flemming, of Marchi, or of Golgi). Sections as before, then the tannin bath, warming for three to ten minutes, and the rest as before.

721. HELLER and GUMPERTZ (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1896, p. 385) give for peripheral nerves, and HELLER (*op. cit.*, xv, 1899, p. 495) for central nervous system, the following:—The material is hardened in liquid of Müller. Sections (by the celloidin method if desired) are put into 1 per cent. osmic acid (twenty-four hours at 37° C.) for peripheral nerves, ten minutes (or thirty at the normal temperature) for central. They are treated with pyrogallic acid (a photographic developer will do) till the nerves are black, then with a violet-coloured solution of permanganate of potash till the sections become brown, then with 2 per cent. oxalic acid till they become yellow-green. Wash out well between each operation; the preparations are then permanent. Mount in glycerin or balsam.

Similarly ROBERTSON (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1897, p. 651; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1897, p. 175), the material being previously mordanted with Weigert's chrome-alum-copper fluid for neuroglia.

722. Silver Nitrate.—VASTARINI-CRESI (*Att. Accad. Med. Chir. Napoli*, l, 1896) hardens in formol, cuts thick sections, washes them with 40 per cent. alcohol, puts them in the dark into 1 per cent. solution of nitrate of silver in alcohol of 40 per cent. to 70 per cent., then washes thoroughly.

723. Gold Chloride for Peripheral Nerves (FREY. *Arch. Anat. Phys., Anat. Abth. Supp.*, 1897, p. 108. See *Grundzüge*, LEE & MAYER, p. 421).

724. Polarisation.—Myelin can sometimes be detected by the polariscope (see AMBRONN & HELD, *Ber. Math. Phys. Ges. Wiss. Leipzig*, 1895, p. 37). They examined teased preparations of peripheral nerves fresh in normal salt solution, or thick sections of nerve centres cut with the freezing microtome.

See also GAD & HEYMANS, *Arch. Anat. Phys., Phys. Abth.*, 1890, p. 531.

b. Myelin-and-axis-cylinder Stains.

725. Paladino's **Iodide of Palladium Method** (*Rendic R. Accad. Scienze Fis. e Mat.*, Napoli, iv, 1890, p. 14, and 1891 [1892], p. 227; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 237, and ix, 2, 1892, p. 238; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 817, and 1892, p. 439).—Pieces of material hardened in bichromate, chromic acid, or corrosive sublimate, and not more than 5 to 8 mm. in thickness, are put for two days into a large quantity (at least 150 to 200 c.c. for each piece) of 0·1 per cent. solution of chloride of palladium (see § 78). They are next put for twenty-four hours into a solution of iodide of potassium of 4 : 100 strength, of which a relatively small volume should be taken; otherwise the iodide of palladium, which is rapidly formed in the tissues, may be again extracted by the liquid (small pieces of tissue should not remain in it for more than one or two hours). Dehydrate; imbed, if necessary, in paraffin by the chloroform method; mount in balsam.

Later (*Boll. Accad. Med. Roma*, xix, 1893, p. 256; *Arch. Ital. Biol.*, xx, 1894, p. 40) he first dehydrates the pieces, then puts them in an incubator for an hour into absolute alcohol and benzol, an hour in pure benzol, and finally twenty-four hours in absolute alcohol, which removes the myelin. They are then put for a week into chloride of palladium of 1 to 2 per cent., one to two days into 4 per cent. iodide of potassium, and are lastly passed through alcohol into celloidin.

726. Sahli (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 1) stains sections of tissue hardened in bichromate to the degree required for Weigert's hæmatoxylin process for several hours in concentrated aqueous solution of methylen blue, rinses with water, and stains for five minutes in saturated aqueous solution of Säurefuchsin. If now the sections be rinsed with alcohol and brought into a liberal quantity of water, the stain becomes differentiated, axis-cylinders being shown coloured red and the myelin sheaths blue.

The same author (*loc. cit.*, p. 50) also gives the following:—Sections of material hardened as before are stained for a few minutes or hours in the following liquid:

Water	40 parts.
Saturated aqueous solution of methylen blue .	24 ,,
5 per cent. solution of borax	16 ,,

(Mix, let stand a day, and filter.)

The sections are then washed either in water or alcohol until the grey matter can be clearly distinguished from the white, are cleared with cedar oil, and mounted in balsam. Nerve tubes blue, ganglion cells greenish, nuclei of neuroglia blue.

727. Method of ADAMKIEWICS (*Sitzb. k. Akad. Wiss. Wien. Math. Naturw. Kl.*, 1884, p. 245; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1884, p. 587).—Sections (of spinal cord hardened in liquid of Müller for not less than one month and not more than three) are washed first with water, then in water acidified with a little nitric acid, and stained in concentrated solution of *safranin.* They are then treated with alcohol and clove oil till no more colour comes away, and are brought back again into water, washed in water acidified with acetic acid, stained in *methylen blue*, and cleared as before. Myelin red, nuclei violet.

NIKIFOROW (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 3, 1888, p. 338) impregnates with gold chloride or other metallic salt after the safranin stain.

Similarly CIAGLINSKI (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1, 1891, p. 19) and STROEBE (*ibid.*, x, 3, 1893, p. 336), both of them employing safranin followed by anilin blue.

For NISSL's Congo red method see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 1886, p. 398.

728. FINOTTI (*op. cit.*, § 719) stains strongly in Delafield's hæmatoxylin, then for a few seconds in concentrated solution of picric acid, then in 0·5 per cent. Säurefuchsin, and treats with alkaline alcohol (caustic potash).

OHLMACHER (*Journ. Exper. Med.*, ii, 1897, p. 675) stains sections on the slide for one minute with anilin-water gentian, § 272, then for a few seconds in a solution of 0·5 per cent. of Säurefuchsin in saturated solution of picric acid diluted with one volume of water, washes well with water, differentiates with alcohol and clove oil, and mounts in balsam.

729. ARONSON (*Centralb. med. Wiss.*, 1890, p. 577) stains sections of material hardened in liquid of Erlicki or Müller (these must be mordanted with acetate of copper) for twelve to twenty-four hours in a solution of 3 to 4 c.c. of Gallein (Grübler & Co.) in 100 c.c. of water with 20 of alcohol and three drops of concentrated solution of carbonate of soda. They are then differentiated by the method of Weigert, or Pal, or with chloride of calcium, § 717, then brought into concentrated solution of carbonate of soda or lithia until they become red, and are mounted in balsam (clear with oil of origanum). Nerve fibres red. A second stain with methylen blue may follow after differentiating with permanganate.

CHAPTER XXXII.

NEUROLOGICAL METHODS, AXIS-CYLINDER AND PROTOPLASM STAINS (GOLGI AND OTHERS).

730. Introduction.—There are three chief methods for the study of axis-cylinders and protoplasmic nerve-cell processes, viz. the methylen-blue staining method, the sublimate method of Golgi, and the bichromate-of-silver method of Golgi. The methylen-blue method having been given in Chap. XVII, it remains to group together here some other subordinate but useful methods that are also *stains proper*; after which will be given the methods of Golgi and some other *impregnation* methods.

(*c*) *Stains Proper.*

731. Anilin blue-black has been much recommended by Sankey (*Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, 1876, p. 69); Bevan Lewis (*Human Brain*, p. 125; Vejas (*Arch. f. Psychiatrie*, xvi, p. 200); Gierke (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1884, p. 376); Martinotti (*ibid.*, p. 478); Jelgersma (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 39); Schmaus (*Münch. med. Wochenschr.*, No. 8, 1891, p. 147; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1891, p. 230), and others. I have not been able to identify the colour used by these authors, but as they concur in saying that the *English* preparation sold under that name alone gives good results, I conclude that it must have been the anilin black of Lightfoot. If so, it is no longer found in commerce, and should not be quoted as a histological reagent (see § 313). For details see *previous editions.*

732. Martinotti (*loc. cit.*, 1884, p. 478) finds that *picro-nigrosin* gives very good results, especially for pathological objects. He stains for two or three hours or days in a saturated solution of nigrosin in saturated solution of picric acid in alcohol, and washes out in a mixture of 1 part of formic acid with 2 parts of alcohol until the grey matter appears clearly differentiated from the white to the naked eye.

733. Kaiser (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1889, p. 471) advises naphthylamin brown (Grübler). Sections of spinal cord are stained for a few hours in a solution containing 1 part of naphthylamin brown, 200 parts of water, and 100 parts of alcohol, washed with alcohol, cleared with origanum oil, and mounted.

734. Rehm (*Münch. med. Wochenschr.*, 1892, No. 13; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 389) gives a method modified from Nissl. Sections of alcohol-hardened material are stained for half a minute to a minute in a *hot* 0·1 per cent. solution of methylen blue, washed in 96 per cent. alcohol till no more colour comes away, cleared with origanum oil, and mounted in balsam or benzin-colophonium. Nerve cells, dark blue; connective-tissue cells lighter, and greenish. For further details see *previous editions.*

735. Mönckeberg and Bethe (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, liv, 1899, p. 135; *Zeit. f. wiss Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 244) recommend (for peripheral nerves only) the following:—Nerves are fixed in 0·25 per cent. osmic acid for twenty-four hours and bleached with bisulphite of sodium, as directed § 38, and cut in paraffin. The sections are stained on the slide for ten minutes in 0·1 per cent. solution of toluidin blue, warmed to 50° or 60° C., washed with water for one or two minutes, then treated for a few seconds or minutes with 1 per cent. solution of molybdate of ammonium. Water, alcohol, xylol, balsam.

Or the sections are first mordanted for five to ten minutes in 4 per cent. solution of molybdate of ammonium warmed to 20° or 30° C., and washed with water; then toluidin blue solution (of 0·05 to 0·1 per cent.) is poured on to the slide, which is put for five minutes into a stove at 50° to 60° C. Water, alcohol, xylol, balsam.

736. Wolter's **Chloride of Vanadium** process for axis-cylinder and cell staining is as follows (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 471):

The material (either central or peripheral nervous tissue) is *hardened in the bichromate liquid of* Kultschitzky, § 59, followed by alcohol, *as there described.* Sections are mordanted for twenty-four hours in a mixture of 2 parts of 10 per cent. solution of chloride of vanadium and 3 parts of 3 per cent. solution of acetate of aluminium, washed for ten minutes in water, and stained for twenty-four hours in a solution of 2 grammes of hæmatoxylin (dissolved in a little alcohol) in 100 c.c. of 2 per cent. acetic acid. They are washed out until they are of a light blue-red colour in 80 per cent. alcohol acidulated with 0·5 per cent. of hydrochloric acid. Remove the acid thoroughly by washing with pure alcohol, dehydrate, clear with origanum oil, and mount.

A sharp axis-cylinder stain, myelin being coloured only if the differentiation in the acid alcohol is insufficient.

737. SCARPATETTI (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xvi, 1897, p. 211; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 91) obtains an axis-cylinder stain as follows:—Sections of material hardened in 5 to 10 per cent. formol, followed by alcohol, are stained for five minutes in 1 per cent. hæmatoxylin, treated for five minutes with concentrated solution of neutral acetate of copper, differentiated with Weigert's borax-ferricyanide, then treated with concentrated solution of carbonate of lithia, washed, and mounted. Myelin is not stained.

738. Iron-Hæmatoxylin sometimes gives an axis-cylinder stain.

739. MALLORY'S **Phospho-molybdic-acid Hæmatoxylin** has been given, § 259, where see also that of KENYON.

For the extremely complicated modification of AUERBACH, see *Neurol. Centralb.*, xvi, 1897, p. 439, or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 402.

740. FINOTTI (*Virchow's Arch.*, cxliii, 1896, p. 133; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 236) stains in hæmatoxylin, washes out well, counter-stains for three minutes with 0·5 to 1 per cent. solution of Säurefuchsin, and differentiates in 75 per cent. alcohol containing a very little caustic potash. See also § 704.

741. ALT (*Münch. med. Wochenschr.*, 1892, No. 4; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 81) stains for a couple of hours in solution of Congo in absolute alcohol, and washes out with pure alcohol. The results are said to be specially adapted to the study of peripheral axis-cylinders.

742. APÁTHY'S methods. See § 707.

(*d*) *Impregnations.*

743. The Methods of GOLGI. There are two methods of GOLGI, viz. the **Corrosive Sublimate Method** and the **Bichromate**

and Nitrate of Silver Method. The corrosive sublimate method will be given later on.

The bichromate and nitrate of silver method has been worked out by Golgi in *three* forms. These are known as the *slow* process, the *rapid* process, and the *mixed* process.*

The rapid process is the one that is the most in use at the present time for researches into the distribution and relations of axis-cylinders and protoplasmic processes; it may be taken to be the classical method of inquiry into the finer relations of the neurons in hardened tissue.

General characters of the impregnation.—The preparations have not in the least the appearance of stains, and are even very different in aspect from the impregnations obtained on fresh tissue by the ordinary methods of impregnating with nitrate of silver or chloride of gold. The impregnation is a *partial* one, by which is meant that of all the elements, whether nervous or not, that are present in a preparation, only a limited number are coloured. That is the peculiar quality—not by any means the defect, but rather the advantage—of the method. For if all the elements present were coloured equally, with the great intensity with which they take the colour in this method, you would not be able to see the wood for the trees, in fact you would hardly be able to distinguish any detail at all in the preparations. But Golgi's method selects from among the elements present a small number which it stains with a great intensity and very completely; that is to say, throughout a great length, so that they are both very clearly separated from those elements that have remained uncoloured, such as supporting cells and the like, and also can be followed out for a great distance.

Axis-cylinders are only impregnated so long as they are *not medullated*. In the adult the method stains nerve cells and their processes, so far as these are not myelinated; but if it be wished to impregnate the nerve fibres of the cerebro-spinal axis, the method must be applied to embryos or new-born animals at a time when the fibres have not become surrounded by their sheath of myelin.

---

* In a recent text-book, the *Leitfaden* of Rawitz, the sublimate method is called "the slow method of Golgi," and the bichromate and silver nitrate method is given under the form of the slow process, and called "the rapid method of Golgi." That is a very "nice derangement of epitaphs" indeed. Rawitz further attributes the rapid method to Ramón y Cajal, which is equally erroneous. Similar confusions are made by Mercier in his *Coupes du Système Nerveux Central.*

There is no other method which will allow cell-processes to be followed out for such great distances. But the method does not demonstrate at the same time the histological detail of other tissues that may be present in the preparations, and all cytological detail is lost. It it *par excellence* a *special* method.

Nervous tissue is not the only thing that is impregnated in these preparations; neuroglia, connective tissue, fibrils, etc., are impregnated, and the method has been applied with success to the study of such things as bile-capillaries, gland-ducts, and the like. Both on account of this character, and on account of the capriciousness with which the impregnation takes hold of only certain elements of the preparations, care must be exercised in the interpretation of the images obtained. As with gold impregnations, the very best preparations give images that are only worthy of credence as to what they show, and furnish absolutely no evidence whatever as to the non-existence of anything that they do not show; for you can never be sure that the imbibition of the salt has not capriciously failed, or its reduction capriciously stopped, at any point. And a further source of error is found in the fact that the method frequently gives precipitation-forms of the silver salt that simulate dendrites and other structures (see FRIEDLAENDER in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 2, 1895, p. 168, and the plate in the following number). A correspondent writes me that he has "Golgified a potato, and obtained beautiful nerve-fibres," and FRIEDLAENDER's paper describes similar results obtained with white of egg, etc. And other workers have made similar observations. Clearly, then, much caution is necessary in the interpretation of the images.

The method has been applied with success to the tissues of Invertebrates—Insects, *Lumbricus, Tubifex, Helix, Limax, Distomum, Astacus, etc.*

The details of the method have been considerably modified at the hands of various workers, the most important modification being that of the "double" or "intensified" impregnation of RAMÓN Y CAJAL.

The method has been described at length by GOLGI in the

Archives Italiennes de Biologie, t. iv, 1883, p. 32, *et seq.*, and vii, 1886, p. 15, *et seq.* The following account is from the latter paper. The earlier form of the method should not be followed.

744. Golgi's **Bichromate and Nitrate of Silver Method,** *SLOW Process* (*loc. cit.*, p. 17).—(*a*) *The hardening.*—This must be done in a bichromate solution. Either pure bichromate of potash may be employed, or liquid of Müller (the reaction can be obtained with liquid of Erlicki, but it is not to be recommended). The normal practice is to take bichromate of potash, beginning with a strength of 2 per cent., and changing this frequently for fresh solutions of gradually increased strength, 2½, 3, 4, and 5 per cent. The tissue to be operated on should be as fresh as possible; though satisfactory results may be obtained from material taken twenty-four to forty-eight hours after death. *It should be in pieces of not more than 1 c.cm. or 1½ c.cm. in size.*

The most difficult point of the method consists in *hitting off the exact degree of hardening* in the bichromate that should be allowed before passing to the next stage of the process, the silver-bath. In summer good results may be obtained after fifteen to twenty days, and the material may continue in a favourable state for impregnation up to thirty, forty, or fifty days. In cold weather good results can seldom be obtained under a month; when obtained, the material may continue to give good results up to two, three, and even four months of hardening. The only way to make sure is to pass trial portions of the tissue at intervals into the silver-bath, in summer frequently, in winter every eight or ten days, and observe whether the reaction is obtained.

Good results are obtained by *injecting* the organs with the hardening fluid (2·5 per cent. bichromate). See § 681.

Stoving at a temperature of 20° to 25° C. is useful for abridging the hardening, but there is risk of over-hardening; and Golgi thinks the results are never quite so delicate as after hardening in the cold.

(*b*) *Impregnation.*—As soon as the pieces of tissue have attained the proper degree of hardening, they are brought into a bath of nitrate of silver. The usual strength of this bath is 0·75 per cent., but 0·50 per cent. may be taken for material that has not been quite enough hardened, and solutions of 1 per cent. may be used for material that has been slightly over-hardened.

A relatively large quantity of solution should be taken for the bath.

The moment the pieces of tissue are put into the silver-bath, an abundant yellow precipitate of chromate of silver is formed. This of course weakens the bath *pro tanto.* It is therefore well, before putting the pieces into the final silver-bath, to first wash them well in a weaker silver solution, until on being put into a fresh quantity of it no further precipitate is formed. Used solutions will do for this purpose. The final silver-bath in general needs no further attention, unless it be that sometimes, in the case of tissues that have taken up a great deal of bichromate of potash, the solution may after six to ten hours become somewhat yellow, in which case it should be changed for fresh.

It is not necessary to keep the preparations in the dark during the impregnation-bath ; in winter it is well to keep them in a warm place.

The time necessary for impregnation by the silver is from twenty-four to forty-eight hours. The normal time is from twenty-four to thirty hours, forty-eight being quite exceptional. By this is meant that the reaction is not obtained in less time, but tissues may remain in the bath without hurt for days, weeks, or months.

(*c*) *Preservation.*—As soon as a trial has shown that a sufficiently satisfactory impregnation has been obtained, the pieces are brought into alcohol. The alcohol is changed two or three times, or even more, until it remains transparent even after the preparations have been two or three days in it; for in view of good preservation it is necessary that the excess of nitrate of silver should be washed out from them thoroughly.

Sections are now made. They are to be washed very thoroughly in three or four changes of absolute alcohol. They are then cleared, first in creosote, in which they should remain only a few minutes, then in oil of turpentine, in which they should remain for ten to fifteen minutes (they may remain there for days without hurt). They are then mounted in damar (rather than in balsam), *and without a* *cover.* Preparations mounted under covers in the usual way always go bad sooner or later, whilst those that are mounted without a cover keep very well, *especially if they be kept in the dark.* Golgi states that he has a large number that have kept without change for nine years.

The order in which the elements of tissues impregnate is —first, axis-cylinders, then ganglion cells, and lastly neuroglia cells.

745. Golgi's **Bichromate and Nitrate of Silver Method,** *RAPID Process* (*op. cit.*, p. 33). Small pieces of very fresh tissue are thrown into the following mixture:

Bichromate solution of 2 to 2·5 per cent. strength	8 parts.
Osmic acid of 1 per cent. strength .	2 ,,

The hardening being much more rapid than with the slow process, the tissues will begin to be in a fit state for taking the silver impregnation from the second or third day; in the next following days they will be in a still more favourable state, but the favourable moment does not last long; the faculty of impregnation soon declines, and is generally quite lost by the tenth or twelfth day.

The silver impregnation is conducted exactly as in the slow process, and sections are prepared and mounted in the same manner.

There is this difference, that the impregnated material cannot be preserved for any length of time in alcohol, but must not remain for more than two days in it. But it may be kept in the silver solution until wanted for sectioning.

This process has the advantage of great rapidity, and of sureness and delicacy of result, and is the one that has found the most favour with other workers. But for methodical study of any given part of the nervous system, Golgi himself prefers the following:

746. Golgi's **Bichromate and Nitrate of Silver Method,** *MIXED Process* (*op. cit.*, p. 34).—Fresh pieces of tissue are put for periods varying from two to twenty-five or thirty days into the usual bichromate solution. Every two or three or four days some of them are passed on into the osmio-bichromate mixture of the rapid process, hardened therein for from three or four to eight or ten days, and finally impregnated with silver, and subsequently treated exactly as in the rapid process.

The reasons for which Golgi prefers this process are—the certainty of obtaining samples of the reaction in many stages of intensity, if a sufficient number of pieces of tissue have been operated on; the advantage of having at one's disposition a notable time—some twenty-five days—during which the tissues are in a fit state for taking the silver, and the possibility of greatly hastening the process whenever desired by simply bringing the pieces over at once into the osmic mixture; lastly, a still greater delicacy of result, especially remarkable in the demonstration of the "functional" or nervous process of nerve cells.

747. Critique of Golgi's **Method.**—The above-described methods have been found extremely valuable in the most various departments of nervous anatomy. They have given brilliant results in the study of peripheral nerves and their origins or terminations, and in the study of the relations of fibres and cells in the central nervous system. It has been found at the same time that they have the defect of considerable uncertainty in the production of the desired reaction, and in the preservation of the stain. These defects have given rise to a most elaborate discussion, which unhappily has not as yet led to very satisfactory results.

Golgi's method is apparently (but this is by no means certain) based on the formation in the tissues of a precipitate of bichromate of silver which is brown by reflected light, but appears black by transmitted light. The problem is to preserve this precipitate in the tissues free from chemical or molecular change. And the problem is not an easy one; without special precautions the preparations will not resist the processes necessary for imbedding, will not always resist those necessary for merely mounting in balsam, and even then may easily "go bad" after they have been mounted for a short time.

A critical review of the Golgi method by Weigert may be found in *Ergebnisse der Anatomie*, v, 1895 (1896), p. 7. He thinks the precipitate certainly consists of *a* silver chromate, but that we cannot say *which*.

The method has also been critically studied by Hill (*Brain*, part 73, 1896, p. 1). He thinks the stain depends on the formation of a "reduced salt (subsalt) of silver," not of a silver chromate, and that the reduction takes place not in the nervous fibrils, but in the liquid or semi-liquid "neuroplasm" with which they are bathed. He finds the impregnated material will stand imbedding in celloidin for many days. For impregnation he recommends instead of silver nitrate a $\frac{3}{4}$ per cent. solution of silver *nitrite* with 0·1 per cent. of formic acid added. Other details *loc. cit.*

Azoulay (*Comptes Rend. Soc. Biol.* [10], i, 1894, p. 839) has followed the process under the microscope, and holds that it is due to a crystallisation of chromate of silver in the tissues.

Modifications concerning the Impregnation of the Tissues.

748. Ramón y Cajal, who has done a great deal of important work by Golgi's method, has always used the *rapid* process. For the times and strengths used by him in his researches on the *cerebral cortex* of mammals see his paper in *La Cellule*, vii, 1891, p. 125, or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 239; also *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 154. He found it useful to adopt Sehrwald's gelatin process (§ 757) for avoidance of peripheral precipitates. He prefers not to adopt Greppin's treatment with hydrobromic acid, nor Obregia's treatment with gold chloride, finding that, although they serve to render the preparations permanent, they obscure the finer relations of fibres.

For embryos of the *fowl* he employs the same process; see his paper in *Anat. Anz.*, v, 1890, 85, or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 235.

749. Ramón y Cajal's **Double-Impregnation Process.**—In a paper on the structure and relations of the *sympathetic ganglia* (which I have not seen, and quote from *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, *loc. cit.*) Ramón y Cajal describes a process of "intensified" or "double impregnation." After hardening for three days (embryos of fowl) in the osmium-bichromate mixture, the preparations are put for thirty-six hours into nitrate of silver solution (0·5 to 0·75 per cent.). They are then brought back into the same osmium-bichromate mixture, or into a weaker one containing only two parts of osmic acid solution to 20 of the bichromate. After treatment with this they are washed quickly with distilled water, and put for a second time into the silver solution for thirty-six to forty-eight hours. It is important to hit off the proper duration of the first impregnation in the bichromate. If it has been too long (four days) or too short (one day), the second impregnation will not succeed. In this case a third impregnation must be resorted to, the objects being again treated with the weak osmium-bichromate mixture, and afterwards again with the silver solution.

This modification of the original process is, perhaps, the most important that has hitherto been made.

750. Kallius (*Anat. Hefte*, x, 1894, p. 527; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 2, 1894, p. 154) states that he has often found it advantageous to employ bichromate of *ammonia* or of *soda* instead of the bichromate of potash, and to perform all the reactions in the dark. Preparations made by the ammonia or soda salt rarely require a double impregnation.

751. Boehm, and afterwards Oppel (*Anat. Anz.*, v, 1890, p. 143, and vi, 1891, p. 165; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 222, and viii, 2, 1891, p. 224), have modified the hardening part of the process by taking instead of bichromate of potash (slow process) the one an 0·5 per cent. solution of *chromic acid* (forty-eight hours), the other a solution of *neutral chromate* of potash of from 0·5 per cent. to as much as 10 per cent. This is for liver.

Berkley (*Anat. Anz.*, 1893, p. 772) fixes pieces of liver for fifteen to thirty minutes in warm half-saturated solution of picric acid, and hardens for forty-eight hours in a stove in the dark in a "sunned" (§ 336) mixture of sixteen parts 2 per cent. osmic acid and 100 parts saturated solution of bichromate.

752. Formaldehyde Mixtures.—Strong (*Anat. Anz.*, x, 15, 1895, p. 494) states that formaldehyde can with advantage be substituted for the osmic acid in the osmio-bichromic mixture of Golgi's rapid process. He adds from 2·5 to 5 per cent. of "formaline" to the 3·5 to 5 per cent. bichromate solution.

The advantage is stated to be that the stage of hardening favourable for impregnation lasts longer; in other words, the formaldehyde bichromate does not over-harden.

Durig (*ibid.*, p. 659) obtained the best results by means of 3 per cent. bichromate solutions containing 4 to 6 per cent. of formaldehyde, hardening therein for three days, and then performing double impregnation by Ramón y Cajal's process.

Fish (*Proc. Amer. Mic. Soc.*, xvii, 1895, p. 319) has also obtained good results with the following mixtures:

Formalin	2 c.c.
3 per cent. bichromate	100 ,,

leaving the tissues three days in this liquid and three days in the silver nitrate ($\frac{3}{4}$ per cent.).

Or, with advantage:

Liquid of Müller	100 c.c.,
10 per cent. formalin	2 ,,
1 per cent. osmic acid	1 ,,

The formalin and bichromate mixtures should be kept in the dark. It is well only to make them up *at the instant of using* them.

Kopsch (*Anat. Anz.*, xi, 1896, p. 727) states that he has obtained good impregnations with a mixture of 4 parts of 3·5 per cent. bichromate solution, and one of commercial formaldehyde solution. He considers the results more certain than with the osmic acid mixture.

Gerota (*Intern. Monatsschr. Anat.*, xiii, 1896, p. 108; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 314) first hardens (brain) for a week or two in 5 to 10 per cent. formol solution, then puts small pieces for three to five days into 4 per cent. bichromate, then into the silver.

Schreiber (*Anat. Anz.*, xiv, 1898, p. 275) obtained good results (on appendages of Crustacea which were impervious to the osmic mixture) with mixtures of five parts 2·5 per cent. bichromate to one of 4 per cent. formaldehyde, or one part 2·5 per cent. bichromate to two of 5 per cent. formaldehyde, the specimens remaining for one day in the first, for two days in the second.

Bolton (*Lancet*, 1898, p. 218; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1898, p. 244) hardens brain for five weeks or more in formalin, then puts pieces for a few hours to five days into 1 per cent. bichromate *of ammonia.*

Similarly Bari (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 2, 1899, p. 243), using 2 per cent. bichromate of potash.

van Gehuchten (*in litt.*) has tried the substitution of formaldehyde for the osmic acid in the Golgi process, and *has not obtained good results.*

753. Acetic Aldehyde.—Vassale and Donaggio (*Monitore Zool., Ital.*, vi, 1895, p. 82) harden pieces of at most 1 cm. in thickness for fifteen to twenty days in a mixture of five parts of aldehyde with 100 of 3 to 4 per cent. bichromate, changing the fluid after a few days, as soon as it has become dark. The rest as Golgi.

754. Hardening by Injection.—This was recommended by Golgi, see §§ 744 and 681. He found, however, that the bichromate caused such an energetic contraction of the arterioles that the injection did not penetrate into the capillaries. Tooth got over this by adding morphia to the injection.

Hill (*op. cit.*, § 747) gets over it by injecting through the aorta, whilst the heart is still beating, a solution of bichromate containing 1 per cent. of lactic acid.

For nitrite of amyl as a vaso-dilator, see § 476.

755. Reviving Over-hardened Tissues.—Tissues that have been too long (three to four weeks) in the osmium-bichromate mixture will no longer take on the silver impregnation, as has been explained above. They can, however, be revivified and made to impregnate in the following manner, due to Golgi, and published by Sacerdotti (*Intern. Monatsschr.*, xi, 1894, 6, p. 326; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 3, 1894, p. 389). They are washed in a half-saturated solution of acetate of copper until they no longer give a precipitate, and are then put back again for five or six days into the osmium-bichromate mixture. Sections of the impregnated material give remarkably fine images, and will bear mounting in thickened oil of cedar under a cover.

756. Modifications of the Silver Impregnation.—Kolossow (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlix, 1897, p. 592) (after hardening in osmio-bichromate solution) impregnates for two or three days in a 2 to a 3 per cent. solution of silver nitrate in $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. osmic acid solution, and states he thus obtains a more complete impregnation.

Similarly Juschtschenko, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 82.

Berkeley (*Johns Hopkins Hosp. Rep.*, vi, 1897, p. 1; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1898, p. 242) impregnates, after hardening in the osmio-bichromate, in a freshly prepared solution of two drops of 10 per cent. phosphomolybdic acid to 60 c.c. of 1 per cent. silver nitrate, which in winter should be kept at a temperature of about 25° C.

757. Sehrwald's **Gelatin Process** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1889, p. 456).

Golgi's process frequently gives rise to the formation at the surface of the preparations of voluminous precipitates that are destructive of the clearness of the images. Sehrwald finds that this evil can be avoided by putting the tissues into gelatin solution before bringing them into the silver-bath. A 10 per cent. solution of gelatin in water may be made. The tissues are imbedded in this, in a paper imbedding box, with the aid of a little heat (the gelatin melting at a sufficiently low temperature), and are brought therein into the silver-bath. After the silvering the gelatin is removed by warm water saturated with chromate of silver. Martinotti wraps the tissues simply in blotting-paper, but this does not appear to be efficacious.

Modifications concerning the Preservation of the Preparations.

758. Cutting and Mounting.—Many most elaborate methods have been proposed with the object of fixing the stain so that the preparations may bear imbedding in paraffin and the sections bear mounting under a cover. None of them have met with much favour.

Sala (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, lii, 1, 1891, p. 18; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 3, p. 389), in a paper written in Golgi's laboratory, finds Greppin's hydrobromic acid variation (§ 759) not merely useless, but hurtful. And he thinks that Sehrwald's process (*infra*) for imbedding the material in paraffin with the object of getting very thin sections is a mistake. The chief quality of Golgi's process is that it admits of the following of nerve-cell processes for a *very great distance*. Evidently this cannot be done with very *thin* sections. It is better simply to wash the preparations taken from the silver-bath with water, fix them to a cork with gum, put the whole into alcohol for a few hours to harden the gum, and cut with a microtome without imbedding.

An elaborate discussion (for which see *previous editions*) between Sehrwald (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 1890, p. 443), Samassa (*ibid.*, vii, 1890, p. 26), and Fick (*ibid.*, viii, 1891, p. 168) furnishes the net practical result that watery fluids should be avoided as much as possible during the after-treatment, and that sections should either be mounted without a cover, or on a cover raised free of contact with the slide by means of wax feet or the like; or that the balsam of the mount should be rendered perfectly anhydrous by careful heating on the slide, with the section in it, until it immediately sets hard on cooling, before the cover is applied.

This last method is also recommended by HUBER (*Anat. Anz.*, vii, 1892, p. 587; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 707; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 479).

The majority of workers seem to abide by this result, and to consider that the fixation methods shortly given in the next four sections are, to say the least, superfluous.

759. GREPPIN'S **Process** (*Arch. f. Anat. u. Entw.*, *Anat. Abth.*, 1889, Supp., p. 55; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 66).—After silvering, sections are made with a freezing microtome and treated for thirty to forty seconds with 10 per cent. solution of hydrobromic acid, and may then be well washed in several changes of water and mounted under a cover in the usual way. Further details in *previous editions.*

760. OBREGIA'S **Process** (*Virchow's Archiv*, cxxii, 1890, p. 387; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1, 1891, p. 97; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, pp. 536, 830; *Amer. Mon. Micr. Journ.*, 1891, p. 210).—Sections of silvered material are made, either without imbedding, or after imbedding either in paraffin or celloidin, care being taken in either case not to use alcohol of a lower grade than 94 or 95 per cent. They are brought from absolute alcohol into a mixture of eight to ten drops of 1 per cent. solution of gold chloride with 10 c.c. of absolute alcohol, which should be prepared half an hour beforehand and exposed to diffused light until the sections are placed in it, when it should be put into the dark. After fifteen to thirty minutes therein, according to their thickness, the sections are quickly washed in 50 per cent. alcohol, then in water, then treated for five or ten minutes with 10 per cent. solution of hyposulphite of soda. They are lastly washed well with water, and may then be mounted at once in balsam under a cover, or if desired may be previously stained with carmine or hæmatoxylin, or Pal's modification of Weigert's process, or the like.

761. KALLIUS (*Anat. Hefte*, ii, 1892, p. 269; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 477) has worked out the following process. Take 20 c.c. commercial hydroquinone developing solution and 230 c.c. distilled water (the hydroquinone solution may be made up with 5 grms. hydroquinone, 40 grms. sodium sulphite, 75 grms. carbonate of potassium, and 250 grms. distilled water). At the instant of using, further dilute the solution with one third to one half its volume of absolute alcohol, and put the sections into it for several minutes; they become dark grey to black. As soon as reduction is complete the sections are put for ten to fifteen minutes into 70 per cent. alcohol, then brought for five minutes into solution of hyposulphite of soda (about 10 parts to 50 of water), and thence into a large quantity of distilled water, where they should remain for twenty-four hours or more. Lastly, dehydrate in the usual way and mount under a cover. After-staining with carmine, etc., may be employed.

762. Zimmermann's **Process** (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, lii, 1898, p. 552; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1898, p. 216).—Sections are brought, after silvering, from alcohol into a mixture of 1 part physiological salt solution and 2 parts 96 per cent. alcohol. They must be kept in motion therein for ten to fifteen minutes, after which they are brought into alcohol of 75 to 96 per cent., in a bright light, until they have become dark.

The Sublimate Method.

763. Golgi's **Bichromate and Sublimate Method** (*Archivio per le Scienze Mediche*, 1878, p. 3; *Archives Italiennes de Biologie*, iv, 1883, p. 32; vii, 1886, p. 35).—This method consists of two processes: 1, hardening in bichromate; 2, treatment with bichloride of mercury.

For hardening, use either a solution progressively raised in concentration from 1 per cent. to 2½ per cent., or Müller's solution. It is *best* to take small pieces of tissue (not more than 1 to 2 c.c.), large quantities of liquid, and change the latter frequently, so as to have it always clear. But the reaction can be obtained with much larger pieces, *even entire hemispheres*. In this case the brain should at first be treated by repeated injections of the liquid, so as to ensure as rapid a permeation of the interior as possible. Fifteen to twenty days' immersion will suffice, or even six to eight, but twenty to thirty should be preferred, and an immersion of several months is not injurious.

The tissues when hardened are passed direct from the bichromate into 0·5 per cent. solution of bichloride of mercury. An immersion of eight to ten days therein is necessary in order to obtain a complete reaction through the whole thickness of the tissues (or for entire hemispheres two months or more). During the bath the bichromate will diffuse out from the tissues into the bichloride, which must at first be changed every day, and later on as often as it becomes yellow. At the end of the reaction the preparations will be found decolourised, and offering the aspect of fresh tissue. They may be left in the bichloride for any time.

In *Rendiconti R. Ist. Lombardo di Sci. Milano*, 2, xxiv, 1891, pp. 594, 656 (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 3, 1891, p. 388), GOLGI says that for the study of the diffuse nervous reticulum of the central nervous system the best results are obtained by keeping the preparations in 1 per cent. sublimate for a very long time, two years being not too much in some cases.

The reaction may be said to have begun by the time the tissues are nearly decolourised. From that time onwards sections may be made day by day and examined, and those which it is desired to preserve may be mounted.

Before mounting, the sections that have been cut must be repeatedly washed with water (if it be wished to mount them permanently), otherwise they will be spoilt by the formation of a black precipitate. (In the last place quoted GOLGI says that after washing they may be toned by putting them for a few minutes into a photographic fixing-and-toning bath, after which it is well to wash them again, and stain them with some acid carmine solution.) Mount in balsam or glycerin; the latter seems the better preservative medium.

The result of this process is not a true stain, but an "apparently black reaction," the tissues appearing black by transmitted light, *white* by reflected light. GOLGI thinks that there is formed in the tissue elements a precipitate of some substance that renders them *opaque*. The elements acted on are—(1) The ganglion cells, with all their processes and ramifications of the processes. These are made more evident than by any other process except the bichromate and silver-nitrate process. (2) Nuclei, which is not the case with the silver process. (3) Connective-tissue corpuscles in their characteristic radiate form. But the reaction in this case is far less precise and complete than that obtained by the silver process. (4) The blood-vessels, and particularly their muscular fibre cells.

The method gives *good* results only with the cortex of the cerebral convolutions, hardly any results at all with the spinal cord, and very scanty results with the cerebellum. And, on the whole, the method shows nothing more than can be demonstrated by the silver-nitrate method, but it is superior to it in that the reaction can always be obtained with perfect *certainty* in a certain time; that the preparations can be perfectly preserved by the usual methods; and that large pieces of tissue can be impregnated.

See also FLATAU, in *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlv, 1895, p. 158; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 2, 1895, p. 257.

The method is recommended by BLOCHMANN (*Biol. Centralb.*, xv, 1895, p. 14; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 2, 1895, p. 226) for the nervous system of Cestodes.

Modifications of Golgi's Bichromate and Sublimate Method.

764. TAL (*Gazz. degli Ospitali*, 1886, No. 68) finds that if sections made by this process be treated with solution of sodium sulphide, a much darker stain is obtained. Sections may then advantageously be double-stained with Magdala red.

Golgi's method may be combined with Weigert's nerve stain (see PAL, *Wien. med. Jahrb.*, 1886; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1, 1887, p. 93).

765. COX (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxvii, 1891, p. 16; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 420) finds the sublimate and bichromate may be used *together*, and give a uniform impregnation. He used a fluid consisting of 20 parts 5 per cent. bichromate, 20 parts 5 per cent. sublimate, 16 parts 5 per cent. simple chromate of potash, and 30 to 40 parts of water. (The simple chromate should be added to the other ingredients only after diluting with the water.) The mixture should be as little acid as possible. The duration of the impregnation is from two to three months. There is considerable difficulty in preserving sections, which must be made with a freezing microtome, alcohol being avoided, treated for an hour or two with 5 per cent. solution of sodium carbonate, and mounted without a cover.

Dr. A. SANDERS, on the other hand, writes me (June, 1898) that the stain keeps very well if the sublimate be well removed by washing in many changes of alcohol, and the tissues passed through alcohol and ether into celloidin, and the sections mounted in chloroform-balsam under a cover. I think the statement is correct so far as regards the preservation of the stain; but the preparations quickly develop opaque granules that are very unsightly.

766. MAGINI'S **Zinc Chloride Process** (see *Boll. Accad. Med. di Roma*, 1886; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1888, p. 87, or *previous editions*).

767. FLECHSIG'S modifications, see *Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., Physiol. Abth.*, 1889, p. 537; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 71.

768. MONTI'S **Copper Process,** see *Atti d. R. Accad. dei Lincei Roma, Rendic.*, v, 1889, 1 sem., p. 705; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 72.

769. GERLACH'S **Bichromate and Gold Process** has been given, § 356.

Other Methods.

770. ZIEHEN'S **Gold and Sublimate Method** (*Neurol. Centralb.*, x, 1891, No. 3, p. 65; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 3, 1891, p. 385).—Small pieces of fresh material are thrown into a large quantity of a mixture of 1 per cent. sublimate solution and 1 per cent. chloride of gold solution in equal parts. They remain therein for at least three weeks, preferably for several months (up to five), by which time they will have become of a metallic red-brown colour. They are gummed on cork and sectioned without imbedding. The sections are treated either with Lugol's solution (§ 88) diluted with four volumes of water, or with dilute tincture of iodine, until duly differentiated, then washed and mounted in balsam. The result is a bluish-grey impregnation; both medullated and non-medullated nerve-fibres are stained, also nerve and glia cells and their processes.

771. APÁTHY'S **Gold Method** has been given (§ 358).

772. For UPSON'S exceedingly complicated **Gold and Iron and Vanadium Methods** see MERCIER, in *Zeit. f. wiss Mik.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 474; or in his "*Coupes du Système Nerveux Central*, p. 234, or *previous editions*.

773. KROHNTHAL'S **Lead Sulphide Impregnation** (*Neurol. Centralb.*, xviii, 1899, No. 5; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 235) consists in treating tissues first with formate of lead and then with hydric sulphide. The formate is prepared by dropping formic acid slowly into solution of acetate of lead. White crystals of formate of lead are abundantly formed; the mother liquor is filtered off, and the crystals are dissolved to saturation in water. The solution is mixed with an equal volume of 10 per cent. formol solution; pieces of brain or spinal cord are put into the mixture for five days, and are then brought direct into a mixture of equal parts of 10 per cent. formol solution and hydric sulphide solution. After five days therein they are passed through successive alcohols, imbedded in celloidin, cut, and the sections mounted in xylol-balsam under a cover. They seem to be quite permanent. Nerve cells as well as nerve fibres are impregnated, and it is the elements themselves that are impregnated, and not lacunæ around them, as appears to be the case with the Golgi impregnation. The impregnation is a very complete one.

Corning (*Anat. Anz.*, xvii, 1900, p. 108) hardens the tissues with 10 per cent. formol before bringing them into the formol-formate mixture, and so obtains better results. He obtains his formate of lead direct from Merck (*Plumbum formicicum*). He thinks the celloidin imbedding injurious, and prefers to cut without imbedding. He prefers to clear sections with clove oil. The method appears to him particularly useful for the medulla oblongata, with which the Golgi method does not succeed. It appears likely to be very useful in pathological researches, and also for the naked-eye differentiation of white and grey matter, as well as for the other purposes for which the Golgi method is generally employed. Other details *loc. cit.*

774. Robertson's **Platinum Impregnation.** See *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 665.

775. Weigert's **Specific Neuroglia Stain** (Weigert's *Beitr. zur Kenntniss der normalen menschlichen Neuroglia*, Frankfurt-a-M., 1895; quoted from *Neurol. Centralb.*, 1895, xxiii, p. 1146).—Pieces of tissue of not more than half a centimetre in thickness are put for at least four days into "10 per cent. solution of formol." They are then mordanted for four or five days in an incubating stove (or for at least eight days at the temperature of the laboratory) in a solution containing

5 per cent. of neutral acetate of copper, 5 per cent. of acetic acid, and 2½ per cent. of chrome alum, in water. (Add the alum to the water, raise to boiling point, and add the acetic acid and the acetate, powdered.)

After the mordanting the tissues are washed with water, dehydrated, imbedded in celloidin, and sectioned. The sections are treated for ten minutes with a one third per cent. solution of permanganate of potash, and well washed in water. They are then treated for two to four hours with a solution of "Chromogen." "Chromogen" is a naphthalin compound prepared by the Hoechst dye manufactory. The solution of "Chromogen" to be used is prepared as follows: 5 per cent. of "Chromogen" and 5 per cent. of formic acid are dissolved in water, and the solution carefully filtered. To 90 c.c. of the filtrate are added 10 c.c. of 10 per cent. solution of sodium sulphite.

After this bath, the sections are put till next day into a saturated (5 per cent.) solution of Chromogen.

They are next carefully washed and submitted to the stain. The stain is a modification of WEIGERT's *fibrin stain.* Instead of saturated aqueous solution of methyl violet, you take a warm-saturated solution in 70 per cent. or 80 per cent. alcohol, decant it after cooling, and add to it 5 per cent. of aqueous solution of oxalic acid; and instead of treating with pure anilin, you take a mixture of equal parts of anilin and xylol. This is afterwards removed from the sections by means of pure xylol, and they are mounted in balsam.

MALLORY (*Journ. Exper. Med.*, 1897, p. 532) finds that tissues can be mordanted for the stain by means of a chrome salt. He fixes them for four days in 10 per cent. solution of formalin, then for four to eight in saturated solution of picric acid (or for the same time in a mixture of the two), then mordants for four to six days at 37° C. in 5 per cent. solution of bichromate of ammonia, makes sections (celloidin) and stains them in WEIGERT's fibrin stain.

See also the modification of Weigert's stain by STORCH, *Virchow's Arch.*, clvii, 1899, p. 127; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 4, 1900, p. 475.

776. Säurerubin for Neuroglia.—KULTSCHITZKY (*Anat. Anz.*, viii, 1893, p. 357) stains paraffin sections, either for five to ten seconds with a mixture of 1 grm. Säurerubin (Rubin S.), 400 c.c. 2 per cent. acetic acid, and 400 c.c. saturated solution of picric acid, or for half an hour in a mixture of 3 to 5 c.c. of the above stain with 100 c.c. of 96 per cent. alcohol, and washes out well with alcohol.

Popow (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 358) makes up the stain by adding a few drops of tincture of iodine to a 1 per cent. solution of Säurerubin (Rubin S.).

Burckhardt (*La Cellule*, xii, 1897, p. 364) also finds that Säurerubin gives a better stain than Säurefuchsin, and recommends 1 part of saturated aqueous solution thereof to 9 parts of picric acid solution of 1 : 300 strength. Nuclei may be previously stained with methyl violet.

777. Methylen Blue for Central Nervous System (Semi Meyer, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlvi, 1895, p. 282, and xlvii, 1896, p. 734).—Meyer has obtained good results (for the *central* nervous system, not for the peripheral) by means of *subcutaneous* injection. *Large* quantities of solution must be injected. A young rat will require at least 5 c.c. of 1 per cent. solution; a rabbit of a few weeks about 40 c.c. But it is better to employ stronger solutions, 5 to 6 per cent. The total dose should be given in several portions, at intervals of one to several hours. It is not necessary to wait till death by intoxication has taken place, and after a suitable interval the subject may be killed. It is not necessary to expose the organs to the air for the sake of "oxydising" the stain. They should be thrown direct into the bath of Bethe, § 329. The liquid ought to be well cooled before use. The preparations should remain in it till the next day.

Ramón y Cajal (*Rev. trim. Micr.*, Madrid, i, 1896, p. 123; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 92) stains by "propagation" or "diffusion." The brain is exposed (rabbit) and the cortex is divided into slices of a couple of millimetres thickness by means of a razor. The slices are then covered on both sides either with finely powdered methylen blue, or with a saturated solution of the same, the slices are replaced in their natural positions, the brain-case is replaced for half an hour, after which the slices are removed and fixed for a couple of hours with Bethe's ammonium molybdate, washed, hardened for three or four hours in a mixture of 1 part 1 per cent. platinum chloride, 40 parts formol, and 60 parts water, further treated with platinum chloride of 1 in 300, passed through alcohol, and if small enough imbedded in paraffin.

778. Giacomini's "Dry" Process for Preserving Brains (*Arch. per le Scienze Mediche*, 1878, p. 11). See *previous editions.*

Retina.[*]

779. Fixation and Hardening.—For section cutting, the retina *of small eyes* is best prepared by fixing the entire unopened bulb with osmium vapour. According to Ranvier (*Traité*, p. 954) you may fix the eye of a triton (without having previously opened the bulb) by exposing it for ten minutes to vapour of osmium. The sclerotic being very thin in this animal, such a duration of exposure is generally sufficient. Then divide it by an equatorial incision, and put the posterior pole for a few hours into one third alcohol.

Somewhat larger eyes, such as those of the sheep and calf, may be fixed in solutions without being opened. But it is generally the better practice to make an equatorial incision, and free the posterior hemisphere before putting it into the liquid.

The older practice was to use strong solutions of pure osmic acid; but most of the best recent work has been done with chromic mixtures.

Dr. Lindsay Johnson tells me that he now gets the best results by fixing the globe over the steam of a 1 per cent. osmic acid solution raised to the temperature at which vapour is seen to be given off (but not to boiling-point), for five minutes in the case of human adults, or for one to three minutes in the case of human infants, all monkeys and small mammals, as in them the sclerotics are very thin. As soon as the sclerotic is felt to be firm to the touch, it should be opened by a small nick with a razor just behind the ciliary body; or if the eye be that of an adult, the cornea and lens may be removed. The eye is then put for twelve hours into the mixture, § 49; it is then washed in running water, and suspended in a large volume of 2·5 per cent. bichromate of potash for two days, then passed gradually through successive alcohols, beginning with 20 per cent., and ending with absolute, taking five days from first to last.

Other hardening liquids, however, also give good results, provided that the fixation by the osmic acid has been properly performed: amongst them liquid of Flemming, and that of Müller. Formaldehyde mixtures he does not recommend.

---

[*] Besides the sources quoted in the text, see on this subject Seligmann, *Die mikroskopischen Untersuchungsmethoden des Auges*, Berlin, S. Karger (Karlstrasse 13), 1899, pp. iv, 248.

LEBER (*Münch. med. Wochenschr.*, xli, 30, 1894; *cf. Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1895, p. 256) confirms Hermann's observation concerning eyes (see p. 76). He advises a 4 per cent. solution (formol 1, water 10). After a few days' hardening in this, the eyes may be cut through, it is said, without derangement of the parts. The retina lies flat, and is at least as well preserved as with solution of Müller. The eyes may be passed without hurt direct into successive alcohols; the vitreous will shrink a little, but less rather than more than after solution of Müller. I doubt the correct cytological preservation of the elements by this process.

See also HIPPEL (*Arch. f. Ophthalm.*, xlv, 1898, p. 286; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1, 1899, p. 79), who finds that formol fixes the lens badly, the retina well, so far at least as the absence of folds from shrinkage is concerned.

780. Staining.—RAMÓN Y CAJAL employs the rapid method of GOLGI, double-impregnation process, § 749.

KUHNT (*Jen. Zeit. f. Naturw.*, Bd. xxiv, H. 1, 1889, p. 177; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 65) employs Pal's modification of Weigert's hæmatoxylin process.

DOGIEL employs the methylen-blue method, §§ 326, 328, 330.

SCHAFFER (*Sitzb. k. Akad. Wiss. Wien*, xcix, 1890, 3, p. 110; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, 227) recommends mordanting sections in 1 per cent. chromic acid for some hours, washing for a *short* time only with water, staining for twenty hours in Kultschitzky's acetic acid hæmatoxylin (§ 714), and differentiating for twelve hours in Weigert's ferricyanide solution (§ 710).

KRAUSE (*loc. cit.*, § 782) treats fresh retina with perchloride of iron or of vanadium in 1 per cent. solution, and then with a 2 per cent. solution of tannic or pyrogallic acid. These reagents only stain the granule layers and the nuclei of the ganglion cells. The elements of the other layers may then be stained with Säurefuchsin or some other anilin.

LENNOX (*Arch. f. Ophthalm.*, xxxii, 1; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 3, 1886, p. 408; and *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 339) has applied Weigert's hæmatoxylin method to the retina.

CUCCATI stains with concentrated aqueous solution of Säurefuchsin, and mounts in balsam.

See also BERNHEIMER, *Sb. k. Akad. Wiss. Wien*, 1884; or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1886, p. 167; and RAMÓN Y CAJAL, *Rev. trim. de Hist. Norm. y*

Path., i, 1888, p. 1; *Anat. Anz.*, 1889, p. 111; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 3, 1888, p. 373, and vi, 2, 1889, p. 204.

Colucci (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1, 1895, p. 87) recommends Paladino's iodide of palladium impregnation, § 725.

For **Bleaching** see §§ 575—583.

781. Sections.—Some workers recommend celloidin; but I consider paraffin preferable. Sections may be mounted in dammar or (Flemming) in glycerin.

782. Dissociation Methods.—For maceration preparations you may use weak solutions (0·2 to 0·5 per cent.) of osmic acid for fixation, and then macerate in 0·02 per cent. chromic acid (M. Schultze), or in iodised serum (M. Schultze), or in dilute alcohol (Landolt), or in Müller's solution, or (Ranvier, *Traité*, p. 957) in pure water, for two or three days. Thin (*Journ. of Anat.*, 1879, p. 139) obtained very good results by fixing for thirty-six to forty-eight hours in one third alcohol, or in 25 per cent. alcohol, and then staining and teasing.

Schiefferdecker macerates fresh retina for several days in the methyl mixture, § 545.

Krause (*Intern. Monatssch. f. Anat. u. Hist.*, 1884, p. 225; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, pp. 140, 396) recommends treatment for several days with 10 per cent. chloral hydrate solution; the rods and cones are well preserved.

Inner Ear.

783. Schwalbe (*Beitr. z. Phys.*, 1887; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 1, 1887, p. 90; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1887, p. 840).—Fix (cochlea of guinea-pig) for eight to ten hours in "Flemming," wash in water, decalcify (twenty-four hours is enough) in 1 per cent. hydrochloric acid, wash the acid out, dehydrate, and imbed in paraffin. See also Ferreri, § 573 (phloroglucin).

Prenant (*Intern. Monatsschr. f. Anat. u. Physiol.*, ix, 1, p. 6; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 379).—For sections, open the cochlea in solution of Flemming or of Hermann, and fix therein for four to five hours. Avoid decalcification as far as possible, as it is inimical to good preservation of elements; but if necessary take 1 per cent. palladium chloride. Make paraffin sections.

Isolation preparations of the stria vascularis may be made by putting a cochlea for a day into 1 per cent. solution of osmic acid, then for four to five days into 0·1 per cent. solution; the stria may then be got away whole.

784. **Other Methods.**—Waldeyer, Stricker's *Handb.*, p. 958 (decalcification either in 0·001 per cent. palladium chloride containing 10 per cent. of HCl, or in chromic acid of 0·25 to 1 per cent.).

Urban Pritchard (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1876, p. 211).—Decalcification in 1· per cent. nitric acid.

Lavdowsky (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1876, p. 497).—Fresh tissues (from the cochlea) are treated with 1 per cent. solution of silver nitrate, then washed for ten minutes in water containing a few drops of 0·5 or 1 per cent. osmic acid solution, and mounted in glycerin.

Max Flesch (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1878, p. 300).

Tafani (*Arch. Ital. de Biol.*, vi, p. 207).

Politzer, "Die anatomische u. histologische Zergliederung d. menschlichen Gehörorganes," Stuttgart (Enke), 1889 (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 3, 1890, p. 364).

Eichler, *Abh. d. math-phys. Cl. d. k. Sächsischen Ges. d. Wiss.*, Bd. xviii, 1892, p. 311; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 380 (detailed account of manipulations for injection of blood-vessels of the labyrinth); Siebenmann, *Die Blutgefässe im Labyrinthe des menschlichen Ohres*, Wiesbaden, Bergmann, 1894; cf. *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 3, 1894, p. 386.

Electric Organs.

785. **Torpedo. Raja.**—Ballowitz (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlii, 1893, p. 460) gives a review of all the older methods. He himself gets the best results by the Golgi impregnation, controlled by treatment of fresh tissues for one or two days with osmic acid of 1 per cent. and teasing.

Iwanzoff (*Bull. Soc. Nat. Moscou*, 2, viii, 1895, p. 407) injects osmic acid of 0·5 to 2 per cent., removes the pillars after a few minutes, and hardens in 2 per cent. bichromate of potash, stains in hæmatoxylin, and imbeds in paraffin.

He (*ibid.*, ix, 1895, p. 74) fixes the organ in the tail of *Raja* with liquid of Flemming, stains, and cuts as above.

Ballowitz (*Anat. Hefte*, 1 Abth., vii, 1897, p. 285) finds the method of Golgi excellent for this organ.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

SOME OTHER HISTOLOGICAL METHODS.

Connective Tissues.

786. Connective Tissue.—S. Mayer (*Sitzb. k. Akad. Wiss.*, lxxxv, 1882, p. 69) recommends for staining *fresh* tissue a solution of 1 gramme of "Violet B" (Bindschedler and Busch, Bâle) in 300 c.c. of 0·5 per cent. salt solution. Elastic fibres and smooth muscle also stain, but of different tints.

For Ranvier's method of artificial œdemata for the study of areolar tissue, see his *Traité*, p. 329.

Freeborn (*Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, 1888, p. 231; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 305) recommends (for sections) *picro-nigrosin*, made by mixing 5 c.c. of 1 per cent. aqueous solution of nigrosin with 45 c.c. of aqueous solution of picric acid. Stain for three to five minutes, wash with water, and mount in balsam.

Van Gieson's *Picro-Säurefuchsin Stain* has been given, § 289.

Ramón y Cajal recommends 0·1 grm. of Säurefuchsin to 100 of saturated solution of picric acid (Schaffer, *Zeit. wiss. Zool.*, lxvi, 1899, p. 214; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 4, 1900, p. 464).

Hansen (*Anat. Anz.*, xv, 1898, p. 152) adds 5 c.c. of 2 per cent. solution of Säurefuchsin to 100 c.c. saturated solution of picric acid, and for staining adds to 3 c.c. of the mixture one third of a drop of 2 per cent. acetic acid, stains for a few minutes or hours, rinses in 3 c.c. of water with 2 drops of the acidified stain added, dehydrates, clears with xylol, and mounts in xylol-balsam. Connective tissue red, elastin and all other elements yellow.

Ramón y Cajal's *picro-indigo-carmine* stain has been given, § 374.

Ribbert (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1898, p. 93) recommends Mallory's phospho-molybdic acid hæmatoxylin (§ 259) with previous mordanting for half a minute in the phospho-molybdic acid, then rinsing, and staining for five minutes.

Benecke's **Stain for Fibrils** (*Verh. d. anat. Ges.*, vii Vers., 1893, p. 165; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1, 1894, p. 79) is essentially that of Kromayer (§ 656).

See also Kromayer, *Dermat. Zeit.*, iii, 1896, p. 263; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 56.

787. Unna (*Monatssch. f. prakt. Dermatol.*, xviii, 1894, p. 509; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 4, 1894, p. 518) finds that the method of Benecke (last §) is unsurpassed for the demonstration of collagen fibrils alone, but prefers the following whenever it is desirable to obtain at the same time good images of the ground-substance and of other elements of preparations.

1. **The Orcein Method.**—Sections of alcohol material are stained for five minutes in Grübler's strong solution of polychromatic methylen blue. They are then brought for fifteen minutes into a neutral 1 per cent. solution of orcein in absolute alcohol, rinsed in pure alcohol, cleared in bergamot oil, and mounted. Nuclei blue, collagenous ground-substance dark red, granules of Mastzellen carmine red, protoplasm of Plasmazellen blue.

2. **The Method of Sulphosalts.**—(*a*) Stain for five or ten minutes in an aqueous 2 per cent. solution of Säurefuchsin, rinse, treat for one or two minutes with saturated aqueous solution of picric acid, dehydrate (two minutes) in absolute alcohol saturated with picric acid, rinse with pure alcohol, clear and mount. (*b*) Stain for twenty seconds in aqueous 1 per cent. solution of Wasserblau, rinse, treat for five minutes with neutral aqueous 1 per cent. solution of safranin. Rinse and put into absolute alcohol until the blue colour reappears, clear with bergamot oil and mount. Collagen light blue, nuclei red.

788. Adenoid Tissue. See HOEHL, *Arch. Anat. Phys.*, *Anat. Abth.*, 1897, p. 133; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1898, p. 228.

789. Fat.—DEKHUYSEN and FLEMMING (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1889, pp. 39, 178) have discovered that fat that has been stained black by treatment with chromo-aceto-osmic acid is dissolved in the course of a few hours in turpentine, xylol, ether, or creasote, and more slowly if it has been blackened with pure osmic acid, and FLEMMING finds that very good demonstration preparations may be made by treating fatty tissue with chromo-aceto-osmic acid, staining with safranin or gentian, and then treating for a few hours with turpentine until all the fat is dissolved. The optical hindrance caused by the high refraction of the fat being thus eliminated, nuclei and cytoplasm may be studied to far greater advantage than in the usual preparations. See also § 36, *sub fin.*

790. Sudan III Stain for Fat.—DADDI (*Arch. Ital. Biol.*, xxvi, 1896, p. 143) stains fat in tissues by treating for 5 to 10 minutes with concentrated alcoholic solution of Sudan III, washing for the same time with alcohol, mopping up with blotting-paper, and mounting in glycerin (the specimens can hardly be mounted in balsam on account of the solution of the fat in the absolute alcohol, etc.). Small fat drops yellow, large ones orange. The stain is said to be more selective for fats than that of osmic acid.

Similarly RIEDER, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1898, p. 211.

791. Granule cells, "Mastzellen," "Plasmazellen," and others. For the general characters of these cells, and for EHRLICH's classification of granules, see *previous editions.* I am now much inclined to doubt the objectivity of Ehrlich's classification, for the reasons assigned by FISCHER in his *Fixirung, Färbung u. Bau des Protoplasmas,* which see.

792. EHRLICH's "**Mastzellen**" (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xii, 1876, p. 263).—The tissues must be first well hardened in strong alcohol (chromic acid and its salts must be avoided). They are then placed for at least twelve hours in a staining fluid composed of—

Absolute alcohol . . .	50 c.c.
Aqua	100 c.c.
Acid. acet. glacial . .	$12\frac{1}{2}$ c.c.

—to which has been added enough dahlia to give an almost saturated solution. After staining, the preparations are transferred to alcohol, which washes out the stain from all but the plasma cells, and may then be mounted in resin-turpentine solution.

Mucus cells and fat cells are also sometimes stained by these solutions.

Other Media.—In a similar way other soluble anilins may be employed (in the form of a fluid containing 7½ per cent. of acetic acid),—primula, iodine violet, methyl violet, purpurin, safranin, fuchsin; of these, methyl violet gives the best results.

See also SCHIEFFERDECKER and KOSSEL's *Gewebelehre*, p. 329.

793. Plasma Cells (NORDMANN, *Beitr. z. Kenntniss d. Mastzellen, Inauguraldiss.*, Helmstedt, 1884).—NORDMANN finds it useful to employ a concentrated solution of vesuvin containing 4 to 5 per cent. of hydrochloric acid. Sections should remain for a few minutes in the solution, and then be dehydrated with absolute alcohol. The paper quoted contains a detailed discussion of the micro-chemical reactions of granule cells.

794. Plasma Cells and Mastzellen.—UNNA, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 4, 1892, p. 475, gives the following:

A. *For Plasma Cells.*

Methylen blue . . .	1·0
Caustic potash . . .	0·05
Distilled water . . .	100·0

Add a few drops of this to ten, fifty, or one hundred vols. of anilin water (p. 203) in a watch glass, and stain (alcohol material, or at most sublimate and alcohol material, not chromic material) for half an hour, several hours, or overnight. Dehydrate rapidly in absolute alcohol, differentiate in creosol (details not given), rinse in xylol, and mount in balsam.

B. *General Stain, also bringing out Plasma Cells.*

Methylen blue . . .	1·0
Carbonate of potash . .	1·0
Distilled water . . .	100·0
Alcohol	20·0

Heat on a water-bath until reduced to 100·0. Use for staining undiluted, or diluted with one vol. of anilin water. Differentiate (details not given) with glycol, styron, or creosol. Mastzellen are not differentiated.

c. *Stain giving Red Mastzellen with Blue Plasma Cells.*

Methylen blue . . .	1·0
Kali Carbon. (natron carbon, ammon. carbon)	1·0
Aq. dest. (Aq. carbolisata, chloroforma)	100·0

Dilute about 100-fold, stain slowly, treat with 70 to 80 per cent. alcohol, differentiate in styron, and bring through bergamot oil or xylol into balsam. In this process the granules of the Mastzellen stain red in consequence of the formation of *methylen red* in the staining bath.

See further UNNA in *Monatssch. f. prakt. Dermatol.*, xii, 1891, p. 296; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 92, and *Monatssch. f. prakt. Dermatol.*, xix, 1894, p. 225; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 2, 1895, p. 58; also VAN DER SPEK and UNNA, *loc. cit.*, xiii. 1891, p. 364; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1, 1892, p. 89.

795. Plasma Cells and Mastzellen.—BERGONZINI (*Anat. Anz.*, vi, 1891, pp. 595—600; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 95). —Mix 1 volume of 0·2 per cent. solution of Säurefuchsin with 2 vols. of a like solution of methyl green, and 2 vols. of a like solution of gold-orange, and filter through cotton wool. Stain alcohol or sublimate sections (after washing in water) for three to four minutes, wash for one or two minutes in water, bring into absolute alcohol for two minutes, clear in bergamot oil or pure creosote, wash in turpentine, and mount in balsam.

One sort of gold-orange precipitates methyl green, and therefore cannot be used in this mixture. Orange G may be used instead.

796. Plasma Cells.—JADASSOHN (*Arch. f. Dermatol. u. Syphilis*, Ergänzungsheft 1, 1892, p. 58; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 226) recommends staining for not too long in a 1 : 2000 strongly alkaline or borax solution of thionin, and washing out with acidulated water.

See also VON MARSCHALKÒ, *Arch. f. Dermatol. u. Syphil.*, xxx, 1895,

p. 3; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1, 1895, p. 64, and KROMPECHER, *ibid.*, xv, 1899, p. 458.

797. Clasmatocytes, RANVIER (*C. R. Acad. des Sci.*, 1890).—A piece of suitable membrane (epiplöon of mammalia, mesentery of batrachia) is stretched *secundum artem* on a slide, and a few drops of 1 per cent. solution of osmic acid are allowed to fall on to it. After one or two minutes it is washed with water and stained with concentrated aqueous solution of methyl violet 5 B diluted with ten parts of distilled water. Glycerin may be added to make the preparation permanent, but does not succeed very well, as it causes the stain to diffuse. Brun's glucose medium (§ 421) would probably be preferable.

798. Elastic Tissue.—Two of the most salient characters of elastic fibres are that they have a great affinity for osmium, staining with much more rapidity than most other tissue-elements, and that they are not changed by caustic soda or potash. A further character is that they have a great affinity for certain anilin dyes, especially Victoria blue.

For a review of the older methods of BALZER, UNNA, LUSTGARTEN, and HERXHEIMER, see the paper by G. MARTINOTTI in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 1, 1887, p. 31.

The method of LUSTGARTEN has been given in § 275. The colour used by him was called "Victoriablau 4 A," and this may be important.

The method of G. MARTINOTTI (*loc. cit.*) is as follows:—Fix in a chromic liquid, wash, stain for forty-eight hours in strong (5 per cent. Pfitzner's) solution of safranin, wash, dehydrate, clear, and mount in balsam. Elastic fibres are stained an intense black, the rest of the preparation showing the usual characters of a safranin stain.

The staining will be performed quicker if it be done at the temperature of an incubating stove (GRIESBACH, *ibid.*, iv, 1887, p. 442). And FERRIA (*ibid.*, v, 3, 1888, p. 342) says that clearer preparations will be obtained if the sections be left for a long time, say twenty-four hours, in the alcohol, or be treated for a short time with very dilute alcoholic solution of caustic potash. This decolourises more completely the ground of the preparations.

Another safranin method, which seems to have the fault of requiring a too minute attention to details, is that of MIBELLI, see *Mon. zool. italiano*, 1, p. 17, or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 2, 1890, p. 225 (the report in *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 803, is vitiated by a misprint).

For the elastic tissue of the skin, see PASSARGE and KRÖSING, *Dermat. Stud.*, xviii, 1894.

See also for staining and dissociation AGABABOW, *Arch. mik. Anat.*, l, 1897, p. 566, *et seq.*

For C. MARTINOTTI's silver impregnation, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1888, p. 521, or *Arch. Ital. Biol.*, xi, 1889, p. 257.

SCHUMACHER (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, lv, 1899, p. 151, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 4, 1900, p. 456) has had good results (for the spleen) with a mixture of 1 part 1 per cent. nigrosin and 9 parts saturated aqueous picric acid.

See also § 821.

799. UNNA'S **Modified Orcein Method** (*Monatssch. f. prakt. Dermatol.*, xix, 1894, p. 397; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 2, 1895, p. 240).—The following solution is made: Grübler's orcein 1 part, hydrochloric acid 1 part, absolute alcohol 100 parts. The sections are put into a porcelain capsule with just enough of the stain to cover them, and the whole is warmed in a stove or over a naked flame to about 30° C. After ten to fifteen minutes the stain becomes quite thick, owing to evaporation of the alcohol. The sections are then well rinsed in alcohol, cleared, and mounted. Elastin dark brown, collagen light brown.

For UNNA's earlier orcein method, see third edition, or *Monatssch. f. prakt. Dermatol.*, xii, 1891, p. 394 (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 94).

See also ZENTHOEFER, in Unna's *Dermatol. Studien*, 1892, or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 509; KÖPPEN, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1889, p. 473; and vi, 1, 1890, p. 22, or third edition; BURCI, *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 831, and 1892, p. 292, or third edition; HANSEN, Virchow's *Archiv*, cxxxvii, 1894, p. 25; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 3, 1894, p. 383; KULTSCHIZKY, *ibid.*, xiii, 1, 1896, p. 74, or the original, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlvi, 1895, p. 673; GÜNTHER, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 230; SCHIEFFERDECKER, *ibid.*, p. 302; TRIEPEL, *ibid.*, xiv, 1897, p. 31; LOISEL, *Journ. de l'Anat., et de la Phys.*, xxxiii, 1897, p. 134; GARDNER, *Biol. Centralb.*, xvii, 1897, p. 398; LIVINI, *Monitore Zool. Ital.*, vii, 1896, p. 45 (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 455).

800. WEIGERT'S **Fuchsin-resorcin Method** (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 81).—1 per cent. of basic fuchsin and 2 per cent. of resorcin (or of carbolic acid) are dissolved in water. 200 c.c. of the solution are raised to boiling point in a capsule, and 25 c.c. of *Liquor ferri sesquichlorati* P. G. are added, and the whole is boiled, with stirring, for two to five minutes more. A precipitate is formed. After cooling the liquid is filtered, and the precipitate which remains on the filter is brought back into the capsule, and there boiled with 200 c.c. of 94 per cent. alcohol. Allow to cool, filter, make up the filtrate to 200 c.c. with alcohol, and add 4 c.c. of hydrochloric acid.

Stain sections (of material fixed in any way) for twenty minutes to an hour, wash with alcohol, clear with xylol (not with an essence). Elastic fibres dark blue on a light ground. Nuclei generally unstained; they may be after-stained with carmine, etc.

*Bone.**

801. Bone, Non-decalcified (Ranvier, *Traité*, p. 297).—Ranvier points out certain precautions that it is necessary to take in the preparations of sections of dry bone. In general the bones furnished by "naturalists" or procured in anatomical theatres contain spots of fatty substance that prevent good preparations from being made. Such spots are formed when bones are allowed to dry before being put into water for maceration; when a bone is left to dry the fat of the medullary canals infiltrates its substance as fast as its water evaporates.

Bones should be plunged into water as soon as the surrounding soft parts have been removed, and should be divided into lengths with a saw whilst wet. The medulla should then be driven out from the central canal by means of a jet of water; spongy bones should be submitted to hydrotomy as follows:—An epiphysis having been removed, together with a small portion of the diaphysis, a piece of caoutchouc tubing is fixed by ligature on to the cut end of the diaphysis, and the free end of the piece of tubing adapted to a tap through which water flows under pressure.

As soon as the bones, whether compact or spongy, have been freed from their medullary substance they are put to macerate. The maceration should be continued for several months, the liquid being changed from time to time. As soon as all the soft parts are perfectly destroyed, the bones may be left to dry. When dry, they should be of an ivory whiteness, and their surfaces exposed by cutting of a uniform dulness.

---

* For a minutely detailed review (40 pages, with references to 80 memoirs) of the whole subject of the techniqne of bone, see the paper of Schaffer, *Die Methodik der histologischen Untersuchung des Knochengewebes*, in *Zeit. f. wiss Mik.*, x, 2, 1893, p. 167.

Thin sections may then be cut with a saw and prepared by rubbing down with pumice-stone. Compact pumice-stone should be taken and cut in the direction of its fibres. The surface should be moistened with water and the section of bone rubbed down on it with the fingers. When both sides of the sections have been rubbed smooth in this way, another pumice-stone may be taken, the section placed between the two, and the rubbing continued. As soon as the section is thin enough to be almost transparent it is polished by rubbing with water (with the fingers) on a Turkey hone or lithographic stone. Spongy bone should be soaked in gum and dried before rubbing down (but see VON KOCH's copal process, *ante*, § 172, and EHRENBAUM's colophonium process, § 173).

For the process of WEIL for bone and teeth, see § 175.

RÖSE (*Anat. Anz.*, vii, 1892, pp. 512—519; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 506) follows Koch's process. He penetrates first with a mixture of cedar oil and xylol, then with pure xylol, and imbeds in solution of damar in chloroform or xylol. The method can be combined with Golgi's impregnation.

WHITE (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 307) recommends the following:—Sections of osseous or dental tissue should be cut or ground down moderately thin, and soaked in ether for twenty-four hours or more. They should then be put for two or three days into a thin solution of collodion stained with fuchsin (made by dissolving the dye in methylated spirit, adding the requisite quantity of ether, then the pyroxylin). The sections are then put into spirit to harden the collodion. After this they are ground down to the requisite thinness between two plates of old ground glass, with water and pumice powder, and mounted, *surface dry*, in stiff balsam or styrax, care being taken to use as little heat as possible. Lacunæ, canaliculi, and dentinal tubuli are found infiltrated by the coloured collodion.

MATSCHINSKY (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxix, 1892, p. 151, and xlvi, 1895, p. 290; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 353, and xiii, 1896, p. 68) after grinding, impregnates with nitrate of silver.

For a similar method of Ruprecht, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1, 1896, p. 21, wherein see also quoted (p. 23) a method of Zimmermann.

802. Sections of Bones or Teeth showing the Soft Parts.—Nealey (*Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, 1884, p. 142; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1885, p. 348) says that perfectly *fresh* portions of bone or teeth may be ground with emery on a dentist's lathe, and good sections, with the soft parts *in situ*, obtained in half an hour.

Hopewell-Smith (*Journ. Brit. Dent. Ass.*, xi, 1890, p. 310; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 529) says that for preparing sections of teeth showing odontoblasts *in situ* the best plan is to take embryonic tissues. A lower jaw of an embryonic kitten or pup may be taken, and hardened in solution of Müller followed by alcohol, then cut with a freezing microtome. The knife cuts quite easily the thin cap of semi-calcified dentine and bone.

Weil (*loc. cit.*, § 175) fixes pieces of fresh teeth in sublimate, stains with borax-carmine, brings them through alcohol into chloroform and chloroform-balsam, and after hardening this by heat proceeds to grind as usual (§ 172).

See also Röse, last §.

803. Vivante (*Intern. Monatssch. f. Anat. u. Phys.*, ix, 1892, p. 394; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 351) has made out that thin specimens of bone can be successfully treated by Golgi's bichromate of silver process. He places portions of frontal bone of four to six months calves, which are not more than 3 to 4 mm. thick, for eight days in solution of Müller, then in the osmium bichromate mixture, and then in the silver solution. After impregnation the specimens should be decalcified, which may be done by putting them for twenty days into von Ebner's mixture (§ 563), after which they should be well washed with water and brought into solution of carbonate of soda, and finally imbedded in paraffin. For his quinoleïn blue method, see *last edition.*

For Underwood's gold process for teeth, and for that of Lepkowsky, see *third edition.*

For the study of the *vessels in teeth*, Lepkowsky (*Anat. Hefte*, viii, 1897, p. 568) injects with Berlin blue, hardens the teeth with a piece of the jaw for one or two days in 50 per cent. formol, decalcifies in 10 per cent. nitric acid (eight to fourteen days, change frequently) and makes celloidin sections.

804. Bone, Decalcified (Flemming, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 47).—Sections of decalcified bone are soaked in water, and brought in a drop of water on to a glass plate, where they are spread out flat. The excess of water is removed with blotting-paper, and the sections are covered with another glass plate, to prevent them from rolling. The whole is brought into a plate and covered with alcohol. After the lapse of half an hour the sections have become fixed in the flat position, and may be brought into absolute alcohol without risk of their rolling. To mount them, wash them with fresh alcohol (which may be followed by ether); lay them again flat on glass, and cover them with a double layer of blotting-paper and a somewhat heavy glass plate, and let them dry for a day in the air or in a stove. When they are dry, put a drop of melted balsam on a slide, and let it spread out flat and cool. Prepare a thin glass cover in the same way, put the section on the prepared slide, cover it with the prepared cover, put on a clip, and warm.

By this process sections can be very expeditiously prepared, which show the lacunar system injected with air in quite as instructive a manner as non-decalcified sections.

805. Stains for Cartilage (and Decalcified Bone).—For an excellent discussion (especially as regards staining) of the methods for these objects, see the exhaustive paper of Schaffer in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1, 1888.

Kölliker (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xliv, 1886, p. 662) recommends the following for the demonstration of the fibres of Sharpey in decalcified bone. Sections are treated with concentrated acetic acid until they become transparent, and are then put for one quarter to one minute into a concentrated solution of indigo-carmine, then washed in water and mounted in glycerin or balsam. In successful preparations the fibres of Sharpey appear stained of a pale or dark *red*, the remaining bone substance blue.

Zachariadès (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 447) has the following:—Bone is decalcified by means of picric acid, washed, and put into alcohol and sectioned. The sections are placed on a slide and treated for a few seconds with 1 per cent. solution of osmic acid. They are then stained, either for twenty-four hours in a weak aqueous solution of quinoleïn blue, or for a few minutes in a saturated aqueous solution of safranin. They are then treated on a slide with a drop of 40 per cent. solution of caustic potash, the slide being warmed over a flame until the sections spread out flat. The excess of potash is then removed and the sections are carefully washed with water, covered, and examined. The safranin preparations may be permanently preserved in glycerin containing a small proportion of safranin.

SCHAFFER's *safranin method* (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1888, p. 17, modified from BOUMA, *Centralb. f. d. med. Wiss.*, 1883, p. 866).—Sections of bone decalcified with nitric acid (chromic acid may be used, but the stain will be less brilliantly contrasted) are stained for half an hour to one hour in 0·05 per cent. aqueous solution of safranin, washed with water, put for two or three hours in 0·1 per cent. solution of corrosive sublimate, and examined in glycerin. In order to make permanent preparations, the sections on removal from the sublimate are rinsed with alcohol, pressed on to a slide with filter-paper, cleared *for a long time* in bergamot oil or clove oil, and mounted in xylol balsam.

This is a *double* stain; cartilage, orange; bone, uncoloured (or green in chromic objects); marrow, red.

BAYERL's *method for ossifying cartilage* (*Arch. f. mik. Anat*, 1885, p. 35) is as follows:—Portions of ossified cartilage are decalcified as directed § 578, cut in paraffin, stained in Merkel's carmine and indigo-carmine mixture, § 372, and mounted in balsam.

Aqueous solution of *benzoazurin* has been commended as a stain for ossifying cartilage by ZSCHOKKE, see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 3, 1893, p. 381.

A process recommended by BAUMGARTEN has been given, § 375.

MOERNER (*Skandinavisches Arch. f. Physiol.*, i, 1889, p. 216; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1889, p. 508) gives several stains for tracheal cartilage, chiefly as microchemical tests, for which see *third edition*.

See also a critique of these methods by WOLTERS in *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxvii, 1891, p. 492; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 3, 1891, p. 383; and on the whole subject of cartilage see SCHIEFFERDECKER's *Gewebelehre*, p. 331.

FUSARI (*Arch. Ital. Biol.*, xxv, 1896, p. 200; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 488) makes sections of fresh cartilage, puts them for twenty-four hours into 1 per cent. nitrate of silver, washes, dehydrates, and exposes to the light in balsam.

Blood.

806. Introduction.—The technique of blood is most elaborate; see, for instance, the voluminous work of Hayem, *Du sang et de ses altérations anatomiques*, pp. 1035, with 126 figures, Paris, Masson, 1889 (a report of over twenty pages on this important work is contained in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 3, 1889, p. 330, *et seq.*); Coles, *The Blood: how to examine and diagnose its diseases*, London, Churchill, 1898, 260 pp., and 6 pls.; as well as the numerous memoirs of Löwit, Ehrlich, and others (see the bibliography in Giglio-Tos, *Mem. Accad. Torino*, xlvii, 1897, p. 37; also *previous editions*).

I confine myself to giving a few methods that may be useful to the general student.

807. Fixing and Preserving Methods.—The school of Ehrlich fix by *heat*. A film of blood is spread on a cover-glass and allowed to dry in the air, and then fixed by passing the cover a few times, three to ten or twenty, through a flame, or by laying it face downwards on a hot plate kept for several minutes or as much as two hours at a temperature at which water not only boils but assumes the spheroidal state (110° to 150° C.). For details see Gulland, *Scottish Med. Journ.*, April, 1899, p. 312; Rubinstein, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1898, p. 456; Zielina, *ibid.*, p. 463; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1898, pp. 488, 489. The method is, in my opinion, unutterably barbarous, and should be abandoned in favour of wet methods.

In *wet methods*, either the blood is mixed at once, on being drawn, with some fixing and preserving medium, and studied as a fluid mount; or cover-glass films are prepared and put into a fixing liquid *before the film has had time to dry.*

Muir (*Journ. of Anat. and Phys.*, xxvi, 1892, quoted from Gulland, below) makes cover-glass films and drops them into saturated sublimate solution, and after half an hour washes, dehydrates, and passes through xylol into balsam.

Gulland (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, March 13th, 1897; *Scottish Med. Journ.*, April, 1899) makes cover-glass films, and after a few seconds drops them face downwards into a solution of—

Absolute alcohol saturated with eosin .	25 c.c.
Pure ether	25 ,,
Sublimate in absolute alcohol (2 grms. to 10 c.c.)	5 drops.

After three or four minutes they are washed, stained for one minute in saturated aqueous solution of methylen blue, or in hæmalum, washed, dehydrated, and passed through xylol into balsam. Staining with Ehrlich's triacid also gives good results.

Jenner (*Lancet*, 1899, No. 6, p. 370; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 231) mixes equal parts of 1·2 to 1·25 per cent. water-soluble eosin (Grübler) and 1 per cent. methylen blue, filters after twenty-four hours, washes the precipitate on the filter, dries it, dissolves it in 200 parts of pure methyl alcohol, and puts cover-glass preparations into the solution, in which they are fixed and stained in three minutes. (The above mentioned precipitate is a "neutral" colour, see p. 194.)

Or, simply mix 125 c.c. of 0·5 per cent. solution of the eosin in methyl alcohol with 100 c.c. of 0·5 per cent. solution of methylen blue.

Wermel (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 1899, p. 50; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 452) gives some extremely complicated methods of fixing and staining in solutions of methylen blue, eosin, etc., in formol, which I am not sure that I rightly understand.

See, for the action of formaldehyde on red corpuscles, and for some formol mixtures, Marcano, *Arch. d. Med. Exper.*, xi, 1899, p. 434; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 3, 1899, p. 364; also a method of Kizer, *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1900, p. 128.

Most recent authors are agreed that by far the most faithful fixing agent for blood-corpuscles is osmic acid. A drop or two of blood (Biondi recommends two drops exactly) is mixed with 5 c.c. of osmic acid solution, and allowed to remain in it for from one to twenty-four hours. The exact degree of concentration of the osmic acid solution is a somewhat important point, and must be made out by experiment for each form. As a rule it should be strong, 1 to 2 per cent. According to Biondi, 2 per cent. is best. Fixed specimens may be preserved for use in acetate of potash solution (MAX FLESCH, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 1, 1888, p. 83).

GRIESBACH also (*op. cit.*, p. 328) prefers osmic acid, not only as being a first-rate fixing agent, but because it can be combined with certain stains without decomposing them. He mentions methyl green, methyl violet, crystal violet, safranin, eosin, Säurefuchsin, rhodamin, and iodine in potassic iodide.

ROSSI (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1889, p. 475) advises a mixture of equal parts of 1 per cent. osmic acid, water, and strong solution of methyl green, permanent mounts being made by means of glycerin cautiously added.

EWALD (*Zeit. Biol.*, xxxiv, 1897, p. 257) mixes three to four drops of blood of amphibia or reptiles with 10 c.c. of a solution of 0·5 per cent. osmic acid in 0·5 per cent. salt solution (for mammals 0·6 to 0·7 per cent. salt), siphons off the supernatant liquid after twenty-four hours with his capillary siphon (§ 3, p. 4), and substitutes water, alum-carmine, etc., and lastly, 50 per cent. alcohol.

See also ARNOLD, *Arch. path. Anat.*, cxlviii, 1897, p. 479.

The mercurial liquids of Pacini (§ 405) used to be considered good. HAYEM (*op. cit.*; see also *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 3, 1889, p. 335) has the following formula: sublimate 0·5, salt 1, sulphate of soda 5, and water 200. This should be mixed with blood in the proportion of about 1 : 100. Eosin may be added to it. LÖWIT'S formula (*Sitzb. k. Akad. Wiss. Wien*, xcv, 3, p. 129; *Zeit. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 1, 1889, p. 75) consists of 5 c.c. cold saturated sublimate solution, 5 grms. sulphate of soda, 2 grms. salt, and 300 c.c. water. Mosso finds, however, that both of these are too weak in sublimate.

Of course other well-tried fixing fluids, such as Flemming's solution, or Hermann's, may also be used for blood.

LAVDOWSKY (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 1, 1893, p. 4) describes some remarkable results obtained by fixing with 2 per cent. iodic acid, and staining with Neu-Victoriagrün, methyl violet 6 B, or gentian violet, a process which is said to reveal the presence of nuclei in elements generally considered to be apyrenematous.

DUBOSCQ (*Arch. Zool. Expér.*, vi, 1899, p. 481; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 545) uses (for blood of Chilopoda) a solution of acetic acid, copper acetate, copper chloride, osmic acid, thionin, 1 grm. each, water 400, which, mixed with the blood, fixes and stains in about two minutes.

808. Stains for Blood.—Blood prepared as above can be satisfactorily stained with many of the usual reagents.

Eosin stains rose-red all parts of blood-corpuscles that contain hæmoglobin (see WISSOZKY, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1876, p. 479).

WISSOZKY (*loc. cit.*) stains in a solution of equal parts of eosin and alum in 200 parts of alcohol, and then with hæmatoxylin.

MOORE (*The Microscope*, 1882, p. 73; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1882, p. 714) stains for three minutes in a similar solution without the alum, washes, and stains for two minutes in a 1 per cent. aqueous solution of methyl green.

The liquid of Chenzinsky has been given (§ 300). It stains nuclei and eosinophilous granules.

MERKEL'S *carmine and indigo-carmine* stain has been much recommended, but see § 372.

Fresh (unfixed) blood may be treated as follows (BIZZOZERO and TORRE, *Archivio per le Scienze mediche*, vol. iv, No. 18, 1880, p. 390):—Dilute a drop of blood with 0·75 per cent. salt solution in which has been dissolved a little *methyl violet*. This liquid in no wise affects the form of the elements, stains intensely the nucleus of the red corpuscles, and in the white stains the nucleus intensely, and the protoplasm less intensely. May be used for the study of bone marrow and spleen.

For the staining of the blood-plates of BIZZOZERO, this observer (*Arch. f. path. Anat. u. Phys.*; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1884, p. 389) employs a 0·02 per cent. solution of methyl violet in salt solution, or a 1 : 3000 solution of gentian violet.

TOISON (*Journ. Sci. med. de Lille*, fév., 1885; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 398) recommends that blood be mixed with the following fluid:

Distilled water . . .	160 c.c.
Glycerin (neutral, 30° Baumé) .	30 ,,
Pure sulphate of sodium . .	8 grammes.
Pure chloride of sodium . .	1 gramme.
Methyl violet 5 B . .	0·25 ,,

(The methyl violet is to be dissolved in the glycerin with one half of the water added to it; the two salts are to be dissolved in the other half of the water, and the two solutions are to be mixed and filtered.) White blood-corpuscles stain in this medium in five or ten minutes; the maximum of coloration is attained in from twenty to thirty minutes. White blood-corpuscles, violet; red blood-corpuscles, greenish.

Ferrier's liquid is said to have a sp. gr. similar to that of liquor sanguinis. Fuchsin, 1 grm.; water, 150 c.c.; rectified spirit 50 c.c.; dissolve, and add glycerin, 200 c.c. (from SQUIRE's *Methods and Formulæ*, p. 39).

For UNNA's methods for staining erythrocytes in alcohol-hardened tissues (pathological extravasations) see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 234.

GIGLIO-TOS (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 359) stains films for one minute in a warm saturated solution of methylen blue B.X., and examines in water.

He later (*ibid.*, xv, 1898, p. 166) mixes fresh blood with a saturated solution of neutral red in 0·8 per cent. salt solution, which stains hæmoglobigenous granules in five to ten minutes.

Neutral red is also recommended as an *intra vitam* stain for granules of leucocytes by EHRLICH and LAZARUS, see § 296.

ZIEMANN (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 456) stains films for twenty minutes in a mixture of 1 c.c. of 1 per cent. methylen blue and 5 c.c. of 0·1 per cent. eosin solution (mark B.A. or A.G., Höchst).

JENNER's mixture, see § 807.

PRINCE (*Micr. Bull.*, xv, 1898, p. 42; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 237; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvi, 4, 1900, p. 468) adds to twenty-four parts saturated solution of toluidin blue one of saturated solution of Säurefuchsin and two of 2 per cent. eosin, agitates and decants. Films are stained in a few seconds in the fresh solution, or in a few minutes after it has stood for some weeks.

It goes without saying that the Ehrlich-Biondi mixture, (§ 290), and Ehrlich's triacid and acidophilous mixtures, (§§ 291 and 309) may be found valuable in many hæmatological researches.

For details as to the staining reactions of the granules of leucocytes, see the literature quoted in *previous editions*, and see also particularly the critique in FISCHER's "*Fixirung, Färbung und Bau des Protoplasmas*" (Jena, G. Fischer, 1899), the outcome of which is that the supposed specificity of the reactions is a mere mare's nest.

809. Demonstration of Blood-plates of Bizzozero (KEMP, *Studies from the Biol. Lab. Johns Hopkins Univ.*, May, 1886, iii, No. 6; *Nature*, 1886, p. 132).—A somewhat large drop of blood is placed on a slide, and quickly washed with a small stream of normal salt solution. The blood-plates are not washed away, because they have the property of adhering to glass; and on bringing the slide under the microscope they will be seen in large numbers. If it be desired to make permanent preparations of them, they should first be fixed. This is done by putting a drop of osmic acid solution on the finger before pricking it.

For BIZZOZERO's methods for the *numeration* of these elements and for the study of their regeneration, see his paper in *Festschr. R. Virchow gewidm.*, etc., 1, 1891, p. 459; or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 229. For his stain for them see § 808.

For the application of some *digestion methods* to the study of blood-plates, see LILIENFELD, *Arch. f. Anat. u. Physiol., Physiol. Abth.*, 1892, p. 115; or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 3, 1893, p. 363.

For methods for obtaining *large quantities* of blood-plates, see DRUEBIN *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 4, 1893, p. 493.

For BRODIE and RUSSELL's numeration methods see *Journ. of Physiol.*, xxi, 1897, p. 390; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 392.

For DETERMANN's, see *ibid.*, xvi, 1899, p. 86.

810. WEIGERT's **Fibrin Stain** (*Fortschr. d. Med.*, v, 1887, No. 8, p. 228; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 4, 1887, p. 512).—Sections (alcohol material) are stained in a saturated solution of gentian or methyl violet in anilin water (p. 203). They are brought on to a slide and mopped up with blotting-paper, and a little Lugol's solution (§ 88) is poured on to them. After this has been allowed to act for a sufficient time they are differentiated and cleared in anilin oil *without previous dehydration with alcohol*. They are simply mopped up with blotting-paper, and a drop of anilin is poured on to them. The anilin soon becomes dark, and is then changed for fresh once or twice. When this has been done, the anilin is *thoroughly* removed by means of xylol, and a drop of balsam and a cover are added. This stain may be applied to celloidin sections without previous removal of the celloidin. See also the modifications of this method by Kromayer (§ 656) and Benecke (§ 786).

Unna (*Monatsschr. prakt. Dermat.*, xx, 1895, p. 140; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 229) gives a modification of the above method, and also one with polychromatic methylen blue and iodide of potassium, and one with fuchsin and tannin.

Wolff (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 310) makes up the stain with two vols. saturated solution of carbonate of lithia to one of alcoholic gentian or fuchsin; other details *loc. cit.*, or *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 234.

Glands.

811. Mucin.—Hoyer (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxvi, 1890, p. 310; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1, 1891, p. 67) has the following conclusions:

The "mucin" of mucus cells and goblet cells stains with *basic* tar colours and with alum hæmatoxylin, but not with *acid* tar colours (see § 262). He obtained his best results by means of thionin, and good ones with toluidin blue, both of these giving a metachromatic stain—tissues blue, mucin reddish—and also with methylen blue (which is particularly useful from its power of bringing out the merest traces of mucin), safranin, etc.

All of these colours may be used in the same way. Specimens should be fixed for two to eight hours in 5 per cent. sublimate solution, imbedded in paraffin, cut, and the sections stained for five to fifteen minutes in a very dilute aqueous solution of the dye (two drops of saturated solution to 5 c.c. of water).

It is theoretically interesting to observe that hyaline cartilage, the jelly of Wharton, and the Mastzellen of Ehrlich give the same reactions with basic dyes as mucin does, even their metachromatic reactions being identical.

These conclusions had already been in part formulated by Sussdorf (*Deutsche Zeit. f. Thiermed.*, xiv, pp. 345, 349; see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 2, 1889, p. 205).

See also the series of papers by Bizzozero, "*Sulle ghiandole tubulari del tubo gastro-enterico,*" etc., in the *Atti R.*

Accad. di Sci. di Torino, 1889 to 1892; reports in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 61; and ix, 2, 1892, p. 219; also UNNA, *ibid.*, xiii, 1896, p. 42.

As regards the safranin reaction, it is well to note that it is not obtained with all brands of the dye; that of Bindschedler and Busch, in Bâle, gives it, whilst safranin 0 of Grübler does not. UNNA employs chiefly his polychromatic methylen blue (§§ 321, 794).

The subject has been carefully investigated by PAUL MAYER (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* xii, 2, 1896, p. 303; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 38). As regards the hæmatein reaction, he finds—

1. If the staining solution contain free acid, or a relatively large amount of alum, then as a general rule the secretion of mucus gland cells does *not* stain in it.

2. If it contain a relatively small proportion of alum, but a large proportion of hæmatein, then it stains many sorts of mucus, and at the same time stains chromatin strongly.

He also finds that mixtures of a relatively large amount of methyl violet and a relatively small amount of methylen blue with a little acetic acid stain nuclei blue, mucus red (p. 314). Unna's methylen blue stains well; the red stain of thionin keeps badly, that of toluidin blue somewhat better. A sharp stain that keeps well in balsam is got by staining for several hours in a concentrated solution of safranin in 30 per cent. alcohol with a very little hydrochloric acid. Mucus from different sources reacts very differently, and there are certainly several sorts of mucin. At the same time, thionin, safranin, and other colours, quoted by HOYER as specific stains for mucin, stain in the same way substances that are not mucin, *e. g.* Corpora amylacea, albumin, gum arabic. He gives the following two formulæ for mixtures that stain *exclusively* mucus (the distinction between mucin and mucigen is not taken in his paper).

812. MAYER'S **Mucicarmine** (*op. cit.*, last §).—One gramme of carmine is rubbed up in a capsule with 0·5 gramme of aluminium chloride (must be dry, not damp and yellow), and 2 c.c. of distilled water. The capsule is heated over a small flame for two minutes, until the originally light-red mixture has become quite dark. Stir thoroughly. The liquid having become thick, add a little 50 per cent. alcohol, in which the warm mass ought to dissolve easily, and rinse the whole with more alcohol into a bottle. Make up to 100 c.c. with 50 per cent. alcohol, let it stand for at least twenty-four hours, and filter. This gives a stock solution, which is as a rule to be diluted for use tenfold with distilled or tap water. Exceptionally it may be diluted instead five or ten fold with alcohol of 50 per cent. or 70 per cent. The stock solution may be obtained from Grübler and Co. Mucicarmine stains in sections or thin membranes *mucus only*. Nuclei may be stained *before* with hæmalum.

813. MAYER'S **Muchæmatein** (*ibid.*).—Hæmatein 0·2 gramme, aluminium chloride 0·1 gramme, glycerin 40 c.c., water 60 c.c. Rub up the hæmatein in a mortar with a few drops of the glycerin, then add the other ingredients. If it be desired to avoid employing a watery liquid, an alcoholic solution may be made in the same way by dissolving the hæmatein and aluminium chloride in 100 c.c. of 70 per cent. alcohol, with or without the addition of two drops of nitric acid. This is a *nearly pure mucus stain* for sections or thin membranes. Nuclei may be stained *before* with paracarmine.

If the mucus swells much (as in Fishes) the *alcoholic* solutions of mucicarmine or muchæmatein are indicated, and watery fixatives should be avoided as much as possible,

814. Mucicarminic Acid (RAWITZ, *Anat. Anz.*, xv, 1899, p. 439).—1 gramme of carminic acid, 2 of aluminium chloride, and 100 c.c. of 50 per cent. alcohol are dissolved and evaporated to dryness on a sand-bath and the residue taken up with 100 c.c. of 50 per cent. alcohol. Use as mucicarmine.

815. Neutral Red.—KULTSCHIZKY (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlix, 1897, p. 8) fixes in his mixture (end of § 59), and stains sections either in safranin with 2 per cent. acetic acid, or in a similar solution of neutral red (two to three days, washing out with alcohol).

816. Goblet Cells.—So far as these contain mucin they give the reactions above described, see FLEMMING, *Zeit. f. wiss.*

Mik., 1885, p. 519; Paulsen, *ibid.*, p. 520; Paneth, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xxxi, 1888, p. 113 *et seq.;* and List, *ibid.*, xxvii, 1886, p. 481.

Ranvier (*Comptes rend.*, 1887, 3, p. 145; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, v, 2, 1888, p. 233) treats the pharyngeal mucosa of the frog first for ten or twelve hours with vapour of osmium, and then for three minutes with vapours of perruthenic acid (RuO_4) and obtains the mucigen in the goblet cells stained black.

817. Salivary Glands.—Solger (*Unters. z. Naturlehre d. Menschen*, xv, 5 and 6, pp. 2—15; *Festschr. f. Gegenbaur*, ii, 1896, p. 211; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 3, 1896, p. 374) demonstrates the granules in serous cells and half-moons of the submaxillary gland by means of formaldehyde. The gland is hardened for two days or more in a 10 per cent. solution of formol, and may then either be sectioned and examined in the wet way or imbedded in paraffin, and the sections stained with hæmatoxylin of Delafield or of Ehrlich, the granules taking the stain.

Krause (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlv, 1895, p. 94) stains sections either with Heidenhain's iron hæmatoxylin or with Ehrlich-Biondi mixture or thionin. See also Krause, *ibid.*, xlix, 1897, p. 709.

818. Glands of Larynx and Trachea.—Fuchs-Wolfring (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, lii, 1898, p. 735; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 2, 1898, p. 232) found mucicarmine the best reagent for mucus. It is advantageous to employ it with hæmalum (§ 812). He also used a light stain with Delafield's hæmatoxylin followed by Congo red (demonstrates the secretory capillaries of serous glands).

819. Gastric Glands.—Kolster (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1895, p. 314) differentiates the two kinds of cells in stomach glands by over-staining with hæmatoxylin, washing out with alcohol containing 1 per cent. of HCl, blueing with alcohol containing 1 per cent. of ammonia, and, after washing, staining for one to five minutes in a weak solution of Säurefuchsin. Peptic cells blue, parietal cells red. Osmic material cannot be employed.

See also Oppel, *Lehrb. Vergl. Anat. Wirbelthiere*, 1, Der Magen, Jena, 1896.

820. Liver.—Braus (*Denkschr. Med. Nat. Ges. Jena,* v, 1896, p. 307) demonstrates the *bile capillaries* by the rapid method of Golgi, hardening in a mixture of one part formol with three parts liquid of Müller or $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. chromic acid. He also stains with Bordeaux R and iron hæmatoxylin, or with Ehrlich-Biondi mixture, after fixing in a mixture of one part formol to three of $7\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. sublimate solution.

Holm (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. Morph.*, x, 1897, p. 283) fixes the extremely fatty liver of *Acanthias* in a mixture of 5 parts alcohol and 1 of chloroform, and imbeds in paraffin.

Oppel (*Anat. Anz.*, v, 1890, p. 144; vi, 1891, p. 168) puts pieces of liver or spleen (alcohol material) for twenty-four hours into a solution of neutral chromate of potash ($\frac{1}{2}$ to 10 per cent.), rinses with a very weak solution of silver nitrate, puts them for twenty-four hours into a $\frac{3}{4}$ per cent. solution of silver nitrate, washes, dehydrates and cuts without imbedding. The lattice fibres are only stained near the surface, so that tangential sections must be made.

See also Ranvier, "*Les membranes muqueuses et le syst. glandulaire,*" *Journ. de Microgr.*, ix, x, 1885–6; Igacuschi, in *Arch. f. path. Anat.*, xcvii, p. 142, or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 243 (gold process for study of fibrous networks); Kupffer, *Sitzb. Ges. f. Morph.*, etc., München, Juli, 1889, or *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 4, 1889, p. 506 (hæmatoxylin stain for demonstration of ultimate bile-ducts, and application of Golgi's silver bichromate method to the same object and to the study of fibrous networks); Krause, *Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlii, 1893, p. 57.

821. Spleen.—For the *lattice fibres*, see Oppel, last §.

Kultschitzky (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlvi, 1895, p. 675) studies the *musculature* in sections (of material from liquid of Müller) stained for a day or more in a solution of "lakmoid" in ether and mounted in balsam.

For *elastic fibres* he puts sections for half an hour or a day into a mixture of 800 parts 96 per cent. alcohol, 40 parts 1 per cent. solution of carbonate of potash, 2 parts Magdala red, and 1 part methylen blue.

For the *blood-vessels* he puts sections of Müller material for a few minutes into a solution of one or two parts of Säurerubin in 400 parts of 3 per cent. acetic acid, washes out in 2 per cent. acetic acid, and after-stains in a similar solution of helianthin or Wasserblau until the red only remains in the erythrocytes.

See also WHITING, *Trans. Roy. Soc.*, Edinburgh, xxxviii, 1896, p. 311.

822. Kidney.—SAUER (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlvi, 1895, p. 110) has a thorough discussion of the methods for the study of the renal epithelium. He finds the best fixative is Carnoy's acetic alcohol with chloroform, § 83 (three to five hours, washing out with absolute alcohol). A mixture of nine parts alcohol with one of nitric acid is also good, as is liquid of Perényi. He stains with iron hæmatoxylin, and after-stains in a very weak solution of Säurerubin in 90 per cent. alcohol, which stains the ciliary plateau. He macerates with iodised serum or one third alcohol, staining afterwards with dahlia.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

SOME METHODS FOR LOWER ANIMALS.

823. Introduction.—The following methods are all of them such as give results applicable to *histological* study, and no account has been taken of such methods as are merely useful for the preparation of organisms for museum specimens or for coarse dissection.

On p. 74 will be found a note of warning as to the employment of the now fashionable formaldehyde as a preservative.

A valuable paper giving an account of a number of the processes employed in the Naples Zoological Station for the preservation of marine animals has been published by Salvatore Lo Bianco in *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, ix, 1890, p. 435. *References to the work of* S. Lo Bianco *in the remainder of this chapter are to that paper.* An abstract of it is contained in *Amer. Natural.*, xxiv, 1890, p. 856, and *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 133, and a very full account in *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1, 1891, p. 54.

Tunicata.

824. Fixation of Tunicata.—A method of Salvatore Lo Bianco for killing simple Ascidians in an extended state has been given above, § 22. In the paper quoted above this plan is recommended for *Ciona, Ascidia,* and *Rhopalea.* But many other forms, such as *Clavellina, Perophora, Phallusia, Molgula, Cynthia,* etc., should first be narcotised by treatment for from three to twelve hours with chloral hydrate (1 : 1000 in sea water), then killed in a mixture containing chromic acid of 1 per cent. 10 parts, acetic acid 100 parts, and finally hardened in 1 per cent. chromic acid.

The compound Ascidians with contractile zooids are difficult to manage if one does not go the right way to work. The best process known to me is the following (due to van

Beneden, kindly communicated to me by Dr. C. Maurice). Place the corms in clean sea water, and leave them alone for a few hours, in order that the zooids may become fully extended, then plunge them suddenly into glacial acetic acid. Leave them there for two, four, or six minutes, according to the size of the corms (which are best taken of as small a size as possible). Take them out of the acid with your fingers (or at all events not with steel instruments, which would blacken the tissues) and bring them into 50 per cent. alcohol. Wash them thoroughly in that, and then bring them in the usual way through successively stronger alcohols.

I strongly recommend this process, which gives admirably preserved preparations quite free from any opacity either in the tissues or the tunic. The acid will not hurt the fingers if they be washed immediately.

S. Lo Bianco recommends for this group the chloral hydrate process, followed by fixation with sublimate or chromo-acetic acid.

Caullery (*Bull. Sc. France Belg.*, xxvii, 1895, p. 5) first stupefies the animals with cocaine (Lahille, a few drops of 5 per cent. solution to 30 c.c. of sea water), then fixes in liquid of Flemming or acetic acid.

Most small *pelagic* Tunicates are very easily fixed with osmic acid or acid sublimate solution.

I have found the acetic acid process very good for *Pyrosoma*. Lo Bianco puts them for a quarter of an hour into 50 per cent. alcohol containing 5 per cent. of hydrochloric acid, then into successive alcohols, beginning with 60 per cent. He kills the hard forms of *Salpa* with acetic acid of 10 per cent., the semi-hard ones with 1 per cent. chromic acid containing 5 per cent. acetic acid, the soft ones with 1 per cent. chromic acid containing $\frac{1}{50}$ per cent. osmic acid, Doliolidæ with sublimate, or the above osmic mixture, or a mixture of 10 parts 10 per cent. solution of sulphate of copper with one part concentrated sublimate solution.

Molluscoida.

825. Bryozoa.—For some methods of killing and fixing see §§ 11, 18, and 19. S. Lo Bianco employs for *Pedicellina* and *Loxosoma* the chloral hydrate method, fixing with sublimate. For *Flustra, Cellepora, Bugula, Zoobothrium,* he employs the alcohol method of Eisig, § 16. For *Cristatella* see §§ 17, 18.

Conser (*Trans. Amer. Mic. Soc.,* xvii, 1896, p. 310) kills the fresh-water forms with cocaine, puts them for an hour into 1 per cent. chromic acid, and passes through water into alcohol, etc.

826. Brachiopoda.—Lo Bianco kills small animals in 70 per cent. alcohol, larger ones in the same, but after first narcotising with alcohol and sea water.

Blochmann (*Untersuch. fein. Bau Brachiopoden,* Jena, 1892, p. 5) fixes principally with sublimate, macerates by the Hertwigs' method, § 538, decalcifies with 1 per cent. chromic acid (for thick shells add a little hydrochloric or nitric acid), or with nitric acid in alcohol of 50 to 70 per cent., and imbeds in paraffin or celloidin, the latter giving the less shrinkage. For injections, Berlin blue, or 2 per cent. blue or red gelatin.

Ekman (*Zeit. wiss. Zool.,* lxii, 1896, p. 172) fixes the peduncle chiefly with liquid of Flemming, and cuts chiefly with the free hand, in liver, seldom in paraffin.

Mollusca.

827. Fixation of Mollusca.—Two groups at least amongst the Mollusca offer considerable difficulties in the way of fixation—Lamellibranchiata and Gastropoda.

Lo Bianco narcotises Lamellibranchs for six to ten hours or more with alcohol, § 16, and then kills them.

Carazzi (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* xii, 1896, p. 388) also employs the alcohol method, but warms the vessel containing the animals to about 25° C., and thus obtains total narcosis in twenty-four hours. For the study of the branchiæ he then excises all four lamellæ, fixes them in a sublimate mixture similar to that of Gilson, § 70, for one or two hours (or the entire body of the animal may be excised and fixed for four to six hours), then passes through iodine-alcohol and absolute alcohol, removes the two outer lamellæ, and imbeds the two inner ones, which have suffered less from the operations.

See also § 20.

The methods recommended for Lamellibranchiata sometimes give good results with Gastropoda.

S. Lo Bianco advises that Prosobranchiata, and, amongst the Heteropoda, Atlantidæ, be narcotised with 70 per cent. alcohol, § 16. Opisthobranchiata ought not to give much trouble, and I recommend sudden killing with liquid of Perényi, or the acetic method, § 824. *Aplysia* may first be narcotised by subcutaneous injection of about 1 c.c. of a 5 to 10 per cent. solution of hydrochlorate of cocaine (Robert, *Bull. Scient. de la France*, etc., 1890, p. 449; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 216), or (Schönlein, *Zeit. Biol.*, xxx, 1893, p. 187) 1 c.c. of 4 per cent. solution of Pelletierin. For Lo Bianco's various methods see the original, p. 467.

For Pteropoda in general, liquid of Perényi. *Creseis* is a difficult form. S. Lo Bianco advises the alcohol method, § 16. For the Gymnosomata he narcotises with 0·1 per cent. chloral hydrate.

Note the hydroxylamin method of Hofer, § 20.

For *preservation* it may be noted that for Heteropoda and Pteropoda. formaldehyde (*preceded by due fixation* in a chromic or sublimate solution) is an admirable medium, so far at least as macroscopic appearances are concerned, and for this purpose superior to alcohol.

For terrestrial Gastropods see the Asphyxiation method, § 23. See for removal of mucus, Marchi, *Arch. mik. Anat.*, 1867, p. 204.

828. Eyes of Gastropoda (Flemming, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1870, p. 441).—The difficulty here is to obtain the excision of an exserted eye. It is impossible to sever the exserted peduncle in a living animal without its retracting, at least partially, before the cut is completed. Never mind that; make a rapid cut at the base, and throw the organ into very dilute chromic acid, or 4 per cent. bichromate; after a short time it will evaginate, and remain as completely erect as if alive. Harden in 1 per cent. osmic acid, in alcohol, or in bichromate.

Carrière (*Zool. Anz.*, 1886, p. 221) removes the eye, together with a portion of the tentacle, and fixes by exposing it for some minutes to vapour of osmic acid. He depigments sections by very careful treatment with *very dilute eau de Javelle.*

829. Eyes of Cephalopoda and Heteropoda (GRENACHER, *Abh. naturf. Ges. Halle-a.-S.*, Bd. xvi; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 244).—Fix (Cephalopod eyes) in picro-sulphuric acid, or in a saturated solution of corrosive sublimate in picro-sulphuric acid (this mixture is especially useful for *Octopus, Eledone,* and *Sepia,* but does not succeed with the pelagic forms, such as *Loligo, Ommatostrephes,* and *Rossia*). Depigment the specimens with hydrochloric acid (in preference to nitric acid). The mixture § 581 may also be used. The operation of depigmentation may be combined with that of staining; if you stain with borax-carmine and wash out in the last-mentioned mixture the pigment will be found to be removed quicker than the stain is washed out. The operation may be carried out on sections, but it is better to use portions of retina of 2 to 5 mm. in thickness. Grenacher mounted his preparations in castor oil, see § 447.

Similar methods are recommended by the same author for the eyes of **Heteropoda** (see *Abh. naturf. Ges. Halle-a.-S.*, 1886; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 243).

LENHOSSÉK (*Zeit. wiss. Zool.*, lviii, 1894, p. 636; *Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlvii, 1896, p. 45) applies the method of GOLGI to the eyes of Cephalopods.

Similarly KOPSCH (*Anat. Anz.*, xi, 1895, p. 362), but using formol instead of the osmic acid.

830. Eyes of Lamellibranchiata.—See PATTEN, *Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, vi, 1886, p. 733, and RAWITZ, *Jena. Zeit. Naturw.*, xxii, 1888, p. 115, and xxiv, 1890, p. 579 (bleaches with caustic soda); see § 584.

831. Central Nervous System of Pulmonata.—B. de NABIAS (*Act. Soc. Linn. Bordeaux*, 1894; *Rech. Hist. centres nerveux des Gastéropodes*, 1894, p. 23) opens the animals and fixes the ganglia for one hour in a mixture of 6 parts glacial acetic acid to 100 of 90 per cent. alcohol, or for fifteen to twenty minutes in 5 per cent. sublimate with 5 per cent. acetic acid. He stains in bulk, with Renaut's hæmatoxylic eosin, § 389, or R. Heidenhain's hæmatoxylin, § 252, or a copper hæmatoxylin of Viallanes, and imbeds in paraffin. He also stains by the rapid method of Golgi, imbedding, however, the ganglia in celloidin directly after the hardening in osmic acid and bichromate, and treating the sections with the silver (p. 34). He stains with methylen blue by treating the ganglia *in situ* for twelve to twenty-four hours with a 1 per cent. solution.

832. Shell.—Sections of non-decalcified shell are easily obtained by the usual methods of grinding, or, which is often a better plan, by the methods of v. Koch or Ehrenbaum, §§ 172, 173. Moseley (*Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.* [2], xxv, 1885, p. 40) decalcifies with nitric acid of 3 to 4 per cent. and then makes sections.

833. Injection of Acephala (Flemming, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1878, p. 252).—To kill the animals freeze them in a salt-and-ice mixture, and throw them for half an hour into lukewarm water. They will be found dead, and in a fit state for injection. Chloroform and ether are useless (but see § 20). The injection-pipe may be tied in the heart; but when this has been accomplished there remains the problem of occluding cut vessels that it is impossible to tie. To this end, after the pipe has been tied, the entire animal is filled and covered up with plaster of Paris. As soon as the plaster has hardened the injection may be proceeded with.

See also Dewitz, *Anleit. zur anfert. zootom. Präp.*, Berlin, 1886, p. 44 (*Anodonta*) and p. 52 (*Helix*).

834. Maceration Methods for Epithelium. — Engelmann (*Pflüger's Arch.*, xxiii, 1880, p. 505) macerates the intestine of *Cyclas* in osmic acid of 0·2 per cent. (after having warmed the animal for a short time to 45° to 50° C.), or in concentrated boracic acid solution.

The Intra-cellular Processes of the Cilia.—The entire intracellular fibre apparatus may be *isolated* by teasing fresh epithelium from the intestine of a Lamellibranch (*e. g. Anodonta*) in either bichromate of potash of 4 per cent., or salt solution of 10 per cent. To get good views of the apparatus *in situ* in the body of the cell, macerate for not more than an hour in concentrated solution of boracic or salicylic acid. Very dilute osmic acid (*e. g.* 0·1 per cent.) gives also good results. The "lateral cells" of the gills are best treated with strong boracic acid solution (five parts cold saturated aqueous solution to one part water).

Bela Haller's **Mixture**, see § 539.

Brock's **Medium**, § 535.

Möbius's **Media**, § 536; the second of these is much recommended by Drost (*Morphol. Jahrb.*, xii, 2, 1866, p. 163) for *Cardium* and *Mya*.

See also Patten (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, vi, 4, 1886, p. 736). Sulphuric acid, 40 drops to 50 grammes of water, is here recommended as a valuable macerating and preservative agent. Entire molluscs, without the shell, may be kept in it for months.

Bernard (*Ann. Sci. Nat.*, ix, 1890, p. 191) macerates the mantle of Prosobranchs in a mixture of one part each of glycerin and acetic acid, two parts each of 90 per cent. alcohol and 0·1 per cent. chromic acid, and forty parts water, which acts in from a quarter of an hour to three hours. He also (pp. 102, 306) uses a weak solution of chloride of ruthenium, especially for nerve tracts, mucus cells and cilia. Alcohol material may be macerated in a mixture of one part glycerin, two of acetic acid, and forty of water.

Arthropoda.

835. General Methods for Arthropoda.—As general methods for the study of chitinous structures, the methods worked out by Paul Mayer (see §§ 7 and 9, and also 90, 229, and 230) are excellent. It is at all events absolutely necessary that all processes of fixation, washing, and staining should be done with fluids possessing great penetrating power. Hence picric acid combinations should in general be used for fixing, and alcoholic fluids for washing and staining. *Concentrated* picro-sulphuric acid (or picro-nitric) is the most generally useful fixative, and 70 per cent. alcohol is the most useful strength for washing out.

Alcoholic picro-sulphuric acid may be indicated for fixing in some cases.

Some forms are very satisfactorily fixed with sublimate. Such are the Copepoda and the larvæ of Decapoda. It is sometimes indicated to use the sublimate in *alcoholic* solution. Some Copepoda, however (*Copilia, Sapphirina*), are better preserved by means of weak osmic acid, and so are the Ostracoda. In many cases the osmic acid will produce a sufficient differentiation of the tissues, so that further staining may be dispensed with ; *Copilia* and *Phyllosoma* are examples of forms that may be prepared in this simple manner. The pyrogallic process (§ 361) may often prove helpful in the study of such forms.

For Ostracoda, MÜLLER (*Fauna u. Flora d. Golfes von Neapel*, xxi [Ostracoda], 1894, p. 8) recommends fixing in a mixture of five parts of ether and one of absolute alcohol, followed by 70 per cent. alcohol.

GIESBRECHT takes for marine Copepods a concentrated solution of picric acid in sea water.

KENYON (*Tufts. Coll. Stud.*, No. 4, 1896, p. 80) fixes Pauropoda in Carnoy's acetic alcohol and chloroform, § 83, cuts them in two for staining, etc., and imbeds in celloidin followed by paraffin.

DUBOSCQ (*Arch. Zool. Expér.*, vi, 1899, p. 481 ; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 544) fixes Chilopoda in a mixture of equal parts of 1 per cent. chromic acid, 10 per cent. nitric acid, and 95 per cent. alcohol, or in a mixture of one part of glacial acetic acid and ten of absolute alcohol.

See also § 101.

836. Test for Chitin (ZANDER, *Pflüger's Arch. f. d. ges. Phys.*, lxvi, 1897, p. 545 ; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 2, 1898, p. 214).—The object is placed in water under a cover-glass, and treated for a short time with a drop of freshly prepared solution of iodine in iodide of potassium. This is then partly removed with water, and a drop of concentrated chloride of zinc added. This is in its turn removed with water as far as possible, and the violet reaction is obtained. Weaker solutions of zinc chloride may be taken, but the reaction is not so sharp.

837. Methods for Clearing and Softening Chitin.—The employment of *eau de Javelle* or *eau de Labarraque*, as suggested by Looss, for making chitin transparent and permeable to reagents, has been described, § 556.

List (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 212) has obtained good results with Coccidæ by treating them (after hardening) for eighteen to twenty-four hours with *eau de Javelle,* diluted with four volumes of water. After washing out with water, they may be dehydrated with alcohol and imbedded in paraffin, the chitin being sufficiently softened to allow of their being penetrated and good sections being obtained. You may stain before imbedding, with alum-carmine or picrocarmine (five to six days).

Sazepin's method for antennæ of Chilognatha (*Mém. Acad. Imp. St. Pétersb.*, xxxii, 9, 1884, pp. 11, 12) consists in steeping antennæ (that have been dehydrated with alcohol) for twenty-four hours in chloroform containing a drop of fuming nitric acid (shake occasionally).

See also the depigmentation processes, §§ 575 to 582, and Bethe's method, § 843.

838. Eyes of Arthropods.—For the methods of Lankester and Bourne (*Quart. Journ. Mic Sci.*, 1883, p. 180 : *Limulus*) ; Hickson (*ibid.*, 1885, p. 243 : *Musca*) ; Parker (*Bull. Mus. Harvard Coll.*, xx, 1890, p. 1 ; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 1891, p. 82 : *Homarus*) see *previous editions.*

In a later paper (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii, 1895, p. 1 ; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 4, 1896, p. 496) Parker describes the application of the methylen blue method to the study of the retina and optic ganglia in Decapods, especially in *Astacus.* He injected 0·1 c.c. of a 0·2 per cent. solution into the ventral sinus. After twelve to fifteen hours the animals were killed, the ganglia quickly dissected out, and the stain fixed as described, § 329.

For his method for eyes of *Scorpions* see § 582.

For the methods of Purcell for the eyes of *Phalangida* see *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, lviii, 1894, p. 1 ; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1, 1895, p. 44. He has the following stain. The cephalothorax is removed and brought for twenty minutes into 50 per cent. alcohol warmed to 45° or 50° C., and saturated with picric acid. The pigment dissolves in this solution and stains the nuclei and some other parts of the rhabdoms, so that no further stain is required.

Rosenstadt (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlvii, 1896, p. 748) fixes eyes of Decapods in a warm mixture of three parts concentrated sublimate solution and one part liquid of Perényi, and depigmentates them in a mixture of three parts each of nitric and hydrochloric acid and 100 of water, warmed to 56° C. for a few hours.

Viallanes (*Ann. Sci. Nat.*, xiii, 1892, p. 354; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1893, p. 260) fixes eyes of *Palinurus* in 5 per cent. sublimate with 5 per cent. acetic acid, washes out in 70 per cent. alcohol, depigmentates in a mixture of equal parts of alcohol, glycerin, and water, through which chlorine gas is led, puts for twelve hours into 1 per cent. solution of cupric sulphate, washes for five to six hours in distilled water, and stains for twelve hours in a fresh solution of one part hæmatoxylin in 100 of absolute alcohol and 300 of distilled water. He then puts them back for the same time into the copper solution, washes, and passes through alcohol and makes paraffin sections. The sections may be afterwards stained with safranin.

839. Brain of Bees.—Kenyon (*Journ. Comp. Neurol.*, vi, 1896, p. 137; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1897, p. 80) treats them by the Golgi process (seldom successful), or hardens in a mixture of one part formol and two of 5 per cent. sulphate of copper, followed by staining in Mallory's phospho-molybdic hæmatoxylin, § 259.

840. Ventral Cord.—Binet (*Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Phys.*, xxx, 1894, p. 469) fixes the ganglia of Hexapods either in liquid of Flemming, or in Viallanes's sublimate, § 838, treats them with his copper hæmatoxylin, § 838, and makes paraffin sections, which he stains with safranin.

841. Injections (Arachnida and Crustacea especially).—Aimé Schneider (*Tablettes Zool.*, ii, 1892, p. 123) recommends lithographic Indian ink, the animals being narcotised with chloroform, then injected and thrown into strong alcohol.

Causard (*Bull. Sc. France Belg.*, xxix, 1896, p. 16) injects spiders with Indian ink, brings them into alcohol, and thence for at least a day into water containing a few drops of ammonia, which facilitates dissection (VOGT and YUNG, *Traité d'Anat. Comp.*, ii, p. 203).

842. **Arctiscoida** (DOYERE, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, 1865, p. 105).—Examination of living animals after partial asphyxiation in boiled water. See *previous editions.*

843. BETHE'S **Stain for Chitin** (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. f. Anat.*, viii, 1895, p. 544; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 4, 1896, p. 498).—Desirous of staining the chitinous hairs and plates of the *otocyst* of *Mysis*, BETHE found advantage in employing a process in which anilin black is produced on the tissue itself. Anilin black is a product of the oxidation of anilin hydrochloride. BETHE proceeds as follows:—Series of sections mounted on a slide are put for three or four minutes into a freshly prepared 10 per cent. solution of anilin hydrochloride, to which has been added one drop of hydrochloric acid for every 10 c.c. They are then rinsed in water, and the slide is put with the sections downwards into 10 per cent. solution of bichromate of potash. The stain quickly begins to show itself, but is at first in general not sufficiently intense. The process is then repeated until the desired intensity of stain is obtained, care being taken to rinse the sections well with water after each of the operations, in order to avoid the formation of precipitates. The stain is at first green, but becomes blue in tap water or alcohol containing ammonia.

The same paper contains a hint concerning the preparation of *telsons* for section-cutting. They are put for eight to fourteen days into 40 per cent. alcohol, to which nitric acid is gradually added, so that by the end of that time they have been brought into alcohol containing 20 per cent. of the acid. This softens the chitin, and somewhat breaks down the structure of the otolith, so that good sections through it are occasionally obtained.

Vermes.

844. **Enteropneusta.**—LO BIANCO (*op. cit.*, p. 460) fixes with picro-sulphuric acid or 0·5 per cent. chromic acid, with previous narcotisation with alcohol if desired.

845. **Myzostoma.**—WHEELER (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, xii,

1896, p. 227) fixes with sublimate or picro-acetic acid, and stains sections with iron hæmatoxylin followed by saturated aqueous solution of Orange G.

846. Chætopoda: Fixation.—*Lumbricus* may be anæsthetised by putting the animals into water with a few drops of chloroform. PERRIER prefers not to let the chloroform act directly in solution on the animals, but to put them into water in a shallow dish, set up a watch glass with chloroform in the corner of it, and cover the whole. In half an hour the worms will be more or less narcotised, and if allowed to remain will die in a state of extension.

CERFONTAINE (*Arch. de Biol.*, x, 1890, p. 327; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, p. 210) much recommends curare, administered by interstitial injection of a dose of about 2 c.c. of a 1 : 500 solution. The animal should afterwards be put into water, and after a quarter of an hour will be found dead.

In order to kill *Criodrilus lacuum*, COLLIN (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xlvi, 1888, p. 474) puts the animals into a closed vessel with a little water, and hangs up in it a strip of blotting-paper soaked in chloroform. KÜKENTHAL (*Die mik. Technik*, 1885; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1886, p. 61) puts Annelids into a glass cylinder filled with water to the height of 10 centimetres, and then pours 70 per cent. alcohol to a depth of one to two centimetres on to the water. The animals will be found sufficiently narcotised for fixation in from four to eight hours. For Opheliadæ he also employs 0·1 per cent. of chloral hydrate in sea water.

Many marine Chætopoda may be successfully narcotised (S. LO BIANCO) in sea water containing 5 per cent. of alcohol, or by means of the mixture § 16.

The *Polychæta sedentaria* offer the difficulty of a complex and very contractile branchial apparatus. They may sometimes be satisfactorily fixed by bringing them rapidly into corrosive sublimate. Cold, not hot solutions should be taken, as heat frequently shrivels up the branchiæ. The species of *Polychæta errantia* that offer a contractile branchial apparatus, as *Eunice* and *Onuphis*, may be treated in the same way.

S. LO BIANCO advises killing Chætopteridæ, Sternaspidæ, *Spirographis, Protula,* by putting them for half an hour into 1 per cent. chromic acid. I have satisfied myself that good show specimens can be obtained in this way; but I doubt the histological preservation of the parts being so good as with sublimate specimens. Some of the *sedentaria* may be got protruded from their tubes by leaving them for some hours in 0·1 per cent. chloral hydrate in sea water (S. Lo Bianco).

See also § 12 (lemon juice), and the methods §§ 18 to 24, 43, and 53.

Rievel (*Zeit. wiss. Zool.,* lxii, 1896, p. 292) fixes *Ophryotrocha* in extension in hot liquid of Lang (§ 67), five to eight minutes, and *Lumbricus* in hot alcoholic sublimate or hot picro-sulphuric acid, ten to fifteen minutes.

For Eisig's methods for Capitellidæ see *Fauna u. Flora Golf. Neapel,* xvi, 1887, p. 295, or *Grundzüge,* p. 394.

847. Staining.—For the staining of small Annelids entire I find carmalum gives very good results, I think better than borax-carmine or paracarmine.

848. Blood-vessels of Annelids (Kükenthal, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* 1886, p. 61).—The animals should be laid open and put for two or three hours into *aqua regia* (4 parts of nitric acid to 2 of hydrochloric acid). The ramifications of the vessels will then be found to be stained black, the rest of the preparation yellow.

849. Nerves of Annelids.—The methylen blue method and the bichromate of silver method of Golgi (the *rapid* method). For the latter see v. Lenhossék (*Arch. f. mik. Anat.,* xxxix, p. 102; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.,* ix, 3, 1893, p. 432).

See also M. Lewis, *Anat. Anz.,* xii, 1896, p. 292; and the methods of Apáthy, §§ 358, 707.

850. Cleansing Intestine of *Lumbricus* (Kükenthal, *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.,* 1888, p. 1044).—Put the animals into a tall glass vessel which has been filled up with bits of moistened blotting-paper. They gradually evacuate the earthy particles from the gut, and fill it instead with paper.

Vogt and Yung (*Traité d'Anat. Comp. Prat.*, v) recommend coffee-grounds instead of paper; paper becomes rather hard when imbedded, whereas coffee-grounds cut fairly well.

Joest (*Arch. Entwicklungsmech.*, v, 1897, p. 425) simply keeps the worms for a few days in moist linen, and finds the gut empty.

851. Hirudinea.—For the methods of killing see those given for *Lumbricus* in § 846, also §§ 18 to 24, and 53.

Whitman (*Meth. in mic. Anat.*, p. 27) recommends that they be killed with sublimate.

I have obtained better results myself by narcotising with carbonic acid (§ 24), and fixing with liquid of Flemming. I have also found that *lemon juice* kills them in a state of very fair extension. Carmalum I find excellent for staining entire animals. Ehrlich-Biondi mixture sometimes gives fine results with sections.

Graf (*Jen. Zeit.*, 1893, p. 165) states that he has obtained good results by narcotising with decoction of tobacco.

Injection.—Whitman (*Amer. Natural.*, 1886, p. 318) states that very perfect natural injections may often be obtained from leeches that have been hardened in weak chromic acid or other chromic liquid. He considers that these injections are the best for the purpose of the study of the circulatory system by means of sections.

Jacquet (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel*, 1885, p. 298) advises that leeches be put into water with a very small quantity of chloroform; they soon fall to the bottom of the vessel and remain motionless. They should be allowed to remain a day or two in the water before injecting them.

852. Gephyrea.—Vogt and Yung (*Anat. Comp. Prat.*, p. 373) direct that *Siphunculus nudus* be kept for some days in perfectly clean basins of sea water, in order that the intestine of the animals may be got free from sand, which would be an obstacle to section-cutting, and then anæsthetised with chloroform, under which treatment they die extended, and may be fixed as desired.

Ward (*Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Cambridge, Harvard Coll.*, xxi, 3, p. 144) found the best plan was to put the animals into a shallow dish with sea water and pour 5 per cent. alcohol in a thin film on to the surface of the water. After four to eight hours, if the animals make no contractions on being stimulated, they may be removed to 50 per cent. alcohol.

S. Lo Bianco says killing with 0·5 per cent. chromic acid or with 0·1 per cent. chloral hydrate in sea water may be tried, but either method is uncertain. *Phascolosoma* and *Phoronis* should be treated by the alcohol method.

Apel (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xlii, 1885, p. 461) says that *Priapulus* and *Halicryptus* can only be satisfactorily killed by heat. The animals may either be put into a vessel with sea water and be heated on a water-bath to 40° C.; or they may be thrown as rapidly as possible into boiling water, which paralyses them so that they can be quickly cut open and thrown into $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. chromic acid or picro-sulphuric acid.

853. Rotatoria.—By far the most important method for the study of this group consists in the observation of the living animals. For quieting them Weber (*Arch. de Biol.*, viii, 4, 1888, p. 713) finds that of all the reagents he tried, 2 per cent. solution of hydrochlorate of cocaine gave the best results. Warm water gave him good results for large species, such as those of *Hydatina* and *Brachionus*.

Hardy (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 475) recommends thick syrup added drop by drop to the water. Hudson (*ibid.*, p. 476) mentions weak solution of salicylic acid.

Hofer's hydroxylamin method has been given, § 20, and Tullberg's chloride of magnesium method, § 21; the processes of Eismond and Jensen, § 879, may be tried. Methylen blue, § 323, may be found useful.

Permanent preparations may be made by the method of Rousselet (*Journ. Quekett Mic. Club*, v, March, 1895, p. 1): The animals are got together in a watch glass and are narcotised by adding to the water at intervals a few drops of the following mixture:

Hydrochlorate of cocaine 2 per cent. solution	3 parts.
Methylated spirit	1 part.
Water	6 parts.

They are watched under a dissecting microscope, and at the moment when the cilia have ceased to beat, or are seen to be on the point of ceasing to beat, they are fixed by adding a drop of liquid of Flemming or of $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent osmic acid. The fixing agent is allowed to act for half a minute or less, after which the animals are taken out with a pipette, and thoroughly washed by passing them through two or three watch glasses of distilled water. They are then definitely mounted in 2½ per cent. solution of formaldehyde (formol 2½ parts, distilled water 37½ parts). See also § 455.

For some details concerning variations of this method adapted to the preservation of the different forms, see the paper quoted.

Zograf (*Comptes Rend.*, cxxiv, 1897, p. 245; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 380; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1897, p. 173) narcotises as Rousselet, but without the spirit, fixes with osmic acid for two to four minutes, then replaces this by raw pyroligneous acid diluted with eight to ten volumes of water, and after five to ten minutes washes in several changes of water, and passes through successive alcohols into glycerin or balsam.

See also § 25 (Volk).

Conser (*Trans. Amer. Mic. Soc.*, xvii, 1896, p. 310) narcotises with cocaine, and fixes with 20 per cent. formol followed by 0·5 per cent. chromic acid.

854. Acanthocephali.—It is very difficult to kill Echinorhynci so as to have the animals duly extended and the tissues well preserved. Neither corrosive sublimate nor strong osmic acid will, as a rule, attain this end, even after preliminary intoxication with tobacco smoke or chloroform, the animal thus treated dying contracted.

Hamann, however (*Jen. Zeit. f. Naturw.*, xxv, 1890, p. 113; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, viii, 2, 1891, p. 209), has succeeded with sublimate, and also with alcohol containing a little platinum chloride.

Saefftigen (*Morphol. Jahrb.*, x, 1884, 120; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.* [N. S.], v, 1885, p. 147) obtained the best results by killing gradually with 0·1 per cent. osmic acid; the animals placed in this contract during the first hours, but stretch out again and die fully extended.

Another method of killing is treatment with 0·1 per cent. chromic acid; Echinorhynci live for days in it, but eventually die fully extended.

Kaiser (*Biblioth. Zool.*, H. vii, 1 Hälfte. 1891; *Zeit. f.*

wiss. Mik., viii, 3, 1891, p. 363) found that a saturated aqueous solution of cyanide of mercury, warmed to 45° to 50° C., and allowed to act for from fifteen to sixty minutes, and then washed out with 70 per cent. alcohol, was the best of all fixing media for *Acanthocephali.*

He also found the following mixture excellent :

Picric acid	1 gramme.
Conc. sulphuric acid . .	10 grammes.
Chromic acid	1 gramme.
Water	1000 grammes.

To be warmed to 55° C., allowed to act for fifteen to twenty minutes, washed out for five to ten minutes with hot water, and afterwards for some days in 60 per cent. alcohol.

855. Nematodes.—The extremely impermeable cuticle of these animals is a great obstacle to preparation. According to Looss (*Zool. Anz.*, 1885, p. 318) this difficulty may be overcome in the manner described in § 556.

For fixing, most recent authors recommend sublimate solutions ; chromic solutions seem to have a tendency to make the worms brittle.

But, according to Zur Strassen (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, liv, p. 655), *Bradynema rigidum* ought to be fixed for at least twelve hours in mixture of Flemming.

Augstein (*Arch. f. Naturg. Jahrg.*, lx, 1, 1894, p. 255 ; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 2, 1895, p. 227) found that for *Strongylus filaria* the best fixing agent was Mayer's picro-nitric acid.

Vejdovsky (*Zeit. wiss. Zool.*, lvii, 1894, p. 645) advises for *Gordius* 0·5 per cent. chromic acid (twenty-four hours).

Lo Bianco (*loc. cit.*, p. 462) employs for marine forms concentrated sublimate or picro-sulphuric acid.

Cobb (*ante*, p. 4) uses his differentiator for bringing through the various media after fixation.

Staining is frequently difficult, and sometimes alcoholic carmine, § 229, is the only thing that will give fair results.

Braun (see *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1885, p. 897) recommends that small unstained Nematodes be mounted in a mixture of 20 parts gelatin, 100 parts glycerin, 120 parts water, and 2 parts carbolic acid, which is melted at the moment of using. Canada balsam, curiously enough, is said to sometimes make Nematodes opaque.

Demonstration of living Trichinæ (Barnes, *Amer. Mon. Mic. Journ.*, xiv, 1893, p. 104; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1893, p. 406).—A piece of trichinised muscle of the size of a pea should be placed in a bottle in a mixture of 3 gr. of pepsin, 2 dr. of water, and 2 minims of hydrochloric acid. The whole should be kept at body temperature for about three hours with occasional shaking. The flesh and cysts being dissolved, the fluid is poured into a conical glass, and allowed to settle; the trichinæ are drawn off from the bottom with a pipette, got on to a slide with water, and examined on a hot stage.

GRAHAM (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, l, 1897, p. 216) isolates Trichinæ by macerating for one or two days in 2 per cent. acetic acid, staining with aceto-carmine, and teasing.

856. Nemertina.—After considerable experience of this difficult group I have to say that I know of no method of fixation that will certainly give good results. My best results have always been obtained with cold saturated sublimate solution, acidified with acetic acid. I have tried most of the other usual fixing agents, such as the osmic and chromic mixtures, and do not recommend them for this group, for they seem (the chromic mixtures and perchloride of iron in particular) to act as irritants, and provoke such violent muscular contractions that the whole of the tissues are crushed out of shape by them. And, besides, they do not kill as quickly as sublimate.

I have found it a good plan to decapitate the animals (in the larger forms), cut them up quickly into lengths (not too long), and throw these sharply into the sublimate, the muscular contractions being less energetic in segments that are no longer in connection with the cerebral ganglia.

Perhaps a better method than this will be found in the simple process, suggested to me by Prof. DU PLESSIS, of fixing with hot (almost boiling) water. On the few occasions on which I have tried it the animals have died in extension, without vomiting their proboscis; and I think it is certainly worth trial, especially for the larger forms.

I have tried FOETTINGER's chloral hydrate method (§ 18). My specimens died fairly extended, but vomited their proboscides. According to S. LO BIANCO (*loc. cit.*, p. 461) narcotisation with a solution of 0·1 to 0·2 per cent. in sea water for six to twelve hours is useful.

Dendy (see *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1893, p. 116) has succeeded with *Geonemertes* by exposing it for half a minute to the vapour of chloroform.

For staining fixed specimens *in toto* I hold that it is well-nigh necessary to employ alcoholic stains, for even the most delicate species are not satisfactorily penetrated by watery stains in any reasonable lapse of time. Borax-carmine or Mayer's alcoholic carmine may be recommended; not so cochineal or hæmatoxylin stains, on account of the energy with which they are held by the mucin which in general exists in such great abundance in the skin of these animals.

Sections by the paraffin method, after penetration with oil of cedar (chloroform will fail to penetrate sometimes after the lapse of weeks).

Bürger (*Fauna u. Flora Golf. Neapel*, xxii, 1895, p. 443) studies the nervous system, nephridia, skin, muscle, and intestine by the *intra vitam* methylen-blue method. He *injects* the animals with 0·5 per cent. solution in distilled water, or 0·5 per cent. salt water, and allows them to lie for six to twelve hours or more in moist blotting-paper.

He also employs maceration in one third alcohol, or the Hertwigs' medium, § 538.

For his other methods see the paper quoted, or *Grundzüge*, p. 399.

See also Montgomery (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. Morph.*, x, 1897, p. 6; *Grundzüge*, p. 399).

857. Cestodes.—This group must of course be chiefly studied by the usual section methods. As pointed out by Vogt and Yung (*Traité d'Anat. Comp. Prat.*, p. 204), the observation of the living animal may be of service, especially in the study of the excretory system. And, as shown by Pintner, Tæniæ may be preserved alive for several days in common water to which a little white of egg has been added.

Lönnberg (*Centralb. f. Bakteriol. u. Parasitenk.*, xi, 1892, p. 89; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 281) has kept *Triænophorus nodulosus*, a parasite of the pike, alive for a month in a slightly acid pepsin-peptone solution containing from 3 to 4 per cent. of nutritive matter, and less than 1 per cent. of NaCl.

De Filippi (*Att. Accad. Lincei*, vii, 1894, p. 250; *Zeit. f.*

wiss. Mik., xiii, 1897, p. 484) finds that for *Tænia bothrioplitis* the best fixative is saturated aqueous picric acid for about seven hours; sublimate gave bad results.

Tower (*Zool. Anz.*, xix, 1896, p. 323; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1896, p. 571) fixes Cestodes in a picro-platin-osmic mixture (stronger than that of O. vom Rath, § 97) for ten hours, then treats for several hours with crude pyroligneous acid, and lastly with alcohol, and imbeds in paraffin.

Zernecke (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. f. Anat.*, ix, 1895, p. 92; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 4, 1896, p. 494) has employed with success the bichromate of silver impregnation of Golgi. He kills *Ligula* in the osmio-bichromic mixture (4 : 1), impregnates as usual, makes sections in liver, and treats them by the hydroquinon process of Kallius. Besides the peripheral and central nervous system, muscle-fibres, parenchyma cells, and the excretory vascular system are impregnated.

He has also obtained good results by the methylen-blue method.

Blochmann (*Biol. Centralb.*, xv, 1895, p. 14; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xii, 1895, p. 226) recommends for the nervous system the bichromate and sublimate method of Golgi.

See also Köhler, *Zeit. wiss. Zool.*, lvii, 1894, p. 386 (stretches Tæniæ round a glass plate or on cork, and fixes with 5 per cent. sublimate).

858. Trematodes (Fischer, *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, 1884, p. 1).—*Opisthotrema cochleare* may be mounted entire in balsam. For sectioning, Fischer recommends imbedding in a mass made by dissolving 15 parts of soap in 17·5 parts of 96 per cent. alcohol. This mass melts at about 60° C., penetrates very rapidly, and solidifies very quickly. The sections should be studied in glycerin.

Wright and Macallum (*Journ. of Morph.*, i, 1887, p. 1) find that *Sphyranura* is for most purposes best fixed in liquid of Flemming, and stained with alum-cochineal.

Lo Bianco (*loc. cit.*, p. 460) fixes Trematodes with hot saturated sublimate.

Looss (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, 1895, p. 7) takes for *Bilharzia* warm (50° to 60° C.) 1 per cent. sublimate in 70 per cent. alcohol.

Bettendorf (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. Morph.*, x, 1897, p. 308) has had good results with the rapid Golgi method only on *Distoma hepaticum*, and prefers methylen blue.

Cercariæ.—Schwartz (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xliii, 1886, p. 45) found that the only fixing agent that would preserve the histological detail of these forms was cold saturated sublimate solution warmed to 35°—40° C.

859. **Turbellaria.**—For *Rhabdocœla,* Braun (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 1886, p. 398) proceeds as follows:—For preparing entire animals, the specimens are got on to a slide, lightly flattened out with a cover, and killed by running under the cover a mixture of three parts of liquid of Lang with one of 1 per cent. osmic acid solution. Other fixing media than that described were not satisfactory. (Böhmig [*ibid.*], commenting on this, says that for some of the tissues, such as muscle and body parenchyma, nitric acid and picro-sulphuric acid are very useful.) Sections may be made by the paraffin method.

Delage (*Arch. de Zool. exp. et gén.*, iv, 2, 1886; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii. 2, 1886, p. 239; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1886, p. 1073) strongly recommends fixation (of Rhabdocœla Acœla) by an osmium-carmine mixture, for which see *loc. cit.*, or by concentrated solution of sulphate of iron. Liquid of Lang was not successful.

For staining, he recommends either the osmium-carmine stain or impregnation with gold ($\frac{1}{3}$ formic acid, two minutes; 1 per cent. gold chloride, ten minutes; 2 per cent. formic acid, two or three days in the dark. It is well to allow an excessive reduction to take place, and then lighten the stain by means of 1 per cent. solution of cyanide of potassium).

Böhmig (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iii, 1886, p. 239) says that he has obtained very instructive images with Plagiostomidæ fixed with sublimate and stained with the osmium-carmine.

Graff (*Organisation d. Turbellaria Acœla,* Leipzig, 1891; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 1, 1892, p. 76) says that chromo-aceto-osmic acid, followed by hæmatoxylin, is good for the skin, but will not afford a satisfactory preservation of the Rhabdites, which in Acœla and Alloiocœla seem to be destroyed by swelling. The same method is also good for the parenchyma of *Amphichœrus cinereus, Convoluta paradoxa,* and *C. sordida.* Sublimate is good for *Convoluta Roscoffensis.* For some forms it is important to avoid picro-carmine, which destroys the central parenchyma. The nervous system may be investigated by the methods of Delage.

For Dendrocœla sublimate solutions, sometimes hot, appear indicated for fixing. Chichkoff (*Arch. de Biol.*, xii, 1892, p. 438; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1893, p. 262) recommends the following for fresh-water Dendrocœla:—2 per cent. sublimate solution 6 parts; 15 per cent. acetic acid, 4 parts; pure nitric acid, 2 parts; 14 per cent. chloride of sodium, 8 parts; and 2 per cent. alum, 1 part. Note also the mixtures of Lang, § 67. Mayer's tincture of cochineal, § 230, may be found useful for the study of glands, for which purpose the Ehrlich-Biondi stain may also be employed.

Lo Bianco (*loc. cit.*, p. 461) kills Rhabdocœla and Dendrocœla with hot sublimate, throws them at once into cold water, and then brings them into alcohol. For some Polyclads the sublimate must not be more than slightly warm.

Voigt (*Verh. Nat. Ver. Bonn*, 1896, p. 118) kills *Planaria* by pouring off the water it is in and inundating it with a mixture of one part concentrated nitric acid and three parts water, and after one minute brings into alcohol of 70 to 90 per cent.

Klinckowstroem (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, xlviii, 1897, p. 589) fixes *Prostheceræus* in 70 per cent. alcohol with 4 per cent. of acetic acid.

Jaenichen (*Zeit. wiss. Zool.*, lxii, 1896, p. 256) advises for *Planaria*, eyes especially, picro-sulphuric acid for an hour or two; osmic acid is not good, and liquid of Müller macerates. He stains with borax-carmine, makes sections, and puts them for ten minutes into osmic acid, then for five minutes into pyroligneous acid, on the top of the stove. He macerates the visual rods in a mixture of one part common salt, one of acetic acid, and 100 of water. He bleaches the pigment of the eyes with peroxide of hydrogen.

Echinodermata.

860. Holothurioidea.—These animals are difficult to fix on account of their contracting with such violence under the influence of irritating reagents as to expel their viscera through the oral or cloacal aperture.

S. Lo Bianco (*loc. cit.*, p. 459) puts them into pure sea water until they have expanded their tentacles, then seizes them with forceps or the fingers behind the tentacles, so as to mechanically render impossible their withdrawal, and immerses the anterior part of the body in acetic acid, whilst at the same time an assistant injects 90 per cent. alcohol through the anus.

Vogt and Yung (*Anat. Comp. Prat.*, p. 641) say that *Cucumaria Planci* (*C. doliolum*, Marenzeller) is free from the vice of expelling its intestines under irritation; but they recommend that it be killed with fresh water, or by slow intoxication with alcohol, chromic acid, or sublimate added to the sea water in which it is contained.

Synapta may be allowed to die in a mixture of equal parts of sea water and ether or chloroform (S. Lo Bianco).

Holothurids, Dr. Weber informs me, are admirably preserved in formaldehyde; a weak solution is sufficient.

Gerauld (*Bull. Mus. Harvard Coll.*, xxix, 1896, p. 125; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1896, p. 476) paralyses *Caudina* with sulphate of magnesia, § 21, and fixes with liquid of Perényi (or sublimate for the ovaries). He demonstrates cell-limits by rinsing epithelia with distilled water and impregnating with 1 per cent. silver nitrate.

Hérouard (*Arch. Zool. Expér.*, vii, 1899, p. 537) kills *Cucumaria* by plunging into a 1 per cent. solution of chloral hydrate warmed to 40° C., the anus being closed by means of forceps.

For the staining of muscles with methylen blue see Iwanzoff, *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xlix, 1897, p. 103.

861. Asteroidea.—Hamann (*Beitr. z. Hist. d. Echinodermen*, ii, 1885, p. 2) finds it best to *inject* the living animal with a fixing liquid. The cannula should be introduced under the integument at the extremity of a ray, and the liquid injected into the body-cavity. The ambulacral feet and the branchiæ are soon distended by the fluid, and as soon as it seems to have penetrated sufficiently the animal is thrown into a quantity of the same reagent.

In order to study *the eyes*, with the pigment preserved *in situ*, they should be removed by dissection, should be hardened in a mixture of equal parts of 1 per cent. osmic acid and 1 per cent. acetic acid, and sectioned in a glycerin gum mass, or some other mass that does not necessitate treatment with alcohol (which dissolves out the pigment, leaving the pigmented cells perfectly hyaline). For maceration use one third alcohol, the aceto-osmic mixture failing to preserve the rods of the pigmented cells.

Formaldehyde is *not* to be recommended for the preservation of Asteroidea (WEBER).

See also LO BIANCO, *loc. cit.*, p. 458 (he kills *Brisinga* with absolute alcohol); also §§ 15, 18.

862. Ophiuridea should in general be killed in fresh water if it be desired to avoid rupture of the rays (DE CASTELLARNAU, *La Est. Zool. de Napoles*, p. 135).

LO BIANCO (*loc. cit.*, p. 458) kills small forms with weak alcohol, *Ophiopsila* with absolute alcohol, and *Ophiomyxa* with 0·5 per cent. chromic acid.

RUSSO (*Ricerche Lab. Anat. Roma*, iv, 1895, p. 157) fixes *Ophiothrix* for an hour or two in 0·5 per cent. osmic acid and then decalcifies in solution of Müller for six to ten days. Or he fixes for three minutes in a mixture of two parts concentrated sublimate solution, one part 70 per cent. alcohol, and one part acetic acid (sp. gr. 1·06), and decalcifies in Müller or in 70 per cent. alcohol with 10 per cent. of acetic acid. He stains with paracarmine.

863. Echinoidea.—I advise that they be killed by *injection* of some fixing liquid. For preservation, formaldehyde has proved *admirable* in all respects, and greatly superior to alcohol (WEBER).

LO BIANCO (*loc. cit.*, p. 458) kills by pouring over them (mouth upwards) a mixture of ten parts acetic acid and one of 1 per cent. chromic acid, and brings at once into weak alcohol. Or he makes two holes in the shell, lets the water run out and alcohol run in.

Sections of spines may be made by grinding, see § 176.

864. Crinoidea.—LO BIANCO (*loc. cit.*, p. 458) fixes *Antedon rosacea* with 70 per cent. alcohol, *A. phalangium* with 90 per cent.

865. Larvæ of Echinodermata (from instructions written down for me by Dr. BARROIS).—In order to a fruitful study of the metamorphoses of the Echinoidea and Ophiuridea it is necessary to obtain preparations that give distinct images of the different organs, and show the *calcareous skeleton preserved* intact (a point of considerable importance, since this skeleton frequently affords landmarks of the greatest value), and that give clear views of the region of formation of the young Echinoderm (which is generally opaque in the living larva). They should also possess sufficient stiffness to allow of the larva being turned about in any desired way, and placed in any position under the microscope.

Pluteus larvæ should be fixed in a cold saturated solution of corrosive sublimate, in which they remain not more than two or three minutes. They are then washed with water, and brought into dilute Mayer's cochineal (§ 230). This should be so dilute as to possess a barely perceptible tinge of colour. They should remain in it for from twelve to twenty-four hours, being carefully watched the while, and removed from it at the right moment and mounted in balsam, or, which is frequently better, in oil of cloves or cedar-wood.

Auricularia and Bipinnaria.—The method described above is equally applicable to these forms, and seems to be altogether the best method for the study of the metamorphosis of Bipinnaria. The earlier stages of the metamorphosis of Auricularia are better studied by fixing with osmic acid, staining with Beale's carmine, and mounting in glycerin.

Larvæ of Comatula are best fixed with liquid of Lang, and stained with dilute borax-carmine. It is important (for preparations that are not destined to be sectioned) to use only *dilute* borax-carmine, as the strong solution produces an over-stain that cannot easily be reduced.

Narcotisation by chloral hydrate before fixing is useful, especially for the study of *Pentacrinus* larvæ and of the young *Synaptæ* formed from Auricularia. Without this precaution you generally get preparations of larvæ either shut up (*Pentacrinus*), or entirely deformed by contraction (young *Synaptæ*).

See also MacBride on the development of *Amphiura squamata*, *Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, xxxiv, 1892, p. 131; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1893, p. 117 (osmic acid followed by liquid of Müller and alcohol; decalcification with nitric acid in alcohol; staining with Mayer's paracarmine or hæmalum); and Seeliger on the development of *Antedon*, *Zool. Jahrb.*, *Abth. f. Anat.*, vi, 1892, p. 161; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, x, 2, 1893, p. 229.

MacBride (*Quart. Journ. Mic. Sci.*, xxxviii, 1896, p. 340) fixes larvæ of

Asterina in osmic acid, brings into liquid of Müller for twelve to fourteen hours, imbeds in celloidin followed by paraffin (see § 166), and stains sections with carmalum or Delafield's hæmatoxylin, best after a foregoing stain of twenty-four hours in borax carmine.

Cœlenterata.

866. Thread-cells.—Iwanzoff (*Bull. Soc. Nat. Moscou*, x, 1896, p. 97) advises for the Nematocysts of Actiniæ maceration by the Hertwigs' method, § 538, or better, fixation for two to five minutes with vapour of osmium, followed by a short washing with sea water or distilled water.

For Medusæ he also advises the Hertwigs' method, § 538, or treatment with a solution containing methyl green and gentian violet with a little osmic acid.

867. Actinida.—*Narcotisation.*—For suitable narcotisation methods see §§ 13 to 23.

Fixation.—In *Le Attinie, Fauna u. Flora d. Golfes v. Neapel,* Andres says that hot corrosive sublimate often gives good results. In the case of the larger forms the solution should be injected into the gastric cavity, and a further quantity of the liquid be poured over the animals.

Freezing sometimes gives good results. A vessel containing Actiniæ is put into a recipient containing an ice-and-salt freezing mixture and surrounded by cotton-wool. After freezing, the block of ice containing the animals is thawed in alcohol or some other fixing liquid.

See also Lo Bianco, *loc. cit.*, p. 448.

Maceration.—For the Hertwigs' method (*Jen. Zeit.*, 1879, p. 457) see § 538. The tissues should be left to macerate in the acetic acid for at least a day, and may then be teased in glycerin.

List (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, iv, 2, 1887, p. 211) treats tentacles of *Anthea cereus* and *Sagartia parasitica* for ten minutes with a mixture of 100 c.c. of sea water with 30 c.c. of Flemming's strong liquid (§ 47), then washes out for two or three hours in 0·2 per cent. acetic acid, and teases in dilute glycerin. Picro-carmine may be used for staining.

868. Zoantharia with Calcareous Skeletons are difficult to deal with on account of the great contractility of the polyps. Sublimate solution, which ought very often to be taken boiling, sometimes gives good results. De Castellarnau (*La Est. Zool. de Napoles*, p. 132) says that this process succeeds well with *Dendrophyllia, Antipathes, Astroides, Cladocora,* and *Caryophyllia.*

See also Lo Bianco, *loc. cit.*, p. 446.

Sections.—Besides the usual methods for sectioning decalcified specimens, we have the methods of von Koch and Ehrenbaum, §§ 172 and 173, for undecalcified specimens.

869. The Alcyonaria have also extremely contractile polyps. In a former edition I suggested for their fixation either hot sublimate solution or glacial acetic acid (§ 82). S. Lo Bianco has since recommended essentially similar processes. Garbini (*Manuale,* p. 151) says that the polyps may be fixed in the state of extension by drenching them with ether, and then bringing them into strong alcohol.

Wilson (*Mitth. Zool. Stat. Neapel,* 1884, p. 3) kills Alcyonaria with a mixture of one part of strong acetic acid and two parts of concentrated solution of corrosive sublimate, the animals being removed as soon as dead and hardened for two or three hours in concentrated sublimate solution.

870. Zoantharia and Alcyonaria.—Braun (*Zool. Anz.,* 1886, p. 458) proceeds as follows for *Alcyonium palmatum, Sympodium coralloides, Gorgonia verrucosa, Caryophyllia cyathus,* and *Palythoa axinellæ* :—The animals are left for a day or two in a glass vessel, so that the polyps may become thoroughly extended. They are then suddenly drenched with a mixture of 20 to 25 c.c. of concentrated solution of sublimate in sea water with four to five drops of 1 per cent. osmic acid. This is allowed to act for five minutes, and is followed by successive alcohols.

(This method also gives good results with *Hydra* and some Bryozoa and Rotifers.)

See also § 12.

871. Hydroidea, Polypoid Forms.—For suitable *narcotisation* methods see §§ 13 *et seq.*

For killing by *heat* see § 11.

Fixation.—In general the polyps may be very well killed in saturated sublimate solution, in which they should be plunged for an instant merely, and be brought into alcohol. The solution should be employed cold in general for Gymnoblastea, hot for most Calyptoblastea.

Ether attentively administered gives good results with Campanularidæ. *Hydra* is very easily killed by treatment with a drop of osmic acid on a slide. The methods for sections are the usual ones.

The *methylen-blue* method of *intra vitam* staining is applicable to this group, see ZOJA, *ante*, p. 230.

872. Medusæ : Fixation.—For narcotisation see § 13. There is some difficulty in properly fixing the forms with contractile tentacles, which easily roll up on contact with reagents. The best results I have had with these forms have been obtained by means of VAN BENEDEN's acetic acid method, § 82. The secret of success lies in a trick of manipulation, due to LO BIANCO. Put sufficient acetic acid into a deepish dish, hold it in your left hand (or, better, in both hands if you have an assistant), and keep it moving in a circle so as to communicate a vortex motion to the liquid. Take up a medusa in a spoon with as little sea water as possible, and throw it into the moving liquid, and keep the liquid steadily swirling round so as to cause the tentacles to trail out at full length behind the animal until it is thoroughly fixed, then pass carefully into alcohol. Do not, unless you are very expert, try to fix more than one medusa at a time ; it is also better to keep the specimens separate, even in the alcohol, as, if several are together, it generally happens that their tentacles become entangled. *Oceania conica* and *Tiara* may usefully, according to LO BIANCO, be narcotised with 3 per cent. alcohol in sea water before fixation. Liquid of Kleinenberg, which I have seen much used for the fixation of these and similar forms, is, in my opinion, a very objectionable reagent for the purpose.

Trachymedusæ and Acalephæ may be fixed in the usual way in chromic or osmic mixtures. Osmic acid may conveniently in some cases be added to the sea water containing the animals, which should be removed to fresh water as soon as they begin to turn brown. *Cassiopeia borbonica*, according to LO BIANCO, ought to be treated with osmic acid as described, and then put for two or three days into 5 per cent. solution of bichromate of potash. I have tried this process with good results.

See further LO BIANCO, *loc. cit.*, p. 452.

873. Medusæ: Sections.—I am not acquainted with any perfectly satisfactory method of sectioning these extremely watery organisms. Paraffin and collodion will afford good sections of some organs, but are certainly not satisfactory as all-round methods for this group. Some modification of the method employed by the HERTWIGS (*Nervensystem der Medusen*, 1878, p. 5) might be successful. They imbedded in liver with the aid of glycerin gum, and hardened the objects and the mass in alcohol. Perhaps better results might be obtained by one of the freezing methods given in §§ 177 to 180.

874. Medusæ: Maceration.—The methods of the HERTWIGS, § 538, have deservedly become classical for the study of the tissues of this group, especially for the study of the nervous system; for ganglion cells and nerve-fibrils reduce osmic acid quicker than common epithelium cells. Doubtless in many cases the pyrogallic acid reaction, § 361, would give enhanced differentiation.

The isolation of the elements of the macerated tissues is best done by gently tapping the cover-glass (which may be supported on wax feet). This gives far better results than teasing with needles. A camel-hair pencil also sometimes renders good service.

875. Siphonophora.—This group contains some of the most difficult forms to preserve that are to be found in the whole range of the animal kingdom. You have not only to deal with the very great contractility of the zooids, but with the tendency to general disarticulation of the swimming-bells and prehensile polyps.

The cupric sulphate method of BEDOT (*Arch. d. Sci. phys. et nat.*, Juin, 1889, t. xxi, p. 556), recommended for the preparation of Siphonophora and other delicate pelagic animals, is as follows:—A large quantity of 15 to 20 per cent. solution of the salt is suddenly added to the sea water containing the animals. As soon as they are fixed (which happens in a few minutes) a few drops of nitric acid are to be added and mixed in (this is in order to prevent the formation of precipitates), and the whole is left for four to five hours. The specimens are then to be hardened *before* bringing them into alcohol.

Bedot recommends that this be done with strong solution of Flemming, which should be *added* to the solution of sulphate containing the Siphonophore, about two volumes of it being taken for one of the sulphate solution. The whole should be left for at least twenty-four hours. Lastly, a few drops of 25 per cent. alcohol should be added to the fluid with a pipette, being dropped in as far as possible from the colony, which should be disturbed as little as possible; and further alcohol, of gradually increasing strength, should be added so gradually that the strength of 70 per cent. be not attained under fifteen days at least. Ninety per cent. alcohol should be used for definite preservation.

I have tested this method. I do not find that the histological preservation is superior to that obtained by means of the usual processes; but the method is certainly a valuable one in so far as *it enables one to preserve specimens with all their swimming-bells and polyps in situ,* a result which is not obtained by means of the usual methods.

Friedlaender (*Biol. Centralbl.*, x, 1890, p. 483; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1890, p. 804) preserves this class of objects by inundating them with a mixture of 125 parts cupric sulphate, 125 parts zinc sulphate, and 1000 parts water.

Lo Bianco (*loc. cit.*, p. 454) employs for the majority of Siphonophora a mixture of 10 c.c. of saturated solution of corrosive sublimate with 100 c.c. of 10 per cent. solution of copper sulphate. This is used as in Bedot's process. *Diphyes, Rhizophysa,* and *Physalia,* however, are killed with sublimate solutions; *Velella* with chromo-picric acid, or a mixture of 100 c.c. of sublimate solution with 50 c.c. of 1 per cent. chromic acid; *Porpita* by poisoning with liquid of Kleinenberg.

Korotneff's method of paralysing with chloroform has been given in § 15. I have seen *Physophora* very successfully killed by the careful administration of ether.

Preservation, after fixation and washing, is greatly simplified by the use of formaldehyde instead of alcohol (Weber).

Davidoff (*Anat. Anz.*, xi, 1896, p. 505) fixes in formol. He gets the animals, in sea water, into a large cylindrical tube (test-tube), plugs its open end with cotton wool, and stands it up, somewhat sloping, open end downwards, in a vessel half full of 6 to 8 per cent. formol. The formol, being lighter than sea water, diffuses up into the tube in about an hour, and kills the animals in extension and with little loss of the swimming-bells; after which they may either be preserved in the formol itself, or be further hardened with other reagents.

876. Ctenophora: Fixation.—The small forms are very easily prepared by means of osmic acid. For the large forms see Lo Bianco, *loc. cit.*, p. 457.

Samassa has succeeded in making sections of Ctenophora by means of the double-imbedding method, § 166 (see *Arch. f. mik. Anat.*, xl, 1892, p. 157; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1893, p. 340).

Porifera.

877. Spongiæ: Fixation.—The smaller forms can be fairly well fixed by the usual reagents, osmic acid being one of the best. For the larger forms no satisfactory fixing agent has yet been discovered, so far as I can ascertain. The tissues of this group are very watery, very delicate, very friable after hardening, and macerate with the greatest facility. For all but very small specimens, absolute alcohol is apparently the best fixing agent. If any watery fluid be preferred, care should at all events be taken to get the sponges into strong alcohol as soon as possible after fixation, on account of the rapidity with which maceration sets in in watery fluids. Fiedler (*Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, xlvii, 1888, p. 87) has been using (for *Spongilla*), besides absolute alcohol, an alcoholic sublimate solution and the liquids of Kleinenberg and Flemming with good effect.

Staining.—On account of the great tendency to maceration, I hold that alcoholic stains should be alone employed for staining sponges, and I particularly recommend Mayer's tincture of cochineal, § 230. Von Lendenfeld (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xi, 1, 1894, p. 22) uses aqueous solutions of Congo red and anilin blue for the coloration of collar-cells.

Sectioning.—Calcareous sponges may be decalcified in alcohol slightly acidified with hydrochloric acid, and then imbedded in the usual way. Siliceous sponges may be desilicified by Mayer's hydrofluoric acid method (see § 574).

For Rousseau's methods see §§ 558, 574. Vosmaer and Pekelharing decalcify with a solution of picric acid in absolute alcohol (see *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xv, 1899, p. 462).

See also Johnstone-Lavis and Vosmaer, § 174.

Preparation of Hard Parts.—Siliceous spicules are easily cleaned for mounting by treating them on a slide with hot concentrated nitric or hydrochloric acid, or solution of potash or soda. The acids mentioned are very efficient, but it must be pointed out that they will attack the silex of some delicate spicules. Thus Dezsö found that the small stellate spicules of the cortex of *Tethya lyncurium* are completely dissolved by boiling hydrochloric acid. Potash solution is, therefore, frequently to be preferred, notwithstanding that, in my experience, it does not give such clean preparations.

According to Noll, *eau de Javelle* is preferable to any of these reagents (see § 555).

Impregnation with Silver (see § 343).

Embryos and Larvæ.—Maas (*Zool. Jahrb., Abth. Morph.*, vii, 1894, p. 334) fixes larvæ in liquid of Flemming or Hermann, one to three minutes, and stains with borax-carmine, or with gentian violet and Orange G (Flemming).

Delage (*Arch. Zool. Expér.*, x, 1892, p. 421) fixes larvæ of *Spongilla* that have settled down on cover-glasses for three minutes in absolute alcohol, stains in alcoholic carmine, § 229, and brings through alcohol into oil of bergamot, then either mounts direct in balsam, or detaches the larvæ from the cover and imbeds in paraffin (three minutes).

Protozoa.

878. Introductory.—Since the Protozoa may be considered as free cells, it is evident that the reagents and methods of cytology are in great part applicable to this group. One of the most generally useful of these reagents will be found in the acid solution of *methyl green*; it is the reagent that allows of the readiest and best demonstration of the presence and form of the nucleus and nucleolus (BALBIANI et HENNEGUY, *Compt. rend. Soc. de Biol.*, 1881, p. 131).

Amongst useful reagents not mentioned in the following descriptions of the methods employed by different authors, I call attention to the weak solutions of alum, potash, and borax, which serve to demonstrate the striations of the cuticle, and the insertions of the cilia of Infusoria.

See also MAGGI, *Technica protistologica*, Milano, 1895.

879. Methods for quieting Infusoria.—The narcotisation methods, §§ 18 to 22, are available for this purpose.

According to SCHÜRMAYER (*Jen. Zeit.*, xxiv, 1890, pp. 402—470; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 4, 1891, p. 493) nitrate of strychnin in weak solution, 0·01 per cent. or less, gives good results with some forms, amongst which are *Stentor* and *Carchesium*. Antipyrin in concentrated solution (0·1 per cent.), or cocaine of 0·01 per cent., seems only to have given good results as regards the extension of the stalk in stalked forms.

EISMOND (*Zool. Anz.*, xiii, 1890, p. 723) has proposed a mechanical means of slowing the movements of small organisms (small worms and Crustacea as well as Ciliata). He directs that a drop of thick aqueous solution of cherry-tree gum be added to the water containing the organisms (gum arabic and the like, it is stated, will not do). The objects remain fixed in their places, with cilia actively moving, and all vital processes retaining their full activity.

CERTES (*Bull. Soc. Zool. France*, xvi, 1891, p. 93; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 828) has found that the method gives excellent results. He has also found that an *intra vitam* stain may be obtained by adding methyl blue or "violet dahlia, No. 170," to the gum solution.

A similar process has been worked out by JENSEN (after STAHL; see *Biol. Centralbl.*, xii, 1892, 18, 19, p. 556; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 483; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1892, p. 891). A solution of 3 grammes of gelatin in 100 c.c. of ordinary water is made by the aid of heat. This makes a jelly at the normal temperature. It is slightly warmed, and a drop of it is mixed in a watch glass with a drop of water containing the organisms. This plan is said to afford great facilities for the vivisection of Infusoria.

880. Staining *intra vitam*.—The possibility of staining Infusoria *intra vitam* was discovered independently by Brandt (*Verh. d. physiol. Ges. Berlin*, 1878), by Certes (*Bull. Soc. Zool.*, 25 janv., 1881), and by Henneguy (*Soc. Philom.*, 12 fév., 1881). See on this subject § 201.

Brandt recommends a 1 : 3000 solution of Bismarck brown; also (*Biol. Centralbl.*, i, 1881, p. 202) "a dilute solution of hæmatoxylin."

Certes (*op. cit.*, pp. 21, 226, 264, and *Zool. Anz.*, iv, 1881, pp. 208, 287) found that living Infusoria stain in weak solutions of cyanin, Bismarck brown, dahlia, violet 5 B, chrysoidin, nigrosin, methylen blue, malachite green, iodine green, and other tar colours, and hæmatoxylin. The solutions should be made with the liquid that constitutes the natural habitat of the organisms. They should be very weak, that is of strengths varying between 1 : 10,000 and 1 : 100,000. For cyanin, 1 : 500,000 is strong enough.

As to the staining of the *Nucleus*, see Przesmycki, *Biol. Centralbl.*, vii, 1897, p. 321; and as to that of the *Granula*, the same author, *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 478.

Examination in a coloured medium in which the organisms do not stain, but show up on a coloured background in a manner that produces somewhat the effect of dark-ground illumination, is sometimes helpful. Certes (*Bull. Soc. Zool. de France*, xiii, 1888, p. 230) recommends solution of anilin black for this purpose; Infusoria will live in it for weeks. Fabre-Domergue (*Ann. de Microgr.*, ii, 1889, p. 545; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 832) recommends concentrated solution of diphenylamin blue.

881. Fixing and Preserving.—For killing by *heat* see § 11, p. 12.

Pfitzner (*Morph. Jahrb.*, xi, 1885, p. 454) used concentrated solution of picric acid *run in under the cover.*

Blanc (*Zool. Anz.*, vi, 1882, p. 22) advises liquid of Kleinenberg diluted with about a volume of water, and acidified with acetic acid.

Geza Entz (*ibid.*, iv, 1881, p. 575) adds it to the water containing the organisms *in a watch-glass.*

Korschelt (*ibid.*, v, 1882, p. 217) employs in the same way 1 per cent. osmic acid, or, for Amœbæ, 2 per cent. chromic acid.

Lansberg (*ibid.*, p. 336) advises the same reagents, but recommends *bringing the organisms into the fixing liquid with a pipette.*

For fixation with iodine (Kent) or iodine vapour (Overton) see § 88.

For sulphurous acid, § 65.

Cattaneo (*Bollettino Scientifico*, iii and iv; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1885, p. 538) recommends fixing for a few minutes with $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. solution of chloride of palladium, which hardens in a few minutes without blackening.

Brass (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, i, 1884, p. 39) employs the following liquid:

Chromic acid	1 part.
Platinum chloride . . .	1 ,,
Acetic acid	1 ,,
Water . . .	400 to 1000 parts.

Certes (*Comptes rend.*, lxxxviii, 1879, p. 433) fixes with 2 per cent. (*sic*) osmic acid, or its vapours (10 to 30 minutes). For details see *previous editions.*

Du Plessis (Vogt et Yung, *Traité Anat. Comp. Prat.*, p. 92) recommends fixation with 0·2 per cent. solution of corrosive sublimate. Let the preparation *dry up*, and if the organisms have preserved their shape, stain and mount in balsam. This seemingly barbarous mode of procedure is said to give very fine preparations when successful.

Fol (*Lehrb.*, p. 102) fixes delicate marine Infusoria (*Tintinnodea*) with the perchloride of iron solution (§ 80), added to the water containing them, and stains with gallic acid as directed, § 362, and states that this is the only method that has given him good results, especially as regards the preservation of cilia.

Lo Bianco (*loc. cit.*, p. 444) fixes Gregarinæ with picro-sulphuric acid (one hour), Vorticellæ with hot sublimate, Acinetæ with sublimate in sea water, or with osmic acid, Thalassicola with 0·5 per cent. chromic acid (one hour), Acanthometræ and Aulacanthæ with 50 per cent. alcohol or with concentrated sublimate, or by adding a little osmic acid to the water. For Sphærozoa he proceeds as Brandt, below.

Zograf fixes Rhizopoda and Infusoria as Rotatoria, § 853, but without narcotisation.

Brandt (*Fauna u. Flora Golf. Neapel*, xiii, 1885, p. 7; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1888, p. 665) fixes *Sphærozoa*, according to the species, either with chromic acid of 0·5 per cent. to 1 per cent. (half an hour to an hour), or with a mixture of equal volumes of sea water and 70 per cent. alcohol with a little tincture of iodine for a quarter to half an hour, or with a 5 to 15 per cent. solution of sublimate in sea water.

Sporozoa.—Wasielewski (*Sporozoenkunde*, Jena, 1896, p. 153) lays great stress on the study of the living organisms, either in their natural medium, or in normal salt solution, or in a medium composed of 20 parts white of egg, 200 of water, and 1 of common salt. He fixes Gregarinæ and Coccidia with osmic acid, sublimate, or picro-sulphuric acid, and Myxosporidia with liquid of Flemming. He stains Gregarinæ with safranin, picro-carmine, etc., besides employing gold chloride, silver nitrate, acetic acid, ammonia, etc., and Myxosporidia with safranin or gentian and eosin.

See also the methods of Fabre-Domergue, *Ann. de Microgr.*, ii, 1889, p. 545, and 1890, p. 50; Schewiakoff, *Biblioth. Zool.*, v, 1889, p. 5; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, pp. 832, 833; Zoja, *Boll. Sci. Pavia*, 1892; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 485; Longhi, *Bull. Mus. Zool. Univ. Genova*, 4, 1892; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 4, 1893, p. 483; Lauterborn, *Zeit. wiss. Zool.*, lix, 1895, p. 170; Schaudinn, *ibid.*, p. 193; Balbiani, *Zool. Anz.*, xiii, 1890, p. 133; Karawaiew, *ibid.*, xviii, 1895, p. 286.

882. Sections.—Sections of the larger Protozoa, and amongst them of the larger forms of Infusoria (*Stentor*, *Bursaria*, *Nyctotherus*), may be obtained without much difficulty. The organisms should be strongly fixed, then dehydrated and cleared, and brought into melted paraffin in a small watch glass. After a few minutes therein they are brought on a cataract needle on to a small block of paraffin, and arranged there with a heated needle (p. 93) and sectioned. They may be stained after fixation, or the sections may be stained on the slide, § 182 or 183.

Lauterborn (*loc. cit.* last §) brings the objects through chloroform into paraffin in a small glass tube, and after cooling breaks the tube and so obtains a cylinder of paraffin with the objects ready for cutting,

Hoyer (*Arch. mik. Anat.*, liv, 1899, p. 95) performs all the operations in a glass cylinder (5 cm. long and 7 mm. wide) open at both ends, but having a piece of moist parchment paper tied over one of the openings. It is then not necessary to break the cylinder; by removing the parchment paper the paraffin can be pushed out of it in the shape of a cylinder containing the objects imbedded at one end of it.

See also the watch glass method, p. 94, and the papers there quoted; also PRZESMYCKI, *loc. cit.*, § 880.

883. Demonstration of Cilia (WADDINGTON, *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1883, p. 185).—A drop of solution of tannin, or a trace of alcoholic solution of sulphurous acid, added to the water containing the living organisms.

884. Stains for Flagella.—The method of LÖFFLER has run through several forms (*Centralbl. f. Bacteriol.*, vi, 1889, p. 209; vii, 1890, p. 625; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vi, 3, 1889, p. 359; vii, 3, 1890, p. 368; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1889, p. 711; 1890, p. 678), of which that given here is the latest. To 10 c.c. of a 20 per cent. solution of tannin are added 5 c.c. of cold saturated solution of ferrous sulphate and 1 c.c. of (either aqueous or alcoholic) solution of fuchsin, methyl violet, or "Wollschwarz." (The mixture will require for some forms the addition of a few drops of 1 per cent. solution of caustic soda; *e.g.* for typhoid bacilli, 1 c.c.; for *Bacillus subtilis*, 28 to 30 drops; for bacilli of malignant œdema, 36 to 37 drops. Some other forms will require besides the addition of a trace of sulphuric acid to the soda solution,—so for cholera bacteria, half a drop to 1 drop; for *Spirillum rubrum*, 9 drops).

Cover-glass preparations are made and fixed in a flame in the usual way, special care being taken not to over-heat. Whilst still warm, the preparation is treated with mordant (*i.e.* the above-described mixture), and is heated for half a minute, until the liquid begins to vaporise, after which it is washed in distilled water and then in alcohol. It is then treated in a similar manner with the stain, which consists of a saturated solution of fuchsin in anilin water, the solution being preferably neutralised to the point of precipitation by cautious addition of 0·1 per cent. soda solution.

BUNGE (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1894, p. 640; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 96) makes the mordant by mixing three parts of the tannin solution with 1 of *Liquor Ferri Sesquichlorati* diluted twentyfold with water, and lets the mixture ripen for some days exposed to the air, or (*Journ.*, 1895, pp. 129, 248) adds to it a few drops of hydrogen peroxide, until it becomes red-brown, when it is shaken up and filtered on to the cover-glass and allowed to act for a minute. The cover-glass is then mopped up and dried, and stained with carbol-gentian.

VAN ERMENGEM (*Journ.* 1894, p. 405) fixes for a few minutes with a mixture of 1 part 2 per cent. osmic acid, and 2 parts 10 to 25 per cent. solution of tannin, washes, treats with 0·25 to 0·5 per cent. solution of nitrate of silver, then for a few seconds with a mixture of 5 parts gallic acid, 3 of tannin, 10 of acetate of soda, and 330 of water, then puts back again into the silver for a short time, then washes and mounts.

See also the modifications of this method by STEPHENS, *ibid.*, 1898, p. 685, and Gordon, *ibid.*, 1899, p. 235, and the methods of TRENKMANN (*Centralbl.*, vi, 1889, p. 433; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, vii, 1, 1890, p. 79); BROWN (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1893, p. 268); JULIEN (*ibid.*, 1894, p. 403); SCLAVO (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiii, 1896, p. 96); HESSERT (*ibid.*, p. 96); MUIR (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1899, p. 235); MCCRORIE (*ibid.*, 1897, p. 251; he stains for two minutes in a mixture of equal parts of concentrated solution of night-blue, 10 per cent. solution of alum, and 10 per cent. solution of tannic acid); ZETTNOW (*ibid.*, 1899, pp. 662, 664); MORTON (*ibid.*, 1900, p. 131); WELCKE (*ibid.*, p. 132).

APPENDIX.

885. The Usual Alcohols.—The following, or a similarly spaced series of alcohols, should be kept on the table.

Absolute Alcohol.—See § 101. The so-called "absolute alcohol" of commerce is generally of about 98 per cent. strength. This grade is convenient, but *not necessary* for ordinary work. *Water* in alcohol may be detected (YVON, *Comptes Rend.*, cxxv, 1897, p. 1181) by adding a little coarsely powdered carbide of calcium; the merest trace of water causes a disengagement of acetylene gas, and on agitation the alcohol becomes turbid with calcium hydrate.

95 *per cent. Alcohol.*—This is the average strength of the common strong commercial alcohol, which ranges in general from 94 per cent. to 96 per cent. according to temperature. The strength of this, or of the following, should be determined by means of an areometer (Gay Lussac's being very convenient), so as to form a starting-point for the following mixtures, which may be made by means of the table, next §. This is the *usual grade for dehydrating* before clearing. It is the highest grade that should be used for dehydrating celloidin sections.

90 *per cent. Alcohol.*—May be made by taking 100 vols. 95 per cent. alcohol and 5·5 vols. water. Oil of bergamot will clear from this grade. This is the usual strength of the strongest commercial *methylated spirit*, which, *if free from mineral naphtha,* is used by some persons instead of pure alcohol. A writer in the *Athenæum,* June 4th, 1898, p. 728, says, "We believe that all ordinary methylated spirit

dealt with by retailers now contains, by law, at least $\frac{3}{8}$ per cent. of petroleum, and that methylated spirit free from it can only be obtained by taking special measures." If this be so, I should say it ought not to be used at all. If naphtha be present in alcohol it will become turbid on addition of water.

85 *per cent. Alcohol.—Rectified spirit,* B. P., is a little weaker than this, viz. 84·5 per cent.

70 *per cent. Alcohol.*—Only exceptionally powerful clearers, such as anilin oil, will clear from this grade: see § 121. This is the proper grade for the *temporary preservation* of tissues intended for histological study (but see the remarks on preservation on page 5); higher grades are best not taken unless it is desired to harden. *This is the proper grade for washing out borax-carmine stains, sublimate after fixing,* etc.

50 *per cent. Alcohol.*—This is the strength of *proof spirit.*

"*One-third Alcohol.*"—See § 100.

886. Table for diluting Alcohol (after GAY-LUSSAC).—To use this table, find in the upper horizontal row of figures the percentage of the alcohol that it is desired to dilute, and in the vertical row to the left the percentage of the alcohol it is desired to arrive at. Then follow out the vertical and horizontal rows headed respectively by these figures, and the figure printed at the point of intersection of the two rows will show how many volumes of water must be taken to reduce *one hundred volumes* of the original alcohol to the required grade. Thus, if it be required to manufacture some 70 per cent. alcohol, starting with 90 per cent., we find the figure 90 in the upper column, the figure 70 in the vertical column, and at the point of intersection we read 31·05, showing that a fraction more than 31 volumes of water must be added to 100 volumes of 90 per cent. alcohol. Or similarly, if we wish as before to make 70 per cent. alcohol, but start with an alcohol of 85 per cent., we find that 23·14 volumes of water must be employed.

Weaker grade required.	Original Grade.								
	90 p. 100.	85 p. 100.	80 p. 100.	75 p. 100.	70 p. 100.	65 p. 100.	60 p. 100.	55 p. 100.	50 p. 100.
p. 100. 85	6·56								
80	13·79	6·83							
75	21·89	14·48	7·20						
70	31·05	23·14	15·35	7·64					
65	41·53	33·03	24·66	16·37	8·15				
60	53·65	44·48	35·44	26·47	17·58	8·76			
55	67·87	57·90	48·07	38·32	28·63	19·02	9·47		
50	84·71	73·90	63·04	52·43	41·73	31·25	20·47	10·35	
45	105·34	93·30	81·38	69·54	57·78	46·09	34·46	22·90	11·41
40	130·80	117·34	104·01	90·76	77·58	64·48	51·43	38·46	25·55
35	163·28	148·01	132·88	117·82	102·84	87·93	73·08	58·31	43·59
30	206·22	188·57	171·05	153·61	136·04	118·94	101·71	84·54	67·45

887. Chemicals, Stains, and Apparatus.—Addresses from which it is recommended that these be obtained are given in § 204.

888. Cleaning Slides and Covers.—*New* ones may be soaked at once in one of the following solutions, washed with water and alcohol, and dried with a cloth.

For *used* ones, if a balsam mount, warm, push the cover into a vessel with xylol or the like, and put the slide into another vessel with the same, leave for a few days, and then put into strong alcohol.

See also p. 142.

HENEAGE GIBBES, *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, iii, 1880, p. 392.—Place the cover-glasses in strong sulphuric acid for an hour or two, wash well until the drainings give no acid reaction; wash first with methylated spirit, and then with absolute alcohol, and wipe carefully with an old silk handkerchief.

SEILER, *ibid.*, p. 508.—*New* slides and covers are placed for a few hours in the following solution:

Bichromate of potash . . .	3 ounces.
Sulphuric acid	3 fluid ounces.
Water	25 ,,

Wash with water. The slides may be simply drained dry; the covers may be wiped dry with a linen rag.

Slides and covers that have been used for mounting either with balsam or a water medium are treated as follows :—The covers are pushed into a mixture of equal parts of alcohol and hydrochloric acid, and after a few days are put into the bichromate solution and treated like new ones. The slides are scraped free of the mounting medium with a knife and put directly into the bichromate solution.

Fol (*Lehrb.*, p. 132) recommends either a solution containing 3 parts of bichromate, 3 of sulphuric acid, and 40 of water; or simply dilute nitric acid.

Garbini (*Manuale*, p. 31) puts slides for a day into 10 per cent. sulphuric acid, then washes, first with water and then with alcohol.

Behrens (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, 1885, p. 55) treats slides first with concentrated nitric acid, then with water, alcohol, and ether.

James (*Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1886, p. 548) treats used slides with a mixture of equal parts of benzin, spirit of turpentine, and alcohol.

Knauer (*Centralbl. f. Bakt.*, x, 1891, p. 8; *Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, ix, 2, 1892, p. 187; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1891, p. 833) recommends boiling for twenty or thirty minutes in 10 per cent. lysol solution, then rinsing with cold tap water till clear.

Nias (*Journ.*, *pag. cit.*) finds it is sufficient to boil with washing soda, and rinse.

Zielina (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xiv, 1897, p. 368) puts used slides for some days into water, and scrapes off the balsam with a piece of wood. He treats new slides or covers for a few minutes with glacial acetic acid, washes, and dries with a cloth.

889. Re-staining Old Mounts (Henneguy, from the last edition of the *Traité des Méthodes techniques de l'Anat. microscopique*, Lee et Henneguy).—It is probably not generally known that balsam mounts the stain of which has faded, or which it may be desired to submit to some other staining process or mount in some other medium, may often with great advantage be re-stained and re-mounted. All that is necessary is to put the slide into a tube of xylol or benzol till the cover falls off (about two days), wash well for some hours in clean xylol, and pass through alcohol into the new stain. Since this was pointed out to me by Dr. Henneguy I have unmounted and re-stained a considerable number of old preparations, some of them over fifteen years old, and have been most agreeably surprised at the results obtained. I have succeeded in every case with series of sections mounted on Mayer's albumen, or by the water method. For shellac mounted series E. Meyer (*Biol. Centralb.*, x, 1890, p. 509) removes the covers and the balsam with chloroform, pours quickly a 2 per cent. solution of photoxylin or celloidin over the slide, and after a few seconds brings it first into 70 per cent. alcohol, then into 90 per cent., which dissolves the shellac, then removes the membrane of collodion with the sections under 70 per cent. alcohol, and stains.

890. Gum for Labels.—Labels stuck on glass often strip off. This may be avoided (Marpmann, *Zeit. f. Angew. Mik.*, ii, 1896, p. 151; *Journ. Roy. Mic. Soc.*, 1897, p. 84) by means of the following adhesives: 120 grammes of gum arabic are dissolved in a quarter of a litre of water, and 30 grammes of gum tragacanth in a similar quantity. After a few hours the tragacanth solution is shaken until it froths, and mixed with the gum arabic solution. Strain through linen and add 150 grammes of glycerin previously mixed with 2½ grammes of oil of thyme.

For other receipts see *previous editions*.

891. Orientation (Addendum to §§ 133, 134, 588).—For further details as to the Born-Peter method of establishing definition lines on paraffin blocks, see *Verh. d. Anat. Ges.*, xiii *Vers.*, 1899 (Jena, Fischer), p. 134.

892. Knife-heating Apparatus (Addendum to § 135, p. 110).—An apparatus for warming or cooling both the knife and the paraffin whilst cutting is described by Held in *Arch. Anat. Phys., Anat. Abth.*, 1897, p. 345.

893. Iron Hæmatoxylin (Addendum to § 255, p. 191).—HELD (*op. cit., Suppl.*, p. 158) finds it an improvement to add to the staining bath a very little of the iron-alum solution until a scarcely perceptible precipitate is produced.

894. Neuro-fibrils (Addendum to § 707).—BETHE (*Zeit. f. wiss. Mik.*, xvii, 1, 1900, pp. 13—35) has now minutely described the method mentioned on p. 395. Pieces of central nervous system are fixed for twenty-four hours in nitric acid of from 3 per cent. to 7·5 per cent. strength, and brought direct into alcohol of 96 per cent. for a day or more. They are put for twelve to twenty-four hours into a mixture of one part of ammonia (of sp. gr. 0·95) with three of water and eight of 96 per cent. alcohol, then for six to twelve hours into a mixture of one part concentrated nitric acid with three of water and eight to twelve of alcohol, then for ten to twelve into pure alcohol, and thence for not more than two to six hours into water. They are now mordanted for twenty-four hours in a 4 per cent. solution of ammonium molybdate, brought for twenty-four hours into alcohol, and imbedded in paraffin (*not* celloidin). Sections are seriated on albumen and "differentiated"—by which the author means washed out—with water. About 1 to 1·5 c.c. of distilled water should be poured on to the slide so as to form over the sections a layer 1·5 to 2 mm. deep, and the slide is put for two to ten minutes into a stove heated to not more than 55° to 60° C. The sections are then rinsed several times with water, a solution of one part of toluidin blue in 3000 of water is poured on to them, they are again stoved for ten minutes, rinsed with water, treated with 96 per cent. alcohol till no more colour comes away (three quarters to two minutes), and passed through absolute alcohol and xylol into xylol balsam.

For the very elaborate minutiæ described by the author the reader must consult the original.

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

A.

Abbe, mounting medium, 281.
Absolute alcohol, 71, 72, 81.
Acanthocephali, 474.
Acetate of copper, 65.
Acetate of lead, 382.
Acetate of potash, for bluing hæmatein stains, 181.
Acetate of potash, for mounting, 271.
Acetate of potash, refractive index, 81.
Acetate of uranium, 36, 65.
Acetic acid, action in fixing mixtures, 23—25, 49, 51, 62, 63; fixing with, 62; **Lo Bianco's** "concentrated," 62; due proportions in mixtures, 63; various mixtures, 63 *et seq.*
Acetic acid carmine, 169.
Acetic alcohol, 63, 382; ditto with sublimate, 64.
Acetic bichromate, 50.
Aceto-carmine, 169.
Acetone, for celloidin imbedding, 123
Acetone, for dehydration, 5.
Acetone, sublimate solution, 57.
Acid alcohol, 72, 73.
Acid differentiation, 198, 203.
"Acid" dyes, 193.
Acid extraction, 198, 203.
Acid, free, test for, *see* Congo red, 219, 220.
Acid fuchsin, 215.
Acid hæmalum, 183.
Acid magenta, 215.
Acid rubin, 215.
Acidophilous mixture, 223.
Acids, *see* Acetic, Chromic, Hydrochloric, Nitric, Osmic, etc.
Acids, Congo red as a test for, 219, 220.
Actinida, 484.
Adamkiewics, myelin stain, 408.
Adenoid tissue, 437.
Adipose tissue, 437.
Adjective staining, 159.
After-gilding, 251, 256.
Agababow, elastic tissue, 441.
Agassiz and **Whitman**, pelagic ova, 346.
Albumen, examination media, 271, 272.
Albumen, freezing method, 139.
Albumen, injection mass, 307.
Albumen, section-fixing process, 143—145, 147.
Alcohol, for dehydration, 4; for preservation, 5, 272; for narcotisation, 14; for fixing, 69—72; for hardening, 70; for maceration, 313; removal of, 6; absolute, 71; methylated, 497; acetic, 63, 64; one-third, 71; hydrochloric acid, 72; tests for purity, 70, 72; table for diluting, 498; the usual grades, 497.
Alcoholic carmines, 172—176.
Alcoholic cochineal, 174—176.
Alcyonaria, 485.
Aldehyde, 421.
Alexander, reconstruction, 332.
Alferow, silver impregnation, 246.
Alfieri, bleaching, 328.
Alizarin, artificial, 227.
Allen, methylen blue, 233.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Alt, axis-cylinder stain, 411.

Altmann, osmicated fat, 36; osmic and bichromic mixture, 44; nitric acid, 46; paraffin stove, 101; corrosion, 322; fixatives for nuclei, 363.

Alum, ammonia, solubility, 184.

Alum, for fixing, 53.

Alum-carmine, 168, 169; ditto with picric acid, 169.

Alum-hæmatoxylin stains, 180—187; general characters, 180; bluing them, 180.

Amber varnish, 292.

Ambronn and Held, polarisation, 406.

Ammonia-alum, 184.

Ammonia-carmine, 171.

Ammonia-carmine, how to neutralise, 301.

Ammonio-nitrate of silver, 246.

Ammonium molybdate impregnation, 261.

Amphibia, embryology, 341—344.

Amphibia, larvæ, 357.

Amphioxus, 346.

Amphipoda, embryology, 354.

Amyl alcohol, for clearing, 85.

Amyl nitrite, 297.

Amyloid matter, 210.

Andeer, phloroglucin, 325.

Andres, nicotin narcotisation, 13; imbedding squares, 93; Actinida, 484.

Andrews, imbedding apparatus, 93.

Anilin, for clearing, 85.

Anilin, for imbedding, 85.

Anilin, for staining, 203.

Anilin black, 226, 409.

Anilin blue, 224.

Anilin blue-black, 225, 409.

Anilin dyes, generalities, 191 *et seq.*; and *see* Coal-tar colours.

Anilin green, 223.

Anilin oil, *see* Anilin.

Anilin red, 207.

Anilin, refractive index, 81.

Anilin water, 203.

Aniseed oil freezing mass, 139.

Annelids, 470—472.

Annelids, embryology, 354.

Anodonta, 16.

Anthozoa, 484, 485.

Apáthy, principles of technique, 10; washing sublimate material, 55; alcoholic sublimate, 57; osmic sublimate, 257; paraffin imbedding, 100; knife position, 105, 106; knife-holder, 107; section-cutting, 112; paraffin mass, 116; gelatin imbedding, 118; celloidin imbedding, 121, 123, 124, 127, 128; serial sections, water method, 142; methods for celloidin sections, 148, 149; hæmatein mixture I A, 186; alcoholic hæmatoxylin stain, 188; methylen blue, 228, 231, 233, 234, 236, 237; cement for glycerin mounts, 292; maceration, 318; muscle of Vermes, 375; gum syrup, 236, 275; gold chloride, solutions, 243, 250; gold, fore-gilding, 255; gold, after-gilding, 257; neuro-fibrils, 394.

Apel, Gephyrea, 473.

Araneida, embryology, 352.

Arctiscoida, 353, 469.

Areolar tissue, 435.

Arnold, neutral red, 220; blood, 449.

Arnstein, methylen blue, 232, 235, 236.

Aronson, nerve stain, 404; ditto with gallein, 408.

Arsenic acid, 325.

Artefacts of fixation, 22, 52, 56.

Arthropoda, 465—469.

Arthropoda, embryology, 349—354.

Artificial alizarin, 227.

Artificial fecundation, 330.

Artificial iodised serum, 271.

Artificial saliva, 315.

Ascaris, ova, 64, 356.

Ascidians, 459, 460.

Ascidians, gemmation, 346.

Ascidians, test-cells, 346.

Asphalt varnish, 290.

Asphyxiation, 17.

Astacus, embryology, 353.

Asteracanthion, 14.

Asteroidea, 481.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Asteroidea, larvæ, 483.
Aubert, cements, 288.
Auburtin, serial sections, 148.
Auerbach, staining nerve-cells, 393; axis-cylinder stains, 393, 411.
Augstein, *Strongylus*, 475.
Aurantia, 223.
Auricularia, 483.
Aves, embryology, 337—340.
Axis-cylinder, stains for, 407—427.
Axis-cylinder, structure, 393.
Azoschwarz, 226.
Azoulay, osmic acid nerve stain, 405; Golgi's impregnation, 418.

B.

Babes, safranin, 203, 204.
Baker, C., address, 88.
Balbiani, methyl green and eosin, 221; embryological methods, 331; Protozoa, 491, 494.
Balbiani et Henneguy, Protozoa, 491.
Ballowitz, muscle of Cephalopoda, 374; electric organs, 434.
Balsam, Canada, 81, 137, 283, 284.
Balsam, Tolu, 81.
Barff's boroglyceride, 277.
Bari, Golgi's impregnation, 420.
Barium bichromate, 49.
Barnes, Trichinæ, 476.
Barrois, larvæ of Echinoderms, 482.
"Basic" dyes, 193.
Bastian, gold method, 254.
Bataillon and Koehler, methylen blue, 364.
Baumgarten, bleu de Lyon, 225; fuchsin and methylen blue, 226; carmine and bleu de Lyon, 265.
Bayerl, decalcification, 324; cartilage, 446.
Beale, glycerin jelly, 278; shellac varnish, 293; injections, 308; digestion, 319.
Beck, A., microtome, 104.
Beck, J., cements, 288.
Becker, microtome, 88.
Bedot, Siphonophora, 487.
Beer, medullated nerve, 394.
Behrens, G., embryology of Salmonidæ, 345.
Behrens, W., *Tabellen*, 80; refractive indices, 80; cements, 288.
Béla Haller, maceration, 317.
Bellarminow, injection, 310.
Bell's cement, 290.
Benda, nitric acid fixation, 46; iron hæmatoxylin, 188; copper hæmatoxylin, 191; Lichtgrün stain, 222; Säureviolett stain, 222.
Benecke, stain for fibrils, 436.
Benedecenti, formol, 75.
Beneden, van, sublimate solution, 55; acetic alcohol, 63; malachite green, 222; embryology of rabbit, 335, 336; embryology of *Tænia*, 355.
Benedikt and Knecht, tar-colours, 159.
Bengal rose, 221.
Benzin colophonium, 286.
Benzoazurin, 207, 226.
Benzol, for clearing, 85; for imbedding, 96.
Benzopurpurin, 220.
Benzoyl green, 222.
Bergamot oil, for clearing, 81, 83; for imbedding, 97.
Bergonzini, plasma cells and Mastzellen, 439.
Berkley, rapid nerve stain, 403; Golgi impregnation, 419, 421.
Berlin blue injections, 304, 309.
Berlinerblau, hæmatoxylin, 398.
Bernard, maceration of mollusca, 465.
Bernheim, gold method, 255; bladder of frog, 376.
Bernheimer, retina, 432.
Bethe, treatment of osmic material, 34; methylen blue, 237, 238; neuro-fibrils, 395, 502; stain for chitin, 469.
Bettendorf, *Distoma*, 478.
Betz, nervous centres, 384.
Bevan Lewis, *see* Lewis.
Bianco, S. Lo, *see* Lo Bianco.
Bichloride of mercury, *see* Sublimate.
Bichromate of ammonia, 52, 383, 384, 385.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Bichromate of barium, 49.
Bichromate of potash, generalities, 48; for hardening, 49; for fixing and hardening, 44, 50—52, 383; for maceration, 316.
Bichromate of silver impregnation, *see* Golgi.
Bichromate and osmic mixtures, 44; other mixtures, 50—52.
Bichromate material, action of light on, 39.
Bichromate material, bleaching, 50.
Bickfalvi, digestion, 319.
Biebrich scarlet, 221.
Biedermann, methylen blue, 233; nerve and muscle, 371, 372.
Binet, bleaching, 34; ganglia of Hexapods, 468.
Biniodide of mercury mounting medium, 280.
Bioblasts of Altmann, 365.
Biondi, staining mixture, 215; blood, 448.
Bipinnaria, 483.
Bismarck brown, *intra vitam*, 158.
Bismarck brown, progressive, 210.
Bismarck brown, regressive, 207.
Bitume de Judée, 290.
Bizzozero, gentian violet, 205; blood-plates, 450, 452; glands, 453.
Bizzozero and Torre, blood, 450.
Bjeloussow, injection, 307.
Blackley blue, 223.
Bladder of frog, 375.
Blanc, Protozoa, 492.
Blattida, embryology, 352.
Bleaching, osmic material, 34; bichromate material, 50; chromic material, 37, 38; in general, 327—329.
Bleu carmin, 226.
Bleu de Lyon, 224.
Bleu de nuit, 224.
Bleu lumière, 224.
Blochman, serial sections, 146; ova of Amphibia, 341; Cestodes, 426, 478; Brachiopoda, 461.
Blood, 447—453.
Blue-black, 226.
Blum, formol, 74, 75, 77; celloidin imbedding, 127.
Bobretzky, ova of Lepidoptera, 351.
Boccardi, gold method, 255; stain for nerve-cells, 391.
Böhm, gold method, 255.
Böhm and Oppel, artificial serum, 271; egg of fowl, 340; nerve stain, 404; Golgi ditto, 419.
Böhmer, hæmatoxylin, 184.
Böhmig, Turbellaria, 479.
Bolton, hæmatoxylin, 192, 402; Golgi's impregnation, 420.
Bone, 442—445.
Bonnet, embryology of dog, 337.
Borax carmine, 172.
Borax methylen blue, 364.
Bordeaux R., 219.
Borgert, paraffin imbedding, 94.
Born, section-stretcher, 109; reconstruction, 332; orientation, 501.
Boroglyceride, 277.
Bouin, picric formol, 76.
Boveri, picro-acetic acid, 67, 356; imbedding small objects, 332; medullated nerve, 395.
Brachiopoda, 461.
Brady, chloral hydrate, 272.
Braem, statoblasts, 347.
Brain, *see* Neurological methods.
Brandt, glycerin jelly, 278; Infusoria, 492; Sphærozoa, 494.
Brass, paraffin, 116; Protozoa, 493.
Brauer, embryology of scorpions, 353.
Braun, mounting medium for Nematodes, 475; Turbellaria, 479; Zoantharia and Alcyonaria, 485.
Braus, fixation by injection, 26; ova of *Triton*, 342; liver, 457.
Brazilin, 263.
Breglia, logwood, 398; nerve stain, 404.
Bremer, methylen blue and eosin, 222.
Bristol, regeneration of osmic acid, 32
Brock, maceration, 316.
Brodie and Russell, blood-plates, 452.
Brown cement, 290.
Brown, flagella, 496.

Brücke, Berlin blue, 304; digestion, 319.
Bruel, embryology of Diptera, 351.
Brun, glucose medium, 275.
Brunotti, gelatin imbedding, 118.
Brunswick black, 290.
Bryozoa, 460; statoblasts, 347.
Budge, injections, 310.
Buehler, staining nerve-cells, 393.
Bumpus, celloidin sections, 132.
Bunge, stain for flagella, 495.
Burci, elastic tissue, 441.
Burckhardt, E., bichromates, 49, 382; fixing mixtures, 49; pyroligneous-acid-carmine, 170; pyroligneous-acid-hæmatoxylin, 187; methyl green, 209; neuroglia, 430.
Burckhardt, R., brain of *Protopterus*, 387.
Bürger, Nemertina, 477.
Busch, osmic mixture, 36, 405; decalcification, 322, 323.
Busse, celloidin, 122, 124, 127.
Bütschli, paraffin imbedding, 99; acid hæmatoxylin, 185; iron hæmatoxylin, 191.

C.

Cajal, Ramón y, picro-indigo-carmine, 265; nerve-endings in muscle, 373; stain for nerve-cells, 391; Golgi impregnation, 418; methylen blue, 430; retina, 432; connective tissue, 435, 436.
Cajeput oil, 84.
Calberla, methyl green, 208; ditto and eosin, 221; indulin, 223; glycerin mixture, 277; artificial saliva, 315.
Calcium chloride mounting medium, 271.
Caldwell, serial sections, 146.
Calleja, picro-indigo-carmine, 265.
Cambridge rocking microtome, 88.
Canada balsam, index, 81; for imbedding, 137; for mounting, 283, 284; as a cement, 292.
Canfield, iris, 375.
Caoutchouc cement, 290.
Capitellidæ, 14, 355.
Carazzi, peroxide of sodium, 34, 328; sublimate liquid, 58; ova of *Aplysia*, 349; Lamellibranchs, 461.
Carbolic acid, index, 81; for clearing, 84.
Carbolic fuchsin, 207.
Carbonic acid for narcotisation, 17.
Carmalum, 167; with indigo-carmine, 264.
Carmine, generalities, 163; analysis, 163; stains in general, 166; formulæ for stains, 167—176; aqueous, 167—172; alcoholic, 172—176; combination stains, 264, 265.
Carmine blue, 226.
Carmine solutions, to neutralise, 301.
Carminic acid, 163, 164, 166.
Carnoy, chromo-aceto-osmic acid, 43; acetic alcohol, 63, 64; hæmatein stains, 181; Congo red, 220; salt solution, 269; tannin solution, 273; cement, 293; micro-chemical reactions, 359.
Carnoy and Lebrun, ova of Amphibia, 342; ditto of *Ascaris*, 356; micro-chemistry, 360.
Carpenter, section grinding, 136; cements and varnishes, 288.
Carriére, eyes of Gastropoda, 462.
Carter, injection, 303.
Cartilage, 445, 446.
Castellarnau, de, Ophiuridea, 482; Zoantharia, 484.
Castle, ova of *Ciona*, 346.
Castor oil for mounting, 287.
Cattaneo, palladium chloride, 61; Protozoa, 493.
Caudina, 16.
Caullery, Ascidians, 460.
Causard, injection of spiders, 468.
Caustic soda or potash, *see* Soda and Potash.
Cavazzani, hæmatoxylin and Säurefuchsin, 267.
Cedar-wood oil, index, 81; for clearing,

The numbers refer to the Pages.

81; imbedding, 97; for preserving, 6; for mounting, 286; for dissecting in, 9.
Celloidin imbedding, 120—135; generalities, 120, 121; preliminary preparation, 121; celloidin bath, 122; imbedding, 123; orientation, 124; hardening, 125—128; preserving blocks, 128; fixing blocks to microtome, 128; cutting, 128; clearing and mounting, 131; *résumé*, 131; the new method, 132; Gilson's rapid, 132; the dry cutting method, 133; celloidin and paraffin method, 134.
Cells, paper for mounting, 289.
Cements and varnishes, 288 *et seq.*
Central corpuscles, centrosomes, etc., 364.
Central nervous system, *see* Nervous centres and Neurological methods.
Cephalopoda, embryology, 347; eyes, 463.
Cercariæ, 478.
Cerebrum, cerebellum, *see* Neurological methods.
CERFONTAINE, *Lumbricus*, 470.
CERTES, Infusoria, 491—493.
Cestodes, 477; embryology, 355.
Chætopoda, 470—472.
CHEATLE, dehydration apparatus, 4.
Chemicals, 161, 162.
Chemistry of tar-colours, 159.
CHENZINSKY, methylen blue and eosin, 222
CHICHKOFF, Turbellaria, 479.
Chilopoda, 466.
Chinablau, 225.
China blue, 225.
Chinolinblau, chinolin blue, 223.
Chironomus, ova, 351.
Chitin, 466, 469.
Chiton, embryology, 349.
Chloral hydrate, for narcotisation, 14, 15; preservative solutions, 272, 274, 279; for preserving injections, 298; for maceration, 314.
Chlorate of potash for maceration, 317.
Chloride of aluminium carmine, 167.
Chloride of calcium for mounting, 271.
Chloride of copper fixative, 65.
Chloride of gold, *see* Gold chloride.
Chloride of iridium, 61.
Chloride of magnesium, narcotisation, 16.
Chloride of manganese, 269.
Chloride of palladium, for fixing, 61; for staining, 260, 407.
Chloride of platinum, 60; mixtures, 44, 45, 48, 331.
Chloride of sodium, *see* Salt.
Chloride of vanadium stain, 410.
Chloride of zinc, for fixing, 61, 383.
Chlorine for bleaching, 327.
Chloroform, for narcotisation, 13; for clearing, 85; for imbedding, 97, 99; for hardening collodion, 126.
Choroid, 328.
Chromate, neutral, of ammonia, 52.
Chromate of lead impregnation, 260.
Chromate of silver, *see* GOLGI.
Chromates for fixing and hardening, 48.
Chromatin, reactions, 359.
Chromatin stains, defined, 153; the coal-tar, 202—211; cytological, 363.
Chromic acid, generalities, 36; fixing with, 37; washing out, 37; hardening with, 38; action of light, 39; mixtures, 39 *et seq.*, 46 *et seq.*, 49, 59, 60, 69; for maceration, 316; for decalcification, 323—325.
Chromo-acetic acid, 40.
Chromo-aceto-osmic acid, 40—44; for decalcification, 325.
Chromo-formic acid, 40.
Chromo-nitric acid, 46; for bleaching, 329.
Chromo-osmic acid, 40.
Chromo-platinic mixture, 48.
Chromo-sublimate, 59.
CHRSCHTSCHONOWIC, gold method, 254.
CIACCIO, gold method, 254; corpuscles of Golgi, 374.
CIAGLINSKI, myelin stain, 408.
Cilia of Infusoria, 495.
Ciliated epithelium, 464.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Cinnamon oil, 81, 83.
Clarke's spirit-proof cement, 290.
Clasmatocytes, 440.
Claypole, Mayer's albumen, 144.
Cleaning slides and covers, 499.
Clearing, generalities, 6, 78 *et seq.;* clearing agents, 80 *et seq.;* practice of, 79; choice of an agent, 81, 130; celloidin sections, 130.
Clove oil, for minute dissections, 9, 82; refractive index, 81; for clearing, 82; for imbedding, 96; for differentiating stains, 199.
Coal-tar colours, 193 *et seq.;* regressive staining with, 196; progressive ditto, 208; choice of, 201; chromatin stains, 202—211; plasma stains, 212—227.
Cobb, differentiator, 4; Nematodes, 475.
Cocaine, narcotisation, 15.
Coccidæ, 467.
Cochineal, generalities, 165; aqueous, Partsch's, 168; Czokor's, 168; Rabl's, 169; alcoholic, Mayer's, 174—176.
Cochlea, 433, 434.
Coe, Miracidia, 356.
Cœlenterata, 484—489.
Cœrulein, 223.
Cohnheim, gold method, 251.
Cole, freezing method, 138.
Coleoptera, embryology, 352.
Coles, blood, 447.
Collagen, 436.
Collin, *Criodrilus*, 470.
Collinge, pelagic ova, 346.
Collodion for fixing sections, 145, 146, 149.
Collodion imbedding, 120—135, and *see* Celloidin.
Collodionisation of sections, 110.
Colophonium, for imbedding, 137; for mounting, 285; cement, 292.
Colucci, retina, 433.
Combination stains, 262 *et seq.;* carmine combinations, 264; hæmatein ditto, 266.
Congelation imbedding methods, 137.
Congo red, 219.
Conklin, ova of *Crepidula*, 349.
Connective tissues, 435 *et seq.*
Conser, Rotatoria, 474.
Copal section method, 136.
Copepoda, 466; embryology, 354.
Copper, sulphate, 51—53, 487; chloride and acetate, 65.
Copper hæmatoxylin, 191.
Coral, 484, 485.
Corallin, 207.
Cori, narcotisation, 14; cocaine, 15; keeping osmic acid, 32; chromo-aceto-osmic acid, 41.
Cornea, 243, 369.
Corning, Krohnthal's impregnation, 428.
Corpuscles, tactile, 368; of Herbst and Grandry, 368; of Meissner, 252; of Golgi, 373; of Meissner and Krause, 369.
Corrosion, 321, 322.
Corrosive sublimate, *see* Sublimate.
Coupier's blue, 223.
Cox, Nissl's stain, 391, 392; medullated nerve, 394; sublimate impregnation, 426.
Creasote, index, 81; for clearing, 85.
Crinoidea, 482.
Cristatella, 347.
Crocein, 214.
Crystalline, 370.
Ctenophora, 489.
Cuccati, retina, 432.
Cupric sulphate for fixing, 51—53, 487; for staining, 260.
Curarisation, 357.
Curschmann, amyloid matter, 210.
Cyanin, 223.
Cybulsky, gold impregnations, 258.
Cyclops, ova, 354.
Cytological methods, 357—365; living cells, 357; fresh cells, 358; microchemical reactions, 359; fixing agents, 360; chromatin stains, 363; plasma stains, 364, nucleoli and granules, 365.
Czokor, cochineal, 168; turpentine cement, 291.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

D.

DADDI, fat, 437.
DAHLGREN, double imbedding, 135.
Dahlia, 206.
Damar (dammar), gum, 284.
DAVIDOFF, ova of *Distaplia*, 346; Siphonophora, 488.
DAVIES, injection, 303.
De-alcoholisation, 6, 78 *et seq.*; choice of an agent, 81.
DEANE's medium, 274; glycerin jelly, 278.
Decalcification, 322—326.
DECKER, section-stretcher, 109.
DEECKE, encephalon, 385.
DE FILIPPI, *Tænia*, 477.
DE GROOT, serial sections, 140.
Dehydration, 3—5.
DEKHUYSEN, silver impregnation, 246; fat, 437.
DELAFIELD, hæmatoxylin, 184.
DELAGE, Turbellaria, 479; larvæ of sponges, 490.
DELLA VALLE, ova of *Orchestia*, 354.
Deltapurpurin, 220.
DENDY, *Geonemertes*, 477.
Depigmentation, 466, 467.
DE QUERVAIN, nervous tissue, 379.
Desilicification, 326.
DE SOUZA, pyridin, 73.
DETERMANN, blood-plates, 452.
DEWITZ, injection of molluscs, 464.
Dextrin freezing mass, 138.
DEZSÖ, sponges, 490.
Differentiation, optical, by fixation, 23, 41.
Differentiator, Cobb's, 4; Haswell's, 4; Cheatle's, 4.
Diffusion apparatus, 4.
Digestion, 319, 320, 360.
DIMMER, serial sections, 152.
DIMMOCK, carminic acid, 163.
DIOMIDOFF, nervous tissue, 383.
Diptera, embryology, 351.
Dissections, minute, 6, 9.
Dissociation, methods of, 312.
Distaplia, 346.
Distomum, Miracidia, 356.
DOGIEL, methylen blue, 231, 233, 235, 236, 238, 239; corpuscles of Herbst and Grandry, 368; corpuscles of Krause, 369; iris, 375; retina, 432.
DÖLLKEN, formol imbedding method, 139; soap imbedding, 117; nerve stain, 401.
DONALDSON, nervous centres, 383.
DOSTOIEWSKY, iris, 375.
Double imbedding, 134.
Double stains, *see* Stains, combined.
DOYÈRE, Arctiscoida, 469.
DRASCH, gold impregnation, 251.
"Drittelalcohol," 71.
DROST, epithelium of mollusca, 465.
DRUEBIN, blood-plates, 452.
DRUENER, fixation by injection, 26; osmic sublimate, 59.
DUBOSCQ, Chilopoda, 466; blood, 449.
DUNHAM, celloidin sections, 131.
DU PLESSIS, Nemertians, 476; Protozoa, 493.
DURIG, Golgi's impregnation, 419.
DUVAL, section-flattening, 113; collodion imbedding, 121; silver impregnation, 245, 248; carmine and anilin blue, 265; embryology of birds, 337, 339.

E.

Ear, inner, 433
Eau de Javelle, 321, 328, 341; Eau de Labarraque, 321, 328.
EBNER, VON, decalcification, 324.
Echinodermata, 480—484.
Echtgelb, 214
Echtgrün, 394
EDINGER, liquid of Erlicki, 52
Eggs, of fowl, 337; and *see* Embryological methods.
EHLERS, fixative, 40
EHRENBAUM, section grinding, 137.
EHRLICH, acid hæmatoxylin, 185; classification of tar-colours, 193; stain for bacteria, 205; triacid mixture, 218; acidophilous mixture, 223; mixture C (eosinophilous), 223; indulin-aurantia-eosin, 223; neutral red, 220; methylen blue, 229; Mastzellen, 437; leucocytes, 451.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

EHRLICH-BIONDI-HEIDENHAIN stain, 215.
EHRMANN and JADASSOHN, plasma fibrils, 367.
EICHLER, labyrinth, 434.
EISEN, iridium chloride, 61; ruthenium red, 261; Brazilin, 263; gum Thus, 287.
EISIG, alcohol narcotisation, 14; Capitellidæ, 14, 471; chromo-platinic mixture, 48; maceration, 316; embryology of *Capitella*, 355.
EISMOND, quieting Infusoria, 491.
EKMAN, Brachiopoda, 461
Elastic tissue, 440; of spleen, 457.
Electric organs, 434.
Electrification of paraffin, 113.
ELSCHNIG, celloidin, 122.
Embryological methods, 330—356; generalities, 330—333; Amphibia, 341—344; Arthropoda, 349—354; Aves, 337—340; Bryozoa, 347; Echinodermata, 482; Mammalia, 333—337; Mollusca, 347—349; Pisces, 344—346; Reptilia, 340; Tunicata, 346; Vermes, 354—356.
EMERY, injection, 310.
Encephalon, *see* Neurological methods.
Endosmosis, 4.
ENGELMANN, epithelium, 464.
Enteropneusta, 469.
Entire objects, preparation of, 8.
ENTZ, GEZA, Protozoa, 492.
Eosin, 221; with hæmatoxylin, 266.
Eosinophilous mixture, 223
Epidermis, 366.
Epithelium, 366; renal, 458; ciliated, 464.
ERLANGER, VON, Tardigrada, 353; ova of *Ascaris*, 356.
ERLICKI, liquid of, 51.
ERMENGEM, VAN, stain for flagella, 496.
ERRERA, nigrosin, 207.
Erythrosin, 221.
Essences, *see* Oil, and Clearing.
ETERNOD, paraffin blocks, 108; histological rings, 244.
Ether, for narcotisation, 14, 357; for preserving, 5.
EVERARD, DEMOOR, and MASSART, hæmatoxylin and eosin, 266.
EWALD, capillary siphon, 4; section-washing apparatus, 4; blood, 449.
EWING, Nissl's stain, 391
Examination and preservation media, watery, 268—272; mercurial, 272, 273; various, 273—276; glycerin, 276—278; jellies, 278—280; resinous, 281—287; high refractive liquids, 280, 281.
EXNER, medullated nerve-fibres, 404.
EYCLESHYMER, celloidin imbedding, 124, 132.
Eyes, of Mollusca, 462, 463; of Arthropods, 467; of Asteroidea, 481.

F.

FABRE-DOMERGUE, glucose medium, 275; Protozoa, 492, 494.
FAIRCHILD, washing cylinders, 4.
FARIS, glycero-gum, 274.
FARRANTS, mounting medium, 274.
Fat, 437.
Fatty bodies, blackening by osmic acid, 36, 437.
Fecundation, artificial, 330.
FEIST, methylen blue, 237; spinal cord, 389.
FELIX, embryology of Salmonidæ, 345.
FERRERI, decalcification, 325, 326.
Ferricyanide of potassium for bleaching, 35.
FERRIER, blood, 451.
Fibrin, stains for, 452.
FICK, Golgi's impregnation, 422.
FIEDLER, *Spongilla*, 489.
FIELD and MARTIN, paraffin imbedding, 97, 104; double imbedding, 134; serial sections, 145.
FILIPPI, DE, *Tænia*, 477.
FINOTTI, Marchi's nerve stain, 405; myelin stain, 408; axis-cylinder stain, 411.
FISCHEL, medullated nerve, 395.
FISCHER, A., *Fixirung, Färbung, und Bau des Protoplasmas*, 21; theory of fixation, 22—25; ditto of staining, 158; hæmatein stains, 180;

The numbers refer to the Pages.

methyl green, 209; leucocytes, 452.

Fischer, E., gold method, 252; tactile corpuscles, 368; nerve and muscle, 372.

Fischer, P. M., soap-imbedding, for Trematodes, 478.

Fish, oil of thyme, 84; celloidin imbedding, 123; decalcification, 322, 324; hardening nervous tissue, 383, 385, 386, 388; Golgi's impregnation, 420.

Fixation, 2, 19, 26, 360 *et seq.;* by injection, 378, 421; of marine animals, 27.

Fixation images, 21.

Fixation precipitates, 21, 361.

Fixing agents, action of, 21; characters of the usual, 23; choice of, for beginners, 25; the various, 31—77; cytological, 360.

Flagella, 495.

Flatau, hardening brain, 383; Golgi's sublimate method, 426

Flechsig, gold method, 255; nerve stain, 404; Golgi's impregnation, 427.

Flemming, preservation, 5; chromo-acetic acid, 40; chromo-aceto-osmic acid, 40—44; action of bichromate, 48; picro-osmic acid, 69; safranin, 203; gentian, 204; dahlia, 206; picric acid, 212; Orange G, 213; Orange method, 213, 214; damar solution, 284; epithelium, 366; fat, 437; bone, 445; goblet-cells, 455; eyes of Gastropoda, 462; injection of Acephala, 464.

Flesch, chromo-osmic acid, 40; Weigert's nerve stain, 398; inner ear, 434.

Florman, celloidin, 127.

Fluorides, 61.

Foà, fixing mixture, 60.

Foettinger, narcotisation, 14.

Fol, narcotisation, 17; treatment of osmic material, 34, 35; chromo-aceto-osmic acid, 41; nitric acid, 46; perchloride of iron, 61; picro-chromic acid, 69; vacuum imbedding, 101; serial sections, 146; gold impregnation, 258; iron stain, 260; glycerin jellies, 279; injections, metagelatin, 298; injections, carmine, 302; injections, Berlin blue, 305; injections, brown and yellow, 306; decalcification, 325; reconstruction of sections, 332; Tintinnodea, 493.

Fore-gilding, 251.

Formaldehyde, 73; as a mordant, 200; for maceration, 314; for nervous tissue, 385—387; for the Golgi impregnation, 419, 420; and *see* Formol.

Formalin, *see* Formaldehyde.

Formalose, *see* Formaldehyde.

Formic acid, 65.

Formic acid carmine, 170.

Formol, generalities, 73; for preserving, 74; for hardening, 74, 76, 77, 385—387; for fixing, 75; for hardening celloidin, 127; as an antiseptic, 77; as an imbedding mass, 139; as a reducing agent, 76, 77; as a mordant, 200; for gelatin imbedding, 119; for the Golgi impregnation, 419.

"Formol-Müller," 76.

Fowl, embryology of, 337—340.

Francotte, vacuum imbedding, 101; section-stretcher, 109.

Frankl, imbedding box, 93.

Freeborn, connective tissue, 435.

Freezing section method, 137—139.

Frenkel, palladium chloride liquid, 61.

Frenzel, sublimate solution, 57.

Frey, H., indifferent liquids, 269; artificial serum, 271; white injection, 306.

Frey, M., peripheral nerves, 406.

Friedlaender, Golgi's impregnation, 413; cupric sulphate fixation, 488.

Friedmann, nerve stain, 403.

Fuchsin, basic, 207; acid, 215.

Fuchsin and methylen blue, 226.

Fuchsin S, 215.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Fuchs-Wolfring, glands of larynx, 456.

Fusari, cartilage, 446.

G.

Gad and Heymans, polarisation, 406.

Gage, picric alcohol, 69; clearing mixture, 85; section-stretcher, 109; celloidin sections, 132, 147; albumen fluid, 272; starch injection, 311; maceration, 314, 316, 317.

Galeotti, *intra vitam* staining, 157; neutral red, 220.

Gallein, 408.

Gallemaerts, serial sections, 145.

Galli, neuroceratin, 393.

Gamboge injection, 309.

Garbini, safranin, 204; Alcyonaria, 485.

Gardiner, ova of *Polychoerus*, 355.

Gardner, elastic tissue, 441.

Gaskell, section-flattening, 113.

Gastropoda, 462—464; embryology, 348.

Gaule, fixing liquid, 57; serial sections, 140.

Gay-Lussac, table for diluting alcohol, 498.

Geberg, gold method, 255; corpuscles of Herbst, 369.

Gebhardt, crystalline, 370.

Gedoelst, digestion, 320; medullated nerve, 394.

Gehuchten, van, acetic alcohol, 63; sectioning nervous system, 389; Nissl's stain, 390; medullated nerve, 393; Golgi's impregnation, 420.

Gelatin, imbedding, 117—119; freezing mass, 138; section fixative, 146; injection masses, 297—306; injection masses, carmine, 300—303; injection masses, blue, 303—305; other colours, 305, 306.

Gelatin cement, 289.

Gemmation of Ascidians, 346.

Gentian violet, 204.

Geoffroy, gelatin medium, 280.

Gephyrea, 472.

Gerauld, narcotisation, 16; *Caudina*, 481.

Gerlach, J., carmine injection, 303; gold method for spinal cord, 256.

Gerlach, L., glycerin jelly, 118; embryology of birds, 337; nerve-endings in muscle, 372.

Gerota, formol, 75, 387; silver impregnation, 248; Weigert's nerve stain, 398; Golgi's impregnation, 420.

Giacomini, serial sections, 152; preserving brains, 430.

Gierke, impregnation, 242; hæmatoxylin and eosin, 266; maceration, 315; anilin blue-black, 409.

Giesbrecht, clearing, 79; imbedding squares, 93; paraffin imbedding, 99; section grinding, 137; serial sections, 146; Copepods, 466.

Gieson, van, origanum oil, 83; picro-Säurefuchsin, 215; Säurefuchsin with hæmatoxylin, 267; formalin for nerve tissue, 386.

Giglio-Tos, blood, 447, 451.

Gilson, mercuro-nitric fixing fluid, 57; zinc chloride fixing fluid, 61; acetic alcohol with sublimate, 64; bleaching bichromate material, 50; acetate of uranium, 65; rapid celloidin method, 132; mercurial examination liquid, 272; glycerin jelly, 279.

Glands, 453—458.

Glass, refractive index, 81.

Glucose mounting media, 275.

Glycerin, refractive index, 81, 276; mounting media, 276—279; extra refractive, 276; method of mounting in, 276, 289.

Glycerin and alcohol mixtures, 277.

Glycerin injections, 299, 308, 309.

Glycerin jellies, for imbedding, 118; for mounting, 278, 279.

Glycero-gum, 274.

Glychæmalum, 184.

Goadby's fluids, 273.

Goblet-cells, 453, 455.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Goette, hardening ova, 343.

Gold chloride, impregnations, 249; commercial salts, 250; fore-gilding, 251—256; after-gilding, 256—258; marine animals, 258; preserving preparations, 258; and *see* the names of authors.

Gold orange, 214.

Gold size, 290.

Goldscheider and **Flatau**, Nissl's stain 391.

Golgi, chromate of silver impregnation: introduction, 411—414; slow process, 414—416; rapid process, 416; mixed process, 416; critique of the same, 417; variations, 418—424; gold method, 256; fixation by injection, 378; bichromate and sublimate method, 424.

Golgi, corpuscles of, 373, 374.

Goodall, spinal cord, 379.

Goodsiria, 347.

Gordon, stain for flagella, 496.

Goronowitsch, embryology of Salmonidæ, 345.

Gothard, Nissl's stain, 390.

Gräberg, stain, 219.

Graf, formol, 76; Hirudinea, 472.

Graff, von, Turbellaria, 479.

Graham, Trichinæ, 476.

Gram, staining method, 205.

Grandis, Mayer's albumen, 145.

Grandry, corpuscles, 368.

Granule cells, 437—440; and *see* Leucocytes.

Granules, 365.

Grape-sugar imbedding, 135.

Graphic or plastic reconstruction, 332; *see* Orientation.

Graser, staining method, 207, 211.

Gregarinæ, 494.

Grenacher, alum-carmine, 168; borax-carmine, 172; hydrochloric acid carmine, 174; hæmatoxylin, 184; castor oil for mounting, 287; bleaching mixture, 328; eyes of molluscs, 463.

Greppin, Golgi's impregnation, 423.

Grieb, alum-carmine, 168.

Griesbach, metanil yellow, 214; Säuregelb, Echtgelb, Tropæolin O, crocein, gold orange, 214; Congo red, 219; benzopurpurin, 220; Biebricher Scharlach, 221; Bengal rose, 221; iodine green, 222; elastic tissue, 440; blood, 449.

Groot, de, serial sections, 140.

Grouvèn, Ehrlich-Biondi stain, 217.

Grübler and **Hollborn**, address, 162; anilin blue-black, 226; salts of gold, 250.

Grünpulver, 208.

Grünstichblau, 224.

Gudden, Pal's nerve stain, 401.

Guéguen, methyl salicylate, 86.

Guignet, injection, 305.

Gulland, section-flattening, 113; serial sections, 140, 151; blood, 447.

Gum, imbedding, 135; for freezing, 138; mounting media, 274, 275; injection mass, 307; mucilage for labels, 500.

Gum damar, 284.

Gum sandarac for mounting, 287.

Gum, Thus, 287.

Günther, elastic tissue, 441.

H.

Haecker, ova of *Cyclops*, 354; microchemistry of the cell, 360.

Hæmacalcium, 185.

Hæmalum, 182, 183.

Hæmalum and indigo-carmine, 264.

Hæmateate of ammonia, 180.

Hæmatein, generalities, 177, 179, 182; formulæ for stains, 182—192; and *see* Hæmatoxylin.

Hæmatoxylin, generalities, 177; alcoholic stock solution, 179; **Unna's** solution, 179; characters of alum-hæmatoxylin stains, 180; formulæ for stains, 182—192; the alum compounds, 182—187; other compounds, 187—192.

Hæmatoxylin and eosin, 266.

Hæmatoxylin and picro-Säurefuchsin, 267.
Hæmatoxylin and safranin, 267.
Hæmatoxylin and Säurefuchsin, 267.
Hæmatoxylin combination stains, 266.
HAENSEL, liquid of, 69.
Hair, 368.
HALLE and BORN, celloidin imbedding, 125.
HALLER, BÉLA, maceration, 317.
HAMANN, Acanthocephali, 474; Asteroidea, 481.
HAMBURGER, salt solution, 269.
HAMILTON, freezing method, 138; hardening brain, 384.
HANDWERCK, osmicated fat, 36.
HANSEN, hæmatoxylin, 184; connective tissue, 435; elastic tissue, 441.
HÄNTSCH, glycerin liquid, 277.
Hardening, generalities, 28; practice of, 29; nerve centres, 379—388.
Hardening agents, *see* Fixing agents.
HARDY, Rotatoria, 473.
HARMER, silver impregnation, 248.
HARRIS, hæmatoxylin, 184; toluidin blue, 208, 240; methylen blue, 239; thionin, 240; nerve stain, 404.
HARRISON, embryology of Salmonidæ, 345.
HARTING, calcium chloride, 271; white injection, 306; gamboge injection, 309.
HASSELAER, object-holder, 89.
HASWELL, dehydration apparatus, 4.
HAUG, decalcification, 322, 325, 326; nerve stain, 404.
HAYEM, blood, 447, 449.
Heat, for killing, 11, 12.
HEIDENHAIN, M., sublimate solution, 57; paraffin imbedding, 97, 100, 116; serial sections, 140; iron-hæmatoxylin, 189; Ehrlich-Biondi stain, 216, 217; Bordeaux R, 219; vanadium hæmatoxylin, 365.
HEIDENHAIN, R., chrome hæmatoxylin, 187; Ehrlich-Biondi stain, 215.
HEIDER, paraffin sections, 112.
HELD, sublimate solution, 57; stain for nerve-cells, 391; knife-warmer, 501; iron hæmatoxylin, 502.
HELLER and GUMPERTZ, medullated nerve, 260, 406.
HENCHMAN, ova of *Limax*, 348.
HENKING, section cutting, 111; embryology of Arthropoda, 350—352; examination liquid, 351.
HENNEGUY, object-holder, 89; section flattening, 113; section-fixing, 144; alum-carmine, 169; permanganate method, 200; embryological methods, 333—336, 344, 348; Protozoa, 491, 492; restaining old mounts, 500.
HÉNOCQUE, gold method, 254.
HERBST, corpuscles, 368.
HERMANN, platino-aceto-osmic acid, 45; formalin, 74—76; safranin and gentian stain, 205; osmic acid and pyroligneous acid stain, 259; cytological methods, 365.
HÉROUARD, *Cucumaria*, 481.
HERTWIG, silver impregnation, 246, 248; maceration, 317, 484; Medusæ and Actiniæ, 317; ova of *Triton*, 342; ova of *Rana*, 343.
HERXHEIMER, plasma fibrils, 367.
HESCHL, amyloid degeneration, 210.
HESSERT, flagella, 496.
HEURCK, VAN, mounting medium, 281.
HEYDENREICH, amber varnish, 292.
HEYMONS, embryology of Blattida, 352.
HICKSON, eosin and hæmatoxylin, 266; maceration, 314; eyes of *Musca*, 467.
HILL, nerve stain, 404; Golgi's impregnation, 417, 421.
HIPPEL, retina, 432.
HIROTA, egg of fowl, 339.
Hirudinea, 472.
HIS, nitric acid fixation, 46; impregnation, 242.
HOCHSTETTER, injection, 310.
HOEHL, bichromate and osmic acid, 44; adenoid tissue, 437.
HOFER, hydroxylamin, 15.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

HOFFMANN, vacuum imbedding, 101; orientation, 104.

HOFMANN'S Grün, 222.

HOGGAN, histological rings, 244; iron stain, 260.

HOLM, liver, 457.

Holothurioidea, 480.

HOPEWELL-SMITH, odontoblasts, 444.

HOPKINS, maceration, 317.

Horn, 368.

HOYER, silver impregnation, 246; gold impregnation, 254; mounting medium, 274; carmine-gelatin injection, 301; blue gelatin injection, 305; yellow gelatin injection, 305, 306; green gelatin injection, 306; shellac injection, 310; oil-colour injection, 310; mucin, 453.

HOYER, jun., formol, 75; Infusoria, 494.

HUBER, medullated nerve, 395; Golgi's impregnation, 422.

HUDSON, Rotatoria, 473.

HYATT, shellac imbedding, 136.

Hydra, 485.

Hydrate of chloral, *see* Chloral.

Hydrochloric acid, for decalcification, 322, 324.

Hydrochloric acid alcohol, 72.

Hydrochloric acid carmine, 174.

Hydrofluoric acid, 326.

Hydrogen peroxide, for narcotisation, 18; for bleaching, 34, 328.

Hydroidea, 485.

Hydroxylamin, narcotisation, 15.

Hypochlorite of potash, 321, 341;

Hypochlorite of soda, 321.

I.

IDE, double imbedding, 134; epithelium, 366.

IGACUSCHI, liver, 457.

IIJIMA, embryology of Planaria, 355.

IKEDA, section-fixing, 144.

Imbedding, defined, 7; small objects, 332.

Imbedding methods, 90; manipulations, 91, 98, 102, 103, *et seq.*; trays, thimbles, 91; boxes, 92, 93; choice of method, 94; *in vacuo*, 101; paraffin, 96 *et seq.*; soap, 117, 478; gelatin, 117; celloidin (collodion), 120.

Impregnation, defined, 241; positive and negative, 241; primary and secondary, 242.

Impregnation methods, 241—261; theory of, 242; silver, 243—249; gold, 249—258; other metals, 258—261; fats (Altmann), 322.

Indian ink injection, 310.

Indifferent liquids, 268—271.

Indigen, 223.

Indigo carmine, 264.

Indigo substitute, 223.

Indulin, 223.

Indulin-aurantia-eosin, 223.

Infusoria, 490—495.

Injections, 297—311; gelatin, 298—306; other masses, 307—310; natural, 311, 471, 472; of Mollusca, 464; of Arthropods, 468; of Hirudinea, 472.

Insects, *see* Arthropoda.

Intercellular bridges and canals, 366.

Intra vitam staining, 156, 229.

Inversion stains, 226.

Iodate of sodium, 36.

Iodic acid, 449.

Iodide of palladium, 407.

Iodine, for removing sublimate, 55; for fixing, 66; for mordanting, 160; for hardening, 384; LUGOL'S solution, 66.

Iodine green, 222.

Iodised serum, 270, 271; maceration in, 313.

Iridium chloride, 61.

Iris, 375.

Iron, impregnations, 260.

Iron perchloride, *see* Perchloride.

Iron-carmine, 170.

Iron-hæmatoxylin, 188—191, 502.

Isopoda, embryology, 354.

ISRAEL, Ehrlich-Biondi stain, 217; acidophilous mixture, 224; orcein, 263.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Iwanzoff, electric organs, 434; muscles of Holothurids, 481; nematocysts, 484.

J.

Jackson, clearing, 80.
Jacobs, freezing mass, 138.
Jacoby, bleu de Lyon, 225.
Jadassohn, plasma cells, 439.
Jaenichen, *Planaria*, 480.
Jaera, ova, 354.
Jäger, glycerin liquid, 278.
Jakimovitch, silver impregnation, 247; medullated nerve, 395.
Jander, bleaching, 329.
Janssens, amyl alcohol, 85; iron hæmatoxylin, 191; bleu carmin, 226.
Japanese section-fixing method, 144.
Jaquet, leeches, 472.
Javelle, eau de, 321.
Jelgersma, anilin blue-black, 409.
Jelinek, picric acid, 67; "Stabilit," 129.
Jellies, *see* Glycerin.
Jenner, blood, 448.
Jennings, Rotatoria, 355.
Jensen, Infusoria, 491.
Joest, Annelids, 472.
Johnson, Lindsay, fixing mixture, 44; cement for collodion blocks, 129; sunning metallic solutions, 242; gold impregnation, 255; retina, 431.
Johnston, reconstruction, 332.
Johnstone-Lavis, section grinding, 137.
Joliet, gum imbedding, 135.
Jordan, clearing agents, 80; imbedding box, 93; serial sections, 147.
Joseph, silver impregnation, 242; injection, 307.
Julien, flagella, 496.
Juliusburger, stain for nerve-cells, 392.
Jung, R., microtomes, etc., address, 87; knife-holders, 107.
Juschtschenko, Golgi's impregnation, 421.

K.

Kadyi, soap imbedding, 117.
Kaes, nerve stain, 402.
Kaiser, sublimate solution, 57; glycerin jelly, 118, 279; Bismarck brown, 207; nerve stains, 402, 410; Acanthocephali, 474.
Kaiserling, formol, 74.
Kallius, Golgi's impregnation, 419, 423.
Karawaiew, paraffin stove, 101; Protozoa, 494.
Kastschenko, reconstruction, 332.
Kemp, blood-platelets, 452.
Kent, fixative, 66.
Kenyon, phospho-molybdic hæmatoxylin, 191; Pauropoda, 466; brain of bees, 468.
Keratohyalin, 366.
Kernschwarz, 262.
Kidney, 458.
Killing, generalities, 11; various processes, 11—18.
Kingsley, embryology of *Limulus*, 353.
Kionka, egg of fowl, 339.
Kishinouye, embryology of Araneida, 352; of *Limulus*, 353.
Kizer, blood, 448.
Klebs, glycerin jelly, 118.
Klein, chromic acid, 39; cornea, 369.
Kleinenberg, picro-sulphuric acid, 67; hæmatoxylin, 186; colophonium, 285; *Lopadorhyncus*, 354.
Klinckowstroem, *Prostheceræus*, 480.
Knauer, cleaning slides, 500.
Knife position, 104—107.
Knife-holders, 107.
Knife-warmers, 110, 501.
Knives, microtome, 105.
Koch, von, section method, 136.
Kofoid, embryology of Gastropoda, 348.
Koganei, iris, 375.
Köhler, Tæniæ, 478.
Kölliker, ova of rabbit, 334, 336; bone, 445.
Kollmann, fixing ova, 344.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Kolossow, clarifying osmic acid, 32; osmic mixtures, 36; gold method, 255; osmic acid stain, 260; epithelium, 366; Golgi's impregnation, 421.
Kolster, gastric glands, 456.
Köppen, elastic tissue, 441.
Kopsch, embryology of Salmonidæ, 345; Golgi's impregnation, 420; eyes of Cephalopods, 463.
Korotneff, Siphonophora, 13.
Korschelt, embryology of *Loligo*, 348; of *Ophryotrocha*, 354; Protozoa, 492.
Kossinski, stain, 224.
Kostanecki and **Siedlecki**, ova of *Ascaris*, 356; sublimate mixture, 58.
Kostanecki and **Wierzejski**, ova of *Physa*, 349.
Kotlarewsky, ganglion cells, 382.
Kowalewsky, fishes, embryology, 345.
Krause, Ehrlich-Biondi stain, 215, 216; thiophen green, 223; retina, 432, 433; salivary glands, 456; corpuscles of, 369.
Krauss, silver impregnation, 247; hardening nervous tissue, 387.
Kreasote, refractive index, 81; for clearing, 85.
Krohnthal, lead impregnation, 427.
Kromayer, plasma fibrils, 367; connective tissue, 436.
Kronecker's serum, 271.
Krönig, cement, 292.
Krysinsky, photoxylin, 121.
Kühne, H., freezing method, 139.
Kühne, W., maceration, 317; digestion, 320.
Kuhnt, retina, 432.
Kükenthal, narcotisation, 15, 470; blood-vessels, 471; intestine of *Lumbricus*, 471.
Kultschitzky, preservation, 5; fixing liquids, 52; double imbedding, 134; tactile corpuscles, 368; hæmatoxylin nerve stain, 402; neuroglia, 429; elastic tissue, 441; mucus cells, 455; spleen, 457.
Kupffer, embryological methods, 341; axis-cylinder stain, 393 liver, 457.
Kuskow, digestion, 319.

L.

Labarraque, eau de, 321.
Labels, gum for, 501.
Labyrinth, 326, 434.
Lachi, formol for nerve tissue, 386
Lactic acid, 325.
Lamellibranchiata, 461—464; embryology, 349
Landois, impregnations, sulphides, 261; maceration, 315.
Lang, liquid of, 57.
Langerhans, mounting medium, 274; tactile corpuscles, 368.
Lankester and **Bourne**, eyes of *Limulus*, 467.
Lansberg, Protozoa, 493.
Larynx, 456.
Laslett, nerve stain, 402.
Lauterborn, Protozoa, 494.
Lavdowsky, formol mixture, 76; methylen blue, 236; chloral preservative solution, 272; sandarac for mounting, 287; cochlea, 434; blood, 449; maceration, 314.
Lawrence, glycerin jelly, 278.
Lead acetate, 382.
Lead chromate, impregnation, 260.
Lead sulphide, impregnation, 261, 427.
Leber, impregnations, 260; retina, 432.
Lécaillon, ova of Coleoptera, 352.
Lee, A. B., preservation of material, 5, 6; lemon juice for fixing, 12; narcotisation, 18; keeping osmic acid, 31; making up chromo-aceto-osmic, 42; nitric acid for fixing, 46; sublimate solution, 54; picro-acetic acid, 67; formol, 75—77; cedar oil, 81, 82, 97; oil of turpentine, 84; mounting sections in balsam, 85; paraffin masses, 115; celloidin imbedding, 122, 125, 133; Mayer's albumen, 143, 144, 145, 147; *intra vitam* staining, 157; safranin, 203; toluidin

blue, 208; orange G, 213; Säurefuchsin, 215; osmic acid and pyrogallol, 258, 259; Kernschwarz, 262; glycerin liquid, 277; colophonium solution, 285; cedar oil for mounting, 286; paper cell mounting method, 289; cytological methods, 358 *et seq.;* Alcyonaria, 485; Hirudinea, 472; Nemertina, 476, 477; sponges, 489.

Legal, picro-alum-carmine, 169.

Legros, silver impregnation, 248.

Lemon juice for fixing, 12

Lendenfeld, von, sponges, 489.

Lenhossék, von, cœrulein, 223; thionin, 391; toluidin blue, 392; eyes of Cephalopods, 463; nerves of Annelids, 471.

Lennox, retina, 432.

Lens, crystalline, 370.

Lepidoptera, embryology, 351.

Lepkowsky, teeth, 444.

Leuckhart, imbedding boxes, 92.

Leucocytes, 451, 452.

Levulose for mounting, 275.

Lewis, Bevan, anilin blue-black, 225, 409; hardening brain, 379, 384.

Lewis, M., nerves of Annelids, 471.

Lichtgrün, 208, 222.

Liebermann, carmine, 163

Light, action on alcohol with chromic material, 39; on metallic salts, 242.

Light green, 222.

Lilienfeld, blood-plates, 452.

Lillie, embryology of *Unio*, 349.

Limulus, embryology, 353.

Lindsay Johnson, *see* Johnson.

Linseed oil injection, 311.

Liquid of Müller, of Erlicki, of Merkel, etc., *see* the names of the respective authors.

Liquidambar, 287.

Liquor ferri sulphurici oxidati, 188.

List, methyl green and eosin, 221; hæmatoxylin and eosin, 266; goblet-cells, 456; Coccidæ, 467; Actinida, 484.

Liver, 457.

Livini, elastic tissue, 441.

Lo Bianco, tobacco narcotisation, 12; alcohol narcotisation, 14; chloral narcotisation, 15; poisoning method, 16; chromo-acetic acid, 40; chromo-osmic acid, 40; osmic acid and bichromate, 44; sublimate solution, 55; chromic sublimate, 59; acid alcohol, 73; methods for marine animals, 459 *et seq.;* Actinida, 484; Alcyonaria, 485; Asteroidea, 482; Brachiopoda, 461; Bryozoa, 460; Chætopoda, 470; Crinoidea, 482; Ctenophora, 489; Echinoidea, 482; Enteropneusta, 469; Gastropoda, 462; Gephyrea, 473; Holothurioidea, 480, 481; Lamellibranchs, 461; Medusæ, 486; Nematoda, 475; Nemertina, 476; Ophiuridea, 482; Protozoa, 493; Siphonophora, 488; Trematodes, 478; Tunicata, 459, 460; Turbellaria, 480; Zoantharia, 485.

Locke, salt solution, 269.

Locy, embryology of Araneida, 353.

Loewenthal, liquid of Erlicki, 52.

Loewy, epidermis, 366.

Löffler, stain for flagella, 495.

Loisel, *intra vitam* staining, 158; Congo red, 220; neutral red, 220.

Longhi, Protozoa, 494.

Longworth, corpuscles of Krause, 369.

Lönnberg, *Triænophorus*, 477.

Looss, eau de Labarraque, 321; Nematodes, 475; *Bilharzia*, 478.

Lord, Nissl's stain, 390.

Löwe lens, 370.

Löwit, gold method, 252; blood, 449.

Lugol, iodine solution, 66.

Luithlen and Sorgo, Nissl's stain, 391.

Lustgarten, Victoria blue, 206.

Luxenburg, stain for nerve-cells, 392.

Lysol, for maceration, 318.

M.

Maas, carmine and malachite green, 265; larvæ of sponges, 490.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Macallum, carmine and indigo-carmine, 264.
Mac Bride, *Amphiura*, 483.
Maceration, 312—319; maceration of epithelium, 464.
Magdala red, 207.
Magenta, 207.
Magenta S, 215.
Magini, zinc impregnation, 427.
Magnesia-carmine, 171.
Magnesium chloride, narcotisation, 16; Magnesium sulphate, narcotisation, 16.
Mährenthal, von, osmic acid stain, 260.
Malachite green, 222, 265.
Malassez, ammonia-carmine, 171; salt solution, 269.
Mallory, phospho-molybdic hæmatoxylin, 191; phospho-tungstic hæmatoxylin, 192; Weigert's neuroglia stain, 429.
Mammalia, embryology, 333—337.
Manchester brown, 210.
Manfredi, gold method, 255.
Manganese chloride, 269.
Mann, picro-sublimate, 59; osmio-sublimate, 59; serial sections, 145; fixing nerve-centres, 379; hæmatein stain, 185; toluidin blue, 208; Wasserblau, 225.
Marcano, blood, 448.
Marchesini, medullated nerve, 395.
Marchi, corpuscles of Golgi, 373; degenerate nerves, 404; mucus of Gastropoda, 462.
Marcus, formol for spinal cord, 386.
Marina, fixing nervous system, 387.
Marine animals, precautions in preparing, 27; silver impregnation, 248; gold impregnation, 258.
Marine glue, 291.
Mark, collodionising sections, 111.
Marpmann, fluorides, 61.
Marschalkò, plasma cells, 439.
Marsh, carmine and indigo-carmine, 264; gelatin cement, 289.
Martin, benzo-azurin, 207, 226.
Martinotti, C., elastic tissue, 441.
Martinotti, G., damar, 284; anilin blue-black, 409; picro-nigrosin, 409; elastic tissue, 440.
Martinotti and Resegotti, safranin, 204.
Mason, nervous system of reptiles, 387.
Mastzellen, 437—439.
Matschinsky, bone, 443.
Maurice and Schulgin, bleu de Lyon, 225, 265.
Mayer, P., principles of technique, 10; preparing marine animals, 28; bleaching osmic objects, 35; washing out chromic objects, 37; chromic acid and alcohol, 39; liquid of Perényi, 47; washing sublimate material, 55; picro-sulphuric acid, 68; picro-nitric, 68; picro-hydrochloric, 68; tests for alcohol, 70; acid alcohol, 72; paraffin imbedding, 92, 93, 99, 116; water-bath, 100, 102; gelatin imbedding, 117; serial sections, water method, 140; albumen method, 143, 147; shellac method, 146; theory of staining, 155; staining with carmine, 163—166; staining with cochineal, 165; carmalum, 167; aluminium chloride carmine stain, 167; alum-carmine, 168; Partsch's cochineal, 168; magnesia-carmine, 171; picro-carmine, 171; picro-magnesia-carmine, 172; borax-carmine, 172, 173; paracarmine, 173; hydrochloric acid carmine, 174; alcoholic cochineal, 174—176; theory of hæmatoxylin staining, 177—179; hæmatein, 179; hæmateate of ammonia, 180; bluing hæmatein stains, 180, 181; hæmalum, 182, 183; glychæmalum, 184; Ehrlich's hæmatoxylin, 185; hæmacalcium, 185; methyl violet, 208; methyl green, 208; iodine green, 223; Bismarck brown, 211; Kernschwarz, 262; Brazilin, 263; carmine and indigo-carmine, 264; hæmalum and indigo-carmine, 264; mucicarmine, 454; muchæ-

The numbers refer to the Pages.

matein, 455; balsam, 282, 283; Venice turpentine, 286; decalcification, 324, 325; desilicification, 326; bleaching, 327; injection, 309; mucus, 454, 455.
MAYER, P., ANDRES, and GIESBRECHT, section-stretcher, 109.
MAYER, P., and SCHOEBEL, knife-holders, 107.
MAYER, S., neutral red, 220; violet B, 226; methylen blue, 233, 235, 239; connective tissue, 435.
MAYSEL, Bismarck brown, 210.
MCCRORIE, night-blue for flagella, 496.
MCMURRICH, ova of *Jaera*, 354.
Medullated nerve structure, 393—395; stains for, 396—408.
Medusæ, 486, 487.
MEHNERT, embryological methods, 341.
MEISENHEIMER, embryology of *Limax*, 348.
MEISSNER, corpuscles of, 252, 369.
MELNIKOFF-RASVEDENKOFF, formol, 74.
Menthol for narcotisation, 15.
MERCIER, nerve stain, 404.
Mercuric mixtures, 57 *et seq.*, and *see* Sublimate.
Mercury, bichloride, *see* Sublimate; biniodide, 280.
MERK, liquid of Flemming, 43.
MERKEL, chromo-platinic mixture, 48; carmine and indigo-carmine, 264.
MERKEL and KRAUSE, molybdenum impregnation, 261.
MERKEL and SCHIEFFERDECKER, celloidin imbedding, 121.
Metagelatin, 298.
Metallic salts, action of light on, 242.
Metallic stains, 241—261.
Metanil yellow, 214.
METCALF, embryology of *Chiton*, 349.
Methyl alcohol, for narcotisation, 14; refractive index, 81.
Methyl blue, 225.
Methyl green, 208.
Methyl green and eosin, 221.
Methyl salicylate, 86.
Methyl violet, 207; test for, 208; progressive stain, 211.
Methyl violet B, 226.
Methylal, for dehydration, 5.
Methylanilin green, 208.
Methylanilin violet, 211.
Methylated spirit, 497.
Methylen blue, chemistry of, 228; uses of, 229; for *intra vitam* staining, 229; for central nervous system, 430; for impregnation, 228—239; generalities, 229—232; staining nervous tissue, 230—239, 389—391, 393, 430; staining by injection or immersion, 232; the solutions employed, 232; preservation of the preparations, 235—239; impregnation of epithelia, etc., 239.
Methylen blue, polychromatic, 228.
Methylen blue and eosin, 222.
Methylen blue and erythrosin, 391.
Methylen blue and fuchsin, 226.
Methylen red, 228.
MEYER, E., celloidin sections, 132.
MEYER, F., salicylic vinegar, 274.
MEYER, SEMI, methylen blue for nerve centres, 430.
MIBELLI, elastic tissue, 440.
MICHAELIS, ova of *Triton*, 343.
Micro-chemistry of the cell, 359.
Microtome knives, 105, 106; microtomes, 87—89, 104.
MIGULA, glycerised serum, 271.
MILLER, caoutchouc cement, 289, 290; injection, 306.
MINOT, microtome, 89; hæmatoxylin stains, 192; celloidin sections, 131.
Miracidia, 356.
MITROPHANOW, double imbedding, 135; Wasserblau, 225; nerve stain, 403.
MITSUKURI, embryology of tortoise, 340.
MÖBIUS, maceration, 316.
MOERNER, cartilage, 446.
MOLESCHOTT, maceration, 314.
MOLESCHOTT and PISO BORME, maceration, 313.
MÖLLER, picro-Säurefuchsin, 215, 267.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Mollusca, 461 *et seq.*; embryology, 347—349.
Molluscoida, 460.
Molybdate of ammonium, impregnation, 261.
MÖNCKEBERG and BETHE, treatment of osmic material, 34, 328; peripheral nerves, 410.
Monobromide of naphthalin, 81, 281.
MONTGOMERY, Nemertina, 477.
MONTI, copper impregnation, 427.
MOORE, A. Y., blood, 450.
MOORE, V. A., freezing method, 139.
Mordants, 159 *et seq.*
MORGAN, embryology of Amphibia, 342, 343; embryology of Ascidians, 346; embryology of *Periplaneta*, 350.
MORTON, flagella, 496.
MOSELEY, shell, 464.
Motor nerve-endings, 371 *et seq.*
Mounting in fluids, 289.
Mounting media, *see* Examination and Preservation.
Muchæmatein, 455.
Mucicarmine, 454.
Mucicarminic acid, 455.
Mucin, 453—456.
Mucus, removal from Gastropoda, 462.
Mucus cells, 453—456.
MUIR, blood, 447.
MÜLLER, solution of, 51; for maceration, 316; for injection, 309.
MÜLLER, C. F., silver impregnation, 247.
MÜLLER, G. W., Ostracoda, 466.
MÜNDER, address, 162.
MUNSON, chloral hydrate, 272.
Muscle, smooth, 374—376.
Muscle and tendon, 371—376.
Muscle cells, 371.
Myelin stains, 396—408.
Myzostoma, 469.

N.

NABIAS, R. DE, nervous system of Pulmonata, 463.
Nails, 368.
NANSEN, maceration, 316.
Naphtha, for imbedding, 96.
Naphthalin, monobromide of, 81, 281.
Naphthalin red, 207.
Narcotisation, 12 *et seq.*
NATHUSIUS, VON, horn, 368.
Natural injections, 311.
NEALEY, bone and teeth, 444.
NEELSEN and SCHIEFFERDECKER, clearing agents, 80; origanum oil, 83; sandal-wood oil, 84.
Negative impregnation, 241.
Nematocysts, 484.
Nematoda, 475; embryology, 356.
Nemertina, 476.
Nephelis, 18.
Nerve-cells, 389—393.
Nerve-endings in muscle and tendon, 371—376; in skin and others, 368—370; and *see* Methylen blue and Neurological methods.
Nerve-fibres, structure, 393—395.
Nervous centres of reptiles, fishes, and Amphibia, 387; of Gastropoda, 463; of Arthropods, 468; and *see* Neurological methods.
Nervous system, *see* Neurological methods.
NESTEROFFSKY, gold method, 255.
NEUMAYER, knife-wedges, 107.
Neuroceratin, 393.
Neuro-fibrils, 394, 502.
Neuroglia, 428—430.
Neurological methods, 377; introduction and hardening methods, 377—389; cytological methods, 389—395; myelin stains, 396—406; myelin and axis-cylinder ditto, 407, 408; axis-cylinder and protoplasm ditto, 409—430; retina, inner ear, etc., 431.
Neutral balsam, 283.
Neutral chromate of ammonia, 52.
Neutral differentiation or extraction, 198.
"Neutral" dyes, 193.
Neutral red, 220; for nerve-cells, 392; for mucus cells, 455.
Neutralisation of carmine solutions, 301.
NIAS, cleaning slides, 500.
NICOLAS, gelatin imbedding, 119.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Nicotin for narcotisation, 13.
Niessing, fixing liquids, 362.
Nietzki, carminic acid, 164; hæmatein, 177.
Nigranilin, 226.
Nigrosin, as a chromatin stain, 207; as a plasma stain, 223.
Nikiforow, Ehrlich's acidophilous mixture, 224; myelin stain, 408.
Nissl, stain for nerve-cells, 389.
Nitrate of silver impregnation, 243—249; generalities, 243; solutions, 245; reduction, 247; after-blackening, 248; marine animals, 248; vulcanite rings for, 244; and *see* Golgi.
Nitrate of uranium, 36.
Nitric acid, for fixing and hardening, 46, 382; for maceration, 317; for corrosion, 321; for decalcification, 323, 324; for bleaching, 329.
Nitrite of amyl, 297.
Noack, orientation, 108.
Nocht, methylen blue and red, 228.
Noir Colin, 226.
Noll, mounting medium, 274; corrosion, 321.
Nordmann, plasma cells, 438.
Normal salt solution, 269.
Norris and Shakespeare, carmine and indigo-carmine, 264.
Nowak, water-bath, 114.
Nucleoli, 365.
Nusbaum, serial sections, 140, 142.

O.

Obersteiner, hardening nerve-centres, 382.
Obregia, serial sections, 151; Golgi's impregnation, 423.
Odenius, maceration, 318.
Ohlmacher, sublimate alcohol, 65; section fixing, 144; mordanting with formalin, 200; safranin artefacts, 204; picro-Säurefuchsin, 215; myelin stain, 408.
Oil, of aniseed, 81, 139; bergamot, 81, 83, 97; cajeput, 84; cedar, 6, 9, 81, 97, 286; cinnamon, 81, 83; cloves, 9, 81, 96, 199; lemons, 81; origanum, 83; sandal-wood, 84; thyme, 84; turpentine, 81, 84, 96, 286; and *see* Clearing agents.
Olive oil, refraction, 81.
Ophiuridea, 482.
Oppel, gastric glands, 456; liver and spleen, 457.
Oppitz, silver impregnation, 247.
Optical differentiation, 23, 41.
Orange G, 213, 214.
Orcein, Israel's method, 263; Unna's, 436, 441.
Orchella, 263.
Orchestia, ova, 354.
Orientation, in paraffin, 103, 104; in celloidin, 124; of blocks, 107, 108, 501.
Origanum oil, 83.
Orseille, 263.
Orth, "Formol-Müller," 76, 387.
Osmic acid, generalities, 23, 31; how to keep, 31; regeneration of, 32; fixation with, 33; after-treatment, 34; characters of the fixation, 35; blackening of fat, 36; mixtures, 36, 40, *et seq.;* sublimate mixtures, 59; picric mixtures, 69; stains with pyrogallol, pyroligneous acid or tannin, 258—260; stains for medullated nerve, 404—406.
Osmicated cells, 35.
Osmic-bichromic mixtures, 44.
Osmio-sublimate mixtures, 59.
Osmium, *see* Osmic acid.
Osmium-carmine, 479.
Osmosis, to avoid, 4.
Ostracoda, 466.
Otocyst of *Mysis*, 469.
Ova, *see* Embryological methods.
Ovens, 100.
Overton, bleaching, 34, 38; fixing with iodine, 66; fixing Infusoria, 53.
Oviatt and Sargent, injecting, 298.
Oxalic acid, for maceratio,n 318.
Oxygenated water, for narcotisation, 18; for bleaching, 34, 328.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

P.

Pacini, preservative liquids, 273.

Pal, nerve stain, 400; Golgi's sublimate method, 426.

Paladino, nerve stain, 407.

Palladium chloride, for fixing, 61; staining, 260; decalcifying, 323.

Palladium iodide, 407.

Pancreatin digestion fluid, 319.

Paneth, hæmatoxylin, 398; goblet-cells, 456.

Pansch, starch injection, 311.

Paper cell mounting method, 289.

Paper trays and thimbles, 91.

Paracarmine, 173.

Paraffin, for preserving material, 6; solvents of, 96, 97; imbedding in, 91—117; orienting in, 104; cutting, 108—113; ribbons, 112; coating blocks of, 113; electrification of, 113; masses recommended, 115, 116; mounting sections, 140; cement, 292.

Paraffinum liquidum, 81.

Parker, dehydration, 5; methylen blue, 237; turpentine cement, 291; bleaching, 329; eyes of Arthropods, 467.

Parker and **Floyd**, formol for brain, 386.

Parma blue, 224.

Partsch, cochineal, 168.

Passarge and **Krösing**, elastic tissue, 441.

Patten, orientation in paraffin, 103; embryology of Blattida, 352; eyes of Lamellibranchs, 463; maceration of Mollusca, 465.

Paulsen, goblet-cells, 456.

Pauropoda, 466.

Peabody, methylen blue, 238.

Pelagic ova, 346.

Pentacrinus, 483.

Pepsin digestion fluids, 319.

Perchloride of iron, for fixing, 61; for staining, 260.

Peremeschko, larvæ of Amphibia, 358.

Perényi, chromo-nitric acid, 46.

Permanganate of potash, for bleaching, 34, 328; for mordanting, 160, 200; for maceration, 316.

Perophora, 347.

Peroxide of hydrogen, for narcotisation, 18; for bleaching, 34, 328.

Peroxide of sodium, 34, 328.

Perrier, *Lumbricus*, 470.

Perruthenic acid, 456.

Petroleum-ether, 97.

Pfeiffer von Wellheim, iron-carmine, 170.

Pfister, hardening nerve-centres, 381.

Pfitzner, safranin, 203; damar solution, 284; Protozoa, 492.

Phalangida, embryology, 352.

Phénicienne, La, 210.

Phenylen brown, 210.

Philippson, epidermis, 366.

Phloroglucin, 325.

Phloxin, 221.

Phospho-molybdic hæmatoxylin, 191.

Phosphoric acid, 323, 325.

Phospho-tungstic hæmatoxylin, 192.

Photoxylin for imbedding, 121.

Physa, ova, 349.

Physiological salt solution, 269.

Pianese, formic acid carmine, 170; methylen blue and eosin, 222; carmine and picro-nigrosin, 265.

Picric acid, fixation with, 66—69; solubility, 66; washing out, 67; as a plasma stain, 212; for decalcification, 325.

Picric alcohol, 69, 316.

Picro-acetic acid, 67.

Picro-alum-carmine, 169.

Picro-carmine, 171, 172.

Picro-chromic acid, 69.

Picro-hydrochloric acid, 68, 325.

Picro-indigo-carmine, 265.

Picro-magnesia-carmine, 172.

Picro-nigrosin, 265, 409.

Picro-nitric acid, 68, 325.

Picro-nitro-chromic acid, 69.

Picro-osmic acid, 69.

Picro-platinic mixtures, 69.

Picro-Säurefuchsin, 215; with hæmatoxylin, 267.

Picro-sublimate mixtures, 58.

Picro-sulphuric acid, 67.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

PICTET, examination liquid, 269.
Pigment, removal of, 467.
Pigment spots, artificial, 383.
PINTNER, Tæniæ, 477.
Pisces, embryology, 344.
PISENTI, alum-carmine, 168.
PIZON, gemmation of Ascidians, 346.
Plasma cells, 437—439.
Plasma fibrils, 367.
Plasma stains, defined, 154, 212; the coal-tar, 212—227; cytological, 364.
Plastic reconstruction of sections, 332.
Platino-aceto-osmic acid, 45, 362.
Platino-sublimate mixture, 331.
Platinum chloride, 60; mixtures, 44, 45, 48, 331.
PLATNER, medullated nerve, 61, 394; Kernschwarz, 262.
PLESCHKO, methylen blue, 239.
PLESSIS, DU, *see* DU PLESSIS.
Pluteus, 483.
PODWYSSOZKI, fixing mixture, 43; safranin, 204.
Poisoning, 16 *et seq.*
POLAILLON, iron impregnation, 260.
Polarisation, for myelin, 406.
POLITZER, inner ear, 434.
POLUMORDWINOW, stain for nerve-cells, 392.
Polychæta, embryology, 354.
Polychromatic methylen blue, 228.
PÖLZAM, soap imbedding, 117.
POPOW, neuroglia, 430.
Porifera, 489, 490.
Positive impregnation, 241.
Potash, for maceration, 314; for corrosion, 321; acetate of, *see* Acetate; bichromate of, *see* Bichromate; hypochlorite of, *see* Hypochlorite; permanganate of, *see* Permanganate.
Potassium bichromate, *see* Bichromate.
Potassium ferricyanide, for bleaching, 35.
Potassium permanganate, for bleaching, 34, 328; as a mordant, 160, 200; for maceration, 316.
POUCHET, bleaching, 328.
PRENANT, safranin, 204; cochlea, 433.
Preservation of material, 5, 6.
Preservative media, *see* Examination and Preservation.
PREYER, star-fishes, 14.
Prickle-cells, 366.
Primerose, 221.
PRINCE, blood, 451.
PRINGLE, vacuum imbedding, 101.
PRITCHARD, chromic acid mixture, 39; reducing liquid, 255; cochlea, 434.
Progressive staining, 154, 195.
Protozoa, 490—495.
PROWAZEK, neutral red, 220.
PRUDDEN, hæmatoxylin, 184.
Prussian blue, impregnation, 260; injections, 299, 303—305, 308, 309; soluble, 303.
PRZESMYCKI, Protozoa, 492.
PURCELL, eyes of Phalangida, 467.
Purpurin, 264.
Pyridin, 73, 379.
Pyrogallate of iron stain, 260.
Pyrogallate of osmium stain, 258.
Pyroligneous acid carmine, 170.
Pyroligneous acid hæmatoxylin, 187.
Pyrosin, 221.
Pyrosoma, 460.

Q.

QUERVAIN, DE, fixation of nervous tissue, 379.
Quieting Infusoria, etc., 491.
Quinoleïn, 223.

R.

Rabbit, embryology, 333—336.
RABL, chromo-formic acid, 40; picro-sublimate, 58; platinum chloride, 60; paraffin sections, 112, 116; serial sections, 145; cochineal, 169; hæmatoxylin and safranin, 267; embryological methods, 331, 343.
RABL-RÜCKHARD, embryology of Salmonidæ, 345.
RAFFAELE, pelagic ova, 346.
Raja, 434.
RAMÓN Y CAJAL, *see* CAJAL.
RANVIER, osmic acid, 36; chromic

The numbers refer to the Pages.

acid, 38; one-third alcohol, 71; absolute alcohol, 72; ammonia-carmine, 171; picro-carmine, 171, 172; quinoleïn blue, 223; purpurin, 264; impregnation, secondary, 242; impregnation, with silver, 243—245; with gold and formic acid, 252; with gold and lemon juice, 252; after blackening of gold, 258; iodised serum, 270; injections, carmine, 300; injections, Prussian blue, 303, 309; impregnation injections, 306; maceration, 313, 316, 317, 318; decalcification, 324; tactile corpuscles, 368; cornea, 369; nerve and muscle, 372; corpuscles of Golgi, 373; bladder of frog, 375; medullated nerve, 395; retina, 431, 433; areolar tissue, 435; clasmatocytes, 440; bone, 442; goblet-cells, 456; glands, 457.

RAWITZ, picro-nitro-chromic acid, 69; picro-nitro-osmic acid, 69; carmalum, 167; inversion stains, 226; artificial alizarin, 227; bleaching, 329; mucicarminic acid, 455; eyes of Lamellibranchs, 463.

Reagents, 161.

RECKLINGHAUSEN, silver impregnation, 245, 247.

Reconstruction from sections, 332; and *see* Orientation.

REDDING, gold impregnations, 258.

REDENBAUGH, narcotisation, 16.

REES, VAN, larvæ of Diptera, 351.

Refraction, indices of, 80.

REGAUD, silver impregnation, 246.

Regressive staining, 155, 196; with tar colours, general directions, 196—200.

REHM, benzin colophonium, 286; stains for nerve-cells, 392, 410.

REICH, silver impregnation, 245.

REICHENBACH, ova of *Astacus*, 353.

REINBACH, triacid mixture, 219.

REINHOLD-GILTAY, microtome, 89.

REINKE, gentian and orange stain, 214; lysol, 318; horny tissues, 368.

REJSEK, corrosion, 322.

REMAK, hardening ova, 343.

RENAUT, hæmatoxylin and eosin, 266; silver staining, 246.

Reptilia, embryology, 340; nervous centres, 387.

RESEGOTTI, staining by substitution, 198; safranin, 202, 204.

Resins and balsams, 281.

Retina, 19, 431, *et seq.*

RETTERER, embryology of rabbit, 335; smooth muscle, 374.

RETTERER and ZELLNER, natural injections, 311.

RETZIUS, methylen blue, 233, 235.

REZZONICO, medullated nerve, 395.

RHUMBLER, paraffin imbedding, 94; methyl green and eosin, 221.

RIBBERT, phospho-molybdic hæmatoxylin, 191; connective tissue, 436.

Ribbon section-cutting, 112.

RICHARD, narcotisation, 15.

RIEDER, fat, 437.

RIEVEL, *Ophryotrocha*, 471.

Ringing wet mounts, 289.

RIPART and PETIT'S liquid, 65, 273.

Ripening of hæmatoxylin, 177—179.

RITTER, Ascidians, 347; ova of *Chironomus*, 351.

ROBERT, *Aplysia*, 462.

ROBERTSON, imbedding method, 135; nerve stain, 404, 406; platinum impregnation, 428.

ROBIN, injections, 298—300, 306; natural ditto, 311.

ROBINSKI, silver impregnation, 245.

ROLLETT, freezing method, 139; cornea, 316, 370.

ROOSEVELT, pyrogallate of iron, 260.

RÖSE, bone, 443.

Rose B à l'eau, 221.

Rose de naphthalin, 207.

ROSENSTADT, fixing liquid, 60; eyes of Decapods, 468.

ROSIN, "neutral" dyes, 194; neutral red, 221, 392.

ROSSI, nerve stain, 404; blood, 449.

ROSSOLIMOW and BUSCH, nerve stain, 405.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Rossolimow and Murawiew, nerve stain, 393.
Rotatoria, 473; embryology, 355.
Roth aus Methylenblau, 228.
Rouget, methylen blue, 233; silver impregnation, 246, 247.
Rousseau, decalcification, 322; desilicification, 327.
Rousselet, cements, 288, 290; aqueous mounts, 289; Rotatoria, 473.
Rubaschkin, methylen blue, 232.
Rubin, "basic," 207; "acid," Rubin S, 215.
Rubinstein, blood, 447.
Ruffini, corpuscles of Golgi, 373.
Ruprecht, bone, 444.
Russo, *Ophiothrix*, 482.
Ruthenium, impregnation, 261; oxychloride, 261; red, 261.
Ryder, double imbedding, 134.

S.

Sabussow, double imbedding, 135.
Sacerdotti, Golgi's impregnation, 421.
Sadovsky, Nissl's stain, 390.
Saefftigen, *Echinorhyncus*, 474.
Saffrosin, 221.
Safranin, 202—204; for elastic tissue, 440; for bone, 446; for mucus cells, 454; with indigo-carmine or nigrosin, 224; with Wasserblau, 225; with Lichtgrün or Säureviolett, 222.
Sahli, balsam, 283; hardening nerve-centres, 381, 382; myelin and axis-cylinder stains, 407.
Sala, Golgi's impregnation, 422.
Salicylic vinegar, 274.
Saliva, artificial, 315.
Salivary glands, 456.
Salmonidæ, embryology, 344, 345.
Salpa, 460.
Salt, solution, 269; for maceration, 313.
Salts, metallic, action of light on, 242.
Samassa, Golgi's impregnation, 422; Ctenophora, 489.
Samter, paraffin imbedding, 94, 104.
Sandal-wood oil, 84.
Sandarac for mounting, 287.
Sanders, Cox's sublimate impregnation, 426.
Sankey, anilin blue-black, 409.
Santorius, paraffin stove, 101.
Sattler, silver impregnation, 247.
Sauer, kidney, 458.
Säurefuchsin, 215; and orange, 267.
Säuregelb, 214.
Säurerubin, 215.
Säureviolett, 222.
Saville Kent, Infusoria, 66.
Sazepin, antennæ, 467.
Scarpatetti, axis cylinder-stain, 411.
Schäfer, muscle cells, 371.
Schaffer, decalcification, 325; reconstruction, 332; retina, 432; bone, 442, 445, 446.
Schällibaum, serial sections, 145.
Schaper, reconstruction, 332.
Schaudinn, Protozoa, 494.
Schenk, acetate of uranium, 65.
Schewiakoff, Protozoa, 494.
Schiefferdecker, clearing agents, 80; microtome, 88; knife, 105; serial sections, 140, 147; celloidin injections, 310; methyl mixture, 318; digestion, 319; medullated nerve, 395; retina, 433; elastic tissue, 441; cartilage, 446.
Schmaus, anilin blue-black, 409.
Schmidt, embryology of Selachii, 346; embryology of Pulmonata, 348.
Schneider, Aimé, injection of Arthropods, 468.
Schneider, Anton, aceto-carmine, 169.
Schreiber, Golgi's impregnation, 420.
Schultz, smooth muscle, 374.
Schultze, F. E., palladium chloride, 61; section-stretcher, 109.
Schultze, Max, iodised serum, 270; acetate of potash, 271; retina, 433.
Schultze, O., ova of Amphibia, 343.
Schürmayer, Infusoria, 491.
Schutz, plasma fibrils, 367.
Schwalbe, impregnation, 242; smooth muscle, 374; cochlea, 433.
Schwartz, Cercariæ, 478.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Schydlowski, paraffin imbedding, 94.
Sclavo, flagella, 496.
Scorpionidea, embryology, 353.
Scott and **Osborn**, embryology of *Triton*, 342.
Sealing-wax varnish, 293.
Sections, collodionisation, 110; cutting paraffin, 108; ribbons of, 112; rolling of, 108—110, 112; flattening, 113, 148; mounting, 140, *et seq.;* reconstruction from, 332.
Section-grinding, 136.
Section-stretchers, 109.
Seeliger, *Antedon*, 483.
Segall, medullated nerve, 395.
Sehrwald, Golgi's impregnation, 422.
Seiler, carmine and indigo-carmine, 264; alcohol balsam, 284; cleaning slides, 499.
Selachii, embryology, 346.
Selenka, imbedding apparatus, 93.
Seligmann, methods for the eye, 431.
Serial section mounting, 140—152; paraffin sections, 140 *et seq.*, 151; watery sections, 146; celloidin sections, 147.
Serum, iodised, 270, 271; maceration in, 313.
Shell, 464.
Shellac, for imbedding, 136; for section fixing, 146; varnish, 293.
Shimer, mounting medium, 274.
"Siebdosen," 4.
Siebenmann, labyrinth, 434.
Siemerling, formol for nervous system, 387.
Sieve-dishes, 4.
Silver nitrate, *see* Nitrate of silver.
Silver, other salts, 246.
Siphon, Ewald's capillary, 4.
Siphonophora, 487.
Skin, 366 *et seq.*
Slides, cleaning, 499; labelling, 501.
Smirnow, tactile corpuscles, 368.
Smith, Hopewell, odontoblasts, 414.
Smooth muscle, 374.
Soap imbedding, 117, 478.
Sobotta, imbedding ova, 332; ova of mouse, 336; ova of rabbit, 337; ova of *Amphioxus*, 346.
Soda, for maceration, 314; for corrosion, 321; for bleaching, 329; hypochlorite of, *see* Hypochlorite.
Sodium, peroxide, 34, 328; iodate, 36; chloride, 269, 313.
Solferino, 207.
Solger, bleaching, 328; salivary glands, 456.
Solid green, 222.
Sollas, freezing mass, 138.
Sorby, killing marine animals, 15.
Soulier, maceration, 314.
Souza, de, pyridin, 73.
Spee, Graf, prepared paraffin, 116.
Spek, van der, plasma cells and Mastzellen, 439.
Spengel, microtome, 88.
Sphærozoa, 494.
Spicules of sponges, 490.
Spinal cord, *see* Neurological methods.
Spirit-proof cement, 290.
Spleen, 457.
Sponges, 489.
Sporozoa, 494.
Squire, benzol, toluol, xylol, 85; bluing hæmatoxylin stains, 180; Kleinenberg's hæmatoxylin, 187; methyl green, 210; Ehrlich-Biondi stain, 216; salts of gold, 250; hæmatoxylin and Säurefuchsin, 267; glycerin jelly, 279; decalcification, 324, 325.
"Stabilit," 129.
Staining, in bulk and on the slide, 7; tubes for, 8; reagents for, 161; generalities on, 153—162; with carmine, 163; with hæmatoxylin, 177; with tar colours, 193; methods of, 154; theories of, 156; progressive, 154, 195; regressive, 155, 196; substantive and adjective, 159; *intra vitam*, 156, 229; during life, 156, 229.
Stains, combined, 262 *et seq.;* combined with carmine, 264; combined with hæmatein, 266.
Stains, kinds of, 153; specific, 153; nuclear, 153; plasmatic, 154; in-

verted, 226; choice of, 161; cytological, 363—365.
Stains, metallic, 241—262.
Starch injection, 311.
Starke, osmicated fat, 36.
Statoblasts, 347.
Stauffacher, embryology of *Cyclas*, 349.
Steinach, sieve-dishes, 4.
Stephens, stain for flagella, 496.
Stephenson's high refractive medium, 280.
Stilling and Pfitzner, stomach of *Triton*, 376.
Stirling, maceration, 314.
Stöhr, eosin, 266.
Stomach of *Triton*, 376.
Storax, *see* Styrax.
Storch, Weigert's neuroglia stain, 429.
Stoves, 100.
Strahl, embryological methods, 341.
Strasser, section-stretcher, 109; Schällibaum's collodion, 145; collodion-paper method, 145; ribbon microtome, 145; reconstruction, 333; imbedding nervous system, 389.
Stricht, van der, bergamot oil and fatty granules, 83; decalcification, 325.
Stricker, gum imbedding, 135.
Stroebe, myelin stain, 408.
Strong, fixing nerve-centres, 379; Golgi impregnation, 419.
Stylaria, 18.
Styrax, 287.
Sublimate, corrosive, generalities, 54; fixation with, 54 *et seq.*; acetic solutions, 54, 55; various mixtures, 52, 57—60, 331; alcoholic, 64, 65; preservative liquids, 272.
Substantive staining, 159.
Substitution in staining, 198.
Suchannek, sieve-dishes, 4; bergamot oil, 83; anilin oil, 85; serial sections, 140; Venice turpentine, 286.
Sudan III, 437.
Sulphate of copper, for fixing, 51—53, 343, 487; for staining, 260; for impregnation, 427.
Sulphate of magnesia, narcotisation, 16.
Sulphide of carbon, 81.
Sulphides for impregnation, 261.
Sulphindigotate of soda, 264.
Sulphocyanides, 314.
Sulphur, refractive index, 81.
Sulphuric acid, for maceration, 318.
Sulphurous acid, for bleaching osmic material, 35; for bichromate ditto, 50; for fixing, 53.
Summers, Schällibaum's collodion, 145; ether method, 147.
Sunning metallic salts, 242.
Sussdorf, mucin, 453.
Syrup, mounting media, 271, 275; for freezing, 138.

T.

Tactile corpuscles, 368.
Tænia, 477; ova, 355.
Tafani, inner ear, 434.
Taguchi, injection, 310.
Tal, Golgi's sublimate method, 426.
Tannin, examination medium, 273; for demonstrating cilia, 495.
Tar colours, 193 *et seq.*
Tardigrada, 353.
Tartuferi, cornea, 370.
Teeth, 443, 444.
Tegumentary organs, 366—370.
Teichmann, white injection, 306; linseed oil injection, 311.
Teleostea, embryology, 344.
Teljatnik, Nissl's stain, 390; Marchi's, 405.
Tellyesnicky, fixing agents, 25; nitric acid, 46; acetic bichromate, 50; alcohol, 70.
Tendon, 373 *et seq.*
Test-cells of Ascidians, 346.
Thiersch, indigo-carmine, 264; carmine injection, 303; Prussian blue injection, 305; green and yellow injection, 306.
Thimbles, paper, 91.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Thin, retina, 433.
Thionin, 206; for impregnation, 240; for nerve-cells, 391; for mucus cells, 453, 454.
Thiophen, green, 223.
Thoma, microtome, 87; decalcification, 324.
Thomé, Ehrlich-Biondi stain, 217.
Thompson, mounting medium, 281.
Thread-cells, 484.
Thus, gum, 287.
Thyme oil, 84.
Timofeew, hardening nerve tissue, 382.
Tintinnodea, 493.
Tirelli, medullated nerve, 395.
Tizzoni, alum-carmine, 168.
Tobacco narcotisation, 12, 13, 17.
Toison, blood, 450.
Tolu balsam cement, 293.
Toluen, *see* Toluol.
Toluidin blue, 208; chromatin stain, 208; for impregnation, 240; for nerve-cells, 392.
Toluol, for clearing, 85; for imbedding, 96.
Tornier, hæmatoxylin and sublimate, 187.
Torpedo, 434.
Tortoise, embryology, 340.
Tourneux and **Herrmann**, silver impregnation, 246.
Tower, Cestodes, 478.
Trambusti, Ehrlich-Biondi stain, 217.
Trays for imbedding, 91.
Trematodes, 478; embryology, 356.
Trenkmann, stain for flagella, 496.
Trezebinski, ganglion cells, 383.
Triacid mixture, 218.
Trichinæ, 476.
Triepel, elastic tissue, 441.
Tropæolin O, 214.
Trypsin digestion, 320.
Tschernyschew and **Karusin**, nerve stain, 401.
Tschisch, liquid of Erlicki, 52.
Tubes for staining on slide, 8.
Tullberg, narcotisation, 16.
Tunicata, 459, 460; embryology, 346; gemmation, 346.
Turbellaria, 479; embryology, 355.
Turpentine cement, 291.
Turpentine, oil of, for clearing, 81; for imbedding, 96; for mounting, 286.
Turpentine, Venice, 286; cement, 291.

U.

Uexküll, asphyxiation, 17, 18.
Underwood, teeth, 444.
Unio, ova and glochidia, 349.
Unna, washing out chromic objects, 38; ripening hæmatoxylin, 177; hæmatoxylin solution, 179; keratohyalin, 366; plasma fibrils, 367; smooth muscle, 375; connective tissue, 436; plasma cells and Mastzellen, 438; elastic tissue, 441; erythrocytes, 451; fibrin, 453; mucin, 454.
Upson, impregnation methods, 427.
Uranium, nitrate, 36; acetate, 36, 65.
Ussow, ova of Cephalopoda, 347.

V.

Vacuum imbedding, 101.
Van Beneden, *see* **Beneden**; and for all names with the prefix **van** *see* the patronymics.
Vanadium chloride stain, 410.
Varnish, negative, for mounting, 287.
Varnishes, 288 *et seq.*
Vaso-dilators for injections, 297, 421.
Vassale, Marchi's nerve stain, 405.
Vassale and **Donaggio**, Golgi's impregnation, 421.
Vastarini-Cresi, medullated nerve, 406.
Vejdovsky, *Gordius*, 475.
Venice turpentine, for mounting, 286; cement, 291.
Vermes, 469—480; embryology, 354—356.
Vert lumière, 208.
Verworn, *Cristatella*, 15.
Vesuvin, 210.
Viallanes, collodion imbedding, 126; gold method, 253; eyes of *Palinurus*, 468.

The numbers refer to the Pages.

Vialleton, ova of fowl, 340; of Cephalopoda, 347.

Victoria blue, 206, 440.

Vignal, osmic acid, 36.

Ville, carmine injections, 301.

Violet B, 226.

Virchow, action of light on chromic objects, 39.

Visibility, index of, 282, 287.

Vivante, bone, 444.

Vogt and Yung, Annelids, 472; Gephyrea, 472; Cestodes, 477; Holothurids, 481.

Voigt, *Planaria*, 480.

Volk, peroxide of hydrogen, 18.

Vom Rath, picro-sublimate mixtures, 59; osmio-sublimate, 59; picro-osmic acid, 69; picro-platinic mixtures, 69.

Von Ebner, *see* Ebner; and for all names with the prefix von see the respective patronymics.

Vosmaer, section grinding, 137; reconstruction, 332.

Vosmaer and Pekelharing, sponges, 490.

Vosseler, Mayer's albumen, 144; Venice turpentine, 286; wax feet, 312.

W.

Waddington, fixing Infusoria, 53; demonstrating cilia, 495.

Waldeyer, decalcification, 323; cochlea, 434.

Walsem, van, knife-warmer, 110; section-flattener, 114; serial sections, 146; nerve stain, 404.

Warburg, Ehrlich-Biondi stain, 217.

Ward, asphyxiation, 17; *Sipunculus*, 472.

Ward's brown cement, 290.

Washburn, embryology of Gastropoda, 349.

Washing out fixing liquids, 2, 27.

Wasielewsky, fixing agents, 26; Sporozoa, 494.

Wasserblau, 225.

Watasé, ova of Cephalopoda, 347.

Water, fresh or warm, for killing, 17; refractive index, 81; as an examination medium, 268; method for serial sections, 140.

Water-baths, 100.

Water-blue, 225.

Wax feet, 312.

Webb, dextrin freezing mass, 138.

Weber, Rotatoria, 473; Echinoidea, 482; Siphonophora, 488.

Webster, naphtha for imbedding, 96.

Wedl, orchella, 263.

Weigert, serial sections, 149; Bismarck brown, 210; picro-Säure-fuchsin, 215; varnish, for mounting, 287; hardening nerve-centres, 381, 385; stain for nuclear figures, 392; myelin stains, 396—400; Golgi's impregnation, 417; neuroglia stain, 428; elastic tissue, 441; fibrin stain, 452.

Weil, section-grinding, 137; teeth, 444.

Welcke, flagella, 496.

Wellheim, Pfeiffer von, iron-carmine, 170.

Wermel, blood, 448.

Weysse, embryology of *Sus*, 336.

Whartonian jelly, 453.

Wheeler, embryology of Blattida, 352; *Myzostoma*, 469.

White, bone and teeth, 443.

White of egg, freezing method, 139; section fixatives, 143—145; examination media, 271, 272; injection mass, 307.

Whiting, spleen, 458.

Whitman, chromo-platinic mixture, 48; ova of Amphibia, 341, 343; pelagic ova, 346; Hirudinea, 472.

Wickersheimer's fluid, 273.

Will, embryological methods, 341.

Wilson, embryology of *Nereis*, 354; Alcyonaria, 485.

Wissozky, blood, 450.

Wistinghausen, von, hæmatein stains, 181; embryology of Polychæta, 354.

Wolff, bladder of frog, 375.

Wolff, Elise, staining bichromate

The numbers refer to the Pages.

material, 50; thionin stains, 206; fibrin, 453.
Wollschwartz, 495.
WOLTERS, hæmatoxylin nerve stain, 402; vanadium nerve stain, 410; cartilage and bone, 446.
WOODWORTH, orienting in paraffin, 104; reconstruction, 333.
WRIGHT and MACALLUM, *Sphyranura*, 478.
WURSTER, Congo red, 220.

X.

Xylol, for clearing paraffin sections, 85; celloidin sections, 130, 131; for imbedding, 97.

Z.

ZACHARIADÈS, bone, 445.
ZACHARIAS, acetic alcohol, 64; iron-carmine, 170.
ZANDER, test for chitin, 466.
ZENKER, fixing mixture, 59.
ZENTHOEFER, elastic tissue, 441.
ZERNEĆKE, *Ligula*, 478.
ZETTNOW, flagella, 496.
ZIEHEN, gold and sublimate method, 427.
ZIEHL, carbolic fuchsin, 207.
ZIELINA, blood, 447.
ZIEMANN, blood, 451.
ZIMMERMANN, A., sieve-dishes, 4; micro-chemistry, 360.
ZIMMERMANN, K. W., Golgi's impregnation, 424; bone, 444.
Zinc chloride, for fixing, 61; for hardening, 385, 386; for impregnation, 427.
Zoantharia, 484.
ZOGRAF, Rotatoria, 474; Protozoa, 493.
ZOJA, methylen blue, 230; ova of *Ascaris*, 356; Protozoa, 494.
ZSCHOKKE, benzo-purpurin, 220; cartilage, 446.
ZUR STRASSEN, ova of *Ascaris*, 356; *Bradynema*, 475.
ZWAARDEMAKER, safranin, 203.

ERRATUM.

Page 36, line 12 from bottom, *read* "He adds 1 per cent. of sodium iodate to a 0·3 per cent. solution of osmic acid."